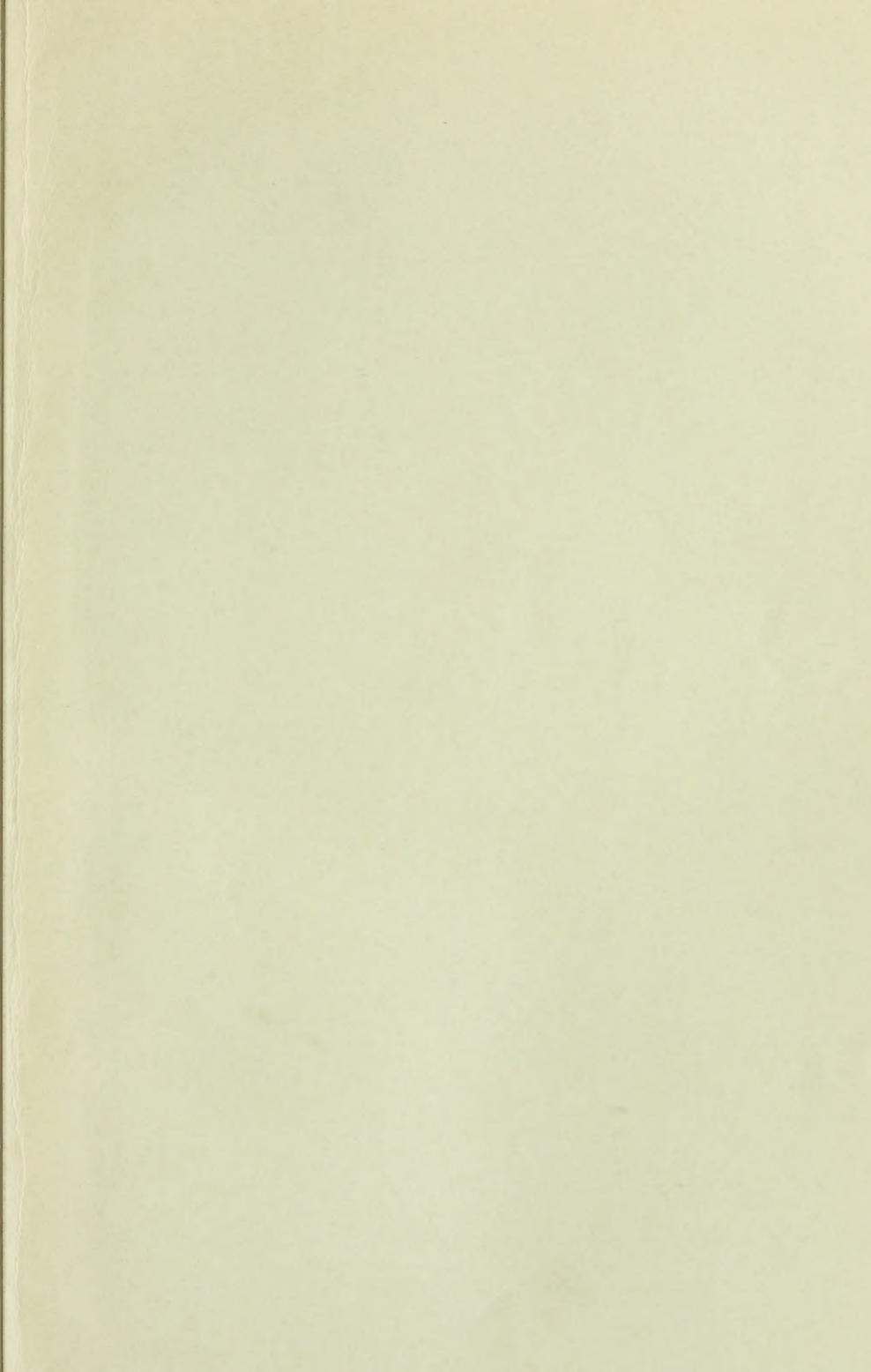


3 1761 01500254 6

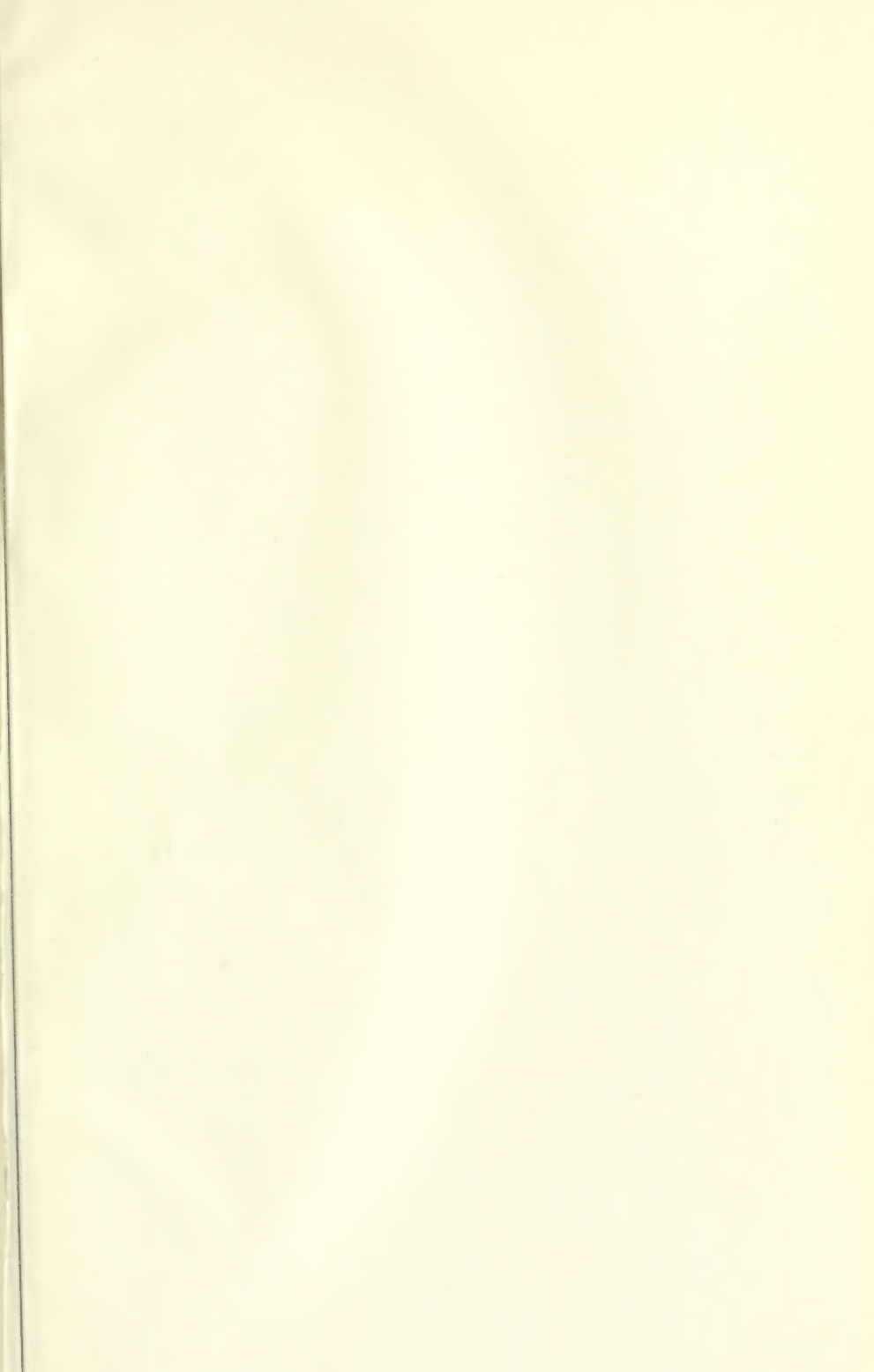




















# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

## THE SIMPLE SENTENCE





# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

BY

H. POUTSMA

SOMETIME ENGLISH MASTER IN THE MUNICIPAL GYMNASIUM  
AMSTERDAM

PART I

THE SENTENCE

FIRST HALF

THE ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE



SECOND EDITION

177 Ed  
1914

P. NOORDHOFF — 1928 — GRONINGEN



VE  
112  
E  
311  
21

## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The object of this book, the first section of which has just left the press, is to give a survey of the most striking features of Late Modern English, as it presents itself to Continental, especially Dutch, students. Although the work professes to be concerned with the English of the last two hundred years, it is especially the literature of this and the previous generation that has been subjected to closer investigation. Occasional glimpses have been given of older stages of the language, chiefly for the purpose of accounting for otherwise unintelligible idioms, or showing prototypes of the many archaisms affected by writers of the present day. Also in illustrating usages that from an early date have subsisted to the present day, examples have often been taken from SHAKESPEARE and the AUTHORIZED VERSION.

The way in which I have set about my task differs from that of most other grammarians. The time-honoured system of distinguishing strictly between accident and syntax, and discussing the former in all the intended detail before approaching the latter, little suited my purpose, and was, therefore, rejected from the first. Following the lead of two eminent Dutch grammarians, the late C. H. DEN HERTOOG, and the late T. TERWEY, I have divided my subject into the two following parts: *a*) the Sentence, *b*) the Parts of Speech. The first part has been subdivided into two sections: 1) the Elements of the Sentence, 2) the Composite Sentence. In the first of these sections I have inserted a brief exposition of the way in which sentences may be divided as to their meaning, as a necessary introduction to an intelligible discussion of the arrangement of the elements of the sentence. I have not included derivation, word-formation, and phonetics in my programme, these subjects lying for the present outside the field of my special studies.

As to the views advanced in my grammar, I may honestly say that they are the outcome of a constant endeavour to ascertain facts, and for the most part of independent investigation, often extending over a considerable length of time. In some cases, I regret to say, I have not been able to arrive at final, or even satisfactory results, and I am fully aware that, in going thus early to press, I have laid



myself open to the charge of rashness. Still I have my doubts that there would have been wisdom in deferring the publication of my work much longer, considering that any day circumstances may arise which might render the labour of many years practically useless.

The fact that my grammar addresses itself to Continental, especially Dutch, students, who have passed the elementary stage, will account for its general character. I have abstained from giving definitions of grammatical terms, except in those cases where the manner of treatment seemed to make this desirable or necessary. I have touched only briefly on those points with which my readers may be supposed to have become familiar, or which seemed to require little or no elucidation. Conversely I have taken considerable pains to unravel knotty questions, to account for so-called anomalies, and find out the principles underlying certain turns of expression. In some cases I have thought it advisable to point out the difference between Dutch and English idiom, and also to give the Dutch translation of peculiar locutions and phrases. It has been my constant endeavour to distinguish carefully between different forms of diction: i. e. between those occurring in literary, poetic, ordinary, colloquial, and vulgar language. In some cases quotations have been arranged chronologically, with a view of exhibiting the prevalence of a given idiom through several periods. Much time and labour have been expended in setting forth the details of my subject in an orderly and rational arrangement, without which the study of grammar is a very weariness of the flesh.

Although fully alive to the necessity that every grammarian should confine himself as much as possible to the current grammatical terms, I have felt obliged to coin some new ones. I am rather sanguine that they will be readily understood, and that the majority of them will be regarded as useful additions to grammatical nomenclature.

The new grammatical terms referred to, are:

*nominal*, as a common word for noun and adjective, also adopted by SWEET;

*nominal predicate* and *verbal predicate*, to denote the two forms in which the predicate appears;

*nominal part of the predicate*, in distinction from the copula or verbal part of a nominal predicate;

*adnominal adjunct*, as a common name for all modifiers of nouns or pronouns, and whose function is either *attributive* or *predicative*);

<sup>1)</sup> Predicative adnominal adjuncts answer to *bepalingen van gesteldheid* in Dutch grammars, and to what PAUL (Prinzipien, § 97), calls *prädikative Attribute*. Certain varieties are denominated *objective complements* by NESFIELD (Historical English and Derivation, § 190), *complemental nominative or objective* by MURRAY (O. E. D., i. v. *as*, 11, c), and *object-complement* by H. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 267).

*sham-subject* and *sham-object*, by which is meant the indefinite pronoun *it* in the functions of respectively subject and object<sup>1)</sup>;

*composite sentence*, as a common term for compound and complex sentences;

*undeveloped clause*, i. e. a verbal or a nominal with its adjuncts that is equivalent to a subordinate clause;

*subordinate statement*, *subordinate question*, and *substantive clause*, which require no comment.

An important feature of my grammar, perhaps the one by which it will most commend itself, is the copiousness of the quotations by which most of the observations made are illustrated. These quotations have partly been borrowed from dictionaries and from other grammars. But by far the majority of them have been collected by myself from numberless and varied sources: not only literary and scientific books, but also periodicals and newspapers.

Full references are attached only to the quotations collected by myself. But in the case of borrowed quotations, where verification was often impossible, and of such as have been taken from ephemeral literature, this fulness would not have answered any useful purpose, and has not, therefore, been attempted. Of some quotations the reference has somehow got lost. A few of the illustrative examples had to be supplied by myself. In the references the *Arah's* numbers when not preceded by any letter or sign, almost regularly mark the page; excepted are only those attached to quotations from dramatic works, and from the AUTHORIZED VERSION.

In preparing this work I have largely profited by other grammars, and by many articles that have appeared in *ENGLISCHE STUDIEN*, *ANGLIA*, and *TAALSTUDIE*. My acknowledgments are especially due to Prof. W. FRANZ, Prof. OTTO JESPERSEN, Dr. W. SATTLER, Prof. J. STORM, Dr. C. STOFFEL, and Dr. H. SWEET. In the text I have made frequent references to the works of these scholars and of many others, directing the student to where he might go for further enlightenment on the subjects discussed.

While the work was in course of preparation, I have occasionally been guided by the advice of my brother, Dr. ALB. POUTSMA, and of my friend, Mr. C. GRONDHOUD. Both these gentlemen have also relieved me of part of the tedium incidental to the correcting of the proofs, and, as the sheets were passing through the press, they have given me many hints which could be turned to excellent account. Their kind services will be held in thankful remembrance through my remaining days.

In conclusion I need hardly say that suggestions are kindly solicited, and that any criticisms will be gratefully accepted.

<sup>1)</sup> The *sham-subject* is called *loos onderwerp* by DEN HERTOG, (*Nederlandsche Spraakkunst*, I. § 12). Compare also PAUL, *Prinzipien*, § 91.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The second edition of this volume of my Grammar of Late Modern English is far from being a mere reprint of its predecessor. The fact is that, when I began preparing it, it soon became evident to me that a good many parts of it could not be left as they stand in the first edition. Not only had account to be taken of the important books, treatises, and articles dealing with my subject that had appeared since I first went to press, but also my own views regarding many points had matured, or undergone some modification. This made it necessary to write the greater part of the book afresh. The general plan and character of my grammatical work has, however, remained unaltered.

I can honestly say that in resuming my labours I have constantly striven to approach any problem that presented itself with an unbiassed mind. There is, of course, no harm in starting with some notion of the way in which solution of the problem may possibly be found, but it is dangerous to be positive already at the outset. It is wise constantly to bear in mind the lesson conveyed by Bacon's words (*Advancement of Learning*, III): "Another error is impatience of doubt, and haste to assertion without due and mature suspension of judgment... If a man will begin with certainties, he shall end in doubts; but if he will be content to begin with doubts, he shall end in certainties." Above all one ought to abstain from wresting the available evidence regarding a given point into harmony with some pre-conceived theory. It has been truly said that "*Le plus grand dérèglement de l'esprit est de croire les choses parcequ'on veut qu'elles soient.*"

It has again been my constant endeavour to give a methodical description of the English language as it presents itself in the printed documents of the last few generations. There are, indeed, numerous references to the literary productions of earlier times, notably to those of Shakespeare, Bacon, Dryden, Congreve, Farquhar, Wycherley, Pope, Swift, Addison, Johnson, Goldsmith, Sheridan, Scott, Byron and Jane Austen, but it is especially those of the Victorian age and the present day that have been subjected to rather close investigation. I am fully aware that it would have been highly desirable for me to draw also the pre-Shakespearean stages of the language within the sphere of my examination, but for this huge, although highly interesting task, I lack the necessary qualifications, never having had sufficient training and leisure to study the older English with adequate attention. Although my book does not, accordingly, rest on an historical basis in the sense in which the term is currently understood,



it may claim to be historical up to a certain point, inasmuch as it shows, on occasion, the development of a given practice during the last three or four centuries, pointing out how far it has remained unaltered, or undergone some material modification. The partly historical method also appears from the broadly chronological presentment of the illustrative examples in the present edition, an arrangement which, I regret to say, I disregarded when I was preparing the first edition of this volume for the press.

My book is, however, mainly descriptive, that is to say its chief purpose is to register actual usages of speech. It abstains from giving "rules", such as are necessary for beginners, and it confines itself to hints as to the relative frequency of different forms of speech where uniformity has not been arrived at, with special regard to different styles of diction, and influences of metre or rhythm. If it has any merit, it owes it to the fact that it comments systematically on the problems with which also Modern English abounds, and which have to be solved independently of the help of Old-or Middle English. Even if some of these comments should prove to be fallacious, the examples with which they have been furnished may be useful to future investigators. The multiplicity of these problems and the relative copiousness of the examples with which I have thought it necessary to illustrate them, are, so to speak, reflected in the somewhat repellent size of the book. Some persons may regard this as a drawback, interfering, as, no doubt, it sometimes does with arriving at short notice at information about a given controversial point. To such persons I would, however, observe that in many cases they would not be much benefited by generalities. It is, indeed, not enough for a grammarian to state some general principles which determine more or less strictly the prevailing usages of speech: he has also to concern himself with the way in which these principles are applied in detail. It is for reasoned information about details that the inquiring student will most frequently wish to turn to the book.

I have throughout been careful to distinguish between grammatical and semantic analysis. Thus I consider such a sentence as *It is this man who is to blame* as complex from the grammatical point of view, because it has two finite verbs, although it cannot be denied that, so far as its semantic value is concerned, it is as distinctly a simple sentence as *This man is to blame*.

In perusing my book the student will soon perceive that I have shaken off the trammels of Latin Grammar. In fact it seems to me that any attempt to bring the salient points of English Syntax into line with the rules of Latin Syntax — or, for that matter, with that of any other essentially different language, say Greek or German — is doomed to failure. Although I am, accordingly, in hearty accord with the eminent expositors of what may be called the modern method

of linguistics, I must not be understood to have endorsed all their theories. Thus I still hold to the view that the connective *that* in adnominal clauses, when varying with *who* or *which*, is best regarded as a relative pronoun, notwithstanding the fact that, like a conjunction, it does not admit of being preceded by a preposition, nor of having the emphatic pronoun in *self* placed in immediate succession to it. I have, however, little inclination to enter into controversy regarding the theories I cannot make my own, for which, indeed, this preface would hardly be a suitable place.

It remains to mention a few things lying outside the general import of my book.

As to the numerous quotations scattered through these pages, I may say that I have left them essentially unmodified — of course. I have, however, occasionally taken the liberty of some omission or curtailment, that is to say I have repeatedly replaced lengthy or unwieldy descriptions which had nothing to do with the matter under discussion, by a simple *this*, *that*, *those*, or *he*, *she*, *they*, etc. Relative pronouns have often been changed into personal pronouns, and conjunctions have sometimes been suppressed, with a view of giving my examples the appearance of an intelligible whole. In the apparent absence of any regularly-observed rules regarding the use of the stops in the printed writings that have come under my notice, I have occasionally interfered with the punctuation, so as to secure at least some degree of uniformity in this matter. So far as lay in my power, or seemed desirable, I have furnished my examples with exact designations of the places where I found them, so as to enable the student to trace them if he should wish to verify them. In view of the fact that practically all English classics have been published in innumerable editions, he would, in my opinion, receive inadequate direction in being merely referred to the page of an edition to which, as likely as not, he has no access.

The numbering of the sections has had to undergo considerable modification, which naturally upsets many of the references in the last volumes of my book. To meet this inconvenience I have, therefore, also given the old numbering, wherever necessary, placing the numbers in thin type in the right-hand margin.

Descriptive indexes, indispensable in a book like the present, will be placed at the end of the second half of this volume, which is practically ready in manuscript, and will, it is hoped, see the light before the present year is out, or the next far advanced.

On the title-page I have withdrawn the words "for the use of continental, especially Dutch students" I have done so in consideration of the fact that my book has found a goodly number of readers outside Europe, notably in Japan, and on a hint from a Professor of

the English Language in one of the American universities, who flattered me by writing to me "that American and English students (could) learn as much from (my) Grammar as Continental ones."

I am under great obligation to my friend Dr. E. KKUISINGA of the Hague, who passed some sound criticisms on my work as the proof-sheets were sent to him for inspection; and to a former pupil of mine, Dr. J. L. CARDOZO of Leeuwarden, who volunteered to share with me the tedium incidental to the proof-reading. My thanks are also due to a correspondent, Mr. M. HOOGESTEGER of Rotterdam, who lent me highly valuable aid in hunting up illustrative examples. It is in no small measure due to the unflagging patience and assiduous assistance of these gentlemen that I have succeeded in bringing my work a degree nearer to that ideal standard which may give general satisfaction.

It is with great pleasure that I repeat my great indebtedness to my publishers, the firm of P. Noordhoff, for enabling me to bring out my voluminous book, and for sparing no expense to give it an attractive appearance.

In conclusion I appeal to all my potential readers not to withhold the observations and strictures which they should be inclined to make. They may rest assured that, if offered in a kindly spirit, their criticisms will be gratefully accepted.

AMSTERDAM, March 1928.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

CHAPTER I.	
The Predicate . . . . .	1
CHAPTER II.	
The Subject . . . . .	127
CHAPTER III.	
Objects . . . . .	175
CHAPTER IV.	
Attributive Adnominal Adjuncts . . . . .	267
CHAPTER V.	
Adverbial Adjuncts . . . . .	319
CHAPTER VI.	
Predicative Adnominal Adjuncts . . . . .	339
CHAPTER VII.	
Kinds of Sentences . . . . .	379
CHAPTER VIII.	
Order of Words . . . . .	385

---

# CHAPTER I.

## THE PREDICATE.

### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Predicates divided into Verbal and Nominal Predicates . . .	1
Nominal Predicates . . . . .	2—14
Copulas . . . . .	2—12
Characteristic Features of Copulas . . . . .	2—3
Copulas of the First Kind . . . . .	4—6
Copulas of the Second Kind . . . . .	7—9
Copulas of the Third Kind . . . . .	10—12
Nominal Part of the Predicate . . . . .	13—14
Complex Predicates . . . . .	15
Verbs denoting Certainty or Uncertainty . . . . .	16—28
Verbs denoting some Constraint . . . . .	29—49
Verbs denoting Recurrency . . . . .	50—57
Verbs denoting a Capability or a Permission . . . . .	58—62
The verb <i>to dare</i> . . . . .	63
The verb <i>to do</i> . . . . .	64—74

---



## VERBAL AND NOMINAL PREDICATES.

1. Predicates are of two kinds, viz.: *a*) verbal predicates, i. e. such as contain no other words than verbs; *b*) nominal predicates, i. e. such as are made up of a copula or link-verb and a nominal (a noun or adjective) or a nominal equivalent (i. e. a word or word-group doing duty as a nominal).

Verbal predicates present no special features that require discussion in this chapter.

### NOMINAL PREDICATE.

#### COPULAS.

2. *a*) Copulas may be distinguished into three kinds, according as they are used to express: *a*) that a thing is in a certain state or has a certain quality, *b*) that a thing remains in a certain state or continues to have a certain quality, *c*) that a thing passes into a certain state or assumes a certain quality. In other words, the combinations into which they enter are *a*) indefinitely durative, *b*) continuatively durative, or *c*) ingressively durative (Ch. LI, 1). As has been shown in my pamphlet *The Characters of the English verb and the Expanded Form*, and has again been pointed out in Ch. LI and Ch. LII of this grammar, the character, or aspect as it is mostly called, of many verbs and verbal word-groups is vague and fluctuating. This is also the case with not a few of the combinations containing a copula. The classing of some of the combinations may, therefore, appear more or less arbitrary or even open to exception.
- b*) Besides the verbs which may be regarded as genuine copulas, such as *to be*, *to remain* and *to become* (Dutch *zijn*, *blijven* and *worden*), and some others, there are not a few which serve this function only in some special connexions, and often have only a questionable title to be regarded as link-verbs. The verbs here referred to are, indeed, used to connect the subject with a nominal or nominal equivalent, but, like ordinary verbs, they also denote some action or state. They do so, however, in a vague and indistinct manner, so that the latter function appears to be subservient to the former, and the verb and the nominal form a kind of unit in which the nominal bears the main sense (Ch. LIV, 2 ff). The vagueness not unfrequently appears from the fact that



the verb in question varies with *to be*, the combination with the latter hardly standing for a different meaning. Several instances will be given in the following discussions.

Note α) It stands to reason that it is impossible to tell to what extent a verb should have suffered semantic decline for it to assume the character of a copula. Nor do the verbs that are subject to the altered function show the decline in an equal degree, or does one and the same verb undergo the same degree of weakening in the different combinations into which it may enter. Thus in such a sentence as *Miss Jessie went very white, then flushed scarlet* (Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 44) it is easy to see that *to go* has faded more from its original import than *to flush*, although it will be admitted that these verbs are meant to indicate the same process, the change having, presumably, no further aim than that of obviating the monotony which would ensue from a repeated use of *to go*. Again nobody will fail to notice that in *Helen had grown a beautiful young woman now* (THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 88) the original meaning of *to grow* stands out more prominently than in *My time grows short* (DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 41), although the first sentence closely resembles the second in implying a passing into another state. It is, accordingly, far from improbable that some students should observe that not a few of the verbs illustrated below hardly rank as copulas, a stricture which the present writer would not be prepared to dispute.

If the view that the verbs in question approximate to copulas is rejected, the nominals, or nominal equivalents, with which they are connected should in some cases be regarded to hold the position of predicative adnominal adjuncts, a function which, as will be shown in Ch. VI, bears a great affinity to that of nominal part of the predicate. A convenient term for nominals or nominal equivalents in the function of either nominal part of the predicate or predicative adnominal adjunct is **predicative**, used by JESPERSEN, in *Phil. of Gram.* (See especially page 150, foot-note). For discussion see also MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 35 ff; ELLINGER, *Vermischte Beiträge*, 16 f. For the effect which the alternative view may have on the form of the adjunct see below 6, Obs. I; also Ch. LIX, 22 f.

β) All the verbs doing duty as copulas are naturally intransitive (Ch. XLV, 20). Several of them were originally transitives and are still frequently used as transitives in some of their applications. Their assuming the character of copulas often originated in their throwing off the reflexive pronoun and thus becoming intransitive. This is the case with *to feel*, *to get*, *to hold*, *to keep (on)*, *to make*, *to show*, *to turn* and, perhaps, some others. When used with the reflexive pronoun, these verbs, of course, lose none of their semantic significance, and imply more self-originated activity on the part of the subject than they do when used without. For detailed discussion of the suppression of the reflexive pronoun after these and other verbs see Ch. XXXIV, 8—10, 18, and especially Ch. XLVIII, 8—10. For further discussion of the nature of copulas see also Ch. XLV, 4; and compare JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 131.

3. If it be asked why, contrary to ordinary practice, the verbs of seeming and appearing are not included among the copulas, the answer is that these verbs differ in an important respect from the real copulas and the verbs which may be considered to do duty as such. The fact is that they are, as regards their function, on a par with modal verbs and adverbs, expressing as they do some attitude on the part of the speaker towards the fulfilment of the action or state ascribed to the subject. They have this function irrespective of the nature of the predicate, i. e. with verbal as well as nominal predicates, whether the latter are connected with the meaningless *to be* or not; thus with equal distinctness in *He seems to know me* as in *He seems to be happy* or *He seems happy*. But in whatever connexion the verbs *to seem* and *to appear* are used, they, naturally, preserve their full meaning. This distinguishes them from the copulas and the verbs doing duty as such, whose outstanding feature, as has already been observed (2), and will again appear below, is that their meaning is a more or less weakened reflex of that which they have in other functions. It will be admitted that, on these considerations, the above verbs should not be included among the copulas. For further discussion see also Ch. II, 31 ff; Ch. V, 12 ff; Ch. XLV, 26; and Ch. LIII, 15, a.

Note a) The verbs *to seem* and *to appear* are often detached from the verb or verb-group that is the bearer of the main predication (Ch. XLV, 1), the modal notion they express being mentioned in a member of a complex sentence, as in *It seems (or appears) that he knows me, ... that he is happy*. Such a member is often placed parenthetically in the body of the complex; thus in:

King Edward VII, it appeared, was not a great reader. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/3, 1925, 556 c.

The poems were written, it seems, by an American poetess. *ib.*, 21/3, 1925, 628 a.

β) It is hardly necessary to state that the adverbs *seemingly* and *apparently* convey practically the same meaning as the corresponding verbs. Observe that in the following quotation the participle *seeming* might be replaced by the adverb *seemingly*:

There was a man in the refreshment room, who insisted upon treating me to champagne — a seafaring-looking man — extraordinarily dressed, and seeming half tipsy. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVII, 284.*

#### COPULAS OF THE FIRST KIND.

4. a) The principal copula of the first kind is *to be*. This verb is utterly meaningless when it connects the subject with a noun or adjective, as in *Charles is a soldier, John is rich*. *To be* is equally devoid of semantic significance when connected with a preposition-group (Ch. LX, 12, e) denoting a state, irrespec-

tive of the semantic significance of the preposition (Ch. LX, 46); thus in such sentences as *He is against the measure*, *He is above mean actions*, etc., in which the preposition is distinctly significant, as well as in sentences like *He is at rest*, *The country is at war*, *He is in great trouble*, etc., in which the preposition can hardly be said to convey any meaning at all.

b) Some meaning can, however, be traced in the verb when it is connected with a word(-group) denoting a place, as in *The book is here (on the table, etc.)*, *The picture is here (on the wall, etc.)*, *The village is far away (in the distance, etc.)*. In these and similar connexions the verb *to be* denotes a weak form of existence, and varies with other verbs in a weakened meaning, such as *to lie*, *to hang*, *to sit*, *to stand*.

Note a) *To be* may be devoid of semantic significance although in (7) the Dutch translation another verb than *zijn* would, or might be used; thus in:

Don't be hard upon my chosen friends. DICK., *Chuz.* (= Val mijn uitverkoren vrienden niet hard.)

The Jesuits were at that time in very bad odour in France. (= De Jezuïeten stonden destijds in kwade reuk in Frankrijk.)

Passengers are earnestly cautioned not to attempt to alight from the carriages till the train is at rest at the platform. Notice in London Trains. (= voor de trein stil staat.)

β) *To be*, as an utterly meaningless link-verb is sometimes added to certain verbs which also by themselves may do duty as copulas. For comment and illustration see below under *to look*, *to continue*, *to fall*, *to get*, *to grow*.

c) In a description of a succession of happenings, a combination with *to be* naturally assumes an ingressive aspect, and the same change may often be observed in other connexions. Of particular interest is the frequent use of *to be dead* in the meaning of \**to become dead*, i. e. *to die*, for which see also the O. E. D., s.v. *dead*; STOE., *Taalstudie*, IX; FIJN VAN DRAAT, E. S. XXVI. Detailed discussion of the variability of aspect will be found in Ch. LI.

i. The men lay down before the door, and in a few minutes were asleep. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 24.

He was both out of pocket and out of spirits by that catastrophe. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 370

I was of age the other day. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. V, 42.  
ii. Her face changed, and she was dead. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 35 a.

Sir Wigram Allen, I regret to see, is since dead. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. XI, 177

d) In referring to a change of condition in the future, English often has *to be* where the Dutch has *worden*; thus in:

Mr. Pendennis never would have permitted his son to be a soldier. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 33. (= soldaat te worden.)

He will be as good a rider as your honour one of these days. He ought to be a better. *LYT., Night & Morn.*, 36.

We meant to be sailors, every one of us. *MISS BRAD., My First Happy Christmas (STOF., Handl., I, 74).*

By and by she'll be mistress of Dene Court. *MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. VI, 106.*

5. a) Among the verbs which serve, in a manner, as copulas of the first kind separate mention may be made of: 1) such as express a sense-impression (Ch. XLVI, 21—22), viz.:

*to feel*, as in: The bed feels hard. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 183. (= is hard to the sense of touch.)

*to smell*, as in: The rose smells sweet. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 393, N. (= is sweet to the sense of smell.)

The dinner smelt delicious. *DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXVII, 298 a.*

Everything smells good in England. *E. F. BENSON, Arundel, Ch. VI, 144.*

*to taste*, as in: The wine tastes sour. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 393, Note (= is sour to the sense of taste.)

It was the pig ... that tasted so delicious. *LAMB., Es. of El., Dis. on Roast Pig, (255).*

The dinner tasted flat. *GALSW., Man of Prop., I, Ch II, 32.*

Upon my word, London tastes good after Teheran. *MRS. WARD, Lady Rose's Daught., I, Ch. I, 9 b.*

- 2) such as are converted transitives and have assumed a passive meaning (Ch. XLVI, 33, Obs. II); e. g.:

*to cut*, as in: The meat cuts tough. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 183. (= shows itself to be tough when cut.)

*to eat*, as in: The cake eats short and crisp. *ib.* (= shows itself to be short and crisp when eaten.)

- b) Also the following verbs in certain of their applications partake more or less of the nature of copulas of the first kind, i. e. are semantically distinctly inferior to the nominal or nominal equivalent with which they are connected:

*to bulk*, as in: Points of practice and etiquette ... always bulk large in the annual report. *Manch. Guard., 8/1, 1926, 36 b.*

*to feel*, as in *to feel ill, to feel sure (certain, confident or assured).*

It will be observed that in the first example the decline of semantic value is less pronounced than in the second. See also *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 376. The following quotations show that *to feel* in its function as a kind of copula is found connected with practically all kinds of nominals or nominal equivalents. Thus we find it in combinations with: adjectives: From that time Mr. Freely felt sure of success. *G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. II, (522).*

Paul had already felt certain that it must be either Briggs or Tozer. *DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 105.*

I feel confident you know me too well to feel hurt by this enquiry. *id., Let to Cruikshank (FORST., Life of Dick., VI, II, 238).*

I feel sorry for him. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XV, 131.*

adjectival participles: She felt much honoured by Mr. Pipkin's addresses. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVII, 52.* (not equivalent to: she felt that she was much honoured etc.).



Lowton had felt attracted by Pen's superior looks and presence. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 314.

He felt compelled to retire up the cañon. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, (23).

We feel bound to accept the confusion at which the Commissioners have arrived. *Times*.

That night Summers-Howson felt very depressed. BARRY PAYN, *Culminating Point*.

nouns: Blanche felt a queen stepping down from her throne to visit a subject. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 310. (Compare: I feel as a sister to you. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. III, 345.)

I'm sixty ... and I feel a lad again. HAL SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. II, 34.

I'm sure you feel a great grown-up wicked deceiver. SHAW, *Candida*, II, (172). T. He felt a man of the world. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, III, Ch. IV, 142.

preposition-groups: He felt in a false position. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 88.

I feel out of sorts with all things. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 55.

Note. Not unfrequently the reflexive pronoun, which may be assumed to be suppressed in the preceding examples, is retained, preserving for the verb its full meaning. It is distinctly unusual in combinations with an adjective or adjectival participle, as in: i. I felt myself fortunate in not having to spell it (sc. the word Mangelwurzelshire). JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, I, C, 57.

The mother and wife felt herself shy and intimidated. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, I, Ch. IX, 90.

I always feel myself so much more reasonable than the people who disapprove. *id.*, *Tres.*, I, Ch. II, 7*b*.

If I now delayed, I should feel myself little better than a miserable coward. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 21.

ii. Amelia felt herself not a little amused and grateful to be thus suddenly introduced to so large a party. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVII, 287.

It appears to be mostly retained in combinations with a noun or a preposition-group (Ch. LX, 12, *e*), as in:

i. He felt himself a match for an army. LYT., *Rienzi*, III, Ch. II, 137.

She had begun to feel herself a woman. Mrs. ORRM., *Neighb. on the Green*. Mrs. MERDEW'S *Fort.*, Ch. IV.

The German Government feels itself once more master in its own house. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 206 115*b*.

ii. She began, for the first time that evening, to feel herself at a ball. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. II, 9.

She did not feel herself up to conversation. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 246 Kate had the art of turning the conversation to subjects upon which the country girl could feel herself at home. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. XLV, 295*b*.

The girl had made him feel himself more of a fool than he had done for years. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 268

Robert felt himself in no mood this evening for a dinner party. *ib.*, III, 199.

It is almost regularly retained when it represents the accusative in the accusative + infinitive construction, as in:

Clara felt herself grow suddenly hot. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Woman*, Ch. XIX. (= Clara felt that she grew suddenly hot.)

The following is the only example of the alternative practice that has come to hand:

As for Esmond, he felt to be a hundred years old. THACK., *Henry Es m.*,

III, Ch. VII, 378. (with which compare: His friends told him he was a changed man, and so he felt himself to be. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 95.)

Similarly the reflexive pronoun is practically regularly retained in constructions with a present or past participle that are distinctly felt as modifications of the accusative + infinitive.

i. Rosamond felt herself beginning to know a great deal of the world. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLIII, 322.

ii. Early in the day though it was, I felt myself being dreamily lulled off into a musing fit. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. VI, 60.

*to go*, in many combinations mostly with words or word-groups that indicate an undesirable state, especially neglect, privation or disadvantage (see the examples under *;*), or such as imply a negative (see the examples under *β*). Like the combinations with *to be*, those with *to go* often have a modified aspect imparted to them by the context. *To go* as a kind of copula is found: 1) with a variety of adjectives, a) in combinations which are distinctly durative, as in:

Dictionaries are like watches: the worst is better than none, and the best cannot be expected to go quite true. JOHNSON.

To hurt anybody went directly contrary to her nature. DOR. GER., *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. VIII.

You won't go very wrong if you infer that this is the attitude of the Government at the present moment. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6359, 7a.

Their language goes current along most of the sea-coast. HAMILTON (Observe that by the side of *to go current* we also meet with *to pass current* and *to run current*, in all of which phrases *current* stands for an earlier *for current*. O. E. D., s.v. *current*, 8.)

*β* in combinations which are vaguely continuatively durative; thus especially when the nominal is a negatived adjectival past participle, as in:

Wit shall not go unrewarded while I am king of this country. SHAK., *Temp.*, IV, 1, 242.

Not long can such obstinacy go unpunished. ANSTEE, *Fal. Id.*, Prol., 14.

Their real grievances have gone unredressed and even unexamined. *Times*.

With the above compare the following example with *to be*:

He that is glad at calamities shall not be unpunished. *Bible*, *Prov.*, XVII, 5.

*;* in combinations which may be said to be ingressively durative; thus especially when the nominal is an adjective or adjectival past participle indicating an undesirable state, such as:

*bad*: He was like some strange tropical fruit, gone bad at the core. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VIII, 181.

*bald*: Men go bald because they will not let their hair grow to a proper length. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6294, 3a.

*blind*: It was all Dick's fault for being so stupid as to go blind. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. XI, 147.

*cold*: Cruel memories that came to her always in the silences made her blood go cold. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Prog.*, Ch. II, 26.

Joe Barcomb went cold all over. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, F, 112.

*dark*: It had gone dark. GALSW., *Beyond*, II, Ch. VII, 126.

*dirty*: 'Twould be a sin and a shame if we let her go dirty now she's ill. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XIX, 202.

*distracted*: I shall go distracted. JOS. HATTON, *When Greek meets Greek*, Ch. XXXVI.



*foolish*: I went nigh foolish. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 19a.

*grey*: Her hair had gone grey. MRS. BEL. LOWNDES, Mary Pechell, Ch. III. She is going grey. GALSW., Joy, I, (95).

*high*: By noon the sea went very high indeed. DEFOE, Rob. Crus., Ch. I, 9.

*hungry*: Those who will not work go hungry. Truth, XVIII, No. 47, 626a.

*insane*: Was she going insane? WELLS, Britl., III, Ch. I, § 11, 402.

*lame*: He was frantic with vexation when Rebecca went lame. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 67.

Lame went his horses. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Rhodope, 261a.

*mad*: Over Child Harold the English public went simply mad. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. II, 17.

*pale*: She went very pale. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. II, 172.

*red*: He went first red, then pale, with vexed embarrassment. MRS. GASK., Mary Bart., Ch. VI, 64.

*sentimental*: She's gone sentimental. SHAW, Mrs. War. Prof., III, (204).

*sick*: A short while after Tonal himself went sick. Westm. Gaz., No. 4159, 7b.

*silent*: The house went instinctively silent. BARRY PAIN, Miss Slater.

*sour*: If the milk is not taken proper care of it soon goes sour in hot weather. SHELDON (O. E. D.).

*stone-deaf*: They have gone stone-deaf with the noise. Punch.

*white*: Margaret then went very white. MRS. GASK., North & South, Ch. XVI, 98.

Houzel went white as death. BUCH., Wint. Night, Ch. XI, 93.

The mother's cheek went white. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, I, Ch. V, 67.

Observe also the unmistakable ingressive aspect of the predicate in:  
I'm not the only American who has gone 'Canadian. WELLS, Britl., III, Ch. I, § 13, 405.

2) with some preposition-groups semantically equivalent to one or another of the above adjectives, such as those in:

Dr. Clark thinks it quite possible she may go out of her mind. MRS. WARD, Marc., II, 119.

I must do something or I shall go off my head. RUDY KIPL., Light, Ch. VIII, 106.

Mrs. Penfo'd confessed that, being a timid person, she went in fear, sometimes of Mr. Melrose, sometimes of his bloodhounds. MRS. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. V, 107.

He has some new claret, too, that he goes into ecstasies over. JOHN HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 8.

3) with certain nouns not necessarily of a dyslogistic meaning, such as:

*apprentice*: I was too old to go apprentice to a trade. DEFOE, Rob. Crus., 5. One of the boys 'listed; the other had gone apprentice. THACK., Esm., II, Ch. IV, 185.

*bail*: You'll spend your money like a man of spirit, I'll go bail for that. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXX, 322.

I'll go bail of that. ib., I, Ch. V, 64. (Observe the variability of the preposition in this phrase.)

*security*: It was but last week he went security for a fellow whose face he scarce knew. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. Man, I.

Note a) Also in the combinations illustrated by the following examples *to go* may be regarded as a kind of copula: indeed *to be* could be substituted for it without entailing an appreciable change of meaning:

Is it the fashion in this clime for women | To go twelve months in bearing of a child? TEN., *Queen Mary*, III, 6, (623 b).

Don't go talking to Mr. Hardy in the way you do. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 37.

β) It is worth observing that also the Dutch *gaan* enters into some distinctly ingressive combinations, e.g.: *dood gaan*, *failliet* (or *bankroet*) *gaan*.

*to lie*, as in: Every piece of mischief whose author lay unknown, was charged upon me. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. II, 13.

Mrs. Gradgrind lay very ill. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. IX, 87 b.

Dr. Kenn's wife lies dead. G. ELIOT, *Mil.*, VII, Ch. I, 454.

Even then you would minister to me, as you did when I lay at your mercy. BUCH., *Wint. Night*, Ch. IX, 86.

Also in the following examples, in which *to lie* is connected with a (6) past or present participle, its meaning is considerably dimmed, so that the function of the verb comes near to that of a copula:

i. One of my near relations lies buried here. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, *Introd.* 3.

ii. It was not very quiet in the room where the king lay dying. MARY COLERIDGE, *The King is dead, Long live the King* (*Short Stories*, I, 476). So then our good Archbishop Theobald | Lies dying. TEN., *Beck.*, *Prolog.* 1.

Mr. Meeson lay gasping at the bottom of the boat. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. VIII, 78.

*to look*, as in: i You've looked as woe-begone this week past as Ophelia.

MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. V, (450). (Compare *to show*)

I was a bit perplexed, seeing you look so ill and pining. *ib.*, (451).

He's not looking well. *ib.*, (452).

How ill you do look, miss. *ib.*, Ch. VII, (466).

ii. Mamma, I don't believe I shall be able to survive this next week. We shall look such fools! TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LVIII, 334.

No 1 ... looked such a much larger house than it was ... No. 2 ... was such a much larger house than it looked. *Windsor Mag.*, Jan. 1897, 274/1.

Of some special interest are the combinations *to look oneself*, *to look one's age*, as in:

But what's the matter, George? ... you don't look yourself. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 292.

He assuredly did not look his age. L. MERRICK, *Violet Moses*, II, XII, 134 (O. E. D.).

Note α) *To look* is often furnished with *to be* as a special link-verb, especially when connected with a noun or a preposition-group; e.g.:

i. Pen looked to be a lad of much more consequence than he was really. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

ii. She did not look to be within ten years of her age. *id.*, *Es m.*, II, Ch. XV, 291. The Queen looked to be in good health. *Graph.*, 253, 1893, 298/1.

β) *To look* is often hard to distinguish from *to seem*. The difference may be formulated as follows: *To seem* implies mere doubt about the correctness of our observation, *to look* does not imply doubt about the correctness of our observation, but about the correctness of the conclusions that may be drawn from it. Thus *The man seems perplexed* may be interpreted to stand for *I think that the man is perplexed, judging from his looks, but my observation may be deceptive, so that I am not justified in stating this as a fact. The man looks perplexed*, on the other hand, may be assumed to convey the following train of

thought: *The man has, no doubt, the looks (or appearance) of a perplexed person, but I am not certain that I am justified in concluding that he is really perplexed.* There is, therefore, some justification in admitting to *look* among the copulas and excluding to *seem*. There can, however, be no doubt that the two verbs are to some extent used indifferently. Thus in the following example the alternative verb would seem to be at least as appropriate:

She seemed almost like a religieuse. BUCH., *Winter Night*, Ch. III, 30. (Compare: You look to me like two great happy spirits. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 297.)

∴) When the verb denotes at once an expression of the eye (and face generally) and an act of the organs of sight, the following word, although mostly preserving the form of an adjective, is rather adverbial than adnominal. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 376.

You are looking as black as a funeral. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. L, 130 *a*.

Several other fifth-form boys began to look black at them. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VIII, 168.

He saw her look grave and puzzled. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. V, (452).

Adverbial forms are not, however, unfrequent, especially in the older writers. They are even met with when no distinct act of the visual organs is suggested. Sometimes an adjective seems to be understood, to which the adverb really belongs. Observe also that *well-looking* is an occasional variant of the ordinary *good-looking*. Compare Ch. LIX, 22.

i. How charmingly he looks. RICHARDSON, *Pamela*, II, 57.

ii. You look most shockingly. GOLDS., *She stoops* I, (168). (Supply some such adjective as *poorly*.)

iii. Upon my word, a well-looking house. *ib.*, I, (179).

This woman had once had red cheeks, and was well-looking enough. THACK., *Lo v.*, Ch. II, 30.

He was ... well-looking, though in an effeminate style. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 38 *a*.

In the following example different forms are used for no apparent reason:

Good gentlemen look fresh and merrily. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 224.

*to make*, as in *to make (so) bold (as) to* + infinitive, *to make (so) free (as) to* + infinitive, *to make free with*, in all of which *to make* varies with *to be*. See the O. E. D., s.v. *bold*, 3; *free*, 24. For the origin of these phrases see O. E. D., s.v. *make*, 68—69.

i. I made bold to tell her majesty that I owed no other obligation to my late master. SWIFT, *Gul.*, II, (145 *a*). (Compare: I will be bold to say my two girls have had a pretty good education. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XI.)

ii. My landlord made free to send up a jug of claret without my asking. THACK., *Barry Lynd.*, Ch. III, 48.

May I make so free as to ask you to come and dine with me to-morrow? *id.*, *New c.*, I, Ch. I, 10.

iii. He had made free with my guineas. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LI, 533.

Another combination in which *to make* approaches to a copula is *to make merry* or *gay*, in which also *to be* might be substituted for it

without materially altering the meaning. Here the conversion into an intransitive is due to the suppression of the reflexive pronoun. See NESFIELD, *Hist. Eng. & Deriv.*, § 218, where it is observed "Thus we say *He made merry* instead of *He made himself merry*". Compare also the O. E. D., s.v. *merry*, 3, *e*.

Every humorous writer, every satirist with pencil or pen, from Hogarth to Dickens, had made merry with the scenes of the nomination day. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXIV, 369.

He makes merry over their deficiencies. *Sat. Rev.*, 25 10, 1890, 481.2. (With these sentences compare: With cunning and malice enough to make himself merry with all our embarrassments. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, IV.)

That will be just the time they make gay with the gramophone. E. F. BENSON, *Mr. Teddy*, Ch. III, 76.

The activity implied in *to make*, as used in these examples, is weak enough. It is considerably stronger in: I don't make merry myself at Christmas, and I can't afford to make idle people merry (Dick., *Christm. Car. I*), as appears from a comparison of the first and the second *make merry*. Compare however: Suppose somebody should have got over the wall of the back-yard and stolen it (sc. the pudding), while they were merry with the goose. *ib.*, III, 68.

In conclusion it may be observed that *merry* in this collocation is by some understood as a noun in the objective relation to the transitive *make*. Thus WORDSWORTH has *to make merriment* as a variant of *to make merry*, as appears from:

We will make merry in that pleasant bower. *Hart-Leap Well*, 72.

And with the dancers and the minstrel's song | Made merriment within that pleasant bower. *ib.*, 92.

Also in the following combinations *to make* is of a doubtful status. Its transitivity is of a problematical nature, no passive conversion being possible (Ch. XLVII, 17, *c*).

i. I am told he makes a very handsome corpse. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man.*, I.

ii. The book makes engrossing reading. *Bookman*, No. 266, 102 *b*.

iii. Maggie thought it would make a very nice heaven to sit by the pool in that way. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 32.

Further applications of *to make* in which it fades into a kind of copula, distinctly tinged with an ingressive aspect however, are found in:

1) *to make certain* (or *sure*), followed by a subordinate statement, *of* + gerund, or *of* + (pro)noun. See the O. E. D., s.v. *sure*, 13, *b*.

i. She put her ear to the door to make certain that I was asleep and wanted nothing. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 28.

I made certain he had been lying. VACHELL, *Loot*, Ch. III, 12.

ii. How much does he know? I must make sure of that. Mrs. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. IX (510).

Also in these combinations the semantic decline originates in the suppression of the reflexive pronoun. With the above examples compare:

Peggotty likes to make herself as sure as she can that it's (= our house is) not being robbed. Dick., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 8 *a*.

2) such an expression as *He made an excellent cricketer*, in which,



indeed, *to make* is a transitive, but one of a peculiar kind, its object certainly not indicating a person thought of as the result of an activity, far less as undergoing an activity, and consequently not admitting of being made the subject of a passive sentence. See Ch. XLVI, 5, *b*; Ch. XLVII, 17, *c*; and compare KRUISINGA, Handb.<sup>1</sup>, § 1866; the O. E. D., s.v. *make*, 28, where the following definition of the verb in question is given: *to become by development or training*.

The semantic weakening of *to make* appears from a comparison of the two members of the following complex, in the second of which *to be* may be assumed to have an ingressive aspect:

My thought was, I shall make a very bad soldier, and my brother would be a very good one. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 630.

The following quotations afford further instances of *to make* in the above meaning:

Volunteers are the men I want, those are the men fit to make soldiers, captains, generals FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, II, 3, (277).

In short, he had so well mixed and digested his knowledge of men and books, that he made one of the most accomplished persons of his age. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 123.

A reserved lover ... always makes a suspicious husband. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, I.

She would make a good wife. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 34.

You'll never make a cricketer. MAX PEMB., *Doct. Xav.*, Ch. VIII, 37 *a*.

Mr. Lowther has made a Speaker who will live in history. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5237, 2 *a*

The predicative noun may be attended by an adjunct by way of person-object; thus in:

It's a poor return I get for making you the wife I've made you all these years. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. XII, 110.

You'll make my child a good husband. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XXXIV, 342

You'll make some lucky fellow a jolly little wife. VACHELL, *Searchlights*, I, (6).

3) such expressions as *to make one*, or *to make the second*, etc. (of *a company*).

i. Mr. Supple, the curate of Mr. Allworthy's parish, made one of the company. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch X, 55 *a*.

I must be fed if I make one. DICK. *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 88.

He had made one in a violent fracas. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. V, 76.

I should be very glad if you will make one my guests. CON. DOYLE, *Rodn. Stone*, I, Ch VI, 148.

ii. The Elliot pride could not endure to make a third in a one-horse chaise. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch X, 92.

You will make the sixth. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLI, 525.

*to mean*, as in: To be a man is to suffer; to be a poet means to have double the capacity of men to suffer. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. XVIII, 156. (Compare: To show reverence for religion was to incur the suspicion of disaffection MAC., *Popes*, (561 *b*).

Life for little Bernardine meant something serious. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, Ch. II, 8

She had always looked upon indifference as paralysis of the soul, and paralysis meant death. *ib.*, Ch. III, 11.

If keeping one's temper means concealing that one has lost it, then I have managed to keep mine. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XII.

*to ring*, as in: Never did Blake's noble verses ring more true to my ear. Rev. of Rev., No. 195, 225. (Compare *to sound*.)

*to run*, as in: Though one eye may be very agreeable, yet as the popular prejudice has always run in favour of two, I would not wish to affect a singularity in that article. SHER, *Riv.*, III, 1.

Mr. Squeers had but one eye, and the popular prejudice runs in favour of two. DICK, *Nick*, Ch. IV, 16*a*.

Note. In combination with some adjectives or adjectival participles denoting an undesirable state, the verb, like *to go*, assumes an ingressive aspect; thus in:

i. She'll run mad. SHAK., *Oth.*, III, 3.

I shall run mad next. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, V, 2, (298).

Oldish gentle folks run fat in general. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 90.

Let me know when you run short of money. HAM. GIBBS, *Compleat Oxford Man*, Ch. I.

ii. My pocket-money was run out. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 21.

*to shine*, as in: The moon shines bright. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. IX.

*to show*, as in: Parts that become thee happily enough, | And in such eyes as ours appear not faults; | But where thou art unknown, why there they show | Something too liberal. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 2, 170. (Compare *to look*.) This art shows horrible and grim. *id.*, *Oth.*, V, 2, 202.)

*to sit*, as in: The poor woman sat silent and amazed. TROLL, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXIX, 685.

To sit high | Is to be lied about. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, V, (592*a*).

Both sat quite still; quite silent for some time. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XVI, (582).

Clara noticed that the cap sat even more crooked than usual. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XII.

Note *a*) In the following example *to sit* approaches to *to feel* as a verb denoting a sense-impression:

They'll (sc. the fetters will) sit as easy as a glove. GAY, *Beg. Op.*, II, 1.

*b*) Like *to lie*, *to sit* is considerably dimmed in meaning when connected with a present participle, as in:

He sat looking at the horse's ears, as if he saw something new there. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32*b*.

You sat eating your dinner and looking on, while he was trying to crack my bones. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII.

Opportunities flit by while we sit regretting the chances we have lost. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XIV, 240.

For a moment the old gentleman sat fingering it (sc. the letter) in dubious hesitation. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. II, 228.

*to sound*, as in: The voice sounded harsh. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 393, IV. (Compare *to ring*.)

All the other church-clocks in the town sounded so shrill and poor after that. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XI, (524).

It sounded to me the sweetest music I had heard for many a long day. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, On being idle, 75.

*to spell*, as in: I do not mean that individuality which spells bad manners, but those characteristics which distinguish a lovable, fearless soul from his fellows. Westm. Gaz., No. 5525, 4*b*.

It already means putting an enormous responsibility upon a single man, whose



momentary failure of nerve, or eye, or judgment may spell disaster upon a gigantic scale. *Times*, No. 1842, 311 *c*.

Then came the war with Japan, the battle of railway concessions, the Boxer indemnity, which all in one form or another spelt foreign loans and a rapid increase of national indebtedness. *ib.*, No. 1835, 171 *c*.

*to stand*, in many combinations with nouns, adjectives or preposition-groups. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2358.

i. A rich relation taking a fancy to stand godmother, the girl was, by her directions, called Sophia. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. I.  
I'll stand her friend. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXVI, 102 *a*.

ii. Thou mayest send for thy Wife and Children to thee to this Village, where there are Houses now stand empty. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.* (152).

For another moment or two Mrs. Jones stood silent. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XX, 362.

He stood mute with rage and wonder. THACK., *Pend.*, I, VI, 76.

He stands high with Bulstrode. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVI, 253.

He stands a head taller than most of his age. SPENC, *Educ.*, Ch. IV, 97 *b*.

He stood firm. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 376.

The russet woods stood ripe to be stript. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 200.

Mr. Lloyd George ... stands conspicuous as the most effective speaker of his nationality. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 194, 136 *b*.

iii. Eustace Leigh stood in dread of his cousin Amyas. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. III, 23a. (Thus also *to stand in terror*, *to stand in awe*, with which compare: Mr. Vincy was a little in awe of him. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVI, 254. Compare: My father lived in mortal fear of this jealousy. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 35.)

They all had dinner of which they all stood sadly in need. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VIII, 85. (Compare: The candles were in need of snuffing. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. X, 118.)

He added that neither Sir Edward Carson, nor any other member of the Government stood for an economic war after the war. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7649, 3a. (Compare: We are for the principles of good government against Walpole, and for Walpole against the Opposition. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*)

They did not prove that pressure and cleavage stood to each other in the relation of cause and effect. TYND., *Glac. of the Alps*, I, Ch. I, 7. (Compare: The present constitution of our country is to the constitution under which she flourished five hundred years ago, what the tree is to the sapling, what the man is to the boy.)

Special mention may be made of the frequent use of *to stand* in combinations with past participles, which in this connexion assume a distinctly adjectival function (Ch. XLVII, 6, *b*); thus in:

O good Horatio, what a wounded name. Things standing thus unknown, shall live behind me! SHAK., *Hamlet*, V, 2, 356.

The lovely stranger stands confest | A maid in all her charms. GOLDSMITH *Ballad*. (Compare: In presence of the occasion, the great soul of the leader shines out, and the god is confessed. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 248.)

The only article of ornament of which she stands possessed appears to be her wedding-ring. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXVII, 236.

He stood transfixed to the spot. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 29.

I stand astonished at my own moderation. MAC., *Clive*, (538 *a*).

They will be obliged to take into consideration the numbers, composition and equipment of the force which will be required to enforce the policy to which they stand committed. *Times*.

In *to stand adjourned*, as in: *The clause was still under consideration when the debate stood adjourned* (Times), the combination is, perhaps, best considered as a kind of passive.

Also when connected with a present participle, *to stand* often loses (6) some of its semantic value; thus in:

The horse seemed to like the idea of the ride so much that he stood snorting and pawing at the garden-gate. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32*b*.

There may also be semantic decline when the verb is followed by an infinitive: thus in:

If the taxation of food was in itself defensive, Ireland stood most to gain by it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6129, 1*c*.

The activity of that group seems to foreshadow a re-division of parties in which the Democrats stand to gain and the Republicans to lose. *ib.*, No. 5394, 2*b*.

6. Obs. I. It is not only *to look* whose grammatical status is often uncertain, also some of the other verbs mentioned above admit of two interpretations. Thus *The rose smells sweet* may be apprehended to stand not only for \**The rose is sweet when smelled*, but also \**The rose spreads a smell in a sweet manner*. Those who, consciously or unconsciously, lean to the latter interpretation will naturally prefer the adverbial to the adjectival form of the adjunct and, accordingly, say *The rose smells sweetly*. An analogous twofold interpretation may be given to the other verbs indicating a sense-impression.

Another source of hesitancy as to whether the adverbial or the adjectival form of the adjunct should be used springs from the uncertainty whether the verb in question is sufficiently weakened in meaning to justify its inclusion among the quasi-copulas. If it is felt to have lost little or nothing of its full import, the adjunct should be classed among the predicative adnominal adjuncts of the first kind, which, as will be shown in Ch. VI, and again in Ch. LIX, 23, are often largely tinged with an adverbial function. Thus *firmly* would in the opinion of some be more correct than *firm* in such a sentence as *He stood firm to the end amidst his many assailants*. As a general rule it may be said that the adjective forms are far more common than the adverbial. See also Ch. LIX, 22, and compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 376. A few examples in which for one reason or the other the adverbial forms have been preferred will, no doubt, be acceptable in this place.

*to feel*: She felt quite charitably towards young Torrey. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 407. (The explanation is, perhaps, that some such participial adjective as *disposed* is understood.)

I felt a little strangely, and not a little frightened. BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 11.

*to shine*: All was quiet now, and the moon was shining brightly. BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 44. (In this example the expanded form restores to the verb its independent meaning, so that the adnominal form would be incorrect.)

*to show*: For hut and palace show like filthily. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, XVII.

*to smell*: The rags smelt unpleasantly. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XVI, 305.

*to sound*: 'Jot' sounds oddly to us when applied to a liquid. Note to SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, 1, 302 (Clar. Press).

*to stand*: But why stands Macbeth thus amazedly? SHAK., Macb., IV, 1, 126. (Perhaps some such participle as *looking* has to be supplied.)

*to taste*: I own it tastes well. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

In compounds with a present participle the adverbial form appears to be the ordinary one.

This terribly-sounding name took away all my wish to laugh. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. I, 5.

II. In such sentences as the following the verb, although having some affinity to a copula, shows too little weakening of its meaning to be ranked as such:

*to muster*: The rebels no sooner mustered fourteen thousand men strong than [etc.]. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. X, Sect. IV, 815.

*to pass*: Words, like men, pass current for a while with the public. THACK., Hum., Cong. & Ad., 57.

*to reign*: The days which he spent every now and then in that quiet simple household, where kindness reigned supreme, saved him from utter ruin. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. XV, 130.

*to rise*: But she that rose the tallest of them all | And fairest, laid his head upon her lap. TEN., Pas. of Arth., 375.

III. As *to be* is used not only as a copula, but also as an auxiliary of the passive voice, combinations of this verb with a past participle are naturally often ambiguous. It is, therefore, frequently replaced by another copula of the first kind, especially *to feel*, *to rest* or *to stand*, when it is a state, not an action, that is to be expressed. See also Ch. XLVII, 6, b, This may have been the reason why *to be* is not used in:

I felt assured that she and my daughters were as anxious to return to Brompton Hall as I was. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

France may rest assured that we have no intention of trying to end this state of things. Times.

The policy that had led to such an arrangement stood condemned since it dragged us into the quarrel. Westm. Gaz., No. 6606, 7a.

The following sentence is distinctly ambiguous:

He was assured that the violence and injustice with which the elections had been carried on had driven the nation mad. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 113.

#### COPULAS OF THE SECOND KIND.

7. The most typical copula of the second kind is *to remain*, which (8) is found connected with adjectives (or adjectival participles), nouns or preposition-groups.

i. \* I knew I should remain hungry all night. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 35 b.

I remained silent, nor did he speak a single word. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 416.

\*\* The evening came, the sun descended | And Puss remained still unattended. COWP., The Retired Cat, 62.

ii. Remain a widow at thy father's house. BIBLE, Gen., XXXVIII, 11.

She remained a prisoner in the house through the whole of November. Mrs. GASK., A Dark Night's Work, Ch. XII, (545).

iii. He cast his eyes full on Mr. Dombey with an altered and apologetic look abased them on the ground, and remained for a moment without speaking. DICK., Domb., Ch. XIII, 117.

H. POUTSMA, Ii.

8. Also the following verbs, in some connexions, more or less clearly (9) assume the function of copulas of the second kind:

*to bide* (vulgar or dialectal), as in: Bide awake, as long as ye can. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XLI, 418.

Faith, if I was you, I'd even bide as you be — a single man of the name of Francis. HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. LII, vii, 432.

*to continue*, mostly connected with an adjective (or adjectival participle), less frequently with a noun or a preposition-group; not unfrequently furnished with *to be* as a special link-verb, notably when the nominal is a noun; e.g.:

i. \* My father continued obstinate. LYT., Caxt., I, IV, Ch. III, 93.

He continued so feeble that Mr. Beaufort had no thoughts even for worldly interests. id., Night & Morn., 480.

It is certain that at this time he continued poor. MAC., War. Hist., (599 b).

\*\* Remember I am to continue unknown. GOLDSMITH Good-nat. Man, III. II. I myself continue still a stranger to my benefactor. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. Man, IV.

iii. I continued with him nearly a year. LYT., Paul Cliff., Ch. IX, 85.

iv. \* My relations with foreign Powers continue to be friendly. Daily Chron.

\*\* Lord Ormont continued to be a subject of discussion from time to time. MER., Orm., Ch. II, 23.

*to fight*, in *to fight shy* (of), as in: The natives fought shy of this detective to a man. GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem, Ch. XIII.

They (sc. Christians) and their teachers fight shy of the demonology of their creed. HUXL., Lect. & Es., 113 b.

In the hotel ... people fought very shy of her. Mrs. WARD, Del. Blanchfl., I, Ch. III, 74.

The O. E. D. definition of the phrase is *to keep aloof*, which is distinctly continuatively durative. The continuativeness of the phrase is, however vague or uncertain, which appears from the fact that *to be* may be substituted for *to fight* without materially altering its meaning. Compare the above examples with:

Up to that time the old county families had been rather shy of our friends of Clavering Park. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXV, 259.

He was very shy of going to church. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. VIII, 62.

She was shy of the task she had set herself. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. X, 222.

America is shy of the League, for reasons of domestic politics, but it is not shy of disarmament. Manch. Guard., 15/1, 1926, 42 c.

Compare also: Since then I have felt shy at making inquiries on the subject. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, X, 162.

The independent meaning, to a certain extent, re-asserts itself when the verb is used in the Expanded Form, as in:

You are just fighting shy of Aunt Jane. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. IX, 215.

The American public is fighting shy of tinned meat of all kinds. Rev. of Rev., No. 198, 566 a.

*to hang*, in the combination *to hang aloof* = *to hold* (or *keep*) *aloof*; evidently rare. The O. E. D. registers no instances.

She hung aloof from the new-comers. GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem, Ch. III.



While he was only moderately rich, they hung aloof from him. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, C, 40.

In a similar meaning we find *to hang back*, which may be more common (O. E. D., s.v. *hang*, 22); e. g.:

When the nation is asked to entrust all the means of production, distribution and exchange to an entity which does not exist, practical men naturally hang back. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 218, 128 a.

*to hold* in a variety of combinations; e. g.:

i. *to hold aloof* (O. E. D., s.v. *hold* 23, b), as in:

Editors of journals held aloof from him. MINTO, *Defoe*, X, 161.

Well, he has you in town, and he holds aloof. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXV, 321.

ii. *to hold mute* (or *silent*), as in: His lordship held impressively mute. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIX, 379.

The weather held phenomenally silent. C. RUSSELL, *Ocean Trag.*, Ch. XXVIII, 54.

iii. *to hold close* (or *near*) as in: The person who betrayed most agitation was Mrs. Doria. She held close to him, and eagerly studied his face and every movement. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLIV, 440.

The continuativeness is obscured in *to hold good* and *to hold true* (O. E. D., s.v. *hold*, 23, c).

i. This law holds good for all living beings. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 50 a.

The law holds good of Australia and New Zealand. *id.*, *Darwiniana*, Ch. I, 7. What I say holds good of both men and women. *Ninet. Cent.*, No. 392, 687. (Observe that the phrase is construed with either *for* or *of*.)

ii. The saying of the poet holds true in a large degree. SMILES, *Char.*, II, 33.

Note. The use of *to hold* in connexion with a noun, as in: *I will hold friends with you, lady* (SHAK., *Much ado*, I, 1, 91) appears to be rare. This also applies to *to hold out* in a similar meaning, as in: *An if your wife be not a mad-woman, | And know how well I have deserved this ring, | She would not hold out enemy for ever* (*id.*, *Merch.*, IV, 1, 439).

*to keep*, in various combinations (O. E. D. s.v. *keep*, 37—40); e. g.:

i. *to keep aloof* (O. E. D., s.v. *aloof*, 5), as in: We felt for them as men; but we kept aloof from them. BURKE, *French Rev.*, 132.

Her brother from whom I keep aloof. *TEN.*, *Maud*, I, VI, vi.

ii. *to keep silent* (= *to keep silence*), as in: He would have kept silent to the end. ANSTEV, *Fal. Id.*, Ch. II, 42.

Note. Instances of *to keep* + substantival nominal appear to be unusual.

I'm Jenny Blanchard; and I'm going to keep Jenny Blanchard. FRANK SWINERTON, *Nocturne*, I, Ch. IV, III, 102.

*to rest*, especially in *to rest assured*, *certain*, *satisfied*, *satisfied*, *secure*, and, perhaps, some other adjectives of a similar import.

i. The signore may rest assured that I shall do my best to please him. VACHELL, *Loot*, Ch. I, 4.

France may rest assured that we have no intention of trying to end this state of things. *Times*.

ii. He may rest perfectly certain that if he uses violence to the captive — whom he has so treacherously ensnared, punishment will overtake him sooner or later. *Daily Mail*.

iii. \* And tho' Geraint could never take again | That comfort from their converse which he took | Before the Queen's fair name was breath'd upon. | He rested well content that all was well. TEN., Ger. & En, 951.

The question of questions is whether we are to rest content with allowing such entertainers. Rev. of Rev., No. 201, 258 b.

The question may here be raised whether we are to rest content with the standard speech as here defined. RIPPMAHN, Sounds of Spoken Eng., 5.

\*\* I trusted she would, with her usual docility, rest contented with this scarcely correct assertion. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. X, 114.

iv. The account ... determined her not to rest satisfied till she saw them (sc. the injuries) redressed. FANNY BURNEY, Cecilia, I, XI.

v. He might henceforth rest secure of her affection. ANSTEY, Fal. Id., Ch. V, 77.

Rather frequent, perhaps, is also the combination to *rest unknown*, as in: While they (sc. the evils) rest unknown, | What need a man forestall his date of grief? MILTON, Comus, 361.

The honour of a noble house for ever condemns his parentage to rest unknown. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 155.

The combinations illustrated by the following quotations appear to be unusual:

Neither can I rest | A silent witness of the headlong rage. COWPER, Task, III, 217.

If he is content to let his son's fate rest a dark and cruel mystery to all who knew him, ... why then should I try to unravel the tangled skein? MISS BRADDON, Audl., I, Ch. XXI, 227.

Tell my lady to rest tranquil. MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Progress, Ch. III, 38.

Note a) The imperative *Rest easy!* is a colloquialism which is mostly abbreviated into *Easy!* or vulgar *Heasy!*

Rest easy, Tino! I'll keep an eye on your brother. VACHELL, Loot, Ch. I, 3.

"How dare you, sir, come here and offer to forgive me, and talk about your daughter, and —" —" Heasy, James, heasy, heasy! | Don't git hinto a fluster about nothink". SHAW, Cand., I, (124).

β) The use of *to rest* in valedictory formulae is now archaic.

I rest much bounden to you. SHAK., As you like it, I, 2, 269.

I rest your servant. SHAK., Henry VIII, V, 1, 56.

I rest your loving brother. FIELD., Jos. And., I, Ch. VI, 11.

*to stay*, apparently uncommon, although found in the works of eminent writers. See the O. E. D., s.v. *stay*, 6.

If you'll take my advice, Miss Roper, you'll stay as you are. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. V, 53.

She stayed silent a full five minutes. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho! Ch. IV, 34 a.

If you stay quiet, you will not get another drop (sc. of rain). HARDY, Tess, IV, Ch. XXX, 242.

Maybe you won't stay rich all your life. JEAN WEBST., Daddy-Long-Legs, II, 22.

But at least you will stay tall all your life. *ib.*, 23.

Only when we wake up, papa stays asleep. JOHN HAB., Helen's Babies, 86. She would not like the daintiness of that room deflowered. Let it stay the room of her girlhood. GALSW., Beyond, II, Ch. IX, 139.

He stayed motionless. *ib.*, Ch. X, 147.

They'll stay awake. TEMPLE THURSTON, Antagonists, Ch. VIII, 62.



*to stop*, evidently rare, no instances being registered in the O.E.D. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

I never knew a body stop insensible so long. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 26. (The speaker is an illiterate woman.)

9. Obs. I. As to *to remain*, *to continue* and *to keep*, it should be observed that they are often placed before a present participle solely to impart to the action expressed by it a continuative aspect (Ch. LI, 25, a). *To keep* is in this function often followed by the adverb *on* to emphasize this aspect. The *ing*-form after *to continue* may also be apprehended as a gerund; i. e. *to continue* may in this connexion be understood as a transitive verb.

i. Well, don't you see, you foolish girl, that he'll remain hanging about. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XXV, 171.

ii. She did not continue reading. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 122. Unfortunately the head will continue working when the legs are at rest. GATSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXXIII, 301.

iii. \* The wife kept continually dinning in his ears about his idleness. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 35.

The whole-hoggers keep repeating that they will never accept the exclusion of food-taxes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6134, 2a.

\*\* All he has got to do is keep on turning as he runs away. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 103.

My lord still kept on looking very fiercely at me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 31.

*To go on* is used for the same purpose. But here the *ing*-form was originally a gerund, which by the suppression of the proclitic *a*, a weakening of the preposition *in*, (or an earlier *on* (often passing into *an*), assumed the grammatical character of a present participle; e. g.:

This fashion, like all fashions, went on spreading. EARLE, *Phil*<sup>5</sup>, § 64.

He had put off the evil 'sine die', and gone on increasing his enormous list of debts. *Mrs. Wood*, *East Lynne*, Ch. I, 3.

II. After *to continue* the present participle is often replaced by the infinitive; thus in:

She continued to lean upon his arm. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*

The use of an infinitive after *to go on* is now archaic. See the O. E. D., s.v. *go*, 84, b.

He went on to be more cruel than ever. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, 1, 25.

#### COPULAS OF THE THIRD KIND.

10. On the strength of their original import some verbs that do duty as copulas of the third kind are preferred to indicate a gradual, some to denote a rapid or sudden change of condition. But, as the following examples will show, these preferences are but weakly maintained, many nominals being used with two or more different copulas without any clear reference to the different kinds of change. Moreover it should be remembered that the use of the Expanded Form of which all these verbs are capable

may obscure the potential differences, implying as it does a changing of at least some duration.

A more pronounced predilection depends on the grammatical status of the complement, i. e. whether it is a noun, an adjective, or a prepositional word-group, some verbs being currently used with all three, some only with an adjective or a preposition-group, some only with an adjective.

The most typical copula of the third kind is *to become*, which is currently used in combination with adjectives (or adjectival participles), nouns, and preposition-groups, irrespective of the nature of the change and of the meaning of the nominal.

i. \* The horses became less and less capable of control. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLII, 328 a.

His descendants in the male line became extinct. NOTES & QUER.

\*\* When it became dark, he lighted the rushlight. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 71. (often replaced by *to grow*)

\*\*\* When one fib becomes due, as it were, you must forge another to take up the old acceptance. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXXI, 343. (often replaced by *to fall*.)

She became ill. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 20. (often replaced by *to fall*.)

He became literally ill from home-sickness. MRS. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 101.

\*\*\*\* A supposition at which the two young Cratchits became livid. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, III, 68. (often replaced by *to turn*.)

Beatrice became rather red in the face. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. IV, 65.

The baronet became red. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIV, 177.

ii. The name of Figs, which had been a byword of reproach, became as respectable and popular a nickname as any other in use in the school. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 47.

One of her daughters had become, first Miss Monra's pupil and afterwards her friend. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XII, (545.)

iii. \* Later in the day she became more at peace with him. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XII, (536.)

\*\* Before he was aware of the nature of his situation, he had become really in love. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXX, 325. (often replaced by *to fall*.)

\*\*\* The interest would not be paid to her until she became of age. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 220. (often replaced by *to come*.)

\*\*\*\* The harness of one of the leaders had become out of order. MISS BRAD., *Audley*, I, Ch. VII, 79. (often replaced by *to get*.)

11. The other verbs which *to* duty as copulas of the third kind, although some of them are as common as *to become*, are more restricted in their applications. They include:

*to come*, which is the ordinary copula in connexion with the preposition-group *of age*, for the rest only in current use with some few adjectives or adjectival participles, and rarely found in connexion with nouns.

When he comes of age, he won't have a shilling. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI 118. (Compare the obsolete *to age*, as in: Thou wilt fall backward when thou comest to age. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 3, 56)

The following adjectives have been found connected with *to come*: *awake*, as in: The woman's soul isn't fully awake in her yet; but it may come awake any day. MAUD DIVER, *Capt. Desm.*, V, Ch. VIII, 80.

*due*, as in: He may be thinking of that bill which is coming due on Monday.

THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLV.

When her first quarter's wages came due. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. I, 5.

*square*, as in: I'll see if I can't come square with you. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. VI, 56.

*true*, as in: I have lived nearly ninety years, and I have dreamed, therefore, some forty thousand dreams; of which two came true, and the rest were false. LYT., *Rienzi*, V, Ch. III, 203. (Observe the different copulas in the two contrasts *to come true* and *to be false*.)

The adjectival participle *untied* appears to be quite commonly connected with *to come*; thus in:

The brown-paper parcel had "come untied". DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXII, 196.

The following is the only instance of *to come* being connected with a noun that has come to hand:

O imperial-moulded form, | And beauty such as woman never wore, | Until it came a kingdom's curse with thee. TEN. GUIN., 547.

Note (c) In such a sentence as the following the noun standing after *to come* has the same grammatical value as an adjective, in fact *dawn* is practically equivalent to the adjective *light*:

Climbing at a great pace, he reached Malvern Beacon just as it came dawn. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. X, 81.

β) In the following example *to come* is strongly mixed with another notion, practically the same as that in *to come to pass*:

How came you and Mr. Surface so confidential? SHER., *School*, I, 1. (= came to be so confidential.)

γ) The ingressiveness of *to come* is weak or uncertain in:

His board needn't come very expensive. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 39.

δ) *To come* is sometimes followed by *to be*, which then takes over the duty of linking the subject to the nominal, leaving to *to come* the function of indicating ingressiveness.

When he comes to be a little stronger, who knows what a year or two's Latin may do for him? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, I.

When her will came to be known, it was seen that scandal had not been so far wrong as usual in giving her out for an arrant miser. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

*to fall*, in current use only with certain adjectives, which are, however, numerous enough; with a few nouns, and a few preposition-groups.

It is especially the following adjectives which appear to be frequently connected with *to fall*:

*calm*, as in: It fell dead calm. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVIII, 213 b. At last the gale fell calm. *id.*, *The Heroes*, I, iv, 66.

*dark*, as in: The night had fallen dark, ... when they returned along the now deserted streets to their own dwelling. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. II, 24.

He has been doing so ever since it fell dark. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXII, 273.

It was falling dark, when Stephen came out of Mr. Bounderby's house. *id.* *Hard Times*, II, Ch. VI, 68 a.

*due*, as in: The bill falls due at the end of next month. JEROME, *John Ingberfield*, 27.

*foul*, as in: Our old tramp of a steamer fell foul of a timber junk. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. IV, 51.

I am a dangerous fellow to fall foul of. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 71.

*ill*, as in: His only child fell ill. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. VII, (474).

*lame*, as in: My horse fell lame. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Prog.*, Ch. II, 24.

*silent*, as in: She fell silent. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, III, 157.

Coralie fell silent. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond-cut Paste*, II, Ch. X, 224.

At his entry all had fallen silent. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. VII, 80.

*soft*, as in: Then his voice fell beautifully soft. *id.*, *The Rake's Prog.*, Ch. III, 39.

*vacant*, as in: The Chaplaincy of Coventry Island falling vacant, Frank applied for it privately. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

This office falls vacant on January 12, 1900. *Times*.

The following examples illustrate the most common combinations of *to fall* with nouns and preposition-groups respectively:

i. The country would fall a sacrifice to the hostile ambition of the Spanish monarchy. SHER., *Critic*, III, 1.

Her husband had fallen a victim to his zeal for the public safety. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOR., *Handl.*, 102).

ii. It is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 8.

I have fallen behind the time. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IV, 30.

He hath fallen out of favour with the Queen. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, 4, (586 a).

The artists fell out of favour. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8503, 10 a.

Note a) The ingressive character of *to fall* is obscure or uncertain in: The daily mass of exchange and banking transactions which are carried on through the Clearing House in London, seldom falls short of £ 20,000,000 in the dullest time of the year. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 106.

Many things that I imagined would give me intense satisfaction had fallen curiously flat. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. VII, 92.

Indeed it is woman, lovely woman, whose beauty falls the shortest, for sheer lack of proper physical training. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, II, 126.

β) In such a sentence as *They straightway fell to talking about matters connected with their trade* (THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 325), *to fall* may be said to serve the function of imparting an ingressive aspect to the action indicated by the following gerund. This construction varies with several others; i. e.: *to* + gerund is sometimes replaced by (1) proclitic *a* + gerund, now only usual in very colloquial or vulgar language, (2) the present participle, which is fairly common also in standard English, (3) the infinitive, which appears to have been common enough in Early Modern English, but is now seldom met with. Further comment and fuller illustration is given in Ch. LI. See also Ch. XIX, 44.

i. At this we all fell a-crying. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 a.

ii. Then they fell talking to shape an idea to themselves of the new prospect that opened before them. WELLS, *Kipps*, III, Ch. III, § 3, 315.

iii. He fell again to speculating on the probable romance that lay behind that loneliness and look of desolation; then to smile at his own share in the



prejudice that interesting faces must have interesting adventures. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVII, 281. (Observe the varied practice.)

7) Also *to fall* is sometimes furnished with *to be* as a special link-verb; thus in:

From almost the highest estimation of learning, (Poetry) is fallen to be the laughing stock of children. SIDNEY, *Apol.*, 20, 12.

*to get*, perhaps the most frequent of the ingressive copulas in colloquial language, is used chiefly in connexion with adjectives, less frequently with preposition-groups. Certain adjectives, such as *rid* and *clear* hardly tolerate any of the other ingressive copulas.

In the case of nouns the linking is mostly effected by *to be*, the indicating of ingressiveness being left to *to get*. Also when the nominal is an adjective or preposition-group the use of *to be* for the same purpose is common enough. A peculiar feature of *to get* is that it is more frequently placed in the Expanded Form than any of the other ingressive copulas.

At length, he began, by slow degrees to get better. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXXII, 289.

Youth prevailed over all. Ellinor got well ... even when she would fain have died. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. VIII, (479).

I am getting old and shaky. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 27 a.

It was getting dark. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

ii. It's getting near tea-time. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 120.

iii. O, my boy, I knew you'd make iverything right again, when you got a man. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, V, Ch. VI, 323.

My father's getting an old man. GALSW., *Strife*, II, (217).

You're getting a man now. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. IV, 90.

iv. \* He came home a lieutenant; he did not get to be admiral. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VI, 118.

When I got to be a man and lost my illusions. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales* I, G, 115.

It is getting to be a positive nuisance. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. IX, 187.

\*\* Everything has got to be dearer now. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XV, 159.

She had got to be fond of me. MRS. OLIPH., *Neighb. on the Green*, *Lady Isabella*, Ch. V.

I got to be tolerably intimate with him. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, I, K, 183.

Note a) *To get* is not unfrequently found with a reflexive pronoun when connected with an adjectival participle, less commonly in other combinations. The construction with the reflexive pronoun implies more self-originated activity on the part of the subject than that without. It is hardly necessary to state that in this case *to get* is not to be apprehended as a copula; e. g.:

i. He got himself mysteriously entangled with his gun. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 162.

ii. The landlady of that house was not anxiously desirous of getting herself quit of her married boarders. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. IX, 112.

iii. If Debora had lived, I've no doubt she would have seen after them (sc. the Notes), before they got themselves into this state. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XII, 248.

For further illustration see Ch. XLVIII, 9; and compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 255.



β) Such applications of *to get* as are illustrated by the following examples appear to be very rare:

i. I got as servant to an invalid lady. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 216.

ii. He got as he couldn't sleep. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. VI, 44.

*to grow*, naturally used especially to denote a gradual change of condition. Its original meaning, however, is often so little thought of that it is used in contexts implying a rapid or even a sudden change. This appears from the verb being not seldom attended by such an adverb as *suddenly*. According to the O. E. D. the combination of *to grow* with a noun is now archaic. Although *to be* is mostly used to bring about the connexion, instances are not particularly unfrequent in Late Modern English. See, however, 13, Obs. II. For the rest *to be* is common enough with adjectives also.

i. He grew more and more intractable every day. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 109).

My time grows short. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 41.

Miss Sedley trembled and grew faint. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 51.

Her face from being pale grew suddenly red. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XIII, 258.

The air had suddenly grown chill. LYR., *My Nov.*, II, VIII, Ch. VII, 43.

He reddened and grew indignant in a moment. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. IX, (503).

ii. That will help us to understand how the love of accumulating money grows an absorbing passion. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. II, 15.

A friendship so complete | Portion'd in halves between us that we grew | The fable of the city where we dwell. TEN., *Gard. Daught.*, 5.

I speculated how it would look when the youth grew a man. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, I, Ch. V, 251.

iii. \* Figs grew to be a name of kindness and endearment. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 51.

Now Crawley, from being only a brilliant amateur, had grown to be a consummate master of billiards. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 3.

Laura had grown to be a fine young stripling by this time. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 193.

\*\* Was it possible that any man could grow to be three inches taller than Mr. Pendennis? *ib.*, I, Ch. III, 32.

Katherine fancied that her mother was growing to be like Charlotte. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VI, 112.

*to turn*, although distinctly suggestive of a sudden change, is frequent enough in combinations implying no such notion. It is found in current use with adjectives, especially such as indicate a colour; with nouns, notably when a voluntary and unexpected act is in question. Rather few in number are the preposition-groups with which it is found connected with any frequency.

As to the nouns connected with *to turn* it should further be observed that they are rarely preceded by any modifier. Thus we could say *He turned poet*, but not \**He turned a great poet* (instead of *He became a great poet*). Another peculiarity which attaches to the combinations with nouns is that they are mostly intended to express a change for the worse.

i. \* I trembled and turned white. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 21 b.

Caleb's scanty hairs were turning greyer and more grey. *id.*, *Crick.*, II, 37.

Amelia turned so pale at the notion, that Mrs. O'Dowd stopped the young ensign in his story. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 350.  
 She turned ashen pale. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. X, 109.  
 Already there was a scent of autumn in the air, leaves were turning gold and red. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. X, 3, 248.

Thus also in the following example in which, from a semantic point of view, *yellow* is the head-word, a *faint tint of yellow* being practically equivalent to *faintly yellow*:

The trees were just turning a faint tint of yellow. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. I, 13.

\*\* I shall be afraid of your anger more than danger, and so turn valiant out of fear. WYCHERLEY, *Plain Deal*, III, I, (428).

Dolf's heart turned faint within him. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 128).

It has turned abominably cold. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, I, Ch. I, 1a.

The weather has turned much colder. *Daily Chron.*

ii. \* I hope you have no intent to turn husband, have you? SHAK., *Much Ado*, I, I, 196.

This Hebrew will turn Christian. *id.*, *Merch.*, I, 3, 179.

Here comes another of the tribe: a third cannot be matched, unless the devil himself turn Jew. *ib.*, III, I, 67.

You won't have a friend left in the world if you turn poet. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, I, (201).

(He) looks ... as if were resolved to turn author. *ib.*, (202).

Poet! he shall turn soldier first. *ib.*, (203).

The repeal of the Orders in Council saves me. Now I shall not turn bankrupt. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XX, 403.

\*\* 'T was sarce necessary, colonel, that you, who have so many affairs on your hands, military and domestic, should turn doctor too. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XIII, 133.

He at length gave up the diplomatic service in some disgust, and began to turn country gentleman. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IX, 88.

It is a most significant circumstance that no large society of which the tongue is not Teutonic has ever turned Protestant. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 67.

Gibbon, when a lad at Oxford, turned Catholic. *id.*, *Bosw. Life of Johns.*, 168b.

I little knew why, or that I should ever turn engineer. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXV, 106a.

They turned Christian. RUDY. KIPL., *Plain Tales*, A, II.

You've turned politician and ceased to be a mere Member of Parliament. Miss THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. XX, 213.

\*\*\* The Signor Colonna has taken up my old calling, and turned a wit. LYT., *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 160.

Would you never think the present made amends for the past? Not if I turned a good fellow? G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 92.

He that was my father is turned my jailer. READE, *Cleist.*, Ch. XI, 60.

iii. \* "What's the matter?" said Uriah, turning of a deadly colour. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 287a.

Her face turned of a ghastly whiteness. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 212.

\*\* A little pale crooked, sickly, bright-eyed urchin, just turned of sixteen, had written some copies of verses in which [etc.]. MAC., *Rest.*, (576b).

He was but just turned of thirty. MOTLEY, *Rise*.

Note. Instead of *turned of sixty*, etc., in which *sixty* is short for *sixty years old* (or of age), English writers mostly have *turned sixty*.

etc. See the O. E. D., s.v. *turn*, 18, *b*: thus *a man just turned forty*. Lit. World. Both *turned of* and *turned* have the value of prepositions, being equivalent to *past* (Ch. LX, 8). Observe, however, that *to turn* in these combinations is sometimes placed in the expanded form; thus in: *A boy turning four years of age*. Titbits, 13.11, 1895, 131 *a*. *to wax*, used only in the higher literary style, especially in connexion with adjectives denoting impatience or anger; e.g.:

i. Take these again; for to the noble mind | Rich gifts wax poor when givers prove unkind. SHAK., Haml., III, 1, 101.

ii. You do well to set aside odious comparisons, to wax impatient of that trite twaddle about "nothing newness." Mrs. GASK., Ch. Brontë.

At last he waxed utterly mad. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. V, 40 *b*.

My father waxed hotter and hotter. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XVI, 159.

12. Obs. I. As has been observed above (10), the various verbs serving as copulas of an ingressive aspect do not materially differ as to the kinds of change they may express. As the original meaning of these verbs is often unduly insisted on in discussions on their relative areas of incidence, it may not be amiss to state that the preceding quotations contain examples of the following adjectives or preposition-groups being connected with two or more of them, without any distinct difference in the nature of the change being in question: names of colours with *to become*, *to go*, *to grow* and *to turn*; dark with *to become*, *to fall*, *to get* and *to go*; due with *to become*, *to come* and *to fall*; ill with *to become* and *to fall*; in love with *to become* and *to fall*; of age with *to become* and *to come*.

In the following example two different copulas are even used to indicate one and the same kind of change:

Laura saw with alarm that her dear friend became every day more languid and weary, and that her pale cheek grew more wan. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 221.

II. The verb *to grow*, although always distinctly ingressive when connected with a nominal or nominal equivalent, sometimes indicates a distinct development in size, so that it maintains its independent meaning and can hardly be regarded as a copula. Naturally this applies especially to those cases in which there is a reference to living beings, notably persons; thus in:

It was little Newcome, my school-fellow, whom I had not seen for six years, grown a fine tall young stripling now. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. I, 8.

Helen had grown a beautiful young woman now. id., Pend., I, Ch. VIII, 88.

As the son grew a young man, he turned out riotous. DICK., Great Exp., Ch. XXII, 214.

'Liza-Lu is so gentle and sweet, and she is growing so beautiful. HARDY, Tess, VII, Ch. LVIII, 514.

The independent meaning is unmistakable when the verb is followed by *up*, as in:

She was growing up a good child. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, 7.

I am in great hopes that she may grow up to be such another woman as her mother. PHILIPS, Mad. Leroux.

Also in the indubitably ingressive combinations illustrated by the

following examples, the verb has practically preserved its full meaning:

The armourer's heart swelled big with various and contending sensations. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. III, 37.

He (sc. the rector or vicar) ... is looked upon ... as a source of charity which is never to run dry. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. I, 12.

"Yes", said Sigrid, blushing crimson. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XV, 125.

Most of the fires within the wide horizon were also dwindling weak. HARDY, *Return*, Ch. III, 32.

III. Both *to get* and *to grow* are not unfrequently placed before an infinitive to impart to the action indicated by the latter an ingressive aspect (Ch. LI, 15, *b*).

i. When I was quite a young boy, ... I got to know what umbleness did. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 286 *a*.

By sad experience she gets to look on all mankind as desirous only of robbing and deceiving her. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVII, 210.

They (sc. the women) are getting to do all our work. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 80.

The press exists to make money and not to make opinion, and the public is getting to realize this better and better. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5024, 16 *c*.

ii. She is growing to like him better daily. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. III, 32.

He grew to believe that his denial had borne it's intended fruit. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 81.

She had also grown to like him. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 166.

I do not think it wise for Stella to grow to care for it, either. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. IV, 72.

After *to get* the infinitive is sometimes replaced by the present participle, or *to* + gerund. The last construction, rare in English writers, appears to be quite common in American English. Compare STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 1044; also the O. E. D., s.v. *get*, 32.

i. The boy got fingering the pistol. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 63.

You'd get quarrelling with my patients. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XVII, 111.

So they got talking. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo Wonders*, Ch. II, 29.

We went out for a moment and then got chatting together. OSC. WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan*, Ch. II, 70.

One gets talking. WELLS, *Kipps*, III, Ch. I, § 2, 130.

ii. Last night some of the men got to playing cards. TROL., *Duke's Children*, 346 (STORM, *Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 1044)

He gets to giving me some glimpses of his past life. A. C. GUNTER, *The Ladies Juggernaut*, 58 (*ib.*).

In the following example the present participle has assumed the character of an adjective:

You are getting annoying. OSC. WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan*, III, (106).

IV. In the case of *to get*, *to grow* and *to turn* the passing into a state is sometimes expressed by the aid of the prepositions *to* or *into*. Compare MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 36.

i. They got to words and at length almost to blows. HALL CAINE, *Deemst.*, Ch. XXIV, 171.

He was ... driven forward by the desire to get to work. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VIII, 107. (Compare: He fell to work. *ib.*, 108.)



ii. From a robust and vigorous infant, I grew into a pale and slender boy. LYT., *Caxt.*, I, Ch. V, 23.

They grew up to wolf-like men. TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 33.

The wind grows to a tempest. WEBST., *Dict.*

iii. You've suddenly turned into a woman, and into a very clever one. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. II, 28.

V. When connected with a past participle *to get* is apt to lose its character of a copula and assume a function which differs little from that of *to be* as an auxiliary of the passive voice. The altered function of *to get*, of course, postulates a change in the grammatical function of the participle, which, from being mainly adjectival, becomes almost purely verbal (Ch. LVII, 7—14); thus in:

He went to Africa and got eaten by a lion. O.E.D.

Some such modification of function may also be traced in *to become* and *to grow*, but with these verbs the change is less pronounced, the participle being more retentive of its adjectival features, and the combination suggesting a gradual process; e.g.:

i. Not many weeks after this was written, Charlotte also became engaged as a governess. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 127.

ii. Riccabocca's curiosity grew aroused. LYT., *My Novel*, II, ix, Ch. III, 82.

For more detailed discussion see Ch. XLVII, 7.

## NOMINAL PART OF THE PREDICATE.

13. The words and word-groups that may be used as nominal part of the predicate are very much the same in English as in Dutch. In this place it is sufficient to observe:

a) that the predicative use of the analytical equivalents of genitives or possessive pronouns, which is exceedingly common in Dutch, is unknown in English. Thus the Dutch *Dit boek is van mijn broer* (or *van mij*) corresponds to the English *This book is my brother's* (or *mine*), in which the genitive (or possessive pronoun) is used absolutely. For further discussion of absolute genitives (or possessive pronouns) see Ch. XXIV, 47 f, and Ch. XXXIII, 21 ff.

b) that Dutch has not developed a gerund with the same grammatical possibilities as the English gerund, so that other forms, mostly an infinitive, sometimes a noun of action and occasionally a past participle must do duty to translate this form of the English verb. Thus *This is playing with fire* = *Dit is met vuur spelen*, *This is stealing* = *Dit is stelen* (or *diefstal*), *It was throwing words away* = *Het was woorden wegwerpen* (or *woorden weggeworpen*). For detailed discussion of the gerund see Ch. XIX and Ch. LVI.

14. Such a sentence as *The physician's duty is to prescribe remedies for diseases* is mostly replaced by *It is the physician's duty to prescribe remedies for diseases*. The two sentences, although



semantically identical, differ altogether in grammatical structure. The infinitive-clause, which is nominal part of the predicate in the former is the subject in the latter, being anticipated by the pronoun *it*; what is the subject in the former is made to do duty as nominal part of the predicate in the latter. This exchange of grammatical function of different elements of the sentence, and other remarkable instances of structural conversions have been discussed in detail in Ch. LII.

### COMPLEX PREDICATES.

15. Both verbal and nominal predicates are often made up of several verbs, the first of which is always a finite verb. Such a complex predicate consists of a verbal, or a number of verbals, preceded by:

- a) an auxiliary of voice, mood or tense, discussed in Ch. XLVII, XLIX, and L.
- b) a verb which has an independent meaning of its own, but is so closely connected with the following verbal(s) as to form with it (them) a kind of unit.

Such a verb denotes: 1) that the action or state in question is considered matter of certainty or uncertainty; 2) that a person or thing is under some pressure or constraint; 3) that an action or state is recurrent or habitual; 4) that it is possible for a person to do a certain action, or to be, remain or get in(to) a certain state. To these groups we may add 5) *to dare*; and 6) *to do*.

Also the following verbs, discussed in other places of this grammar, may be considered to form a kind of unit with the following verbal(s):

- a) *to look, to continue, to come, to get, to grow*, when furnished with *to be* as a special link-verb, for which see the preceding pages; b) *to appear* and *to seem*, for which see 3; Ch. II, 31 ff; Ch. XLV, 26; Ch. LIII, 14 f; *to happen* and *to chance*, for which see Ch. II, 31 ff; Ch. XLV, 26; Ch. LIII, 14 f.

### VERBS DENOTING CERTAINTY OR UNCERTAINTY.

16. The verbs which are used to indicate the speaker's attitude towards the fulfilment of an action or state, i. e. whether he considers them as matter of certainty or uncertainty, are *to be, can, may, might, must, shall, should, will* and *would*. Some of these verbs, viz. *may, might, shall, should* and *would*, are also used as modal auxiliaries, i. e. as substitutes for actually existing mood-forms. These are discussed in Ch. XLIX. In the present chapter we are only concerned with those applications

of the above verbs which have no rival mood-forms, and which are, therefore, better described as modal verbs.

For discussion of the various views held about the nature of auxiliaries see Ch. XLV, 12; also the conclusion of a highly valuable survey of the varied meanings conveyed by *can*, *may* and *must*, from the earliest times to the present day, from the pen of AUG. WESTERN in *Om brugen af can, may og must* (Kristiania, Jacob Dybwad 1897); in which the well-known Norwegian scholar gives a clear exposition of what, in his opinion, constitutes the nature of auxiliaries.

17. *To be* implies that the fulfilment of the action or state mentioned in the predicate is held uncertain, but desirable. It occurs only in certain conditional clauses which suggest a secondary relation of purpose (Ch. XVII, 65, Obs. III,  $\tau$ ). Thus *If the experiment is to succeed, the atmosphere must be perfectly dry* may be interpreted to stand for *If there is any chance (or That there may be some chance) for the experiment to succeed, which is aimed at, the atmosphere must be perfectly dry*. An analogous interpretation may be put on:

If I am to tell a story, I must begin at the beginning. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 2.  
It was felt even there that a remedy of some kind would have to be found, if the empire was not to drift upon the rocks. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. X, 139. T.  
She never understood that married people should take holidays from one another, if they are to keep at all fresh. SHAW, *Getting Married*, I, (197).  
For discussion of this function of *to be* see also MALMSTEDT, *Stud. in Eng. Gram.*, I.

18. a) *Can* may be used to represent the fulfilment of an action or state as merely uncertain or contingent. If the time-sphere of the potential happening is the past, it is replaced by *could*; e. g.:
- i. While we are in our youth, there can always come ... moments when mere passive existence is itself a Lethæ. G. ELIOT, *Rom.*, III, Ch. LXVIII, 477. A number of things can happen in four months. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. II, 23.  
We ought to be prepared for whatever can happen. *Times*.
  - ii. My heart ached to think they could possibly be either (sc. fools or rascals). DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 37.

This use of *can* is often considered exceptionable, *may* being esteemed the proper word to express the above-mentioned attitude of the speaker. Instances are not unfrequent however.

- b) Far more common is the use of *can* in rhetorical questions. In those of the first kind, i. e. such as open with a finite verb (Ch. VII, 3, a), it denotes qualified uncertainty, which in the case of the conditional *could* is mixed with diffidence; thus in:
- i. Is this — can this be true? MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XVI, 282. (Approximately: I am almost certain that it cannot be true.)
  - ii. Could Miss Richland have set him at liberty? GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man*, IV. (Approximately: I am inclined to think that Miss Richland has set him at liberty, but I will not be positive.)

Could it be that the fate of that one (sc. the daughter who had died) had been the happier? TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LV, 229.

In questions of the second kind, i. e. such as open with an interrogative word (Ch. VIII, 3, *b*), it implies intense perplexity or bewilderment, which in the case of the conditional *could* is blended with some other emotion, such as diffidence or modesty.

i. Who can it be that sends me every day these beautiful flowers? LYT., *Lady of Lyons*, I, 1.

"What can you have been doing?" — "Walking up and down under the wall," replied Guy. MISS YONGE, *Red c.*, I, Ch. V, 76.

"What can you be about, Martin?" says the Doctor; you really must not go on in this way. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

ii. Who could this man be who was going down to see Mrs. Dale? TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 304.

What could have turned the foolish boy's brain? LYTON, *Lady of Lyons*, I, 1.

What could induce Major Jones to propose to that silly insignificant simpering Miss Thompson? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 113.

"Good Heavens!" exclaimed Simpkins, "what could old Stivers have had to do with it?" JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, A, 17.

Note *a*) In negating uncertainty *can* (*could*) is regularly used to the exclusion of *may* (*might*); thus in:

i. Dr. Wace can find no difficulty in pointing out the passage of M. Renan's writings, by which he feels justified in making his statement. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 84*b*, N.

ii. He could not be a bad man whose wife loved him so. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 74.

*Can* (*could*) is similarly used in subordinate clauses which, although containing no negative word, are negative in import; thus in:

To Addison himself we are bound by a sentiment as much like affection as any sentiment can be. MAC., *Addison*, (732*b*). (Underlying notion: No sentiment can be more affectionate.)

I don't want the worst disgrace that can happen to a family to blacken the name of Macdermot! TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. VI, 81. (Underlying notion: No worse disgrace can happen to a family.)

You were not equally matched, child — if any two people *can* be equally matched. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 5*a*. (Underlying notion: No two people can be equally matched.)

The ground now covering all that could perish of my departed wife, I waited only ... for the departure of the emigrants. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LIV, 383*b*. (Underlying notion: the only thing that could perish of my departed wife.)

β) Modal *may* is often enough attended by *not*, as in *He may not have noticed the mistake*, but in this case it is not *may* which is negated by *not*, but the following infinitive with its adjuncts. A preceding negative *may* annul the uncertainty of the non-fulfilment of the action expressed by the negated infinitive. Thus the uncertainty of non-fulfilment implied by such a sentence as *He may not achieve it* is annulled by *It is impossible that he may not achieve it*, i. e. *There is nothing that he may not achieve*.

There is nothing that a man may not do, nothing that he may not achieve, if he have only pluck enough to go through with it. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXIII, 261.

You don't know what harm you mayn't do. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XIII, 108.

19. a) *May* is the typical verb to represent the probability of fulfilment as great as that of non-fulfilment. If the time-sphere of the potential happening is the past, it is replaced by *might*.

i. If modesty attracts her, impudence may disgust her. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat Man, II.

A book may be amusing with numerous errors, it may be a dull book without a single absurdity. id., Vic., Pref.

ii. Wolf, too, had disappeared, but he might have strayed after a squirrel or partridge. WASH. Irv., Sketch-Bk., V.

Fears were entertained for the security of the infant settlements up the river; it might be an enemy's ship in disguise. id., The Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl., I, 86).

Note a) The conditional *might* is frequently used instead of *may* from a motive of diffidence or modesty (Ch. XLIX, 14, Obs. V).

After the assizes Mr. Crawley might come to his senses; and I think, — mind it's only an idea, — but I think the committal might be quashed. It would have been temporary insanity, and, though, mind, I don't give my word for it, I think he might go on and keep his living. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XX, 219.

If the reference is to a past happening the diffident *might* is followed by a perfect infinitive; thus in:

Peter might have known, and very likely did, the inside of a pawnbroker's Dick., Christm. Car., III.

β) In like manner as the Dutch *kunnen* may be attended by *wel* to denote the speaker's opinion that fulfilment rather than the reverse, is probable, the English *well* may stand with *may*. The English adverb, however, indicates a greater degree of probability than the Dutch, and is distinctly less frequent. It appears, indeed, to be confined to the phrase *It may well be*. Compare Ch. VIII, 73 s.v. *well*.

It may well be that Addison did not know. MAC., Addison, (764 b).

If he should marry ... it may well be that his wife would like a house of her own. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XXXIII, 26.

γ) Special mention may be made of the use of *may* in sentences which imply a concession, as in:

i. He may not have money, but he always has what is much better — family, my dear. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXX, 253.

I may not be a brilliant woman, but I am endowed with common sense. W. J. LOCKE, Stella Maris, Ch. III, 31.

ii. His lips might quiver and his cheek might blanch, but no expression of fear or concern escaped the lips of that immortal man. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 32.

δ) For discussion of *may* as an auxiliary, i.e. as a substitute for modal inflection, see Ch. XLIX, 1, 8, 17, 21, 29, 36, 43, 47.

b) *May* is frequent enough in questions; in those of the first kind (Ch. VIII, 3, a) it is mostly attended by *not*. As in the case of *could*, the conditional *might* implies some such emotion as diffidence or modesty; e. g.:



i. \* "My sister, you know, has been with her aunt at Lyons since she was a child, and you find every creature in the family takes you for her". — "But may not she write, may not her aunt write?" GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. Man*, I. \*\* He had no fear of losing her. Alas! might it not be possible that he had some such hope! TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XIV, 169.

This strange new power had manifested itself again. Might it not rather be a disease, a sort of intermittent delirium? G. ELIOT, *The Lifted Veil*.

Might it not be well to warn Brian it was not well to play fast and loose with a girl's affections? Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VIII, 119.

\*\*\* Had he heard it more often, might it be possible to say that that expression of sensitive contempt would have given way entirely to that of religious pity? It can not certainly be guaranteed. TEMPLE THURSTON, *The Apple of Eden*, 7.

Might there have troubled him some vague secret feeling of association between himself and the brown massive front of Burton House ... Might he have felt, as he told Aunt Maggie, as he had felt at Burton Old Manor, "thinking without thinking as if some one else were thinking"? A. S. M. HUTCHINSON, *The Happy Warrior*, 265.

ii. \* I pray, sir, what may be your name? SHER., *School*, III, 1.

Who may that be, I wonder? DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 342.

Seven or six years — where may we all be by that time? HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. LI, 415.

\*\* What might be toward? SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, I, 77.

What might be your name, sir? Mrs. CRAIK., *John Hall*, Ch. XVIII, 168.

Note α) Thus also in subordinate questions, as in:

Will any kind friend inform a poor blind man in what part of the country he may be? STEV., *Treas. Isl.*

β) *May* is never used in rhetorical questions.

20. A similar attitude of uncertainty can also be expressed by modal adverbs, such as *perhaps*, *belike*, *haply*, *maybe*, *mayhap*, *possibly*, *perchance* and *peradventure*. Of these *perhaps* and *possibly* are by far the most frequent and the only ones used in ordinary written and spoken English. *Belike* and *maybe* (*may-be* or *may be*) appear to be more or less archaic or dialectal; the others are now only met with in the higher literary style, especially poetry.

*Maybe* is short for *it may be*, which, as an adverbial phrase, is sometimes used in literary language; thus in:

On the one hand a father, undemonstrative, stern, easily provoked; on the other a son, thoughtless, forgetful, and at times, it may be, even wilful. ANSTEV, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VII, 143.

Sometimes it may be understood to be short for *it may be that*, as in:

It may be that she does not know what people say of her. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LV, 299.

A variant of *mayhap* is the dialectal *mayhappen*, abridged from *it may happen*, as the former is from *it may hap*. *May happen* is further contracted into *happen*, which appears to be fairly common in Northern dialects, and *mappen*, apparently a rare variant; e. g.:

i. Happen you'd like Mumps for company. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. I, 455.



Happen ye've been a dressmaker? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXIX. 418.  
 ii. 'What I'm thinkin' ... is that they'll mappen not get here at all. Mrs. WARD,  
*Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. I, 1.

21. Discussion and illustration of the modal adverbs fall beyond the scope of the present chapter and belong, indeed, rather to the department of lexicography than grammar. Some observations about *perhaps* may, however, find a place here.

a) *Perhaps* is exclusively used in describing a special case. It could not, therefore, replace *may* in such a sentence as *A man may be rich and yet not happy*. Conversely *may*, being only used in connexion with an infinitive could not be substituted for *perhaps* in such sentences as *He laid violent hands on himself, an unhappy marriage having, perhaps, made him desperate. He got rich by dishonest means, by downright robbery perhaps*.

b) The Dutch *mogen* or *kunnen*, which correspond to the English *may* or *can*, are not so frequent as the English *may*: *misschien*, the equivalent of *perhaps*, being often preferred. Thus *We might have gone about half a mile when the carrier stopped short* (DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 31 b) would run in ordinary Dutch *Wij hadden misschien een halve mijl afgelegd, toen de vrachtrijder plotseling stilhield*.

c) A nice difference of meaning may sometimes be observed between modal *may* and *perhaps*. While the former represents the uncertainty merely as a matter of fact, the latter often implies at the same time a desire on the part of the speaker to appear civil or modest, or a dislike to be positive. This appears to be more or less distinctly the force of *perhaps* in:

Had he afterwards applied to dramatic poetry, he would, perhaps, not have had many superiors. JOHNSON, *Savage*, (318).

This is, perhaps, a fitting time to give some personal description of Miss Brontë. Mrs. GASK, Ch. Brontë, Ch. VI, 74.

Perhaps you and your cousin would like to see over the house. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. II, 19.

I see things, perhaps, more plainly than you think. GALSW., *In Chancery*, II, Ch. XII, (658).

Perhaps you will be good enough, then, to give me the information on which I can act. *ib.*, I, Ch. XI, (532).

As Mr. Forsyte has asked for this information I think, perhaps, we ought to have it. *id.*, *The White Monkey*, I, Ch. VII, 54.

He (sc. General Smuts) is, perhaps, the best able to appreciate the difficulties through which we have passed. PRES. COSGRAVE, *Speech* (*Manch. Guard.*, IX, 14, III a).

Observe the successive use of *may* and *perhaps* in:

We may be — perhaps we are — an old-fashioned family. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Green Mirror*, III, Ch. I, 360.

The power of emotional colouring ascribed to *perhaps* would account for the fact that it is often used together with *may*, the speaker seemingly wishing to deprecate being held accountable or responsible for the supposition made. The use of *perhaps* together with *may* may, of course, also be considered to be due to a desire to emphasize the

attitude of uncertainty which the speaker wishes to adopt towards the utterance.

In passing it may be observed that modal *can* is rarely, if ever, attended by *perhaps*.

Perhaps she may be his daughter, though he is not married. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 4*b*.

Such a description, composed from scanty and dispersed materials, must necessarily be very imperfect. Yet it may, perhaps, correct some false notions which would make the subsequent narrative unintelligible or un instructive. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 275.

Perhaps change of scene and air might do you good. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VI, 107.

As nobody can be expected to remember what he read a fortnight or three weeks ago, I may, perhaps, be permitted briefly to resume the main points of the argument. *Westm. Gaz.*, 21, 2, 1925, 489*b*.

Also non-modal *may* is frequently attended by emotional *perhaps*; thus in:

I am not competent to offer any opinion on the solutions proposed at Cambridge, but I may, perhaps, offer a hint to the young men from Oxford. *Westm. Gaz.*, 13/6, 1925, 181*c*.

*d*) Granted that *perhaps* has the above connotative power, it follows that we may also expect it in questions. As the use of *perhaps* in questions is sometimes, rashly, condemned as un-English, it may be useful to give here a few of the numerous examples bearing on the subject which have come under the notice of the present writer.

In a very plain sense the Proverb says, call one a thief, and he will steal; in an almost similar sense may we not, perhaps, say, Call one Diogenes Teufelsdröckh, and he will open the Philosophy of Clothes? CARLYLE, *Sart. Res.*, II, Ch. I, 60.

Did you, perhaps, see a man — a young man — going out at the door? HALL CAINE, *The Manxman*, II, IV, XIII, 54. T.

And yet — did he, perhaps, feel himself more bound than if they were married — unfairly bound? GALSW., *Beyond*, IV, Ch. II, 356.

Did you eat anything, perhaps, that disagreed with you? G. F. BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. III, 29.

Had the notary, perhaps, departed unperceived? DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XVII, 201.

Has he, perhaps, committed some crime in Italy? RICH. BAGOT, *Darneyley Place*, I, Ch. II, 26.

"Are you, perhaps", I then inquired, "the brother of my brother-in-law?" *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7383, 8*b* (*The Prize Essay*).

Is there, perhaps, a direct relation between the almost universal saturation of opium, in India, for instance, and the fact that cholera shows a mortality of 50 per cent? *ib.*, 21, 3, 1925, 633*a*.

*Perhaps* is particularly frequent in questions that have the word-order of declarative sentences, the rising pitch in the spoken, and the note of interrogation in the written or printed language bringing out the interrogative nature of the sentence. A few examples will suffice.

He is, perhaps, an eccentric person, this Mr. Waife? LYT., *What will he do with it?*, I, Ch. XVII, 160.

Or, perhaps, Miss Hester has got the gout? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 343.

The following quotation may be said to imply diffident uncertainty to the third power:

It is, perhaps, probable that your cousin might be restored? *LYT.*, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. III. 88.

It is hardly necessary to add that *perhaps* is also met with in subordinate questions.

I have wondered sometimes if there are not, perhaps, some disadvantages in having really blue blood in one's veins. *EL. GLYN*, *Refl. of Ambr.*, I, Ch. I, 1.

22. A subordinate statement with modal *may* often stands with a head-clause containing *possible*, *probable* or some such word or word-group indicating uncertainty. Strictly speaking there is, in this case, no necessity for *may*, but instances of such redundancy are very common; e. g.:

I thought it not impossible that he might join us. *FANNY BURNEY*, *Evelina*, XIII, 33.

It is possible that our inquiry may but confirm his guilt. *CON. DOYLE*, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

These processions will go on, with the probability that they may be increased in number and volume. *Times*.

23. *Must* implies conviction on the part of the speaker and is, accordingly, frequent in the language that is concerned with the drawing of inferences or conclusions as in *He lived to be an old man. Consequently he must have had a strong constitution. Must* has a similar force in:

She must be a wonderful young woman. *TROL.*, *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVIII, 185.

Has he no father or mother, or uncles or aunts? He must have somebody belonging to him. *ib.*, I, Ch. XX, 220.

So many triumphs must be fatiguing. *LYTTON*, *Lady of Lyons*, I, 1. (Underlying notion: So many triumphs cannot fail to be fatiguing)

There must be some mistake about this. *GALSW.*, *Loyalties*, III, 2, (200).

24. Obs. 1. Modal *must* occurs chiefly as an indicative present or preterite, in the latter tense only if the time-sphere of the conclusion is the same as that of the utterance, which practically comes to this that as a preterite indicative it is met with in the majority of cases in subordinate clauses, notably subordinate statements; e. g.:

Everybody now knew that the gardener must be the murderer. *DICK.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 8a.

Then Major Grantly became aware that this ... must be the squire. *TROL.*, *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 317.

It got away from a painful subject to one which Bretton thought must be particularly consoling. *BARRY PAIN*, *Culminating Point*.

Only very rarely is modal *must* met with as a preterite conditional, as in:

If he had understood nothing, he must have had no understanding. *FIELD.*, *Tom Jones*, (*MALMSTEDT*, *Stud. in Gram.*, I).

It deserves notice that modal *must* when followed by a perfect infinitive

is a present indicative, seeing that it gives the conclusions arrived at by the narrator at the time of writing.

He surely must have arrived by this time. I must have been mistaken. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 241.

The spirit must have heard him thinking. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 43.

If this were Miss Keeldar, she must have come of age at least some twenty years ago. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch XI, 254.

Modal *must* is not available to translate the preterite indicative of the Dutch *moeten* used to report the conclusions which the person referred to in the narration is said to have come to. Instead of *must* such a phrase as *to be sure* (or *certain*) would be used. Thus *Hij gevoelde zich onwel, hij moest kou gevat hebben* would correspond to *He felt unwell, he was sure (or certain) to have caught cold*.

II. A notion similar to that of modal *must* can also be expressed by *to be obliged*. Instances, however, appear to be very rare.

It's not likely to have been Mr. Henry; but neither is it obliged to have been the fellow he saw making off. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. II, 69.

The thing's not obliged to be stolen. id., Post, 262 (STORM, Eng. Phil.: 693).

Also the construction in the following quotation implies conviction on the part of the speaker:

It cannot be but thou hast murder'd him. SHAK., Mids., III, 2, 56.

For the use of *should* as weakened *must* see 44, c.

III. The Dutch modal *moeten* expressing the qualified certainty of hearsay is best translated by *is* (or *are*) *said to*, or *was* (or *were*) *said to*. Such a sentence as *Schaatsenrijden moet vermoeiend zijn* is ambiguous, at least in the written or printed language. In the spoken language the ambiguity would be precluded by the different stressing of *moet* and *vermoeiend*. If *moet* has strong stress and *vermoeiend* medium or weak stress the English translation is *Skating must be fatiguing*. If the stressing is reversed the sentence corresponds to the English *Skating is said to be fatiguing*. The latter sentence would be used by a person who does not skate and has no notion of the muscular exertion it requires.

IV. The notion of conviction expressed by modal *must* is sometimes emphasized by *needs*, *of necessity*, *inevitably*, or some such expression; thus in:

All who have travelled through the delicious scenery of North Devon must needs know the little white town of Bideford. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 1 a.

Major Grantly had not perceived that the house must of necessity be Allington House. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XXVIII, 327.

He held it as a thing quite settled and ordained by the laws of nature and Providence, that anybody who said or did or thought otherwise must be inevitably and of necessity wrong. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 2 b.

25. In discussing the usages of *shall* and its preterite *should* one is confronted by exceptional difficulties. Not only are they used in a great many shades of meaning hard to discriminate, but also



their three main functions — that of marking uncertainty (the mood-function), that of indicating futurity (the tense-function), and that of denoting some form of constraint — are often inextricably blended (Ch. L, 19—27). Add to this that their areas of incidence have undergone, and are, to a certain extent, still undergoing, constant changes (Ch. L, 62—67), and it will be evident that almost any methodical treatment of the problems they involve will be open to exception and will fail to give unqualified satisfaction.

In this part of the chapter we are only concerned with those modal functions of the verbs that have no inflectional representatives in Present English. For discussion of modal functions that may be understood as approximate equivalents of modal inflection, see Ch. XLIX. The tense-function has been dealt with in Ch. L, while the cases in which the words chiefly denote some form of constraint are treated below.

It should be observed that modal *shall* and *should* as described in this and the following section are used independently of person. *Shall*, and in narrating past happenings *should*, as a modal verb, as distinguished from a modal auxiliary, is found:

a) in the first member of a complex of two co ordinate sentences connected by *and*, this member putting a case on which the fulfilment of what is expressed by the second depends. Thus *You shall learn music, and forthwith all the world will be transformed for you* (BESANT, *All Sorts*) may be interpreted to stand for *If you learn music, all the world will be transformed for you*. Compare MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, page 101.

His reasons are as two grains of wheat in two bushels of chaff, you shall seek all day ere you find them, and when you have them, they are not worth the search. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, I, 117.

A company of old comrades shall be merry and laughing together, and the entrance of a single youngster will stop the conversation. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. XXI, 129.

You shall go there one day, and find them blundering through half the nautical terms in Young's dictionary; you shall go there another day, and find them deep in the evidence pro and con respecting a clergyman who has misbehaved himself; and you shall find the judge in the nautical case the advocate in the clergyman's case, or contrariwise. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXIII, 171 a.

b) in adnominal clauses denoting a potential case: the taking effect of what is expressed by the head-clause being represented:

1) as dependent on the fulfilment of the condition implied in the adnominal clause; thus in:

i. How heavy their punishment will be who shall at any time resist! (See the comment on this example in BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 173.)

Permission to use the reading-room will be withdrawn from any person who shall write on any part of a printed book. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 204. I go to watch thy slumbers, and woe with him that shall intrude on them! SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 51.



I manufacture for a future day: I make myself ready to take advantage of the first opening that shall occur. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVI, 369.

ii. The authorities at Edinburgh put forth a proclamation exhorting the clans to submit to King William and Queen Mary, and offering pardon to every rebel who, on or before the thirty-first of December 1691, should swear to live peaceably under the government of their Majesties. MAC., *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 7.

2) on some quality of what is indicated by the antecedent. Thus in *I wish to publish a book that shall create a stir and make me famous* (MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*), the stir and the fame anticipated are represented to be dependent on the nature of the prospective book. Compare MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. V, 48; Series M, 163.

i. Mr. Jarndyce, being aware of the desolate position of our young friend, offers to place her at a first-rate establishment where her education shall be completed, where her comfort shall be secured, where her reasonable wants shall be anticipated, where she shall be eminently qualified to discharge her duty in that station of life in which it has pleased Providence to call her. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. III, 13.

That system of education has yet to be devised which shall mould this poor human clay of ours into flawless shapes of use and beauty. MARZIALS, *Life of Dick.*, Ch. II, 38.

I will make such a medicine as shall keep a man alive for ever. BESANT, *The World went very well then*, Ch. I, 7.

ii. Like the majority of young men he wanted an occupation which should be free from disagreeables. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LVI, 419.

There had been great difficulty in the choice of words which should be tender enough in regard to the feelings of the poor lady. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

If we had taken a fancy for the terrible, we should easily have constructed a tale of thrilling interest, through which the reader should hurry, panting. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 53.

*Shall* has the same force in certain adverbial clauses of consequence; thus in:

I have placed the money out of the reach of Robert Gates, and placed it so that it shall be a blessing to his family at his death. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 61.

The Change I mean is an amalgamation with the Infirmary, so that the Hospital shall be regarded as a special addition to the elder institution. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LXVII, 61.

c) in substantive clauses, especially such as open with a compound of *ever*, when, as in the case of sentences and clauses discussed above, a condition is implied.

i. What here shall miss, our toil shall strive to mend. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, *ProI.*, 16.

What Antony shall speak, I will protest | He speaks by leave and by permission. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 238.

ii. Whoever shall smile thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 39.

Whatsoever you shall command, I shall perform. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XII, 107 b.

I command that whosoever shall be guilty of subverting my sovereign rights, shall be immediately transported to Siberia. Rev. of Rev., No. 191, 463.

d) in rhetorical questions that are tantamount to negative declarative sentences. In this kind of sentences *shall* implies a pretended uncertainty. Thus *Who shall decide a question that has puzzled the ablest heads?* implies that the speaker regards such a contingency as highly improbable. This *shall* occurs in questions of the first kind as well as in those of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3): in the latter more frequently than in the former; e. g.:

i. Where history is in fault, shall a mere sentiment decide? LYTON, (MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, 178).

Does a tiger lie in wait for a rat? Or shall an elephant charge a tortoise? ANSTEY, *Fal. Id.*, *ProL.*, 21.

ii. Who shall decide, when doctors disagree? POPE, *MOR. ES.*, III, 1.

Who shall tell the pleasure of that day? THACK., *SAM. TITM.*, Ch. XIII, 178. And had timidity come with knowledge, who shall say — who guess what passed within her? LYTON, *NIGHT & MORN.*, 445.

What shall a man desire more than this? HUXLEY, *DARW.*, Ch. VIII, 247.

Vincent at best could make little headway with a stranger, but some impulse — sympathy or perversity, who shall say — kept him close to this one. MAUD DIVER, *Desmond's Daughter*, II, Ch. III, 55.

Note α) It will be observed that in the examples cited above under a) the notion of uncertainty is mixed with that of recurrency. It is, therefore, only natural that in sentences closely resembling the above in tenor, but differing from them in structure *will* appears as a frequent variant of *shall*, especially in the latest English (55). Thus for the *shall* used in the following examples, Present English would most probably prefer *will*. Compare O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 9.

A person with jaundice in his blood shall lie down and go to sleep at noon-day, when another of a different complexion shall find his eyes as uncloseable as a statue's. LEIGH HUNT, *A few Thoughts on Sleep*, 27.

β) In the adnominal clauses cited under b) 1) we also find *may* as a more decided expression of uncertainty than *shall*; i. e. while *may* corresponds in meaning to *perhaps*, *shall* answers to *probably*. Compare O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 9; also Ch. XLIX, 38, Obs. IV. This difference between modal *shall* and modal *may* may explain the alternate use of the two verbs in:

Speak harshly to no soul whom you may meet, and stand by the word you shall speak. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, II, 112.

The same distinction may account for the varied practice in:

The same circumstance may make one person laugh which shall render another very serious. LAMB (MOLLOY, I. c., 164).

Thus also in the following quotation *shall* may be understood to be equivalent to *will probably*:

Susan ... makes everybody happy round her, "and that is so pleasant." She makes the man she loves happy, and that is delightful. My reader shall laugh at her: my unfriendly critic shall sneer at her. As a heroine of a novel she deserves it: but I hope for their own sakes neither will undervalue the original in their passage through life. These average women are not the spice of

fiction, but they are the salt of real life. READE, *Never too late*, II, Ch. LII, 372.

In the clauses mentioned under *b) 2)*, *will* occurs as an occasional variant, with the loss of a nice distinction, *will* disregarding the contingency of the predication.

A great deal of time has been spent in efforts to discern a formula which will effectually guard agricultural land from the operation of these taxes. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5048, 1 c.

Mr. Lloyd George has been charged with the task of endeavouring to find the way of reconciling the various parties in Ireland and reaching, if possible, an agreement which will control the immediate future of that country, *ib.*, No. 7163, 3 a.

;) In the rhetorical questions referred to under *d)* *shall* seems to suggest some faint form of coercion. This would explain the occasional use of *Who is to say?* instead of the ordinary *Who shall say?*, as in: Who is to say that this intelligence no longer exerts its influence? RICH. BAGOT, Darnéley Place, Ch. IV, 65 T.

δ) Sometimes also what has been here described as modal *shall*, may be regarded as a survival of the older practice which had *shall* as the ordinary auxiliary of the future tense, often, be it remembered, mixed with other notions. Thus *Our son shall win* (SHAK., Hamlet, V, 2, 298) = *Our son is sure to win*; i.e. in this example the tense-function of *shall* is distinctly mixed with a modal function. Thus also *shall* is partly modal in:

Your grace shall understand, that at the receipt of your letter, I am very sick. SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, 1, 150.

I hold it fit that we shake hands and part: | You, as your business and desire shall point you. *ib.*, Hamlet, I, 5, 129.

Pyramus is a sweet-faced man; a proper man as one shall see in a summer's day. SHAK., *Mids.*, I, 2, 86

Be merry and employ your chiefest thoughts | To courtship and such fair ostents of love | As shall conveniently become you there. *id.*, *Merch.*, II, 8, 45. She was as ignorant, meek, and stupid a poor woman as you shall find anywhere in Europe. TROL., *Belton Estate*, Ch. XVII, 216

26. *Should*, as a modal verb, is a preterite conditional, used irrespective of the time-sphere of the predication, to indicate the fact that a case is put merely for the sake of argument. It is found:

a) in a variety of emotional questions, 1) such as suggest a distinct negative or, in the unfrequent case of the question containing a negative, a distinct affirmative. Thus in *How should he know anything about it?* (DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 45) the underlying notion is *It would be highly surprising if he knew anything about it*. A similar notion underlies the following examples:

i. What a deal of secrets Amelia learned which Miss Wirt and the black eyed young ladies over the way had no cognizance of. As indeed how should any of those prim and reputable virgins? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 119.

What should you know about it? Did you ever live on seven or eight shillings a week? DISR., Syb., III, Ch. II, 157. T.

He knew very well that she had never seen Monkham (the name of an estate). How should she have seen it? TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. III, 20. Who should harm me? KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. II, 23*a*.

ii. Shouldn't a woman recognize the father of her own children? ARN. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. XI, 24. (Underlying notion: It would be highly surprising if a woman did not recognize the father of her children.)

2) such as merely put a case to prove that a preceding statement is incontrovertible; thus in:

Of course there was a Great House at Allington. How otherwise should there have been a Small House? TROL., Small House, I, Ch. I, 1.

3) such as imply firm conviction, any alternative view being rejected; thus in:

"I do not think her ill. Of course she is not in good spirits." — "No; exactly. How should she be?" TROL., Belton Estate, Ch. XXII, 288.

As to my voice — how should my voice not change, seeing that it was the voice of a child when you last listened to it? WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. IV, 74.

And who should this victorious warrior be, this beardless knight of whom that church, that town of Xanten are the shrine? This hero, so well-known that his name need not be mentioned, because he is the champion, the victor — who should he be but Siegfried? VERNON LEE, The Victor of Xanten. (The first *should* corresponds to the description given under 26, a), 5).

4) Such as indicate some bewilderment on the part of the speaker, but imply no distinct appeal for enlightenment, any satisfactory answer being regarded as improbable, and of little or no consequence; thus in:

"What'll Fagin say?" inquired the Dodger... — "What?" repeated Charley Bates — "Ah, what?" said the Dodger. — "Why, what should he say?" inquired Charley stopping rather suddenly in his merriment. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XII, 121.

"What is the matter, Mr. Waller?" she asked — "What should be the matter, Cass?" he replied clearing his throat with a show of cheerfulness BESANT, Bell of St. Paul's, II, Ch. XIII, 10. T.

"What was it (sc. the hat) made of? inquired Aunt Hester" ... — "Made of?" he wheezed out slowly, "what should it be made of?" GALSW., Man of Prop., II, Ch. III, 146.

"I don't know what Mr. and Mrs. Shard will say, if..." — "What should they say? It will not make the smallest difference to me." PHILIPS, Mad. Leroux, Ch. X.

5) Such as indicate great bewilderment on the part of the speaker and imply a distinct appeal for enlightenment; thus in: What should this mean? SHAK., Hamlet IV, 7, 50. (For further instances in SHAKESPEARE see Hamlet, I, 4, 64; ib., IV, 7, 50; Jul. Cæsar, I, 1, 142; Much ado, III, 2, 42; Henry VIII, III, 2, 160.)

Who should this stranger be? S. LILIO, Fatal Curiosity, III, 1.

What should it be, that their faith can bind? BYRON, Corsair, I, viii.

She saw Barbara at her husband's door: what should she be doing there? Mrs. Wood, East Lynne, II, 83. T.

What should Arabella come for? HARDY, Jude, V, Ch. II, 329.

From whom should the letter come? SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, II, Ch. V, I, 111.

*Should* has the same force in:

Dolf ... listened if the footsteps should return. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl*, I, 119).

She sat there long in silence alert for any noise that should come from the house. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. XIV, 380.

b) subordinate statements, 1) such as state what is thought unlikely, barely possible, or even contrary to ascertained fact, the head-clause, accordingly, containing such words as *unlikely*, *improbable*, *impossible*, or a word or expression of a similar import. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *shall*, 14, e; 22, d.

How can you expect your breaking open my letters should give me pleasure? GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, II.

The difference of our ages makes it very improbable that she should have any great affection for me. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (413).

It is impossible that the cause of this strange distemper should not sometimes become a subject of discourse. BURKE, *Thoughts on the Present Discontents*, 12.

It was impossible that a plot which had so many ramifications should long remain entirely concealed. MAC., *Clive*, (517 a).

I do not expect that you should owe me any good will now. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIII, 237 a.

It might be that I should have ceased to love him, and then I should have told him so. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LVII, 333.

Could it be possible that his old friend, Lady Lufton, ... should now be untrue to him? id., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVI, 153.

Maggie felt it impossible that she should go down to dinner and endure the severe eyes and severe words of her aunts. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 55.

What chance was there that Shelley should be happy at a public school? SYMONDS, *Shelley*, Ch. II, 13.

She felt that it was impossible that he should love her. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, II, Ch. VII, II, 148.

Was it to be expected that he should remain unmarried? GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XXII, 308.

2) Such as state what is deprecated or held undesirable; thus in:

Heaven forbid that I should do any man an injustice. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXV, 252 a.

I cannot bear that he should hear it from any one but me. id., *Chuz.*, Ch. LIII, 414 b.

It was certainly hard that he should take his mother's money. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch I, (473).

Thus also in the following subordinate statements after *than*:

I'll speak sooner than you should believe that. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 3, (250).

He believed that nothing worse could happen to Europe than that Tsarist Russia should win the war. MANCH. GUARD., 1912, 1924, 522 b.

c) subordinate statements or adnominal clauses that are suggestive of the protasis of a hypothetical sentence of rejected condition (ch. XLIX, obs. VI); thus in:



i. It would be a pity that we should have any words. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LVIII, 220. (Underlying notion: If we were to have words, it would be a pity.)

I can hardly imagine anything more unfortunate than that he should become attached to either of your sisters. MISS YONGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. VII, 117. We are convinced that it would be bad for Europe and worse for Poland that it should be started with three Ulsters inside it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8092, 1 b.

ii. I was prepared to shed the blood of anybody who should aspire to her affections. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 73 b. (Underlying notion: If anybody were to aspire to her affections, I should be prepared to shed his blood).

A survey of English nouns would indeed be deficient which should omit that curt, stunt, slang element to which we as a nation are so remarkably prone. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 374.

Note a) As to the questions referred to under 26, a), 5) it may be observed that, although frequent enough in SHAKESPEARE, they are unusual in Present English. For such a sentence as *What should this mean?* present practice would mostly substitute *I wonder what this means*, or *what this may (or can) mean*, when particular uncertainty or perplexity is to be expressed. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 325; BAIN, *Comp.*, 194; and also the O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 16.

Another approximate equivalent of this *should*, in common use in Present English, is *could* as described in 18, b), so far as it is used in rhetorical questions of the second kind; e.g.:

Who could this man be who was going down to see Mrs. Dale? TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 304.

In these questions *would* appears as an occasional variant. This use of *would*, however, appears to be distinctly uncommon. The following are the only instances that have come to hand:

"And what sort of a husband would this Penderennis be?" many a reader will ask. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 415.

Does it (sc. the packet) exist still? Into whose hands would it have fallen? LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. II, 154.

β) As regards the subordinate statements cited under 26, b), 1), the following observations may be made:

While *should* is the typical verb after *impossible*, *unlikely* or words and word-groups of a similar import, *may* stands after *possible*, *likely*, which represent the happening or state described in the clause as within the bounds of possibility or likelihood (19). The O. E. D. (s.v. *shall*, 22, d) compares *Is it possible that he should do this?* with *It is possible that he may do this*; and *It is unlikely that he should have been there* with *It is likely that he was (or may have been) there*. For further examples of *may* or *might* in the case here referred to see 22. *Should* is not, of course, used after *Is it possible?* expressing surprise at something having actually happened, as in such a sentence as *Is it possible that he has left (or can have left) England?* ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 68, d).

*Shall* occurs as an occasional variant of *should*; instances, however, appear to be very rare.

If the book is decently written in English or any other language, it is hardly possible that there shall be any sentence which shall give the reader no, meaning whatever. FREEMAN, (MOLLOY, I. c. 167).

*Would*, on the other hand appears to be not uncommon; e. g.:

Was it likely that a young woman of twenty-one would die before a man of forty-five, and die without children? WILK., COL., *Woman in White*, I, 134. No one kinder and more gentle than Lady Mallinger, but it was hardly probable that she would be at home. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVII, 290. It was not likely that he would ever want that trifle. id., *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I.

There is not, of course, anything surprising in the use of *would* as a verb denoting volition, as in:

It is extremely improbable that France would seek to escape from one difficulty by creating another — that she would set so slight a value on our good-will in the Middle East. *Manch. Guard.*, 5, 3, 1926, 183 c.

I not a few cases any modal verb appears to be dispensed with; thus in: Is it possible that our young friend never heard of Jarndyce? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. III, 13.

∴ The Dutch *zou (den)* representing an announcement that is a mere rumour, as in *Een aardbeving zou de geheele stad verwoest hebben*, has no modal equivalent in English. Such a sentence as the above may be rendered *It is rumoured* *The story goes*, or some such expression: *that the whole town has been destroyed by an earthquake.*

27. *Will*, as a modal verb, expresses qualified conviction; i. e. represents an inference as probable, as distinguished from modal *must*, which implies that the speaker considers his statement as irrefutable (23).

Some grammarians are inclined to consider this use of *will* as dialectal (Scotch or Irish); thus SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2249); STORM (*Eng. Phil.*, 741); ARONSTEIN (*Anglia* XLI, 53 ff); STOF (*Leesboek voor Aanvangsklassen*, II, 7, foot-note). But in face of the fact that it is by no means unfrequent, even in writers who may be supposed to write English 'pure and undefiled', it will hardly do to stigmatize it as such. See also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 202; KRUIS., *Handb.*, §§ 129—131.

As the following examples show, the inference may concern present or past circumstances: in the latter case *will* is followed by the perfect infinitive.

i. Father'll be waiting for me. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVIII, 138. You will be wishing to get home. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. I, 12. This will be the Tower of London, I suppose. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2249.

How old should you say that neighbour will be? W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. VIII, 53.

ii. I hardly know how to tell you what has happened, it is so very terrible. But perhaps you will have heard it already, as everybody is talking of it here. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. VI, 51.

"Are you going to walk out with us after lunch?" said Lily. — "He will have had walking enough," said Mrs. Dale. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXV, 390.

It will have been perceived that old Lady Lufton had heard nothing of Major Grantly's offence. *ib.*, II, Ch. LV, 150.

He will have heard the placards are all over the town. Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, III, 24.

"I must go home," she said at length. "Father will have come back and will not know where I am." EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. VII, 54.

Note α) The companion verb *shall* is not, apparently, used in the same function. Thus the Dutch *Ik zal een fout gemaakt hebben* could not be translated by *\*I shall have made a mistake*. The following quotation can hardly be apprehended as an instance of the Dutch practice, the speaker being a German:

Where is my evening paper? I shall have left it in the cab. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo* wonders, Ch. II, 35.

β) When the drawing of the inference belongs to the past time-sphere, *will* is, naturally, replaced by *would*.

I thought he would be with his friend. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXI, 257.

Grace knew that all the local newspapers had told the story, and was of course aware that Mrs. Dale would have heard it. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. IX, 101.

Mr. Dale would probably have forgotten him, and would be sure to ask what had brought him to Allington. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 315.

γ) The preterite conditional *would* takes the place of *will* in case the drawing of the inference, although falling in the present time-sphere, is marked by diffidence. When the inference concerns a happening of the past, it is followed by the perfect infinitive. It deserves attention that the Dutch in both cases has *zal* (*zullen*), not *zou* (*zouden*) followed by the perfect infinitive. Compare Ch. XLIX, 14, Obs. V, Note β.

i. In the early summer of 1812, when she would be twenty-nine, she came to visit her uncle. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 31. (Dutch: toen zij negen en twintig jaar oud zal geweest zijn.)

Of the younger ones I have very slight recollections, save that one, a darling child, under five years of age, was quite the pet nursing of the school. This would be Emily. *ib.*, 55.

ii. "The Gods," she said, "would have chosen well." TEN., *Victim*, V. (Dutch: zullen wel een goede keus gedaan hebben.)

Commentators, from lack of confidence or from motives of modesty, often use this *would* in their explanations; e.g.:

The plumes would be the feathers on the crests of the knights' helmets. MACM. CLAS., Note to TEN., *The Lady of Shal.*, 67.

This would be the local Mechanics' Institute. *ib.*, Note to PRINC., Prol., 5.

δ) The use of *will* to form a putative future, as it is sometimes called, has parallels in many languages. Thus *He will be asleep already* corresponds to Dutch *Hij zal al in slaap zijn*, German *Er wird schon schlafen*, French *Il dormira déjà*. See JESPERSEN, *Tid og Tempus*, 388; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 741; also DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 47, 3, f.

The term putative future strikes one as rather a misnomer, the inference naturally not concerning the future at all.

#### VERBS DENOTING SOME CONSTRAINT.

28. The verbs of the second group are *to be*, *to have*, *must*, *need*, *ought*, *shall*, *should* and *will*.

*To be*, *to have*, *must*, *ought*, *should* and, sometimes *shall*, have this in common that they imply a pressure or constraining

influence brought to bear upon the subject, originating from other sources than either the speaker or the person spoken to. They differ as to the nature or intensity of this pressure, but it can hardly be said that usage has assigned to each a narrowly confined area of incidence. On the contrary, as the following discussions will repeatedly show, we find various verbs frequently stand for apparently identical or, at least, closely analogical notions. Nor can it be said that the several shades of pressure for which each of the above verbs are typically used are strictly delimited.

In a complex sentence, especially one with a subordinate statement, the particular kind of pressure which the speaker wishes to express is often indicated by some word or word-group in the head-clause, mostly one of a more distinct and limited meaning than that of any of the above verbs. In this case, especially in literary or archaic English, the verb-group in the subordinate clause varies with the inflectional subjunctive of the main verb, so that the first verb of this verb-group may be regarded as an auxiliary (16).

29. *To be* is the weakest of the above verbs. Accordingly it always has weak or, at best, half stress. It is the typical verb when the pressure to be expressed is: *a*) a resolution made by some party other than either the speaker or the person spoken to. In this case the Dutch equivalent is *moeten*; thus in:

The doctor says he is not *to be* worried. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2297.

But I tell you, you're *to come* down, Miss, this minute: your mother says so. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 56.

At last, when the boy declared a desire to wish his father good-night, Adrian had to tell him that he was *to go* straight to bed from the supper-table. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. IV, 25.

The doctor said I was *to avoid* mental worry. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VIII, 107.

A similar notion underlies the use of *to be* when the reference is to the terms of a mercantile transaction, as in:

The vessels are *to have* a speed of 17 knots ... The vessels and their equipment are *to be* of a character unsurpassed by any liners afloat. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/2, 1926, 119 c.

*b*) an arrangement or appointment: the Dutch equivalent is *zullen*; thus in:

We were *to go* in a carrier's cart. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 14 a.

She is *to be* married next week. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XL, 295.

We accepted the terms of treaty offered to us ... The English were at once to take themselves off out of Afghanistan. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 51.

*c*) a dispensation of Providence: the Dutch equivalent is *zullen*; thus in:

The day broke, the day which was *to decide* the fate of India. MAC., *Clive*, (518 b).

There was the glass that was *no more* to reflect her dear sad face. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 219.



My reflections at these times were always associated with the figure I was to make in life, and the distinguished things I was to do. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 159.

Note the following idioms: The life that is to come. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I. (Dutch: *het leven hierna maals*.)

Short time had Angelo to gaze on his comrades that were to be. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 154. (Dutch: *zijn aanstaande kameraden*. In a similar connexion also *shall*; thus in: Your husband that shall be. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2.)

I suppose it was to be, my dear. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXX, 249. (Dutch: *Het heeft zoo moeten zijn*.)

This was not to be. MAC., *Popes*, 546 *b*. (Dutch: *Dit heeft niet mogen zijn*. In a similar connexion also *might*, as in: It might not be, Fate had ruled otherwise. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 175.)

30. Obs. I. The verb *to be*, although not defective in its conjugation, is in this function rarely used in other forms than either the present or the preterite. The application of the verb shown in the following example is, no doubt, very unusual:

This young lady ... instead of being to marry Frederick, is to marry James Benwick. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVIII, 175.

Thus also the following example, in which the function of *to be* may be different from that in the preceding sentence, has a distinctly incongruous effect:

You will be to visit me in prison with a basket of provisions. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIV, 141. (The reference is to the casting of a play.)

To supply the deficiency, other verbs covering various shades of meaning of *to be* (Obs. IV) are resorted to; thus in:

But me, not destined such delights to share | ... My fortune leads to traverse realms alone, | And find no spot of all the world my own. GOLDSM., *Trav.*, 23. One of the most interesting events at the Royal Naval and Military Tournament arranged to be held at Olympia from May 22 to June 7, is the representation of firing exercises with old-time arms and uniforms. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3866, 748.

This restriction in the application of *to be* may explain the fact that when non-fulfilment of an action or state is to be expressed, which is the province of the pluperfect conditional, the notion of completed action or state has to be indicated by the following infinitive which, accordingly, is placed in the perfect tense. English practice differs in this respect from Dutch, which has the corresponding *zullen* in the pluperfect conditional. Compare Ch. LV, 61.

We were to have been married in two years. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, N, 330. (Dutch: *Wij hadden over twee jaar zullen trouwen*.)

The truth is, at ten I had an appointment under a certain person's window, who was to have been looking at the moon at that moment. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 9.

II. In subordinate statements standing after a word or expression which shows that the reference is to an arrangement or a dispensation of Providence, *to be* varies with *should*, the latter being hardly less common than the former. Compare Ch. XLIX, 21, Obs. IV. It is worth observing that *should* appears only in descriptions of circumstances belonging to the past time-sphere; also that the corresponding *shall* is too



peremptory to be a suitable variant of *to be* in the present and is, accordingly, less common. Compare the following groups of examples:

i. It was settled, then, that Lily was to dine up at the Great House on Christmas Day. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXI, 11.

It had been arranged that she was to go over in a few days to Castle Richmond. id., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XVI, 281.

It seems to be fixed that Fred is to go back to college. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XL, 303.

It was settled that I was to write to my father. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 256.

ii. \* It had been agreed that Meer Jaffier should separate himself from the Nabob and carry over his division to Clive. MAC., *Clive*, (517*b*)

It was settled that Grace should go to Allington. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. IX, 98.

It was settled that Dr. Croft and Bell should be married about the middle of June. id., *Small House*, II, Ch. LX, 366.

It was not fated that I should sleep that night. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XV, 178.

\*\* It has been arranged that the Parliamentary point-to-point steeple-chase shall take place on Saturday. *Times*.

In other connexions the use of *should* as a variant of *to be* in the above meaning is less frequent, although not uncommon. A good many examples are to be found in Ch. I, 75.

The thought alone reconciled her to the promised visit. She should meet Glaucus. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, IV, Ch. II, 94*b*.

Who could guess | If ever more should meet those mutual eyes, | Since upon night so sweet such awful morn could rise? BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, III, xxiv.

They little thought how pure a light, | With years, should gather round that day; | How love should keep their memories bright, | How wide a realm their sons should sway. BRYANT, *The 22nd of Dec.*, II.

Her father stood straight and tall, as she should never see him again. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, Ch. XL.

After Ernest had been sentenced, he was taken back to the cells to wait for the van which should take him to Coldbath Fields, where he was to serve his term. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXIV, 282. (Observe the alternate use of *should* and *to be*.)

In Early Modern English it appears to have been more common than it is now. See ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 324; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 613.

i. "If thou beest capable of things serious, thou must know the king is full of grief." — "So 'tis said, sir; about this son, that should have married a shepherd's daughter." SHAK., *Wint. Tale*, IV, 4, 793.

Art thou he that should come? Bible, *Matth.*, XI, 3.

ii. It is so; the Count Claudio shall marry the daughter of Leonato. SHAK., *Much Ado*, II, 2, I.

III. The fact that *to be* implies but a weak form of pressure makes it fitted to serve as a kind of variant of *shall* or *will* as tense-auxiliaries. Thus in the examples cited in 29, c), *would* could be substituted for *was* (or *were*) *to* without materially altering the meaning of the sentence. The same substitution would hardly affect the meaning of:

This would not suit him till he should know what answer he was to have. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 319.

Lady Julia told me you were to be here. ib., II, Ch. XLV, 15.

They say women are to vote, and become doctors. *id.*, He knew he was right, I, Ch. XII, 93.

Conversely *would* appears to be less appropriate than *was to* in:

Between him and this high-hearted woman had come that which would never be removed. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XI, 168.

The following is a curious instance of *to be* and *will*, as an auxiliary of the future tense, being used alternately in one and the same sentence:

The building is to be seven storeys in height, but a portion of it will rise to ten storeys. *Times*.

*Should* or *would* not being available as a preterite future in principal sentences, we find *to be* doing duty in this case (Ch. L, 7, *b*). Thus in the examples cited in 29, *b*) *should* or *would* could not possibly replace *were to*.

IV. Many turns of expression are available, and are constantly used, to denote more unequivocally than can be done by *to be*, the notion of the fulfilment of an action or state being subject to an arrangement or a dispensation of Providence. Compare Obs. I and II.

i. We are billed to start at 9.30. G. F. BRADBY, *For this I have borne him*, Ch. VI, 63.

ii. But it seemed that I was destined to offend all the men that day. THACK., *Sam. Titm*, Ch. III, 31.

iii. The station clock marked only seven minutes from the time when we were due to start. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, II, E, 233. (Compare: To-morrow I am due at Paris. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, VIII, Ch. II, 268.)

iv. I have thrown away my nurse's belief that the seed of David was fated to conquer the whole earth. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVII, 84 *b*.

In the following example *due* is practically redundant:

The thirty days available before the order is due to be enforced will be none too long. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 18, 341 *d*.

31. *a*) As has been suggested in 28, *to be* not unfrequently stands for a faded meaning of the other verbs denoting a kind of pressure on the subject. It is only natural that, owing to its vagueness, the verb sometimes admits of more than one interpretation. Attentive reading will show that *to be* may be a weak substitute for:

*to have* or *must*. Of the verbs *to be*, *to have* and *must* the first implies the weakest, the last the strongest pressure. LLOYD (*North. Eng.*, § 231), comparing *I ought to*, *I am to*, *I have to* and *I am bound to*, observes, "The second implies less of compulsion than the third". NESFIELD (*Hist. Eng. and Derivation*), commenting on *I am* (or *was*) *to go* and *I have* (or *had*) *to go*, remarks, "These two sentences mean much the same thing". In Early Modern English the use of *to be* for *to have* appears to have been more common than it is now. This is shown by the comments passed on some passages with *to be* in SHAKESPEARE by some recent editors.

I am to entreat you, request you, and desire you to con them (*sc.* your parts).

SHAK., *Mids.*, I, 2, 87. (Deighton's comment on this line, in Macmillan's English Classics, is: *I have to entreat you.*)

I am to discourse wonders. *ib.*, IV, 2, 26. (The editors of the Clarendon Press Series observe, "We should now say *I have to discourse*".)

Also in the following example *to have* would seem to have been a more suitable word than *to be*:

He disliked the idea of the necessary call; but it was to be done. MRS. GASK., *Wiv. & Daught.*, Ch. XII, 125.

*ought* or *should*. Naturally *to be* is rather frequently used to convey approximately the same meaning as these verbs when the time-sphere of the obligation is prior to that of the utterance, in which case neither of them is available (39, 44); e.g.:

i. I hold a man of intrigue to be a most despicable character, yet, you know, it does not follow that one is to be an absolute Joseph either. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (415).

If I am to do it, I had better do it at once. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVI, 170.

You are not to talk to Miss Carew like that; I don't like it. OSC. WILDE, *Import. of being Earn.*, II, 97

ii. What was I to do to pass away the long-lived day? GOOD WORDS. Dealings even with such men as Dobbs Broughton and Musselboro ... were ... steps on the road to ruin. But what was he to do? TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XLIII, 489.

I remember her telling me that, if I had any thoughts of doing a mean or wicked action, I was to come first to this spot. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 66).

In the following quotation *to be* may be regarded as either a weak *ought* or a weak *could*:

How was her girl to have guarded herself from a love so unfortunate, or have avoided the rock on which her vessel had been shipwrecked? TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 316.

*Shall* (or *should* when the predication belongs to the past time-sphere). Owing to the strong peremptory force of *shall* instances of *to be* being used as its substitute are not particularly frequent. However ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 195) observes that *shall* "may often be paraphrased by *is to*."

We must make it clear to all that the British power is to be paramount and uncontested in South Africa. *Times*.

The use of *to be* instead of *shall* appears to be frequent enough in questions regarding a line of action to be taken (41, c); thus in:

What am I to do if he repeats his suit? What people are to be invited? Where am I to hang those pictures?

"You can't go to school to-day, Biddy." — "Is Susie and Billy to go?" GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. IX, 93.

*Shall* (*should*) even appears to be regularly used in subordinate questions denoting the subject of a lottery or a competition. The result of the lottery or the competition is then thought of as the constraining factor.

i They said therefore among themselves, Let us not rend it, but cast lots for it, whose it shall be. Bible, John, XIX, 24.

Let our future contest be who shall be most obliging. SHER., *School*, III, 1.

The guests then draw lots as to who shall begin. DOBSON, *Eng. Lit.*, 37.  
We'll toss up who shall begin first. FRANK SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, II, Ch. VII, 1, 146.

ii. The assassins struggled which should deal him most wounds. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Introd.*, 12.

They all tried who should help him to it most. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 99.

The ladies vied with each other who should admire him most. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 301.

We had a great meeting in the town-hall, and of the speakers it was who should be most loyal to King and country. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. VIII, (283).

b) Not unfrequently *to be* may be apprehended in a sense approaching to that of *will*.

I am not to be prejudiced against my nephew by such (men), I promise you. SHER., *School*, II, 3.

It was delightful to hear the gigantic plans of the little rogues and the impracticable feats they were to perform during their six weeks' emancipation from the abhorred thralldom of book, birch, and pedagogue. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XX, 187.

Who shall I have to work for when father's gone, if you are to go and take notions in your head and be an old maid? G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XI, 83.

Sometimes also *to be*, although pointing to an arrangement, is used where *will* would have been expected.

When are you to give me your judgment on my library, as you promised? SHER., *School*, II, 2.

c) In many cases, especially before a passive infinitive, *to be* can hardly be distinguished from *can* or *may* (59, Obs. I).

"And à propos, Moses have you been able to get me that little bill discounted?" — "Twas not to be done." SHER., *School*, III, 2, (395).

The man of science knows that Causes are not to be discovered. LEWES, *Philos.*, *Introd.*, 18.

She knew far too little of even what there is to be known. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. V, 93.

But also in other constructions *to be* may suggest an alternative *can*; thus in:

"Do you believe that she has the power to decide that things shall go this way or that, — as she pleases?" — "How am I to know?" TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LX, 215.

"Do you believe, Conway, that he is really ruined?" — "What am I to say? How am I to know?" *ib.*, II, Ch. LX, 227. (The first *to be* has the value of a weak *ought*.)

How are we to trust men whom we now know to have been plotting our destruction when they were pledging us their friendship? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7577, 4 b.

In such a sentence as the following *to be*, although practically equivalent to *to be allowed*, is used on the strength of a regulation being thought of: Nobody was to travel without the royal permission. MAC., *Fred.*, (675 a).

In the following examples in which also *to be* hardly bears another interpretation than that of *to be allowed*, the word seems to be used out of its proper sense-sphere:

I thought that, if I were to choose, I would like this best. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 524.

"Is he to come here, Aunt Stanbury?" — "He may if he pleases." TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. II, 93.

Am I to see the letter, papa? id., *Belton Est.*, Ch. II, 18.

d) Very frequently the force of *to be* is so weak that it may be apprehended as a mere copula. Thus in the following examples in which only the faintest notion of what is ordinarily expressed by *ought* (or *should*) or *can* (or *may*) is discernible (Ch. LV, 71):

i. It is absurd to say that this outrage is not to be attributed to the King. MAC., *Fred.*, (683 a).

Why he was to be pitied Jeremy did not know. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. XII, 297.

A sum of from 80 to 100 millions is not to be sneezed at. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8227, 2 a.

ii. Where is it to be found? It is not to be found anywhere. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2298.

It is to be feared that the press is largely to be blamed. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 281 d. (The first *is to* is a highly weakened *may*, the second a highly weakened *ought*.)

32. The special function of *to have* is to represent a person under the pressure of: a) a task or official duty; thus in:

I have to acknowledge two letters from you, and I have to tell you that the last words of my dear mother, who is no more, were words of good-will and gratitude to you for nursing me. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 220.

The duties of a reporter are manifold. He has to go everywhere and to all sorts of apparent impossibilities. *Good Words*.

b) a power beyond the subject's control, such as a law of nature, an overmastering emotion; thus in:

In October the expedition sailed, but it had to make its way against adverse winds. MAC., *Clive*, (514 b).

The withdrawal from Cabul began. It was the heart of a cruel winter. The English had to make their way through the awful pass of Koord Cabul. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 51.

I saw he had to bite his lips. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

c) the necessity of a condition being fulfilled that a certain action or state may be possible; thus in:

If you wish to catch the train, you will have to run for it. STOF., *Handl.*, II.

33. Obs. I. *To have* is used not only with an active but also, quite commonly, with a passive infinitive; as in:

The chair had to be new-bottomed at least once in three years. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 259.

She knew that an answer would have to be written. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXXVI, 406.

Nor is there anything unusual in *to have* being followed by *to be* + nominal, as in:

What's good for you has to be good for everybody. GALSW., *A Family Man*, II, (64).

Combining a passive infinitive with the perfect or pluperfect of *to have*, as in the following quotation, has, however, an extremely harsh effect:



That spells a deficit brought about ... by the extra expenditure which has necessarily had to be incurred. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6453, 3a.

II. In colloquial English *to have* is often furnished with a redundant *got*. The practice appears to be even more common in American than in British English. See STOF., E. S. XXXI.

Nevertheless it had got to be done. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. IX, 38.

Now you, girls, have got to smooth him down, and make up to him. GALSW., *A Family Man*, II, 2, (94).

III. *To have* + infinitive + object is sometimes difficult to distinguish from *to have* + object + infinitive. Thus there is hardly any semantic difference between *I have to write a great many letters every day* and *I have a great many letters to write every day*; or between *I have to make no end of calls* and *I have no end of calls to make*. But the difference is unmistakable between *I have to tell a tale* and *I have a tale to tell*; or between *I have to spend much money* and *I have much money to spend*. Compare Ch. XVIII, 17, Obs. II, β; Ch. LV, 75. A change of construction in the following examples would hardly give good sense:

He has so much to say for himself. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (259).

It remains to be seen whether the squire has a heart to appeal to. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 80.

With *I have some calls to make* compare also the curious construction used in:

I have some calls which I must make. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LIX, 210.

When the object has front-position, there is nothing in the word-order to tell us which meaning is intended. Thus *How many letters had you to acknowledge* and *The letters which I had to acknowledge concerned my friend rather than myself* admit of either interpretation.

IV. *To have* is not only closely synonymous with *to be* and *must*, at least in some of their applications, but it not seldom stands for approximately the same notion as *to need* (36); thus in:

I have but to swallow this, and be for the rest of my days persecuted by a legion of goblins. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 25.

My inquiries had not to be very exhaustive. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. XII.

34. *Must* has a wider range of applications than either *to be* or *to have*, some of whose meanings, as has already been observed, it shares but expresses in greater intensity. We find it used to represent the subject under the pressure or constraint of:

a) an inevitable fate, the happening described being one which the speaker regards either as an absolute certainty, or as a probability which falls but a degree short of an absolute certainty. A typical example of the first case is *All men must die*. A similar notion is implied in:

Mingled seed must bear a mingled crop. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, V, Ch. VII, 329.

Pride must have a fall. id., *Mid.*, Ch. LXXIV, 553.

What must be, must be. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, III, Ch. XII, VI, 261.

In the second case *must* expresses practically the same notion as *to be certain* (or *sure*), and is hard to distinguish from modal *must* (23).

Things can't last as they are: there must be all sorts of reforms soon. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLV, 335.

"He must propose to-morrow," thought Rebecca. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 59.

b) the natural or inevitable consequence of a certain happening; thus in:

He had made his bed, and he must lie upon it. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XX, 246.

His jewel was stolen — he must gaze upon the empty box. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXII, 162.

c) inexorable circumstances. In this application *must* has strong stress; e. g.:

Psha! what signifies kneeling, when you know I must have you? SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2.

"That's all very fine," said Fred pettishly, "what is a fellow to do? I must go into the Church now!" G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXV, 250.

He made no attempt at remonstrance. He begged for no respite. The word had gone forth, and he knew that it must be obeyed. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. XLIX, 78.

It seemed to her that she could not rouse him by conciliation. Neither could she leave him as he was. Something must be done *ib.*, II, Ch. LXVI, 297.

d) a power beyond the subject's control, such as a social law, a code of honour; thus in:

A person without a university education cannot tell what the requirements are to which a person must come up in these days. MISS YONGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. IV, 61.

I'm sure I've every sympathy for you, madam; but I must carry out my instructions. GALSW., *Loyalties*, III, 3, (208)

MAYOR. Miss Maud Builder, will you tell us what you know of this — er — occurrence? — MAUD. Must I? — MAYOR. I'm afraid you must. GALSW., *A Family Man*, III, I, (81).

e) the necessity that a condition be fulfilled in order that a certain action or state may be possible Compare 32, c), and observe that the choice between *to have* and *must* seems to depend on the structure of the sentence.

I must work hard now if I mean to take advantage of to-day's sitting. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LI, 98

This must be distinctly understood or nothing wonderful can come of the story I am going to relate. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 6.

Both these countries (sc. America and Russia) must of course come in, if the League is to fulfil its proper destiny as an all-embracing concert of the nations. *Manch. Guard.*, 12.2.1926, 122a.

f) a strong moral obligation or an urgent advisability; thus in:  
You must know that one day last week she desired me to write verses on her ponies. SHER., *School*, II, 2.

What I have begun, that must I conclude. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 167.

My liege, we must not drop the mask before | The masquerade is over. TEN. Queen Mary, III, 6, (623 *b*).

He must do as he is bid. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 240.

You must give up practising chemistry by yourself. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 236.

Mr. Rider Haggard must look to his laurels. Athen.

Our duty is to the Club now, Winsor. We must have this cleared up. GALSW., Loyalties, II, 1, (159).

Thus also, perhaps, in: I bear a charmed life, which must not yield | To one of woman born. SHAK., Macb., V, 8, 12. (DEIGHTON, Macm. Eng. Clas., explains: "is destined not to yield".)

As *must not* is usually substituted for *may not*, in the sense of *not to be allowed* (62), the combination is sometimes ambiguous; thus in:

You must not rally him on the subject. SHER., School, II, 3.

g) a keen desire overmastering either the speaker or some other person(s). In the latter case the ordinary implication is that the desire is an unwarrantable or foolish one.

i. I must have a copy (sc. of the epigram). SHER., School, II, 2.

The vehement ringing of the bell decided me; I *must* enter. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 32.

ii. These were the recreations I took you from; but you must have your coach-vis-à-vis, and three powdered footmen. SHER., School, II, 1.

Get one of your schoolfellows to fight you, if you must fight. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. X, 195.

So you must always be meddling, must you? MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 240.

iii. "I could have told you, my lord, that he would not do that. . .," said Mr. Chadwick. — "But he must do it," said Mrs. Proudie. "He must be made to do it." TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XXXIV, 381.

The keen desire implied by *must* is, naturally, tantamount to a vehement movement of the human will. Hence *must* is, in this meaning, often preceded or followed by *will* or *shall*, as the case may be; thus in:

I must and will have my own way. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 240.

"Who cried stop?" said Squeers, turning savagely round. — "I," said Nicholas, stepping forward. "This must not go on." . . . "I say must not", repeated Nicholas, nothing daunted; "shall not! I will prevent it." DICK., Nich. Nick., Ch. XIII, 78.

"I will speak" cried the man. "I will not be turned out, I saw it all. I keep the book-stall. I demand to be sworn. I will not be put down, Mr. Fang, you must hear me. You must not refuse, sir. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XI, 108. Then Lily declared that she must and would go back to Allington on the next Monday. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LIX, 213.

35. Obs. I. *Must*, although originally a preterite conditional (Ch. LVIII, 13; ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 212; WESTERN, Om Brugen af *can*, *may* og *must*, § 21), is mostly used as a present indicative, i.e. to indicate an actual pressure or constraint belonging to the present time-sphere; thus in most of the examples cited in 34. We find it also:

a) as a preterite indicative, chiefly in subordinate clauses when the time-spheres of the members of the complex are the past and coincide. It is especially in subordinate statements that this *must* strikes us as

common English. In adnominal and adverbial clauses it sometimes has an incongruous effect, and some periphrasis would in most cases be preferred (Obs. III).

i. I should say that the marriage must not to be decided on until she was of age. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. VIII, 48.

The guest had again and again to remind himself that he must not outstay his welcome. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XVI.

ii. At length the dreaded week was come when Amos and his children must leave Shepperton. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. X, 67.

He went forward to meet his uncle, prepared to suppress the agitation he must feel, whatever news he was to hear. *id.*, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XIII, 103.

John looked forward with delight to the scene which must take place. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XIII, 237.

iii. I felt uncomfortable about going to breakfast. However, as it must be done, I went down after two or three false starts half-way. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 58.

Sometimes we find *must* as a preterite indicative in what appears to be a head-sentence; but in this case the latter is mostly to be apprehended as a concealed subordinate statement whose head-clause was but vaguely in the speaker's thoughts, and was not, therefore, expressed. Thus in *His parents treat him like a child. Last night he must go early to bed; then this morning he must ask leave to go for a walk* (BRADLEY, *E. S.* XXVI), such an expression as *they told him* is readily suggested by the context. For further discussion see also STOF., *E. S.*, XXVIII, XXXI; SCHULZE, *E. S.*, XX; MALMSTEDT, *Stud. in Eng. Gram.*, I.

A few examples are added in which it would not be difficult to think of a head-clause understood.

Hitherto Johnny ... had not found himself bound to move ... But now it was absolutely necessary that he should do something. He must either go, or else he must make entreaty to be allowed to remain. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. XLVI, 24.

Lydgate was convinced that Fred was in the pink-skinned stage of typhoid fever. He must go to bed immediately, and must have a regular nurse, and various appliances, and precautions must be used about which Lydgate was particular. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXVI, 191.

When no such expression is in the speaker's mind, he will mostly use as a substitute for *must* one or another of the various phrases which express approximately the same meaning, or the verb *to have*, which is generally preferred in ordinary language (Obs. III).

It should not, however, be supposed that the use of *must* is distinctly rare in head-sentences that can hardly be regarded as virtual subordinate statements. Readers interested in the subject are sure to come across, or to have come across, occasional instances. As the correctness of this use of *must* is often disputed by scholars of high reputation and authority, it seems useful to submit a good many examples to the student's opinion. They may be taken as evidence that, notwithstanding BRADLEY'S pronouncement in *O. E. D.* (s. v. *must*, 3, d) to the effect that such a sentence as *I must go to London yesterday* "would now be a ludicrous blunder", this use of *must* is not always felt as a downright solecism by a good many writers noted for their

unexceptionable English. See also KRUIS., *Handb.*<sup>1</sup>, § 706, where several examples are given.

Nobody who knew him could trust him: but few Scottish statesmen could then be trusted; and yet Scottish statesmen must be employed. MAC., *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 3.

It was seldom that a white freeman in Barbadoes or Martinique, in Guiana or at Panama, was employed in severe bodily labour. But the Scotch who settled at Darien must at first be without slaves. *ib.*, IX, Ch. XXIV, 274.

The weaving must stand still a long while this morning, for Eppie must be washed and have clean clothes on. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XIV, 114.

On the morrow, however, it was rainy, and everyone must stay in-doors. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. VI, 124.

Wrapped up in a shawl I still carried the unknown little child. I might not lay it down anywhere, however tired were my arms— however much its weight impeded my progress, I must retain it. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXV, 345. Yet three days, and then I must go back to the pensionnat, *id.*, *Villette*, Ch. XXI, 284.

Then they had come to the second little gate, ... and the business of the day must be begun. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXXV, 393.

He could not, of course, tell his father that the foxes were no longer anything to him; but yet he must make it understood that such was his conviction. *ib.*, II, Ch. LVIII, 189.

No less an artist than Inigo Jones must occasionally stoop to construct the machinery (sc. of the masks). *Introd. to Milt. Comus in Clar. Press. Ed.*

No matter the weather, she must (needs) walk her couple of miles. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. V, 66.

Jenny could, perhaps, hardly discourse learnedly upon such things: she must follow the dictates of her nature. FRANK SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, III, Ch. XII, VI, 258.

There appears to be nothing unusual in the application of *must* as a preterite indicative in head-sentences when the verb is used in the shade of meaning referred to under 34, *g*).

My father suddenly discovered that there was to be a great book-sale, twenty miles off, which would last four days, and attend it he must. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. III, 13.

Being at Paris, father must needs visit Alsace. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. I, (180).

Our Dick cared nothing for foreign scenery and yet he must be always going to sea. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, XVII, 259.

*b*) as a preterite conditional, in the apodosis of a conditional sentence of rejected condition, indicating what in the speaker's opinion would be inevitable if a happening present, past or future did or did not come about, or would have been inevitable if such a happening had or had not come about; thus in:

*i.* \* If it were not for that, I must really have a more expensive governess, and masters besides. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. III, 48.

If one did not work with such men as are at hand, things must come to a dead-lock. *id.*, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 344.

If Parliament were to be prorogued before Christmas-day, all things must be disposed of before the rise on Tuesday. *Graph.*

\*\* His feeble and uncultivated mind was incapable of perceiving that the riches of Calcutta, had they been even greater than he imagined, would not compensate



him for what he must lose, if the European trade should be driven by his violence to some other quarter. *Mac.*, *Clive*, (513 a).

They knew well enough what direction the discussion must take if it were prolonged *Mar Crawl.*, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 107.

\*\*\* She made up her mind that, if Lady Julia could not be induced to spare her for the future, she and Lady Julia must quarrel. *Trol.*, *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XVI, 182.

ii. But for him, I must have died. *Dick.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 337.

If the piece had been loaded, he must inevitably have shot himself dead upon the spot. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

If fewer ships had been laid down in 1909-'10, more ships must have been laid down in the two subsequent years. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5567, 1 b.

The protasis is understood in: Sooner or later this question must have been faced. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5636, 2 a.

It is implied by the infinitive in: There was such a joyous sound in her merry laugh, that the sternest misanthrope must have smiled to hear it. *Dick.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151.

It is worth observing that *must* + perfect infinitive cannot be used as an indicative, i. e. in describing a happening that has actually come about. Thus we could not say *I was told that he must have tendered his resignation, to have* or one of the numerous phrases that are approximate equivalents of *must*, being used instead; e. g.: *I was told that he had been obliged to tender his resignation*. Compare what is to be observed about *could* + perfect infinitive (59, Obs. VII), and *would* + perfect infinitive (48, Obs. IX).

II. The force of *must*, notably that of representing the subject under the pressure of an overmastering desire (34, g), is often emphasized by *needs*.

i. "We needs must hear anon | Of him and of that other". — "Ay", she said, | "And of that other, for I needs must hence | And find that other, wheresoe'er he be." *Ten.*, *Lanc. & El.*, 751—754. (Observe that the first *must* is modal.)

(They) will come to utter ruin, because every one of them must needs go his own way. *Kingsley*, *Herew.*, Ch. XXIII, 102.

Lady Brocknell, who was dramatically disposed, must needs have her tableaux, like everybody else. *Norris*, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IX, 61.

Not content with being an artist, Mr. Pontifex must needs also be a musician. *Sam. Butler*, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. I, 2.

ii. Pray to the Gods to intermit the plague | That needs must light on this ingratitude. *Shak.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, I, I, 60.

A bolder man than Trotty Veck must needs have drawn upon his boldness largely to deny it. *Dick.*, *Chimes*, I, 17.

Pisistratus must needs go also to town and see the world. *Lytton*, *Caxt.*, IV, Ch. III, 93.

Towards the end their conversation languished a good deal, and Lady Cynthia must needs fall back on the stubbly-haired boy to her right. *Mrs. Ward*, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. II, 30.

Once set thinking of by-gones and the stimulus of Mellor and its novelty, Marcella must needs think, too, of her London life. *id.*, *Mar.c.*, I, Ch. II, 15.

A far less common intensive of *must* is *fain*, as in:

Because this was no ordinary marriage, and because we are sorry to part with Angela before the day when she begins her wedded life, we must fain

tell of what passed in that brief fortnight before the Palace was opened. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 314.

III. Some of the functions of *must*, especially those referred to under 34, *d*) and *e*), are shared by *to have*: the only appreciable difference between the two words is that the latter, as a rule, implies a weaker pressure than the former. The similarity in meaning accounts for the fact that *to have* is especially frequent when the use of *must*, for some reason or other, is objectionable or impossible. Thus instead of *Yesterday I must go to bed because I felt entirely worn out*, ordinary English has *Yesterday I had to go to bed, because I felt entirely worn out*. In such a sentence as the following *to have* takes the place of *must*, because the latter verb has no infinitive:

It's a terrible story to have to tell. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XLI, 462.

DEIGHTON'S comment on *must love* which he interprets as *has to make love to in the play* in, "what is Thisby? a wandering knight?" — "It is a lady that Pyramus must love." (*Mids.*, I, 2, 48; *Macm. Eng. Clas.*), seems to show that some Englishmen observe a difference between the two verbs. Conversely the fact that DICKENS uses the two words in strictly identical meanings, for the sake of variety, in, "It was a Game called Yes and No, where Scrooge's nephew had to think of something and the rest must find out what." (*Chrism. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 72) is evidence that the difference is often so slight that it may be disregarded.

It is also of some interest to mention here an observation of DEIGHTON on, "Why art thou here, | Come from the farthest steppe of India? | But that, forsooth, the bouncing Amazon, | Your buskin'd mistress and your warrior love, | To Theseus must be wedded, and you come | To give their bed joy and prosperity." (*Mids.*, II, 1, 68—73), to the effect that *must be* = *is to be*. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 314. Numerous phrases are, besides, available to express with more or less precision the different shades of meaning conveyed by *must*. Thus *to be bound* is often used to express qualified inevitableness, i.e. it is often placed before what, in the speaker's opinion, is sure to come about (34, *a*).

What on earth will uncle say to this engagement?... there's bound to be a row about it. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgrim*, 305.

There is bound to be a day of reckoning. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 15, 347.

There is bound to lie a tremendous change in values. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, § 4, 191. What has happened is precisely what was bound to happen in these circumstances. *Times*.

Competition is bound to increase rather than diminish. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 1 *b*.

The other meanings of *must* are less frequently expressed by *to be bound*. Mrs. Baxter ... wasn't sure that she should have written at all, only that Dick was bound to go over to Plumstead with the wool. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. XLIX, 74.

It is the hardship of men that, when called upon by women or romance, they are bound to be romantic, whether the opportunity serves them or does not. *ib.*, II, Ch. LI, 99.

They may be seen patrolling the roads with their officers accompanying them, being bound to walk so many miles a day. *id.*, *Mac d.*, Ch. IV, 27.

Separate mention may also be made of *to be fain*, which mostly implies some disinclination or reluctance to yield.

They have frequent scenes of wordy warfare, which at times runs so high, that John is fain to call in the aid of his son Tom. *WASH. Irv.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXIX, 318.

As the governess remarked that it was for the purpose of acquiring the French idiom in conversation, he was fain to be content. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 93.

A solitary instance has come to hand of *to have fain* as a variant of *to be fain*: And Ethelred uplifted his mace, and struck upon the head of the dragon, which fell before him and gave up his pesty breath, with a shriek so horrid and harsh, and withal so piercing, that Ethelred had fain to close his ears with his hands against the dreadful noise of it, the like whereof was never before heard. *POE*, *Tales of Myst. and Imag.*, *The Fall of the House of Usher*, 180 (*Sel. Sh. Stor.*, 1st. Ser. in *The World's Classics*).

Curiously enough the phrase is also used to express what is practically the opposite of a constraint, i.e. an eagerness or incination for whatever is indicated by the following infinitive, a meaning often covered by the Dutch *graag* (or *gaarne*). In this application it is found not only in literary, chiefly poetic, language, but also in dialects; e.g.:

i. Right fain were I to learn this knight were whole. *TEN.*, *Lanc. & El.*, 768. (= pleased.)

King Schœneus' daughter is she verily. | Who, when her eyes first looked upon the sun, | Was fain to end her life but new begun, | For he had vowed to leave but men alone | Sprung from his loins when he from earth was gone. *MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, Atal. Race, XXII. (= strongly inclined.)

A nameless city in a distant sea | ... I now am fain to set before your eyes. *ib.*, *ProL.*, 3a.

And many there were fain his skirts to kiss. *ib.*, *The Doom of King Acrisius*, 79a.

ii. Here, Sylvie! Sylvie! come and be tailor's man, and let t' chap get settled sharp, for a'm fain t'hear his story. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. V, 65. (= eager.)

Three days sin' noane so full as she o't'new cloak that now she's fain t'sell. *ib.*, 62.

In this latter meaning *to be fain* is also found construed with *of* + *gerund*, thus in:

And then, although of landing we were fain, | Needs must we wait. *MORRIS*, *Earthly Par.*, *ProL.*, 12a.

In conclusion it may be observed that *fain* as an adverb often stands with *would*. in which connexion it also indicates eagerness or willingness; e.g.: In those trunks Mr. Morgan had things which he would fain keep from public eyes. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXI, 343.

The phrases *to be compelled*, *to be constrained*, *to be forced*, *to be obliged*, expressing various intensities of constraint, require no comment.

i. I am compelled to offer a straightforward statement on the subject. *THACK.*, *Snobs*, I, 18.

Grace felt that she was compelled to say something. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVII, 177.

ii. They have been constrained to admit that the result was disappointing. *ib.*

iii. I was forced to quit my first lodgings by reason of an officious landlady. *Spect.*, XII.

iv. Finding his brother a favoured rival, he has been obliged to mask his pretensions, and profit by my assistance. *SHER., School*, I, 1.

Of some interest, however, it is to observe that they are occasionally found in connexion with a passive infinitive (Ch. LV, 88, c, Note). See also STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 693, where many instances are given. The construction strikes us as a misuse of language, seeing that it represents the obligation as shifted to a place where it does not belong. Compare STOF., *E. S.* XXXI.

The leather hat-box was obliged to be raked up from the lowest depth of the boot. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XXII, 196.

The fuller form *-es* (pronounced *-ez*) for the plural, is obliged to be retained when the singular ends in a sibilant or palatal sound. MORRIS, *Elem. Les. in Hist. Eng. Gram.*, Ch. VII, 71.

Also the phrases illustrated in the following quotations are in constant use as convenient substitutes for *must*:

i. He had no alternative but to proceed in this way. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 382.

ii. Addison was consequently under the necessity of quitting London for Dublin. *MAC., Ad.*, (753 b.)

iii. It behaved him to keep on good terms with his pupils. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 346. (also used in the sense of *ought*, 39, Obs. III.)

iv. Increased community of interests cannot fail to draw the Anglo-Saxon nations closer together. *TIMES.*

v. I can't help relating here a circumstance illustrative of the point in question. *THACK., Snobs*, Ch. I, 17.

vi. She had occasion to see about mushroom ketchup. *MRS. WOOD, Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 88.

vii. He could not but feel that he was a great match for any farmer's daughter. *READE, Never too late*, I, Ch. II, 37.

Of this last idiom there are a good many variants, all of them literary and more or less archaic (Ch. LV, 44); thus:

Frank could not do other than consent to her proposal. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XLIII, 567.

He could not help but see him. *HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy*, Ch. XI, 2, 272.

He could not choose but love her. *MER., Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 186.

IV. In conclusion it should be observed that as a pressure or constraint of the future cannot be expressed by *must*, preference is often given to *to have* or another synonym when this futurity is distinctly present to the speaker's mind.

I shall have to tell her a bit of my mind. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 379.

He'll have to bring an action for defamation of character. *GALSW., Loyalties*, II, 2, (166).

36. *Need* is the ordinary verb to represent the subject under the pressure of a requirement. It is mostly found connected with a negative word, such as *not*, *no*, *never*, or a word implying a



negative, such as *hardly, scarcely, but, only, rarely, seldom*; frequently also the negating of the requirement follows from the general meaning of the sentence. In all these cases *to need* corresponds to the Dutch (be)hoeven. When not connected with a negative either actually expressed or implied by the general meaning of the sentence, it answers to the Dutch dienen.

For the anomalies in the conjugation of *to need*, the conditions which determine its being construed with *to do*, and the cases in which it is followed by an infinitive with or without *to*, see Ch. LV, 6–15, where the various applications of the verb are discussed and illustrated in all necessary detail.

i. \* You needn't mind sending up to me if the child cries. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 21.

\*\* This is a very poor place for you to come to; but you have known that of old, and therefore I need hardly apologize. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. L, 84. My letter need only be a supplement to hers. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 109. T.

Lead, it need scarcely be said, is not immune (sc. to diseases). II. *Lond. News*, No. 3857, 330.

\*\*\* What preacher need moralise on this story? THACK., *Four Georges*, III, 86

Need I tell my reader that so innocent a girl as Susan was too high-minded to watch the effect of her proceedings behind the curtains? READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. VI, 72.

That is all that need be said. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. VII, 70. (*all* has the value of *the only thing*.)

ii. One would need to be learned in the fashions of those times to know how far in the rear of them Mrs. Glegg's slate-coloured silk gown must have been. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. VII, 45.

I need look somewhat changed, ... for I have undergone some suffering, both of mind and body. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. XX, 126 a.

When I consider all, and think of what has passed, I need be made of iron to stand before him. *ib.*, Ch. XX, 127 b.

37. Obs. I. *Need* is mostly used in the sense of *to be required*, as in all the preceding examples, but it is also met with in the meaning of *to require* (Ch. LV, 15); thus in:

Blank verse needs to be relieved by the greatest intensity of thought and expression. *Academy*.

I know all I need to know about her. HICHENS, *The Fruitful Vine*, Ch. II, 24.

II. The uninflected form *need* is used irrespective of person or tense:

α) in negating a requirement of the present. For illustration see above.

β) in negating a requirement of the past, chiefly, but not exclusively, in subordinate statements denoting a predication whose time-sphere coincides with that of the utterance; thus in:

He told me that I need not make myself at all uneasy about his daughter's unhappiness. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 276 a.

He knew well enough that his son need not leave Cosby Lodge. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVII, 173.

H. POUTSMA, I.



ii. So she made up the fire and got her French book, which she need not begin reading till she felt disposed. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. XII, 197.

A head-sentence with *need not* as a preterite indicative is mostly, if not regularly, to be apprehended as a concealed subordinate statement whose head-clause has been left unexpressed because but dimly thought of; thus in:

Of course he would tell her what he had done; but in telling her he would keep to himself what he had said as to the result of an acquittal in a civil court. She need not yet be told that he had promised to take such a verdict as sufficing also for an ecclesiastical acquittal. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. XLVII, 51.

For the rest the ordinary negative form for the preterite indicative is *needed not* or, in ordinary language *did not need*, which, indeed, are also occasionally met with in subordinate statements; e.g.:

i. \* John needed not to reply. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXXVI, 393.

They promised with the eyes what they needed not to promise with the tongue. A. HOPE, *Chron. of Count Ant.*, Ch. III, 82.

\*\* One did not need to be told that. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 26 b.

He did not need to be a hatter to see that it was a very good Panama. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

ii. She saw that she needed not to fear me. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XVI, 96.

Thus also *needed* is the ordinary tense-form in such negative constructions as *He only (hardly or scarcely) needed to give his consent to the bargain*.

The ladies Devenish were not disposed to make her life any easier than it needed to be. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 230.

γ) in negating a conditional requirement, as in:

If Dalrymple really meant what he had said, and would stick to it, she need not mind being called a tomfool by her mother. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LX, 223.

When followed by a perfect infinitive the negative conditional implies fulfilment of what is expressed by the rest of the predicate; thus in: Had he done his duty in that respect, Lydia need not have been indebted to her uncle. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. L, 301.

For if we will think of it, no Time need have gone to ruin, could it have found a man great enough, a man wise and good enough. CARLYLE, *Heroes*, I, 12.

The protasis of the conditional sentence is often understood; thus in: I think my father suspects what Rady did and does not approve of it. And he need not have done it after all and might have spoilt it. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XI, 71.

You need not have told me that. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Broken Heart*, I, 20.

III. The meaning of *to need* may also be expressed by certain combinations with the noun or with the adverb *need*; thus in:

i. \* You haven't need to say so much. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288 a.

I don't think Mr. Roger should have told; he had no need to begin so soon about his brother's failure. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. VIII, 73.

It was the happy lot of Mr. Bright to unite so many and such distinguished intellectual gifts that, if we had had need to dwell upon them alone, we

should have presented a dazzling picture to the world. GLADSTONE (LLOYD, North. Eng., 80).

I have no need to go further in my record. Rev. of Rev., No. 190, 371 b.

\*\* There's no need for you to put in your oar. FANNY BURNEY, Evelina, XIV, 45.

There is no need for you to part with the writing, against your inclination. DICK, Bleak House, Ch. XXVII, 233.

iii. She had need be handsome. DRYDEN, Mar. à la Mode, I, 1.

Fred had need be careful. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. LXXXVI, 614.

In the phrase *had need* + infinitive, formed on the analogy of *had better* (rather, etc.) + infinitive (Ch. II, 27; LV, 32) *need* is now adverbial in function but was originally a noun, being used as such with the indicative of *to have* from the earliest periods, and followed by an infinitive with *to*. For further discussion see Ch. LV, 33.

Of some particular interest is the use of *more need* in the following example, which is best considered as an adverbial comparative:

Mary's making him a black silk case to hold his bands, but I told her she'd more need wash 'em for him. G. ELIOT, Scenes, III, Ch. III, 205.

There are, besides, a good many phrases denoting similar notions as *to need*, which are in frequent use as useful alternatives. Such are:

*to be bound* (called upon, or required), *to require*; e.g.:

i. \* Geographers are not bound to be also geologists. LEWES, Hist. of Philos., 48.

\*\* The Government is not called upon to increase the troops. Times.

ii. It is a letter that requires to be acted upon at once. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LXVI, 295.

*to have no call* (or occasion), *there is no call* (or occasion); e.g.:

i. \* You've no call to catch cold. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., Ch. XIII, 102.

Her complexion was so brilliant that she had no call to use rouge. THACK., Barry Lynd., Ch. I, 15.

\*\* Scrooge had no occasion to be told that the bell was again upon the stroke of One. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 47.

ii. \* There is no call for you to snigger. ANSTEY, Fal. Id., Ch. V, 85.

\*\* I could wish that the clergy would inform their congregations that there is no occasion to scream themselves hoarse in making the responses. COWPER, Country Recollections (PEACOCK, Sel. Eng. Es., 169).

Also *to have* is sometimes used in a meaning similar to that of *to need*. For illustration see 33, Obs. IV.

### 38. *Ought* is used when the pressure is an obligation,

a) that is prescribed by duty, civility, propriety or advisability; thus in:

Another cause ... which has contributed not a little to the maiming of our language, is a foolish opinion, advanced of late years, that we ought to spell exactly as we speak. SWIFT, A Proposal for Improving the Eng. Speech. (492 a).

You ought to be ashamed of such nonsense at your time of life. LYTTON, Lady of Lyons, I, 1.

You ought to be sent to a madhouse. ib.

She could not say in words that Bishop Proudie ... was no better than he ought to be. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 15 (*Should* is the ordinary word in this saying.)

b) that may be reasonably expected on the strength of a favourable position; thus in:

He was close to her just then, gentlemen, so he really ought to know. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLIX, 456.

I have been told by those who ought to know, that they would agree cheerfully to contribute a subsidy, in common with the other colonies, to the Imperial Navy. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. II, 33.

If I can make a fair living in London, I oughtn't to starve in Melbourne. W. J. LOCKE, *Stella Maris*, Ch. II, 20

The style ought to be taking to young ones. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 59.

The curious attire of the Queen of Siam ought to be especially gratifying to the Rational Dress Association. *Il. Lond. News*.

Thus also in questions, as in: It seems to me that the further East you go, the more unpunctual are the trains. What ought they to be in China? BRAM STOKER, *Dracula*, Ch. I, 2.

39. Obs. I. Of the use of *ought* in the meaning of *to be entitled* no further instance than that illustrated by the following quotation has been found:

You have some sick offence within your mind, | Which, by the right and virtue of my place, I ought to know of. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, I, 270. (See Deighton's comment on this passage in *Macm. Eng. Clas.*)

In the following quotation, however, *ought* comes near to the same meaning:

"What do you think she'd do if she caught us? We oughtn't to have it, you know", said Maisie. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. I, 3.

II. *Ought*, originally a preterite conditional (Ch. LVIII, 14), is used:

a) as a present indicative, i.e. to indicate a kind of pressure belonging to the present time-sphere. For illustration see above.

β) as a preterite indicative; almost exclusively when the time-sphere of the utterance and that of the pressure coincide, i.e. chiefly in subordinate statements or questions; thus in:

i. It was now determined in good earnest that something ought to be done for her without delay. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (*Stof., Handl.*, I, 147).

ii. The poor girl had always heard Dr. Grantly spoken of as the archdeacon, but she did not in the least know what she ought to call him. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVII, 278.

Instances of *ought* as a preterite indicative in head-sentences are very rare, one or another of the numerous phrases conveying a similar meaning being almost regularly used instead (Obs. III). The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

I was the eldest of the three | And to uphold and cheer the rest | I ought to do — and did my best. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.* IV.

γ) as a preterite conditional: only very rarely unless a perfect infinitive follows in which case any notion of conditionality is, however, mostly only weakly or not at all present to the speaker's mind. In this latter case the construction implies non-fulfilment, or the reverse, of the action or state indicated by the main verb of the predicate (Ch. LV, 60); thus in:

i. Had we not ourselves drawn up the document in question, in obedience to Mr. Vincey's clear and precise instructions, ... we ought to tell you that its provisions seem to us so unnatural that [etc]. RID. HAG., She, Ch. II, 17.

In the following example *ought* does not indicate a conditional obligation, but an actual obligation to be fulfilled in the future:

Should he be found guilty, I think we ought to be ready with such steps as it will be becoming for us to take at the expiration of any sentence which may be pronounced. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. XLVII, 50. (Dutch: zullen (not zouden) wij gereed moeten zijn.)

Thus also in the following sentences, cited in the O.E.D., s.v. *ought*, 5, b: *If it should rain, he ought not to go. If he cannot go to-day, he ought to go to-morrow.*

ii. We have left undone those things which we ought to have done, and we have done those things which we ought not to have done. Book of Com. Pray.

I never loved my godmother as I ought to have done. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. III, 10.

I felt sensible of filling a place that ought to have been empty. ib.

If conditionality is distinctly present in the speaker's thoughts, *ought* as a preterite conditional is very rare. Thus such sentences as \**If you had children, you ought to give them a proper education*, or \**If you had had children, you ought to have given them a proper education* are distinctly at variance with English idiom. One or another of the phrases mentioned in Obs. III are the ordinary substitutes for this *ought*.

III. The meaning of *ought* mentioned under 38, a) may also be expressed, with more or less precision by numerous phrases. These phrases are, naturally, very frequent in those cases in which *ought* is not available. Of some special interest is *to be bound*, which, as has been observed in 35, Obs. III, is also used as an alternative phrase for *must*. The use of the phrase in the meaning of *to need* (see the example on page 66) appears to be less common.

If there has been any anger we are bound as Christians to forget it. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. XLVII, 52.

In her mind every man was bound to marry as soon as he could maintain a wife. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 13.

They came to urge on him what he was bound to do for poor Bessy's sake. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 240.

There are many disagreeable things in society which you are bound to take down, and do so with a smiling face. THACK., Snobs, Ch. I, 18.

Note the frequent *to be bound in honour* or *to be in honour bound*, as in:

Grace, I think, would have fled too, had she not been bound in honour to support her mother. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. L, 83.

Other approximate equivalents of *ought* are illustrated in:

i. I had no business to make public either my doubts or fears. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 192.

You had no business to meet Mr. Campion without my knowledge. ANSTEY, Fal. Id., Ch. V, 80.

ii. It is incumbent on the military authorities to co-operate with the civil administration. Times.

iii. It behoves me to be grateful. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. L, 86 (also used in the sense of *must* (35, Obs. III.)

He could not tell even his daughter that after such a life as this, ... it specially behoved him to die, — as he had lived, — at Barchester. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. XLIX, 80.

*Ought* being incapable of expressing futurity, these phrases are also employed in representing an action or state as becoming due in the future; thus, for example, in *It will be incumbent on you to provide for those children.*

Also *to be* (31, a), and *must* (34, f) often express a notion that comes near to that indicated by *ought*.<sup>1</sup>

40. *Shall*, and in narrating past events *should*, is used when the constraining influence is a movement of the will of either the speaker or the person(s) addressed, and is exercised on another party than either.

41. a) When it is the speaker whose will is the constraining influence, the party subjected to it is either the person(s) spoken to, or some other person(s), or also some animal(s) or thing(s): i. e. *shall* is used in the second or the third person. The constraining influence may be of the nature of:

1) the exercise of an (assumed) power or authority; thus typically in the language of the Ten Commandments; e. g.: *Six days shalt thou labour, and do all that thou hast to do.*

Zounds! sirrah! the lady shall be as ugly as I choose: she shall have a hump on each shoulder; she shall be as crooked as the crescent; her one eye shall roll like the bull's in Cox's Museum; she shall have a skin like a mummy, and the beard of a Jew — she shall be all this, sirrah! — yet I will make you ogle her all day, and sit up all night to write sonnets on her beauty. SHER., *Riv.*, II, I, (234).

Hold! — hold, Assurance! — you shall not be so rude. *ib.*, III, 3, (250).

There was a tear in Lady Lufton's eye as she said, — “My dear, you shan't come. You and Fanny shall stop and dine by yourselves. The gentlemen shall come.” TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LV, 149.

Old year, you must not die | ... Old year, you shall not die. TEN., *The Death of the Old year*, I.

Note a) Instead of this *shall* the speaker in addressing a person will sometimes use the tense-auxiliary *will*, which implies that he considers obedience as a matter of course. He may do so from two opposite motives, i. e. 1) from a desire to soften down the imperiousness of his command. Compare ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*<sup>8</sup>, § 319; MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. I, 23. See also Ch. L, 34, Obs. II.

You will tell your father, Sam, if I can be of any assistance to him in his present situation, I shall be most willing and ready to lend him any aid in my power. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 479.

Johnson will repeat to me to-morrow morning before breakfast without book, and from the Greek Testament, the first chapter of the Epistle of Saint Paul to the Ephesians. *id.*, *Dombey*, Ch. XII, 107.

You will now, if you please, my dear, sit down at the writing-table and pen me a pretty letter to Miss Crawley. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 270.



2) from utter disregard of his interlocutor's feelings; thus frequently in a violent altercation, as in:

You will dine here to-morrow, sir, and every day Miss Swartz comes, you will be here to pay your respects to her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 218.

"I tell you, you are not fit to be in a gentleman's house," thundered the father. "A rank atheist, a lying infidel. It is against nature that you should call a parsonage your home." — "It is not particularly homelike!" said the son bitterly. "I can leave it when you please." — "Can!" exclaimed the father in a fury, "you will leave it, sir, and this very day, too!" EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 28.

I desire that you will do no such thing. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LXVI, 298.

β) In ordinary social intercourse the commanding *shall* is not much used. From motives of courtesy it is usually replaced by *must* (34, g).

Tom, you must go with us to Lady Smart's to Breakfast. SWIFT, *Pol. Conv. Works*, VI, 253 (O. E. D., s. v. *must*, 3).

She continued to read the letter. "What's this? Confession! That must come out, bishop. It will never do that you should recommend confession to anybody, under any circumstances." TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XI, 121.

I demand to be sworn. I will not be put down, Mr. Fang, you must hear me. You must not refuse, sir. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XI, 108.

2) a threat, a promise (or vow), a guarantee, as in:

i. You shall smart for this. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 6.

If you hurt a hair of her head, you shall answer it. *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. LI, 392 a.

ii. While I see you carrying out high intentions with vigour, you shall have my unfailing support. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLV, 335.

I am a suitor for your daughter's hand — the settlements shall be worthy her beauty and my station. LYTON, *Lady of Lyons*, I, 1.

"It is such a comfort to have some one to say a cheery word to one." — "You shall hear nothing but cheery words here. Papa shall say cheery words to you that shall be better than mine, because they shall be weighted with the wisdom of age." TROL., *Phin. Finn*, I, Ch. IV, 52.

Just give me one nod of assent, and the cottage shall be ready for you, should it so chance that you should require it. *id.*, *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. L, 91.

iii. And if you will but lend me your gown | There is none shall know us in fair London Town. *Old Ballad*.

If you look through history, you shall find that it has always been so. ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*, § 319.

But out hunting, if you can sit upon your horse, no one shall know that you are not as good as another. *Good Words*.

Thus, perhaps, *shall* has the same value in: There is hardly a town in France or Italy in which you shall not see some noble countymen of your own, ... swindling inn-landlords. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. I, 9.

Note. *Shall* is also used when a person speaks of himself in the third person; thus in: Come and live with us, brother; we'll care for you — Do come! Fanny shall love you, Fanny can work for thee. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 339. (Substituting *I* for *Fanny* would cause *shall* to be replaced by *will*.)

3) determination or the prospective taking of measures or making of provisions to secure a certain end; e. g.:

Well, if they have concealed their amour, they shan't conceal their wedding; that shall be public, I am resolved. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, II.

No, no, madam, you shall throw away no more sums on such unmeaning trumpery. SHER., *School*, II, 1.

I saw you give the baronet a letter. — My master shall know this. *id.*, *Riv.*, II, 2, (238).

One more cast of the line, ... and that shall be the last. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 150).

I was obliged to confess ... that Miss Mowcher and I were wholly unacquainted. "Then you shall know her", said Steerforth. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 162 *b*.

I'll answer for it the next batch shall be as good. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 86.

I will alter this: this shall be altered, were there ten Mrs. Yorkes to do battle with. CH. BRONTË, *Shirl.*, II, Ch. XVI, 329.

Note. Words of the above import, when addressed to the person spoken to, are not seldom followed by the phrase *I promise you*, in which *to promise* implies a strong assertion of the speaker's intention.

Though your ill conduct may disturb my peace of mind, it shall never break my heart, I promise you. SHER., *School*, II, 1.

Mary shan't come to hear any more of your reasoning, I promise you. *ib.*, II, 2.

4) a desire respecting a future course of events; thus in:

Moses shall give me further instructions as we go together. SHER., *School*, III, 1. (= I want Moses to give me etc.)

For ye shall know that, though we worshipped God | And heard mass duly, still of Swithiod | The Greater, Odin and his house of gold, | The noble stories ceased not to be told. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, Prol., 4a.

"Maria", he said in a very grave voice, "any sacrifice that is required on my part on your behalf I am ready to make". — "No, sir; the sacrifices shall all be made by me. ... You shall give up nothing, ... you shall have everything, youth, beauty, wealth, station, love, — love; and friendship also, if you will accept it from one so poor, so broken, so secluded as I shall be. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LI, 110.

He shall not go, I wish him to remain. SHAW, *Cand.*, III, (185).

b) *Shall* is also the normal word used by the speaker in solemn utterances regarding the future in which he, in a manner, identifies himself with some supreme power in whose name he delivers himself. This supreme power may be: 1) Providence, Fate, some deity, or some law of nature.

Fear not Macbeth, no man that's born of woman | Shall e'er have power on thee. SHAK., *Macb.*, V, 3, 6

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid. BIBLE, *Isaiah*, XI, 6.

Vain transitory splendours! could not all | Reprieve the tottering mansion from its fall? | Obscure it sinks, nor shall it more impart | An hour's importance to the poor man's heart. | Thither no more the peasant shall repair, | To sweet oblivion of his daily care, [etc.]. GOLDSM., *Des. Vil.*, 237–252.

The day of the great deliverance is at hand. Islam shall no longer obey the dogs of Christians. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem.*, Ch. XVIII.

A flower produces thousands of seeds, of which perhaps not one shall fall upon fertile ground and grow into a fair plant. BESANT, *St. Katherine's* by the Tower, Pref.

Give the dull black wax the same ridges and furrows (sc. as those of mother-

of pearl), and its glory shall differ in nothing from that of the shell. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*.

So surely as from the sown corn rises the wheat-ear, so from the sowing of misery, filth and starvation shall arise crime. *ib.*

Note. Although in these sentences there is some distinct notion of a power ruling the future, the use of *shall* in them, often called the 'prophetic *shall*', may, with more justice, may looked upon as a survival of the practice of WYCLIFFE, who in his translation of the Vulgate uniformly used *shall* in rendering the Latin future. For further discussion see Ch. L, 34; and compare MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. II, § 1 and Ch. IX, 87.

A similar explanation may be given of the frequent use of *shall* in proverbs, which most of them date from an early period; thus:

Such seed as a man has sowed, such harvest shall he reap. He that spends without regard shall want without pity. He that stays in the valley shall never get over the hill. He that touches pitch shall be defiled. (Compare with this: He that touches pitch will be defiled. SHAKESPEARE, *MUCH ADO*, III, 3, 60.)

2) some enactment, regulation or rule; thus in:

When any person is sick, notice shall be given thereof to the Minister of the Parish; who coming into the house shall say: "Peace be to this house and to all that dwell in it." *Book of Com. Pray.*

On and after the appointed day there shall be in Ireland a Legislature consisting of Her Majesty the Queen, and of two houses, the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. *Gladstone's Home-Rule Bill*, Part. I, 1.

Note. In the "Prize Competition" of the now defunct "Weekly Westminster" there once appeared the following notice, which, owing to the alternate use of *shall* and *must*, is of some particular interest:

Rules: 1) No essay shall exceed 2,000 words. Each essay must be original and unaided work of the competitor. It must be clearly written on one side of the paper; and each sheet must bear the name, age, address and occupation of the competitor. Competitors may send in more than one essay, but no competitor will receive more than one prize. 2) The competitor shall be not more than 25 years of age on September 1 st./1912, and, called upon, must produce a certificate of birth and a letter from some accredited person, stating he or she has written the essay without assistance, 3) All essays must reach the Publishers on or before September 1 st./1912, and be addressed 'Competition', Home University Library, c. o. Messrs. Williams and Norgate, 14 Henrietta Street, Covent Garden, London.

c) When it is the person spoken to whose will is in question, *shall* implies an appeal to that person's wish, of which the speaker is naturally ignorant, and about which he wishes to be informed. It follows that the verb appears only in questions, the subject being a personal pronoun of the first or third person, or a noun; e. g.:

Sir, there is a gentleman below desires to see you; shall I show him into the parlour? *SHER., Riv., I, 2.* (= do you want me to show him into the parlour.) Come ladies, shall we sit down to cards in the next room? *id., School, II, 2.* "Nothing shall be changed in your room," he said — it is always your room — it is always my sister's. Shall it not be so, Laura? *THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 219.*

Shall Mr. Hartright give you some chicken? or shall I give you some cutlet? WILK. COL., Woman, I, Ch. VIII, 47.

Ned was delighted and cried out, "A hedgehog, a hedgehog!" Then he said, "Shall my dog kill it?" SWEET, Old Chap.

In the ordinary dealings between man and man *to be* is often preferred to *shall*. The fact is that the questioner, from motives of courtesy, is inclined to spare the person addressed the unpleasant feeling of having his discretionary power appealed to. He therefore uses *to be* to open an opportunity for him to let his decisions appear as the outcome of a pressure beyond his control (31, a).

"I won't suffer this barrow to be moved another step," said Mr. Pickwick resolutely, "unless Winkle carries that gun of his in a different manner." — "How am I to carry it?" said the wretched Winkle. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

What am I to write, father? G. ELIOT, Mill, Ch. IX, 241.

If the brute won't fight, what am I to do, sir? GALSW., Loyalties, II, 1, (161.)

42. The various shades of pressure or constraint implied in the use of *shall* are frequently indicated by some word or word-group in the head-clause of a complex with a subordinate statement. In the latter *shall* varies then with an inflectional subjunctive, and may, accordingly, be regarded as a modal auxiliary. As such it varies also with *should*, the choice depending, in the main, on the nature of the pressure or constraint as understood by the speaker. For detailed discussion and for illustration the student is referred to Ch. XLIX, 20—27. The subject has also been discussed in fuller detail in a pamphlet on Mood published separately by the present writer. Compare also O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 22, a, b.

It will be necessary also that the medical management of the two shall be combined. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. LXVII, 506. (Compare: Regard for his health and that of his family render it necessary that he should travel annually for a few weeks, ESCOTT, England, Ch. II, 19.)

43. *Should*, originally a preterite conditional, is used, irrespective of considerations of person or time-sphere, when the pressure is an obligation,  
a) that is prescribed by duty, civility, propriety or advisability; thus in:

Old friends should not begin on grievances on first meeting. SHER., School, II, 1.

A son should, at any rate, not be offended because a father thinks that he is entitled to some consideration for what he does. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LVIII, 191.

Travellers on electric railways should leave their watches at home, as the electricity affects the delicate machinery of the watch, and spoils its accuracy for keeping time. Graph.

Observe the idiom in: She was a disgrace to her family and no better than she should be. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XII, 108 b. (= a great deal worse than she should be; Dutch: er was niet veel aan haar gelegen.)

It was she who found out that Mrs. Giles was no better than she should be. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 72.

In the same connexion occasionally also *ought* (38, a), and *need*, as in: I daresay Marius was no better than he need be. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. VII, 57.

Note. The wording of the above function of *should* has advisedly been made the same as that of the first function of *ought* (38, a). The present writer indeed, has not been able to discern any appreciable semantic difference between the two words. The only distinction that has been observed is that *ought* is more frequent in colloquial language than *should*. Sometimes the two words are used in succession in one and the same sentence, *ought* being used first. From this arrangement it may, perhaps, be concluded that *should* was felt by the speaker to convey a stronger pressure than *ought*. Compare with this a statement in DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 49, 4, a, to the effect that *should* is slightly weaker than *ought*; also the note in the O. E. D., s.v. *shall*, 18, where it is briefly stated that *should* = *ought to*.

The dress ought to have the same effect as a soft carpet, that is to say, should produce a general impression of satisfactoriness. PAYN, *Luck of the Darrells*, Ch. V, 51.

I ought to have married; yes I should ha' married long ago. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. IX, 137.

b) that may be reasonably expected on the strength of a favourable position. Also this function is shared by *ought*, without any difference being observable.

He should have known something of the matter; for he had been a favourite with three successive generations of the royal house. MAC., *Pitt*, (292 a).

The Roman legionaries should be good judges on that point. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 4 a.

I should know what it is, sir, for I've lived butler there agoing i' fifteen year. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 11.

It is firmly printed on hand-made paper, and the issue of 1.000 copies should be rapidly sold out. *Athen.* No. 4488, 489 c.

What is there in the loss or gain of those dull piles of metal that should change our spirit? LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 10 a.

44. Besides the above functions which *should* has in common with *ought*, it is also used to indicate a constraining influence of:

a) a requirement, i. e. as a variant of *need* (36); thus especially in affirmative sentences, as in:

"Could I speak a word with you, sir, if you please?" said Tom, "it is rather pressing." — "It should be rather pressing to justify this strange behaviour." DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XX, 173 b.

"It should be Christmas Day, I am sure ... on which one drinks the health of such an odious, stingy, hard, unfeeling man as Mr. Scrooge. id., *Christm. Car.* 5, III, 71.

b) a conjuncture of circumstances; thus especially: 1) in the subordinate statement of a complex whose head-clause indicates the speaker's thoughts about what that conjuncture of circumstances has wrought. The use of *should* is especially frequent



after words or expressions denoting surprise as in *How strange that we should meet here of all places in this large town!*

That the nephew of my old friend, Sir Oliver, should be the person to attempt such a wrong, hurts me more nearly. *SHER., School, IV, 3, (413).*

There was nothing ... surprising in the fact that Major Grantly should be staying at Framley Court. *TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LVI, 153.*

That your father should be anxious is the most natural thing in the world... It is not surprising that he should dislike the idea of such a marriage. *ib., II, Ch. LVIII, 193.*

It is very shocking that Mr. Casaubon should be ill. *G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXIX, 209.*

It is unfortunate that the name should be so peculiar. *Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 48.*

The head-clause is often understood or represented by an interjection or interjectional word-group; thus in:

i. That it should come to this! *SHAK., Haml., I, 2, 137.*

That it should come to that between you and me, after all! *TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LIV, 137.*

ii. O Heavens! that this should be the reward of all my care and love for you! *THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 61.*

Note. In sentences of the above construction *should* is frequently absent, the speaker having no constraining conjuncture of circumstances in his mind. Thus also in Dutch parallel passages *moeten* is as often absent as it does appear. Compare *Het is vreemd dat wij elkaar hier ontmoeten* with *Het is vreemd dat wij elkaar hier moesten ontmoeten*.

Amazed am I, | Beholding how ye butt against my wish, | That I forbear you thus. *TEN., Ger. & En., 677.*

No wonder that some proportion of English peers have no other ideals than that of self-gratification. *ESCOTT, England, Ch. III, 25.*

2) in adverbial clauses of consequence introduced by *that*, the head-clause inquiring into the cause of the effect produced; thus in:

What has Sir Benjamin done that you should avoid him so? *SHER., School, I, 1, (366).*

What has happened that you should speak like that? *TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LIV, 137.*

What am I, that I should judge another? *Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. I, 15.*

What have I done — what am I — that he should treat me so? *G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XLII, 315.*

3) in certain questions introduced by *why* (or an equivalent word or word-group) "implying the speaker's inability to conceive any reason or justification for something actual or contemplated, or any ground for believing something to be fact". *O. E. D., s. v. shall, 23, a.* Compare also *Ch. L, 38, Obs. I.*

Why should not Meriem succeed to the property in due course if it is really hers? *GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem, Ch. XVIII.*

Why should you wish to comfort folks who get into trouble? *MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., I, Ch. IV, 46.*

Thus also in subordinate questions introduced by *why*, as in:

Old Glubb does not know why the sea should make me think of my mamma. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 103.

I cannot see why money should have been referred to. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVI, 345.

You may ask why, in the name of manliness, Mr. Casaubon should have behaved in that way. *ib.*, Ch. XLII, 315.

I don't see why my friends should be inconvenienced for him. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 33.

4) in certain rhetorical questions, answered in a word-group opening with *but*. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *shall*, 17.

As they were coming into the Hotel, on whom should they light, but Rebecca and her husband. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVI, 231.

Who should presently come up, but the Right Honourable Edmund Preston. *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 31.

Whom but Maud should I meet | Last night. TEN., *Maud*, I, v, II.

c) certain circumstances leading to a conclusion. The conclusion is represented as having been made with considerable diffidence and this *should*, accordingly, contains a modal element. In fact it might be described as a weakened *must* (23). According to the O. E. D., s. v. *shall*, 18, *b*, it is now obsolete, but it cannot be denied that instances occur in Late Modern English.

There thou shouldst be; | By this great clatter, one of greatest note | Seems bruited. SHAK., *Mac b.*, V, 7, 20.

You should be women, | And yet your beards forbid me to interpret | That you are so. *ib.*, I, 3, 45.

This, by his voice, should be a Montague. *id.*, *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 5, 57.

I have heard it said, | The seraphs love most — cherubim know most — | And this should be a cherub — since he loves not. BYRON, *Cain*, I, (513 a).

"Canst hear," said one, "the breakers roar? | For methinks we should be near the shore." SOUTHEY, *The Inchcape Rock*, XIV.

This should be Barbados, unless my reckoning is far out. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVII, 133 a.

He was a martial-looking man, and he should have been of a hot temperament, for, although it was a bitter day, he wore no coat. MAR. CORELLI, *Temporal Power*.

"Mr. Twisden's not in, then?" — "No. He's at the Courts. They're just up; he should be in directly. But he'll be busy." GALSW., *Loyalties*, III, 1, (180).

45. Like *ought*, *should*, in its main function (43, a), is used to express:

a) an actual obligation of the present. For illustration see above.

b) an actual obligation of the past, so far as its time-sphere coincides with that of the utterance, i. e. practically only in subordinate statements; thus in:

Sir Austin signified his opinion that a boy should obey his parent. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 42.

c) an obligation depending on a condition: this but rarely; e. g.: If ladies were to be gained by sword and pistol only, what the devil should all the beaux do? FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, 1, (51).

I would by no means wish a daughter of mine to be a progeny (read: prodigy) of learning. Then, sir, she should have a supercilious (read: superficial) knowledge of accounts. SHER., Riv., I, 2.

Note. As in the case of *ought*, there is hardly any notion of conditionality in the speaker's mind in the frequent construction *should* + perfect infinitive, which implies non-fulfilment, or the reverse, of the predication in question, as in:

You should have seen his mother's face, when Télémaque was presented to him by the doctor. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 47.

When it is necessary to represent the force of an obligation as dependent on the fulfilment of a condition, one of the numerous phrases which also express a similar kind of obligation, is chosen. See under *ought* in 39, Obs. III.

46. Various forms of the obligation indicated by *should* (or *ought*) are often indicated by some word or word-group in the head-clause of a complex with a subordinate statement. In the latter *should* varies with an inflectional subjunctive and may, accordingly, be regarded as a modal auxiliary, like *shall*, which occurs as a frequent variant (Ch. XLIX, 20—27).

It is not right that he should be in the dependence of poverty, while we are rich. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXXVIII, 276.

The elders (had) considered it expedient that the young lord should marry... Griselda. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LVI, 153.

He had on a former occasion taken upon himself to advise that Grace Crawley should not be entertained at Framley. *ib.*, II, Ch. LVI, 161.

It really seems high time that the boys in our school should receive some better introduction to the study of our authors. SKEAT.

47. *Will*, and in narrating past happenings *would*, represents a person's activities under the pressure of his own will, as distinct from *shall* (*should*), which represents them under the constraint of another person. This pressure appears as the result of:

a) a firm determination, as in:

I. I will punish you if you neglect your studies. MOLLOY, The Irish Difficulty, § 1, 16.

I ought to have my own way in everything, and what's more, I will too. SHER., School, II, 1.

I never saw such a gun in my life.... It goes off of its own accord. It will do it. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 165.

"I will speak", cried the man. "I will not be turned out. I saw it all. I keep the book-stall. I demand to be sworn. I will not be put down. Mr. Fan, you must hear me." DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XI, 108.

You will have nothing to say to him, though his constancy is like the constancy of an old Paladin. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LIX, 210.

II. "My father seems to be a little cross... We'll go in and smooth him down." But the archdeacon wouldn't be smoothed down on that occasion. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XXII, 243.

The royal widows even declared that they would throw themselves and their children from the palace-windows, if any harm were done to the prisoners. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 188.

## b) a desire or wish, as in:

I would not have the affair known for all the world. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, II.

If your love for me were fixed and ardent, you would not lose your hold, even though I wished it. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (244).

## c) a willingness or readiness, as in:

i. Well, well, Philip, I'll hear you upon that another time; so go to bed now. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

"Do you forgive me for all this?" — "I will forgive you, Agnes, ... when you come to do Steerforth justice." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXV, 183 a.

I will do my best. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVIII, 198.

ii. I shouldn't mind anything if she would have me. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LIII, 388.

## d) an intention, as in:

To the end of our days we will be her brothers, as Fate wills that we can be no more. We'll be her knights and wait upon her, and when we're old, we'll say how much we loved her. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIV, 363.

I will go and bury myself in my château. LYTTON, *Lady of Lyons*, I, 1.

48. Obs. I. Determination is the strongest form of volition, and *will*, when expressing this is, therefore, uttered with strong stress. In print we often find this symbolized by italics. Determination in various shades of emphasis is also expressed by a variety of phrases, such as *to be bent* (or *determined*) *on*, *to set one's heart on*, the gerund-construction with *on*, in the case of some, varying with an infinitive-construction with *to* (Ch. XIX, 41); e. g.:

She had set her heart on seeing the Lakes. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLII, 236.

Once apart from him, I was determined to keep apart. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XL, 286 b.

II. Except for the preterite conditional (47, b), *will* is not often used to express a pure desire or wish. Thus such a sentence as. \**When I will know the time, I take out my watch* is distinctly un-English, other verbs, such as *to want*, *to wish*, *to desire* implying various intensities of a wish, being mostly used instead. When *will* is used to express a wish, this meaning appears to be mixed with other notions, as in:

In fact I think, though I will not be certain, that he confided to me his opinion that Clavering was an utter scoundrel. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 351. (secondary notion: I am not inclined to be certain.)

A true English officer is not contented with beating the French, but he will scold them too. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, III, (secondary notion: It is his custom.)

I told her that I loved her, and would have her for my wife. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. III, 47. (secondary notion: I should like to have her for my wife.)

In such a sentence as the following, in which a pure wish is expressed, *will* has an archaic effect:

What will you have done with him that I caught stealing your plate in the pantry? GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

For further discussion see also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 619.

It may be added that the preterite conditional is often used in stating a wish in a general way, or in a modest form; thus in:

i. He that would hang his dog gives out first that he is mad. *Prov.*  
If you would be well served, you must serve yourself. *LONGFELLOW, Miles Standish, IX.*

In marriage sacrifices must be ever going on, if we would be happy. *E. J. HARDY, How to be happy though married, Ch. I, 3.*

If students would excel, they must bring the whole powers of their mind upon their art. *ib., Ch. III, 35.*

ii. We would call the attention of all who are interested in promoting military efficiency to this series of articles. *Times.*

Special mention may be made of the phrases *I would rather, -sooner, -as soon, -as lief (or lieve)*, in which *would* has arisen from the mistaken notion that it is the expansion of 'd, which in these connexions really stands for *had* (*Ch. II, 27; Ch. XLIX, 13, e; Ch. LIII, 9.*

*I would rather have lost a thousand pounds than lost the boy just now. DICK., Ch. XLII, 330 a.*

He had told her that he would sooner die than acknowledge her as his wife. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Marne, Ch. XII, 94.*

Also the following idioms, now hardly current in ordinary English, are of some particular interest (*Ch. XL, 142, Obs. III*):

She would have none of them. *BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. II, 8.*

She would have nothing to say to him. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 28.*  
Clara had made the uncourteous proposition to her mother with the express intention of making it understood that she would have nothing to say to him. *TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LXV, 284.*

III. A strong desire approaching to determination is sometimes expressed by *to will* regularly conjugated (*Ch. LVIII, 15, d*).

*I willed to stay on yet awhile on my native continent. THACK., Virg., Ch. XC, 969.*

*You willed not to play, and it was right you willed. EDNA LYALL, Don., II, 207.*

IV. *Will* is especially frequent in expressing willingness or the reverse. Numerous phrases are available to express various shades of this notion: such are *to be willing (or ready), (I) do not mind; to refuse, to decline, to be unwilling*, etc. Illustration is hardly necessary. It is, however, worth observing that *I am willing* sometimes appears to express a desire or wish; thus in:

*I am willing to show him so much seriousness in one scarce older than himself. GOLDSM., Good-nat. Man. I.*

*He was not willing to spoil sport. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 54.*

V. *Will*, when implying an intention, denotes but a weak form of volition and is, accordingly, weak-stressed and often shortened to [I], mostly printed or written 'll. The corresponding preterite, when undergoing the same shortening, becomes [d], in printed or written language mostly represented by 'd. Weak *will*, or 'll is naturally indistinct in meaning and may also indicate vague willingness. Sometimes it approaches to simple futurity. Compare *Ch. L, 59—60*. Here follow some few examples with these shortenings.

i. I'll not be ruined by your extravagance. *SHER., School, II, 1.*



Mr. Honeywood! You'll excuse my apprehensions. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

ii. I wish you'd let Old Glub come here to see me. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 103.

I do wish you'd stay so. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46.

Outspoken intention may be expressed by various words or phrases, such as *to intend*, *to mean*, *to be going*, etc., which require no illustration.

Note the common *I was going to say*, *What were you going to say?*, etc., as equivalents for the Dutch *Ik wou zeggen*, *Wat wou je zeggen?*, etc. Occasionally the English has *would*; thus in:

He regards the delinquent dish with a placid smile, as though he would say [etc.]. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, A, 10.

VI. It follows from the meaning of *will* that it is seldom connected with the pronouns of the first person in pure questions, i. e. such as imply a desire of enlightenment. In fact it occurs only: a) in such as are addressed to the *you* included in *we*, as in:

i. Will we take anything to drink? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 312.

"Madame will see that the dinners are quite simple", said M. Cavalcadour. — "Oh, quite!" said Rosa, dreadfully puzzled. — "Which would Madame like?" — "Which would we like, mamma?" Rosa asked. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. IV, (318).

ii. Would we accept an extended franchise, if it were hampered with such disgraceful conditions? MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. VI, § 1, 53.

Thus especially in enclitic questions, as in:

We won't trouble about it, will we? ANSTEE, *Fallen Idol*, Ch. V, 74.

β) Such as are a reflex of a preceding question, the speaker repeating the question put to him with substitution of *I* or *we* for *you*; thus in:

i. "And what will you do till then?" — "What will I do!" — "Yes; where do you mean to stay?" TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXII, 292.

"Will you promise not to press one question on me, if I beg you not to ask it?" — "Will I promise? What will I not promise to my Love?" DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. XX, 236.

"Will you have some bread and jam?" — "Will I have some bread and jam? Of-course I will." MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. VI, 51.

ii. "What would you ha' me do?" — "What would I have you do?" BEN JONSON, *Every Man in his Humour*, I, 1, 72.

*Will I* (or *we*) is, of course, common enough in rhetorical questions, which imply no desire for enlightenment, as in:

When I am in the army, won't I hate the French? THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 360.

Wouldn't we have dancing upstairs, eh, Miss Louey? TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XV, 262.

"You would not be very angry, would you?" — "Wouldn't I?" said Miss La Creevy. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. XX, 126 a,

VII. In connexion with pronouns of the second person *will* is naturally mostly used in questions, as in:

*Will you say that once more?*

This connexion is also common enough in reporting decisions of the person addressed, as in: *I was told that you would come and see me.*

Another case in which *will* may be expected to stand rather frequently in connexion with *you* (or *thou*) is that in which the speaker puts himself in the place of his interlocutor and states what he would do, given certain circumstances; thus in:

If your love for me were fixed and ardent, you would not lose your hold, even though I wished it. *SHER., Riv., III, 2.*

For the rest, as there can hardly be many occasions for the speaker to tell his interlocutor what is the latter's desire, wish, or determination, *will* is not often used with a pronoun of the second person. When the speaker does give his opinion regarding his interlocutor's will, he may do so: *a*) on the strength of the latter's former utterance on that head, as in:

Thou wouldst be great, | Art not without ambition, but without | The illness should attend it; what thou wouldst highly. | That wouldst thou holily; wouldst not play false, | And yet wouldst wrongly win. *SHAK., Mac b., I, 5, 19-23.*  
Scandal, you will not be ungenerous? ... You will not be so cruel. *CONGREVE, Love for Love, I, 2, (213-4).*

*β*) on the evidence of the latter's behaviour at the moment of speaking, as in:

So you will fly out! can't you be cool like me? *SHER., Riv., II, 1.*  
What! you will not come in, my friends? *LYTTON, Lady of Lyons, I, 3.*  
As you will fight, you shall have it. This time it's a fight to the finish. *Punch.*

VIII. In the third person the use of some synonym of *will* may be preferable because this verb, which is also the auxiliary of the future tense in this person, might be ambiguous, at least in the written or printed language. Thus the following sentences admit of two interpretations:

No man knoweth the Father save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him. *Bible, Matth., XI, 27.*

Now my intention is to involve him in fictitious distress, and let him see which of his friends will come to his relief. *GOLDSM., Good-nat. Man, I.*  
He will try his best at anything you approve. *G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. LII, 382.*

IX. The preterite conditional *would* + perfect infinitive implies non-fulfilment, or, in the case of the verb being attended by a negative, the reverse, of the action or state indicated by the main verb of the predicate.

He beat me then as if he would have beaten me to death. *DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 29 b.*

Robert Audley would have spoken, he would have once more expressed his gratitude for the help which had been given to him, but Mr. Mosgrave checked him with an authoritative gesture. *MISS BRADDON, Audley, II, Ch. XI, 218.*

It is worth observing that *would* as a preterite indicative is never followed by a perfect infinitive. Thus for *The year before a rich man had wanted to marry her* (*RID. HAG., Mees., Will, Ch. III, 28*) we could not say, \* *The year before a rich man would have married her.* Compare what is to be observed about *must* + perfect infinitive (35, Obs. I), and *could* + perfect infinitive (59, Obs. VII).

49. *Will* is frequently used in subordinate statements that depend on a head-clause with a verb or phrase denoting some form of

volition, the subjects of the statement and the head-clause being identical. *Will* appears then, in a manner, as a kind of echo of such a verb or phrase and is, accordingly, weak-stressed. The verbs or phrases here referred to are mostly:

a) such as express a determination, as in:

Figs now determined that he would commence the engagement by a charge on his own part. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 45.

He resolved that, when he should have had his use of Jonas, he would restrain him with an iron curb. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XIII, 328 a.

They agreed that they would go to Salisbury and would cross to Mr. Pecksniff's in the morning. *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 328 a.

b) Such as express a threat or a promise (or vow), as in:

i. He was at last forced to threaten that he would immediately make the whole matter public. MAC., Hist. XXI, Ch. IV, 663 (O.E.D.).

ii. I had sworn within myself that I would no longer be numbered amongst school-boys. DE QUINCEY, Conf. of an Opium-Eater, Ch. II, 13.

I promised him that I would walk there on a Sunday. DICK., Christm. Car., IV, 88.

When we had 300 l., we always vowed we would marry. THACK., Sam Titm., Ch. VI, 66.

He has vowed that he will never darken our doors again. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsem., Ch. XXXII, 281.

When the subjects differ *shall*, and in narrating past events *should*, takes the place of *will* (*would*). After verbs or phrases denoting determination *shall* (*should*) varies with other verbs, especially with *should*, irrespective of time-sphere, and *may*; less frequently with *to be*, *must* and *will*. For detailed discussion and for illustration see Ch. XLIX, 20—21.

The following examples exhibit exceptional practice:

i. I promised your father and mother that I should do all in my power to establish your innocence. MRS. WOOD, The Channings, Ch. XXXIV, 184.

ii. I promise you that you will not be disappointed. E. F. BENSON, The Angel of Pain, Ch. X.

#### VERBS DENOTING RECURRENCY.

50. The principal verbs used to express recurrency, i.e. the iterative aspect of an action (Ch. LI, 30), are *can*, *to use* and *will*.

51. *Can*, like the Dutch *kunnen*, is especially used to denote the fact that a peculiar tendency in a person or thing is apt to manifest itself occasionally. It is mostly found in nominal predicates. In connexion with a personal subject it suggests some secondary notion of capability. Compare WESTERN, Om Brugen af *can may* og *must* § 53, b.

i. \* I see you can be a little severe. SHER., School, II, 1.

He uses his ideas and words with a wise thrift and economy, as he uses his money, with which he could be generous and splendid upon great occasions. THACK., Eng. Hum., Swift, 15.

His manner seemed liable to equal alternations; he could be polite and affable, and he could be blunt and rough. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. III, 54.

Bernard could be quite as close as his uncle. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

She could be combative on occasion. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VI, 33.

Shakespeare, too, can be coarse, for his age permitted it. W. J. DAWSON, *Makers of Eng. Fict.*, Ch. I, 7.

She could be stern, when honour was involved. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 70.

\*\* Everybody who has lived in France, knows how good French butter can often be. DU MAURIER, *The Martin*, Ch. I.

It was as wet and chilly as an English June day can occasionally be. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, VII, 183.

It can be bitter cold in Carlisle. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. XIX, 380.

The weather can be very hot, even in winter, in Egypt, but it is not always hot. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 486, 257 *b*.

ii. She could assume sometimes the plumage of a dove; but then again she could occasionally ruffle her feathers like an angry kite. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. V, 49.

He gave his wife a look such as his countenance could wear when angered. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 272.

52. *To use* is used to represent an action or state as customary, (53) habitual, or prevalent. In Present English it is, in this function, chiefly used as a preterite indicative. As a pluperfect indicative it is less common, but describing it as unusual in this tense is beyond the mark.

i. He used to say that Croaker rhymed to joker — and so we used to laugh. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

When I was a very little girl, I used to say to my doll: "Now Dolly, I am not clever, you must have patience with me, like a dear." DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. III, 9.

ii. The turnkey noticed that his hands went often to his trembling lips again, as they had used to do when he first came in. DICK., *Little Dorrit* Ch. VI, 33 *a*.

On the whole ... she paid little or no attention to the family misfortunes. She had used to confine her attentions to occasional visits to Carrick and Mohill. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. VI, 68.

At school she had used to side with the Philistines in several battles. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. VII, 82.

The inspection of these chasms brought him a second pulsation of that old horror which he had used to describe to Viviette. *id.*, *Two on a Tower*, II, Ch. XX, 232.

He said, "Ellen had used to drink at Battersby." BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXVII, 349.

Note *a*) Occasionally *to use* is met with, in this function, also in other forms of the verb. Instances appear to be more frequent in older English than they are now. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 620, Anm. 2. It is found:

in the present tense; thus in: This night he means | To burn the lodging where you use to lie. SHAK., *As you like it*, II, 3, 23.

Were it not better done, as others use, | To sport with Amaryllis in the shade? MILTON, *Lycidas*, 67.

No wonder the French make much of Molière, and are now about to keep his three-hundredth birthday with much more pious ado than we use to honour any one's here. *Manch. Guard.*, V, No. 25, 517 b.

in the infinitive, thus chiefly after *to do* in the preterite:

i. And the free maids that weave their threads with bones | Do use to chant it. *SHAK.*, *Twelfth Night*, II, 4, 46.

Tattle does not use to belie a lady. *CONGREVE*, *Love for Love*, I, 2.

I do not use to let my wife be acquainted with the secret affairs of my state. *HOR. WALPOLE*, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. II, 72.

Folks don't use to meet for amusement with fire-arms. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, V, 1.

ii. You did not use to like cards; but time makes many changes. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pers.*, Ch. XXII, 232.

You didn't use to be stupid. *Bar. v. HÜTTEN*, *Pam.*, V, Ch. II, 247.

A construction like that in the following example, in which *couldn't use* stands for *used to be unable*, is, no doubt, very rare in ordinary English:

The class of folk that couldn't use to make a round O to save their bones from the pit can write their names now without a sputter of the pen. *HARDY*, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. III, 26.

β) In the majority of cases the preterite and the pluperfect imply not only iterativeness, but also discontinuance of the action or state in question. Frequently it is practically only the last notion which is meant: in fact the most common application of the preterite is the pointing out of a contrast of the past with the present; thus in:

I used to know him some years ago. *TROL.*, *Last Chron.*, I Ch. XXVIII, 319.

I know a deal about that — used to, used to. *G. ELIOT*, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XIV, 109.

She never used to take any interest in them. I wonder why she does now. *BEATR. HAR.*, *Ships*, II, Ch I, 116.

They used to be quite common, and now they are quite rare. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1854.

My memory isn't what it used to be. *LAUR. HOUSMAN*, *Ang. & Min.*, II, 58.

In the following example *did* seems to serve the same purpose:

"What kind of dog is he?" — "A Dandie Dinmont. We did have a Peke. It was a terrible tragedy. He *would* go after cats: and one day he struck a fighting Tom, and got clawed over both eyes — quite blinded — and so —". *GALSW.*, *Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. I, 5.

53. *Will* occurs in more than one shade of meaning; it is used: (55)

a) in stating that, given certain circumstances, an action or state regularly, frequently, or occasionally takes place, or manifests itself, as the consequence of a natural tendency of a person or thing. This *will* naturally occurs only in general sayings, stating what has been observed at all times, and the subject is always a (pro)noun of the third person. Except for reported statements, the tense is invariably the present; e. g.:

i. A falling drop will hollow a stone. *Prov.*

Boys will be boys. *Prov.*

What great ones do, the less will prattle of. *SHAK.*, *Twelfth Night*, I, 2, 33.



Foul deeds will rise, | Though all the earth o'erwhelm them, to men's eyes.  
id., Hamlet, I, 2, 257.

Valour will come and go. SHER., Riv., V, 3.

There needs no fostering for such memories as those. They are weeds which will grow rank and strong though nothing be done to foster them. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XXIII, 256.

The world will tolerate many vices, but not their diminutives. BAIN, Rhet., 31.  
Mulberries will fall when over-ripe. WALT. BESANT, By Celia's Arbour, I, 27.

Lionel — as a man will — was watching how his coachman would take his horses through the Marble Arch. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. V.

ii. A cat will often play with a mouse before she kills it. (KRÜGER, Synt., 4 Abteil., Zeitw., § 2948.)

Things will often be forced to go wrong, even when they have the strongest possible natural tendency of their own to go right. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LXIII, 258.

iii. Very slight causes will sometimes influence us strongly for good or evil. A blunt wedge will sometimes do what a sharp axe will not. CONGREVE, Love for Love, I, 2.

Note a) It will be observed: 1) that *will* has strong stress when the underlying notion of the sentence is *There is no preventing it*. This phrase is sometimes actually added, as in:

People will talk — there's no preventing it. SHER., School, I, 1.

2) that, when the subject indicates a person or anything thought of as a person, *will* also implies determination; thus distinctly in:

Blood will have blood. SHAK., Macb., III, 4, 122.

β) It must not, of course, be thought that in the case described above *will* is regularly used. On the contrary, it is often found absent where it would seem to fit in excellently; thus in:

Fools rush in where angels fear to tread. POPE, Es. on Critic., III, 625.

I know there are a set of malicious, prating, prudent gossips, both male and female, who murder characters to kill time, and will rob a young fellow of his good name before he has years to know the value of it. SHER., School, II, 3, (385). (Observe the varied practice.)

The colonel squared himself, as military men do. BIRMINGHAM, The Adventures of Dr. Whitty, Ch. I, 21.

b) in describing a particular virtue or defect in a person or thing. As in the case mentioned above under a), the tense is the neutral present and the subject is a noun; e. g.:

These candles will burn six hours. (KRÜGER, Synt., § 2948.)

These watches will last a lifetime.

(These) tablets will relieve: — headache, neuralgia, etc. in 5 minutes. Advertisement.

The cable requires delicate handling, for the slightest kink or twist will ruin it utterly. Graph.

c) in representing an action or state of a particular person or thing (or number of persons or things) as customary, habitual, or pre-valent, especially under certain circumstances; thus in:

i. As other men of his age will take notice to you what such a minister said upon such and such an occasion, he will tell you when the Duke of Monmouth danced at court. ADDISON, Spect., II.

If you ask a woman (in Little Ireland) the age of her child, she will reply that it was "either eight or nine about five weeks before last hopping." Good Words.

Should the boxes not be wanted immediately, they will be taken to the luggage-room, and will be given up to any one who can produce the checks. *ib.*

ii. My father's face would always brighten, when old Pontifex's name was mentioned. SAM. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. I, 4.

Note. In the present tense this *will* is rarely, if ever, used in the first person; occasionally only in reported statements, as in: *He says I will sit for hours doing nothing.* SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2202, f.

The preterite *would*, on the other hand, occurs rather frequently in the first person, also in non-reported statements; thus in:

And sometimes, as we were running gaily across the Cathedral yard together, expecting to meet nobody, we would meet Mr. Jack Maldon. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XVI, 119 a.

I would sit sometimes of a night, opposite my aunt, thinking how I had frightened Dora that time. *ib.*, Ch. XXXVII, 270 b.

I would then leap from my bed, light a candle, unlock my cabinet, take out the cross, and holding it aloft, prepare to dash it against the wall, when my hand would be arrested by the same ancestral voices, Romany and Gorgio whispering in my ears and at my heart. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, VIII, I, 258.

54. Obs. I. Semantically the first *will* is distinguished from *can* in denoting, as a rule, a regular manifestation of a tendency, as compared with the occasional manifestation which is always implied in the latter.

II. In its third application *will* in the preterite tense often conveys practically the same meaning as *used (to)*. Thus it would be difficult to find any semantic difference between *would* and *used (to)* in:

They used to nod to one another when they met, and now and then they would exchange a word or two. SWEET, *A Story of Two Englishmen*. Sometimes he used to tell us of his expeditions through the woods and fields round his home, and how he explored the solitary brooks and ponds; and then he would describe the curious animals and birds he saw. *id.*, *The Old Chapel*.

*Would*, however, does not imply any discontinuance of an action or state, as is often the case with *used (to)*. It could not, therefore, be substituted for the latter in the examples mentioned in 52, Note β.

III. Grammatically *will* differs from *to use*: α) in being quite common in the present tense, and β) in being unusual in the first person.

55. a) As has been observed in 25, Note α), modal *shall* is sometimes tinged with a notion of recurrency. In Present English *shall* is currently used in this mixed function in sentences described in 25, a). For the rest this application of the verb seems to have fallen into disuse. See the O. E. D., s. v. *shall*, 9. To the example cited in 25, Note α) we may add the following:

You will have noticed how very often it may happen that the son shall exhibit the maternal type of character, or the daughter possess the characteristics of the father's family. HUXL., *Darw.*, Ch. XI, 400.

I say at the same time that it may depend upon structural differences which

shall be absolutely inappreciable to us with our present means of investigation. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 474.

For further comment see also FRANZ, SHAK. Gram., § 620, Anm. 1; DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 28, *b*, Anm. 1.

*b*) Also *to like* sometimes conveys an additional notion of recurrency; thus in:

Evil tidings sometimes like to fly in the finest weather. G. ELIOT, Scenes, I, Ch. IX, 66. (Dutch: Slechte tijdingen willen graag in omloop geraken in het mooiste weer.)

*c*) Sometimes an iterative notion may also be discernible in *may*; thus in:

How one may be deceived at a little distance! SHER., Riv., V, 2.

56. There are, besides, numerous phrases in constant use to impart an iterative aspect to a predicate, sometimes exchangeable for one or the other of the above verbs, sometimes doing duty when these verbs for some semantic or grammatical reason are impracticable. Compare also Ch. III, 34. Some of these phrases are of some special interest, and fully deserve illustration. Such are:

*to have a knack (trick or way)*: i. All these bills arrived in a week, as they have a knack of doing. THACK., Sam. Titm. Ch. X, 126.

ii. Brown Major had a trick of bringing up unpleasant subjects. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 94.

He knit his shaggy brows, as he had a trick of doing. Miss BURNETT, Little Lord, 140.

iii. They (*sc.* tourists) had a way of hitting upon those very things which he valued most. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. VI, 254.

Life is short, and Lives have a way of being too long Athen., No. 4433, 404 *a*. Front Benches in that House had a way of sticking up for one another. Times.

*to be apt (given or liable)*: i. Men are apt to acquire peculiarities that are continually ascribed to them. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXIX, 309. Visitors are apt to forget that the House is not a theatre. Graph.

ii. The two are equally given to talking about what they don't understand. MAC., South. Col., (104*a*).

In houses where he got friendly he was given to stretch himself at full length on the rug while he talked, and was apt to be discovered in this attitude by occasional callers. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XLVI, 342.

iii. A person who is ignorant of legal matters is always liable to make mistakes, when he tries to photograph a court scene with his pen. M. TWAIN, Pudd'nhead Wilson, 5.

*to be accustomed (used or wont)*: i. I kept lights at the mast-head and a constant watch forward to look out for fishing smacks, which are accustomed to lie at anchor on the banks. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., II, 13.

It was the book she was accustomed to lay open before her on special occasions. G. ELIOT, Mill., Ch. XII, 112.

They (*sc.* these achievements of pictorial art) more than once received embellishment from portraits of Satan, such as he is accustomed to be drawn. LYTON, Paul Clif., Ch. I, 3.

ii. \* I remember, | I remember | Where I was used to swing. THOM. HOOD, I remember, III.

Wee Willie Winkie betrayed a special and unusual interest in Miss Alarbyce and was used to regard her gravely with unwinking eye. RUDY KIPL., Wee Willie Winkie.

\*\* Mr. Darcy looked just as he had been used to look in Hertfordshire. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXX, 171.

There was a want of that cheerfulness which had been used to characterize her style, *ib.*, Ch. XXXIV, 187.

She looked at him pretty much as Mrs Pipchin had been used to do. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 103.

He gave one (sc. sovereign) to the little servant who had been used to wait upon the Costigans. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 171.

In those early days she had been much loved by others of her own sex and age — and had been used to be seen about the village as one of three — all nearly of the same year — walking home from school. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. V, 42.

iii. It (sc. the village street) was the same as it was wont to be in old times. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXV, 97a.

"Romance is a very pretty thing," Lady Rowley had been wont to say to her daughters. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. IV, 25.

The beadle was wont to be followed by the baker's man. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

Note x.) Another application of the adjective *wont* with an iterative force is that illustrated by:

In the days of my youth there were wont to be two solemn metropolitan institutions. J. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, J, 122.

β) An iterative aspect is also conveyed by the noun *wont*, and the verb *wont*; the latter used archaically both as a present and a preterite. Compare Ch. LVIII, 18.

i. Major Pendennis was loud in his praises of Mr. Warrington, — more loud and enthusiastic than it was the Major's wont to be. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 165.

ii. And we must hold by wood and wold, | As outlaws wont to do. SCOTT, *Alice Brand*, I.

¶ Two maidens and their devoted bachelors cannot succeed in a disguise and an escape, the world is changed from what it wont to be. *id.*, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXIII, 297.

to be in the habit (or to have a habit): i. He was in the habit of shaving his head for coolness. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 104.

Scrooge was not much in the habit of cracking jokes. *id.*, *Christm. Carol*, I, 19.

ii. The chimney has a habit of smoking when the fire is first lighted. O. E. DL. s.v. *Habit*, 9.

#### VERBS DENOTING A CAPABILITY OR A PERMISSION.

57. The principal verbs belonging to this group are *can*, *may*, and *must*.

58. *Can* is the typical verb to express a physical, mental, moral, or legal capability of a being, or anything thought of as a being, to do a certain action, or get into a certain state; e. g.:



i. Every man ... thinks that he can drive, and that he can derive. SKEAT, *Primer of Eng. Etym.*, Pref.

You can take a horse to the water, but you cannot make him drink. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 62.

ii. I can solve that problem. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 177.

She had told him as plainly as words could speak that she could not bring herself to be his wife. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LXXX, 433 (= as she could express in words).

iii. The man who can break the laws of hospitality and tempt the wife of a friend, deserves to be branded as the pest of society. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (413).

If dogs can feel pity, I verily believe he reciprocated the sentiment with all his heart. WASH. *Irv.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 38.

iv. The King only can pardon. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, III.

At present the Governor is, as to all executive measures, absolute. He can make war and conclude peace, appoint public functionaries and remove them. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (602a).

59. Obs. I. Capability is often expressed by *may* when the speaker wishes to intimate that he is uncertain whether the capability will be exercised. Thus in *The Severn river ... is deep enough ... as you may see by the boats it carries* (Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 18) *may* is probably preferred to *can*, because the speaker considers it doubtful or uncertain that the person he addresses, will go out of his way to satisfy himself as to the depth of the river by looking at the ships it carries. It is only natural that there is often occasion for this use of *may* when the subject is vague or indefinite, i.e. when it is preceded by the indefinite article, or the generalizing definite article, or is a plural without any defining adjunct, or when it is a (pro)noun of an indefinite meaning. It follows also that this *may* is frequently met with in a passive predicate (Ch. XLVII, 9, a). Possibly the use of this *may* may be apprehended as a survival of the practice in older English, which used *may* as the ordinary expression of capability (Obs. VI). For discussion of this *may* see also WESTERN, *Om Brugen of can, may og must*, § 50.

i. A clever man with a clever wife may take any place they please. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 79.

A woman with fair opportunities, and without an absolute hump, may marry whom she likes. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

ii. Thus for a few shillings the reader may have a whole bookshelf of the immortals. *Advert. of Every Man's Libr.*

iii. Fools may ask more questions than wise men can answer. *Prov.* (For the use of this *can* see Obs. V.)

Road = a place where ships may ride at anchor at some distance from the shore, WEBST., *Dict.*, s: v. *road*.

iv. You may know a man by his companions. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 24a.

One may read husband in his face at this distance. SHER., *School*, II, 3.

You may fancy the feelings of these women when they were told that the day was over, and both their husbands were safe. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 349.

The dear Prince is so entertaining. What wit he has! Any one may see that he has spent his whole life in courts. LYTTON, *Lady of Lyons*, II, 1.



You may just as well reason with a post as reason with mamma. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, II, 39.

v. These rumours at length reached the ears of the good dame Heyliger, and, as may be supposed, threw her into a terrible alarm. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 120).

She would scold him, — frightfully, loudly, scornfully, and worse than all, continually. But of this he had so much habitually, that anything added might be borne also. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XI, 118.

The reason of this may be easily guessed. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, III, Ch. IV, 74.

What may be done at any time is never done at all. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, I, 18.

Problems may be solved in the study, which have baffled all those who have sought a solution by the aid of their senses. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 16.

*Can* and *may* are sometimes even met with alternately in one and the same sentence or sequence of sentences, especially in passive predicates; thus in:

The whole 27 Volumes can now be had in uniform style and binding for 3 guineas, or any volume may be had separately, price 26. SAMPSON LOW, MARSTON & CO. (KRUIS., *Handbk.*, § 642).

II. Owing to the same uncertainty implied by the predicate, *may* is a frequent variant of *can* in certain adverbial clauses of degree, such as:

They left Glaucus and Nydia to save themselves as they might. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, V, Ch. V, 144 a

At one end of the hall is the great staircase all in black oak, as dismal as may be. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. VIII, 79.

Often she tried, as gently as might be, to wean him from this frantic worship of the Muses. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. X, 191.

I must be in London as soon as may be. MARJ. BOWEN, *The Rake's Progress*, Ch. III, 39.

There was no time for the British force to do anything more than defend themselves as best they might. Graph.

The following examples may be reduced to the same type:

It is the real purpose of her heart to get money how she may. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. III, 102.

One has to do the best one may. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8396, 6b.

Compare with the above the following examples in which *can* is used in practically the same connexions:

Her father appears to have been as bad a father as a very honest, affectionate and sweet-tempered man can well be. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (702b).

The clear duty of a man of any wealth is to serve the people as he best can. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 186.

For further examples showing the wavering between *can* and *may* in clauses of the above descriptions see also WESTERN, *Om Brugen af can, may og must*, § 47 f.

III. *May* may also express a potential capability in adverbial clauses of purpose introduced by (so) *that* (Ch. XLIX, 36, Obs. VI); e. g.:

Awake your senses that you may the better judge. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III. 2. 17. (= may be able to judge better.)

IV. The preterite conditional *might* is regularly used to express a

doubtful capability, either of the present or the past, depending on the fulfilment of a condition, expressed or understood, that is a mere conception of the mind. See also WESTERN, l. c. page 65.

i. There are a hundred faults in this thing, and a hundred things that might be said to prove them beauties. GOLDS., VIC., Pref.

If I had the pen of George Robins, I might describe the Rookery properly. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. VII, 76.

I think, sir, if you were to order brass rods, to be fixed from one corner to the other, we might find means to fasten them. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

ii. He had also formed a very exaggerated notion of the wealth which might be obtained by plundering them. MAC., CLIVE, (513a).

When the notion of doubt does not enter into a conditional sentence of the above type, *could* is the ordinary word; thus in:

Though your friendship could raise me to a throne, or your resentment sink me to the grave, yet would I despise both. GOLDS., VIC., Ch. XXIV, 406.

Now could I fly with him to the antipodes. SHER., RIV., III, 3,

He could dance a British hornpipe, a German waltz, or a Spanish fandango, if need were. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. XXVI, 243.

If the gentleman's servant would wheel along the paths, he could keep nigh us, and we could lift it over the stiles, and that. DICK., PICKW., Ch. XIX, 163.

But even in this case *might* is not seldom met with: thus especially when the fulfilment of the action or state in question is represented to depend on the discretion of the subject, as in:

The representative of that house might, if he liked, make an alliance with the best. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXII, 454.

One often fancies in reading him (sc. Swift) that he dares not be eloquent when he might. THACK., Eng. Hum., I, 16.

"He's a comical old fellow", said Scrooge's nephew, "that's the truth: and not so pleasant as he might be." DICK., Christm. Car., III, 77.

A doubtful capability not thought of as depending on the fulfilment of a condition is regularly expressed by *can* (*could*) + some modal adverb; thus in:

In a few days I can, perhaps, tell you more about it all. SWEET.

V. Certain incapability of whatever description is always expressed by *cannot*, unless, indeed, some equivalent phrase is preferred (Obs. VIII); thus in:

The Englishman's house is his castle: every wind may enter it, but the king cannot. LORD CHATHAM

You cannot enter now. TEN., GUIN., 168.

"Your number, Madam?" — "I have no number. Don't you know who I am?" — "I do, Madam, but I am sorry you cannot pass." GRAPH.

Few lines of verse are more often quoted, or more easily abused in quotation, than Mr. Kipling's announcement that East and West can never meet. MANCH. GUARD., 5/3, 1926, 183a.

VI. In Old English a capability was regularly expressed by *mæg*; thus in:

God is ælmihtig, and mæg dōn eall þæt hē wile. SWEET, A. S. Primer, I.

The O. E. D. describes this use of *may* as "obs. exc. arch." Although in living English it has left no trace, it cannot be denied that instances are not unfrequent in English of a comparatively recent date. Some of the examples cited in Obs. I might, perhaps, be included here.

The exhalations, whizzing in the air, | Give so much light that I may read by them. SHAK., JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 44.

"Let us entreat you stay till after dinner." — "It may not be." — "Let me entreat you." — "It cannot be." id., TAMING, III, 2, 199. (Observe the varied practice.)

Twice she essayed, and twice in vain, | Her accents might no utterance gain. SCOTT, MARM., II, XXV.

What mortal his own doom may guess? BYRON, MAZEPPA, XX.

And bold if both had been, yet they | "Against so many may not stay." WORDSW., WHITE DOE, III, 203.

To tell his might my wit may not suffice; | Foolish men he can make them out of wise; — | For he may do all that he will devise. id., CUCKOO & NIGHT, III. He was the loved of all, yet none : O'er his low bed may weep. MRS. HEMANS, THE GRAVES OF A HOUSEHOLD, II.

We four may build some plan | Foursquare to opposition. TEN., PRINC., V, 221.

VII. The combination conditional *could* or *might* + perfect infinitive implies non-fulfilment, or in the case of their being attended by a negative, the reverse, of the action or state indicated by the predicate; thus in :

i. Paul would have been glad to have told him (sc. that he was glad to see him), if he could have done so with the least sincerity. DICK., DOMB., CH. XII, 104.

If I had not been so foolish as to enter into that agreement with Messrs Meeson, I could have got the money by selling the new book, and I should have been able to take Jeannie abroad. RID. HAG., MEES. WILL, CH. IV, 38. Had I sought all England over, I could scarcely have found a system more exactly fitting a child like Jane Eyre. CH. BRONTË, JANE EYRE, CH. IV, 36.

ii. It is certain that at this time he continued poor; and it is equally certain that by cruelty or dishonesty he might have become rich. MAC., WAR. HAST., (599 b).

They might have been great people in the country, they preferred being little people in town; they might have chosen friends among persons of respectability and rank, they preferred being chosen as acquaintance by persons of 'ton'. LYTTON.

It deserves observing that the construction *could* or *might* + perfect infinitive is not available when these verbs are preterite indicatives. Thus we could not say \**He told me that he could not have done all his work* in place of *He told me that he had not been able to do all his work*. Compare what has been observed about *must* (35, Obs. I) and *would* (48, Obs. IX) in analogous constructions.

VIII. Numerous phrases are in constant use to express various shades of meaning of *can* or *may*. These verbs having no other forms than those of the present and the preterite tenses, the phrases have to do duty for the wanting forms. Among the latter *to be able* and *to be capable* are the most frequent.

*To be able* is almost exclusively said of living beings, and when a physical or mental capability is to be expressed; thus in :

How the plague shall I be able to pass for a Jew? SHER., SCHOOL, III, 1.

I can't write, and I don't know when I shall be able to learn. MRS. CRAIK., JOHN HAL, CH. II, 14.

In the following example, in which the phrase is used with the name

of a thing for the subject, it appears to be used for the sake of the metre:

This visage tells thee that my doom is past: | Nor should the change be mourned, even if the joys | Of sense were able to return as fast | And surely as they vanish. WORDSW., *Laodamia*, 69.

In the rare case that *able* is followed by a passive voice the subject may, indeed, be the name of a thing, but the capability is really ascribed to a person that is not mentioned (Ch. LV, 89); thus in:

More than that is able to be forgiven to a writer (sc. Macaulay) who has contrived to render a fragment of history more interesting than many a novel. *Lit. World*, 15.1, 1897, 55c.

Certain books only were at the time of the compilation of this list (1926) in print and able to be purchased. MICHAEL SADLEIR, *Trollope, Bibliography of Anth. Trol.*, b, 412.

*To be capable* is used in referring to either living beings or inanimate things. It may express a physical or mental, as well as a moral or legal capability: thus in:

(This is) a knowledge which I believe this book to be capable of imparting, if studied diligently and not hurriedly cast aside for a more ambitious one. SWEET, A. S. *Prim.*, Pref.

Two were water-carriers, each of whom carried about his waist a large hollow belt of skin, capable of containing several gallons of water. CON. DOYLE, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

His feeble and uncultivated mind was incapable of perceiving ... what he must lose, if the European trade should be driven ... to some other quarter. MAC., *Clive*, (513a).

The man is capable of lifting heavy weights. WEBST., *Dict.*

In Florence no noble is even capable of holding the meanest office in the state. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. I, 78.

Further approximate equivalents of *can* or *may* are illustrated in:

i. And for the wits, I'm sure I am in a condition to be even with them. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, I. (201).

ii. We are in a situation to offer more than the usual commission. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 69.

iii. I think I am in a position to give some indications as to how and when this development came about. MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. VII, 63.

iv. After much hesitation he told her of a plan it was in his power to carry out. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, I, II, 24.

v. He was powerless to make out what it meant. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 56.

60. *May* is the ordinary verb to express the fact that the conditions rendering it possible for a person to do a certain action or to get into a certain state are (were) beyond the sphere of his control. It is used in various shades of meaning; i. e. the underlying idea in the speaker's mind may be:

a) It is permitted; thus in:

Mr. Bunker, you may go. You have done all I wanted. BESANT, *All Sorts & Cond. of Men*.

b) It does not seem amiss (Dutch: *Het schijnt niet ondienstig*). This meaning of *may* is not unfrequently accent-



uated by an absolute *as well* (O. E. D., s. v. *as*, C, 2, c); thus in:  
i. You may add that you never saw me in such a rage before. *SHER., Riv., IV, 2.*

You may keep your breath to cool your porridge. *READE, Never too late, I, Ch. I, 8.*

ii. As some readers are dull of apprehension, I may as well say what the moral of this history is. *THACK., Snobs, Ch. I, 16.*

We thought we might as well look in; at any rate there could be no harm in doing so. *id., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 19.*

c) It does not seem exceptionable (Dutch: *Er schijnt niets op tegen te zijn*); thus in:

From this struggle we turn to the more silent, but hardly less important revolution from which we may date our national education. *MAC., Hist.*

If I may so express it, I was steeped in Dora. *DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXIII, 235b.*

d) It is only proper (Dutch: *Het is niet meer dan gepast*). This meaning of *may* comes near to that of *ought*; e. g.:

I know it is not wrong, but your son might look higher than to be an artist. *THACK., Newc., II, 185. T. (WESTERN, I.C. § 50.)*

Perhaps it occurred to him how he himself might be thankful to have had a good breakfast. *ASCOTT R. HOPE, Old Pot.*

e) There is every reason for it (Dutch: *Daar is alle reden voor*, or *Daar is wel aanleiding toe*). In this case *may* is regularly attended by *well*; e. g.:

i. You may well look astonished. *KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. X, 53b.*

You may well look surprised. *JEROME, Three Men, Ch. XVII, 218.*

You may well say that. *ib., Ch. XVII, 222.*

ii. Such signs might well be supposed to indicate the approaching end of that domination. *MAC., Popes, (562a).*

The house was thunderstruck, and well it might be so. *id., War. Hist., (645b).*

When I presented my bouquet, the dog gnashed his teeth with jealousy. Well he might. If he had the least idea how I adored his mistress, well he might. *DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXIII, 239b.*

f) It is not unsafe. In this meaning *may* is chiefly found in such expressions as *You may depend (on it)*, *You may be certain (or sure)*, *You may rest assured (certain, content(ed), satisfied or secure)*. For illustration see also 8, s. v. *rest*.

You may depend on my information. *GOLDSM., Good-nat. Man, III.*

She had a Peerage, as you may be certain. *THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 42.*

As for the names of the guests, they, you may be sure, found their way to the same newspaper. *ib., Ch. V, 52.*

As you may believe, we are all in a state of the greatest anxiety. *RUDY. KIPL., He went for a Soldier, Ch. VII, 163.*

61. Obs. I. In asking permission, the preterite conditional *might* is often used instead of *may* to mark modesty. Thus *Might I ask* is often preferred to *May I ask* (*SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2305*).

Also in the second and third shades of meaning *might* is frequently used for *may* from motives of modesty; thus in:

You might as well fight in a sentry-box. *SHER., Riv., V, 3.*



She might as well be marked to some purpose. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. X, 100.

The use of *might* corresponding to that of *mocht* in such a sentence as *Mocht my dat nog eens te beurt vallen*, appears to be unusual. There is an instance in:

Oh! might I kiss those eyes of fire, | A million scarce could quench desire.  
BYRON, Hours of Idleness (O. E. D., s.v. *may*, 6, a).

II. In the fourth shade of meaning *might* takes the place of *may* to mark remissness in what is prescribed by propriety. It is, accordingly, in frequent use in the language of complaint, reproof or disapprobation. The practice is pronounced to be colloquial by the O. E. D. (s.v. *may*, 3, i).

In my honeymoon, too, when my most inveterate enemy might relent. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 22b.

"Did mortal ever look upon eyes like hers, or view a more sylphlike figure?" — "She might have a little more flesh, Mr. Tidd," says the captain. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 76.

III. *Might* is sometimes found in connexions which give rise to the supposition that it may be used in a sense approaching to that of the German *möchte* = (I) *should like to*. The O. E. D., however, registers no such sense of *might*, and as the verb, as used in the following examples, also admits of other interpretations, it is not improbable that the above supposition cannot be upheld.

Adieu to thee fair Rhine! .. | Thine is a scene alike where souls united | Or lonely Contemplation thus might stray. BYRON, Ch. Har., III, LIX.

A fair tale might I tell to you | Of Sigurd, who the dragon slew. W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Fostering of Aslaugh, I.

For some weeks there was hardly anything talked of, we might almost say hardly anything thought of, in England, but the story of the rebellion that had taken place in the island of Jamaica. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XX, 281. In spite of his frequent travels the movements of the 'Reise-Kaiser' are always watched with anxiety by European statesmen, and nowhere has the interchange of courtesies caused more curiosity — I might almost say alarm — than in France. Daily Mail.

IV. *Might* + perfect infinitive implies non-fulfilment or, in the case of the verb being attended by a negative, the reverse, of the predication (Ch. LV, 61); thus in:

After such a year of trial, I might have flattered myself that I should not have been insulted with a new probation of my sincerity. SHER., Riv., V, 1.

The appearance of a new boy did not create the sensation that might have been expected. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 104.

You might as well have thrown your cake into the gutter. ASCOTT R. HOPE, Old Pot.

My Eustace might have sat for Hercules. TEN., Gard. Daught., 7.

V. For *may* in the meaning mentioned under 60, a), periphrases like *to be permitted*, *to be allowed*, *to have (one's) leave*, etc. are in common use, especially in sentences that are not interrogative. Except for subordinate clauses, the preterite *might* is almost regularly replaced by one or another of these phrases. Thus we hardly ever meet with such sentences as \**yesterday I might go out*. Illustration of the above

phrases is hardly necessary. It may however be observed that they mostly imply another permitter than *may*, as is shown by a comparison of two such sentences as *You may go now*, which is practically equivalent to *You have my leave* (or *I give you leave*) *to go now* and *You are allowed* (or *permitted*) *to go now*, which is tantamount to saying *The people present, myself included, give you leave to go now*. It should be added that in colloquial English the use of *might* is mostly avoided. Thus *I asked him if I might go now* would, in spoken English, be replaced by *I asked him if he would give me leave to go now*, or *if he would allow* (or *permit*) *me to go now*. Here follow some examples with the rather unusual *might*:

I think if I might sometimes talk a little to old Glubb, I should be able to do better. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 109.

I was afraid to ask him once more if you might come home. *id.*, *Christm. Car.*, II, 41.

He asked me if he might come in, Miss YONGE, *Heir of Redcl.*, I, Ch. V, 83.

Before a passive infinitive *might* would, however, be preferred to *to be allowed* (or *permitted*), a construction with two successive passives having a discordant effect (Ch. LV, 88).

It was a settled thing in this family that no question might be asked about what he knew in the way of business. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

While the interrogative *may I* in the sense of *am I permitted* is quite common, *may not I* (or *may I not*) in the corresponding negative sense seems to be rather unusual.

VI. Also *can* is often applied in a way which does not appreciably differ from that of *may*. Thus we find it quite frequently in the sense mentioned under 60, *a*), less frequently in the senses mentioned under 60, *d*) and *f*). Compare WESTERN, I. c., § 49.

i. "You can leave the room, sir!" said Mr. Dombey haughtily. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XIII, 117.

"I was going home," he said, "but I can defer my ride a little." — "And you can, if you please, rest here." G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LIII, 388.

PRETTY COUSIN. "Bobby, how dare you give me a kiss?" — BOBBY (unabashed) "Well, if you don't like it, you can give it me back again." PUNCH.

I suppose I can raise my voice if it pleases me so to do? *ib.*

ii. If you were going to be charitable, you could have looked out some really poor person. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

iii. Most gladly, we can well believe, did the Nana come. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 184.

You can be certain she carried out her threat. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5376, 2c.

Of especial frequency is *can I?* in the meaning of *am I allowed?* Its preterite conditional, *could I?* is used practically to the exclusion of *might I?*

i. \* Can I come in? RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VIII, 86.

\*\* Could I speak a word with you, sir, if you please? DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XX, 173 b.

Could I say a word to you before you go into court? *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXXV, 251 b.

The use of *can* (*could*) instead of *may* in questions may be due to motives of courtesy, the speaker not wishing to imply that he considers H. POUTSMA, II.

the granting of permission to be dependent on the discretion of the person spoken to. Compare what has been observed in 41, c) about the use of *to be* instead of *shall* in questions.

The distinction which DEUTSCHBEIN (System, § 34, 3) tries to establish between *can* and *may*, to the effect that the former indicates a more absolute or unreserved permission than the latter, is hardly borne out by practice. The difference between *you can go* and *you may go* commented on by KRUISINGA (Handbk.<sup>1</sup>, § 688), is that between *can* as described in 58 and *may* as described in 60, a).

62. *Must not* is said to indicate a prohibition, *may not* the withholding or denying of a permission, in other words *may not* is considered to be a milder form of saying what ought not be done than *must not*. Compare JESPERSEN, Negation 94 ff; KRUISINGA, Handbook<sup>1</sup>, § 689. The theory can, however, hardly be said to be borne out by practice. The only facts than can be safely upheld are: 1) that *must not* is more frequent than *may not*, probably for the simple reason that in the latter *may* often has a modal function and the negative then goes with the following infinitive (18, b); 2) that *may not* is often due to a preceding *may* in one and the same sentence or sequence of sentences; 3) that *must not* is not used in enclitic questions, 4) that *must not* rarely stands for *might not*. Here follow some few examples for a comparison of *may* (or *might*) *not* with *must not*:

i. \* Being held a foe, he may not have access | To breathe such vows as lovers use to swear. SHAK., Rom. & Jul., II, Chor., 9.

I may not yield to any dame the palm of my liege lady's beauty. LYTON, Rienzi, III, Ch. II, 132.

Yet a gentleman may not keep a public-house, may he? DICK., Great Expect., Ch. XXII, 213.

How it is that I appear before you in a shape that you can see, I may not tell. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 23.

And what has Colonel Osborne to do between you and your father in any matter with which I may not be made acquainted? TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. III, 23.

It may not be that I and mine should transfer ourselves to your roof and sojourn there. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LXXIX, 431. (= It is improper ...)

I may not speak, I am bound by my most solemn promise not to reveal the matter to you as it really is. Household Words.

Would he break faith with one I may not name? TEN., Lanc. & El., 681.

Why mayn't I say to Sam that I'll marry him? Why mayn't I? HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, I, II, 29.

\*\* I suppose the bishop has somebody near him to tell him what he may do, and what he may not do. TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. L, 82.

It is not always easy for a bishop to know what he may do, and what he may not do. ib., I, Ch. XI, 116.

"Now may I talk about him?" said Lily, as soon as the door was closed behind his back. — "No; you may not." id., Small House, II, Ch. L, 244.

\*\*\* One Sunday I cried myself into a fit on the dining-room floor, because I might not have the violin. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 312.

And then I thought that, because I was a doomed man, cut off from the pleasures which make a lovely thing of life, it did not follow that I might not love you in my own quiet way. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XX, 109.

Before Randolph left her that summer, a letter arrived from Sam to inform her that he had been unexpectedly fortunate in obtaining the shop ... Might he not run up to town to see her? HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, I, ii, 28. Observe: It might not be, Fate had ruled otherwise. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 175 (compare: This was not to be. MAC., *Popes*, (546 *b.*))

ii. \* "And what have you been doing?" — "That I must not tell," said the child. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. I, 2*b.*

Rubbish must not be shot here. PUNCH.

These racks are provided for light articles, but they must not be used for heavy articles. Notice in Eng. railway compartments.

\*\* One must not look at a horse, while another may leap over the hedge. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. V, 76.

\*\*\* "You must not marry more than one person at a time, may you Peggotty?" — "Certainly not," says Peggotty with the promptest decision. — "But if you marry a person, and the person dies, why then you may marry another person, mayn't you, Peggotty?" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 9*b.*

\*\*\*\* He had not been able to resist the temptation of spitting in his face, since he must not throttle him to death. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 263.

This seems to be a fitting place to draw attention to some peculiar applications of *must*.

i. Must there no more be done? SHAK., *Hamlet*, V, 1, 256. (This does not mean, as it would in Present-day English: 'Is it not necessary to do more?' but: 'Is it not permitted (or Is it forbidden) to do more?')

ii. If to the city sped — what waits him there? | To see profusion that he must not share. GOLDSM., *Des. Vil.*, 310. (This seems to mean: '... To see profusion which he is not (destined) to share', or 'which it is not granted to him to share'.)

#### THE VERB TO DARE.

63. *To dare* when followed by an infinitive mostly has the same meaning as the Dutch *durven*. For the anomalies in its conjugation, the irregularities in its construction with *to do*, and the use of *to* before the following infinitive, see Ch. LV, 16—31. In this place it is sufficient to observe that in the combination *I dare say* the meaning of the verb is considerably faded, the whole word-group, in fact, constituting a kind of unit that has the value of an adverbial adjunct. This explains why its variations as to person, number or tense are comparatively rare. Sometimes we find the two verbs printed in combination, and some writers even go so far as to coin a new verb *daresay*, which they furnish with a tense-ending, or use as an infinitive. Compare STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 770, 1025, 1051. The expression is not seldom tinged with a colour of mockery, and is used in two shades of meaning, viz. that of:

a) *presumably, I have no doubt, I am prepared to admit*, as in: "He wa'n't the indulgent father that I am, Jack." — "I dare say not, sir." SHER., *Riv.*, III, 1, (241).



I dare say she thought of the dress she was to wear as bridesmaid. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 59.

I daresay I gave myself airs as editor of that confounded 'Museum'. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 9.

*b) I do not wonder; thus in:*

"I should be quite amused to know what you did talk about." — "I dare say you would." BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. III, 13.

Note *a)* The group-meaning of the phrase is not, naturally, affected when *I* is exchanged for the editorial *we*, or when, in reported speech, the preterite takes the place of the present, the third person being mostly substituted for the first.

i. We dare say this aspect of the matter has been emphasized by that section of the Unionist canvassers. Westm. Gaz., No. 6228, 1c.

ii. \* "I have always defended you, and said, I didn't think you so ugly by any means." — "Thank you." — "And I dared say you'd make a very good sort of a husband." SHER., School, III, 1, (392).

\*\* Missis was, she dared say, glad enough to get rid of such a tiresome, ill-conditioned child. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 24.

Now if he were to write that and a few other things like it, which he dared say he could think of easily enough, he too might be a great man. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, I, Ch. XX, 179.

He dared say that at the docks they had a certain number of Irishmen at work. Westm. Gaz., No. 6441, 2b.

*β) To dare* re-asserts its individual meaning when it is negated by *not*; thus in:

I daren't say I know, but here are some impressions. Westm. Gaz., No. 6564, 12b.

We dare not say as yet that the rout (sc. of the Italians) is stopped. ib., No. 7607, 1a.

Thus also, perhaps, in the rare case that the verb is followed by *to say*. In the examples which have come to hand it is not clear that it should be understood in the meaning of *to venture*, the ordinary word in this combination.

Molly dared to say Mrs. Barker would let his honour see the house. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 11.

So, I dare to say, will be the task that our own and the French mounted arm will find still imposed upon them when these pages appear in print. Eng. Rev., No. 101, 377.

Compare: I venture to say that not a single fact can be produced to show that the cause of death proved at the trial was not the true one. Notes & Queries.

In place of *I dare say* we sometimes find *I dare answer* (*swear, think, or, perhaps, some other verb*) in almost the same meaning (Ch. LX, 22, *d*, e.g.):

"Then you're no friend to the ladies, I find, my pretty young gentleman?" — "That's as I find 'um." — "Not to her of your mother's choosing, I dare answer?" GOLDS., She stoops, II, (194).

#### THE VERB *TO DO*.

64. *To do* when followed by an infinitive occurs in a weak and in a strong form. Weak *do* is distinguished from strong *do* in that



it adds nothing to the meaning of the sentence. Weak *do* may, indeed, be said to be what SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 58, 365) calls an unmeaning form-word. For the force of strong *do* see 72.

65. *a)* *To do*, whether weak or strong, may be said to be an indefinite verb, i. e. it denotes action in a general way, but does not express the nature of that action. This is done by the accompanying word, which either precedes or follows. The accompanying word is mostly an infinitive, but may also be a gerund or a noun of action (74, Obs. V; Ch. XLV, 15; Ch. LIV, 11, *a*), as in:

i. \* "Pray, is your lodger within?" — "Male or female, sir?" says Mr. Krook. — "Male, The person who does copying." DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. X, 83.

I am willing to do copying. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XIII, 106.

I have not done much walking since I saw you. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. V, 78.

ii. The mother's spirit was already up in arms and prepared to do battle for her own independence and that of her children. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. IX, 223.

John was bound to do battle on the squire's behalf. *ib.*, II, Ch. LII, 269.

One of my brother-officers and I do photography when we get a chance. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. II, 31.

*b)* Verbs that have only finite forms, i. e. the defective verbs *can*, *may*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, and also *will* (see, however, 48, Obs. III; Ch. LVIII, 15, *d*), cannot be constructed with *to do*. Nor is either of the auxiliaries *to have* or *to be* ever connected with it.

Subjunctives with inverted word-order admit of no other periphrasis than that with *may* or *let* (Ch. XLX, 8, Obs. II; 12). Thus *Success attend you!* (SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 1) = *May success attend you!* and *Be it understood* (Graph.) = *Let it be understood*.

Subjunctives with ordinary word-order, however, not unfrequently have periphrases with (the subjunctive) *do*, especially in the language of motions or resolutions proposed or passed; thus in:

Yet the motion that the Speaker do not leave the chair had got to be repeated *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 15, 282 *a*.

The use of weak *do* also in affirmative declarative sentences with the ordinary word-order, still common in liturgical and legal style, is a survival of the practice "found in O. E., frequent in M. E., very frequent 1500—1700, dying out in normal prose in 18th c." O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 25*a*; e.g.:

All the earth doth worship thee, the Father everlasting. *Common Prayer*, *The Deum laudamus*.

O Lord our heavenly Father, high and mighty, King of kings, Lord of lords, the only Ruler of princes, who dost from thy throne behold all the dwellers upon earth. *Common Prayer*, *A Prayer for the King's Majesty*.

66. *a)* Weak *do* is used in connexion with sentence-modifying *not*. *Not* when weak-stressed, as it mostly is, merges into the pre-

ceding *do*, *does* or *did*, as it does with other finite verbs of a complex predicate; thus in like manner *I don't* (*he doesn't*, *I didn't*) *like veal*. When the sentence is made negative by another word than *not*, *to do* is not used; thus *I never eat veal*. *I ate nothing*.

The use of weak *do* in negative sentences with *not* may be a development of that of strong *do*, "all negative constructions being essentially emphatic, because the negation reverses the meaning" (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2186). It may have been furthered by the common coalescing of *not* with such verbs as *can*, *may*, etc., and by a desire of securing for the object its normal place in immediate succession to the verb, which would be hindered by such an arrangement as *I know not the person*. Let it also be observed in this connexion that the usual place of sentence-modifying *not* is in immediate succession to the (finite verb of the) predicate (Ch. VIII, 69). Compare DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 11, a; § 35, 2; also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 365; FRANZ, E. S., XL, II, 253; JESPERSEN, Negation, 10; id., Phil. of Gram., 26.

The practice of placing *not* before the verb which is still pretty common in SHAKESPEARE (see A. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex., s.v. *not*, 779 b), hardly extends beyond the middle of the eighteenth century. See O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 27, Note; JESPERSEN, Negation, 13.

For who not needs, shall never lack a friend. SHAK., Haml., III, 2, 217.

But he that filches from me my good name | Robs me of that which not enriches him | And makes me poor indeed. id., Oth., III, 3, 161.

And, while the bubbling and loud-hissing urn | Throws up a steamy column, and the cups | That cheer but not inebriate, wait on each, | So let us welcome peaceful ev'ning in. COWPER, Task, IV, 39.

We two will ... let her (sc. woman) make herself her own | To give or keep, to live and learn and be | All that not harms distinctive womanhood. TEN., Princ., VII, 258.

b) Of particular interest is the usual construction without *do* in connexion with word-groups with *not* which are distinctly felt as a unit, such as *not a word* (or *syllable*), *not an instant* (or *moment*), *not once*, etc. See also JESPERSEN, Negation, 15, 49; id., Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 16, 73; and compare Ch. XL, 120.

i. The king answered not a word. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. IV. (practically the same as *nothing*.)

Lionel rose; he said not a word, but the pallor of his face and the fire in his eyes were terrible to see. W. BLACK., The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XX.

Sometimes, after spending the day out in the fields, he came home, silently took his place in his own warm corner, and uttered not a syllable, until it was time to go to rest. MRS. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., B, 69.

ii. I ask not a moment. SHER., Riv., V, 1.

iii. Noah Claypole ran along the streets at his swiftest pace, and paused not once for breath, until he reached the work-house gate. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. VII, 71.

iv. This ... mattered to her not one jot. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXXII, 278.

The same practice is even common enough when the noun in the

negative word-group is preceded by a modifier which emphasizes the negation.

The little thing took not the smallest notice of the lure. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. II, 34.

Venn spoke not another word. HARDY, *Return*, I, Ch. X, 112.

Woman might compete with us in Parliament, and talk us down there, I make not the smallest doubt. DOR. GER., *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVIII.

General Cronjé's face was absolutely impassive. It betrayed not a single sign of emotion. *Daily Chron.*

It will be observed that in many cases the use of the *do*-construction in sentences of the above type would materially affect their meaning. Thus *He did not utter a syllable* would suggest another sentence with a noun forming a kind of contrast with *syllable*. *I do not ask a moment* and *I ask not a moment* may even be said to stand for two diametrically opposite notions.

Instances of the *do*-construction cannot, accordingly, be expected to be of frequent occurrence. In fact the following are the only instances that the present writer has met with:

The youngster did not hesitate an instant. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 121).

Your wife didn't answer a word. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 172.

c) The *do*-construction is not, as a rule, used when *not* is distinctly meant to modify another element of the sentence than the predicate (with its adjuncts).

Observe that *not* in this case has strong stress, whereas when attached to *do* it has very weak stress and, in colloquial and vulgar language, is even apt to disappear entirely, *I don't know* becoming [ai danou], which in print is sometimes represented by *I dunno*.

He gave his money, not from benevolence, but from ostentation. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 366.

He rode, not a mule, like his companion, but a strong hackney for the road. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 13.

He said he wanted to call on an old person, who lived not far off. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37 *b*.

This information astonished the Major not a little. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 351.

They inhabited not a villa, but a small old-fashioned brick house. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. III, 22.

The theatre not only gave her little pleasure, but wounded in her a hundred deep unconquerable instincts. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 291.

The hamlet lay not many hundred yards away. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. IV, 31.

I seems not improbable that the net result of the crisis may be that Serbia and Montenegro will join hands. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 228, 509 *a*.

The slackness of industry arises not because the world does not want goods; it wants them as never before. Stagnation is due solely to the fact that would-be buyers cannot pay the prices that are demanded. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8585, 1 *b*.

The Bolshevik, like the Fascist, thinks that the world wants not less but more drill. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/3, 1926, 182 *c*.

There is not, of course, any occasion for the use of *do* when *not* represents a whole clause, as in:

"Is yours a strong constitution?" inquired Tozer. Paul said he thought not. Tozer replied that *he* thought not also, judging from Paul's looks, and that it was a pity, for it need be. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 105.

d) In many cases, however, *not* although strictly belonging to a particular element of the sentence other than the predicate, is meant to negativē also the predicate with its adjuncts and, therefore, the whole sentence, which causes it to be attached to the predicate, with the consequent use of *to do*. It is only natural that in this case usage is more or less variable.

1) Here follow first a few examples in which the *do*-construction in the light of those mentioned above seems to be at variance with ordinary practice:

This did not a little increase the perturbation of her thoughts. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, III, Ch. IV, 315.

Love does not merely look forward to reunion with its object, but unites freely with other interests. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on Ten. In Mem.*, 41.  
The Poetry Book-shop ... does not merely sell poetry, but provides a sounding-board for the voices of the innovators. *Manch. Guard.*, 8/10, 1926, 296 d.  
Nesting does not consist only of scanning trees and peering into the thick interior of bushes for bushy structures. *Westm. Gaz.*, 22/4, 1916, 10 a.

2) In such a sentence as *I did not go to the office till half an hour after opening time* (THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 41) the attaching of the negative to the verb instead of the adverbial adjunct opening with *till*, and the consequent use of *do*, may be explained on the strength of the assumption that the sentence is more or less distinctly felt as the union of two statements into one, the first negative, the second affirmative. The fact is the above sentence admits of being resolved into *I did not go to the office at opening time*, in which *not* negatives the combination of the two ideas *I* and *going to the office at opening time*, and *but* (or *although*) *I did go half an hour after opening time*. However this may be, it is safe to state that the *do*-construction appears to be practically regular in sentences of the above type; thus in:

He did not say a word till Mr. Squills was gone. LYTTON, *Caxt.*

They did not reach Kensington until five o'clock in the evening. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 2.

3) Sometimes *not* seemingly belongs to a sentence-modifying adverbial adjunct, but is really meant to negative the whole sentence. This will be readily observed in such a sentence as *The suffix of the present participle in Early English did not originally have the form in ing* (SKEAT), in which *originally* might be placed in front-position: *Originally the suffix of the present participle in Early English did not have the form in ing*. This shows that the negative does not belong to *originally*, but to the whole sentence.

Also in the following examples the negating concerns rather the



whole combination verb + its adjuncts than the adjunct to which it is specially affixed. Compare JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 43.

Captain Aylmer did not often spend a Sunday at Perivale. TROL., *Belt Est.*, Ch. I, 14.

The few who can consult the dictionary in a public library do not always have time to calculate whether the word they wanted at the moment has yet been reached. *Notes & Quer.*

4) In ordinary practice *not* is attached to the predicate, causing periphrasis with *do*, when the negating logically concerns a following infinitive, or clause; thus in:

i. My unfortunate friend, the waiter, did not appear to be disturbed by this. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35*a*.

He did not appear to watch Pen's behaviour. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. XV, 145.

ii. In this I did not choose to agree with her. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*. Perhaps Arthur forgot, or perhaps he did not choose to remember, that the elder couple had no money in their pockets. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 106.

iii. I did not come to curse thee Guinevere. TEN., *Guin.*, 530.

iv. Though the most fashionable ordinary in the village, the "White Horse" did not happen to be crowded on this day. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXV, 257.

You didn't happen to see Irene, I suppose. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. XII, (657).

Things are shouted from the housetops when we don't happen to be paying attention. *Manch. Guard.*, 30/5, 1924, 434*a*.

v. It did not seem that he had much to say, for he remained perfectly silent. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XXIX, 349.

The brilliance of his marriage did not seem to have added much to his popularity. *ib.*, II, XL, 112.

He did not seem to miss her. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XX, 113.

The lesson does not seem to have taught him to doubt the infallibility of his judgment. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/3, 1926, 182*a*.

The following examples exhibit exceptional practice:

i. Will you leave me alone now? I don't order it as a mistress — I ask it as a woman, and I expect you not to be so uncourteous as to refuse. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXIX, 226.

ii. His poetry seems not to have been an art but an inspiration. MAC., *Pilgr. Progr.*, (135*b*).

Philocton seemed not to notice. HARDY, *Jude*, III, Ch. VII, 217.

He seems not to have made letters his profession much before 1586. *Sel. Sh. Stor.*, I, *Introd.* 13.

iii. I wanted not to think of myself. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 124.

Naturally there is no shifting of the negative when it cannot possibly be understood to concern the predicate, as in:

He bade the farmer not wait for him TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XVII, 193.

Take a word of advice, even from three foot nothing. Try not to associate bodily defects with mental, my good friend, except for a solid reason. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXII, 231*a*.

For further examples see JESPERSEN, *Negation* 50.

Note. It will be observed that the shifting of *not* often has the effect of softening down the negating of a statement. Compare *He didn't seem to notice* with *He seemed not to notice*, and *I don't think that he will come* with *I think that he will not come*.



5) In the fourth place there is a strong tendency to attach *not* to verbs of judging, such as *to believe*, *to suppose*, *to think* instead of to the following subordinate clause, to which it logically belongs; thus in:

I don't think we'll mind stopping for lunch to-day. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 321.

I do not think the bishop will send for me again. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 209.

I don't suppose you would care to read what I want to hear. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VIII, 34.

I don't think she'd better come again. BENSON, *Loneliness*, 81.

I've got something to say. I don't think you'll like it. *ib.*, 89.

I don't reckon we shall see many of 'em (sc. zeppelins) over here. *Punch*, 7/12, 1916, 94.

Observe, however that *to hope* mostly preserves the more logical construction, as in *I hope that he will not fail*.

It is hardly necessary to say that in these constructions the placing of the negative in the head-clause may be perfectly logical; thus in:

I do not pretend that they (sc. the rules) are absolutely without exception. MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. IV, 38.

6) The opposite practice, i. e. that of negating the object, or some other element of the sentence, instead of the predicate to which the negative logically belongs, is also exceedingly frequent; e. g.:

Of course he was no thief. She wanted none to tell her that. TROL., *Last Chron.* I, Ch. XIX, 211.

I stoop to request no favour from the Neapolitan. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. XI, 86b.

Dr. Huet stayed to hear no more. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. XIV, 117.

I can get John to say nothing. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. X, 303.

For further illustration and discussion see Ch. XL, 116, Note *p*; also KRUSINGA, *Handbook*<sup>1</sup>, § 2230; JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 56.

Note. In passing it may here be observed that the illogical attaching of *not* to the finite verb of the predicate is also observable in such combinations as *He must (ought, should, used) not (to) do that*. A few examples will bring this out sufficiently.

"My father seems to be a little cross ... We'll go in and smooth him down." But the archdeacon wouldn't be smoothed down. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXII, 243.

Trains used not to jerk, surely, in the old days. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. VIII, 130.

7) The shifting of *not* may materially alter the meaning of a sentence and render periphrasis with *do* necessary or the reverse. Compare *Not many of us wanted the war* with *Many of us did not want the war*.

Also different stressing may imply a considerable variation in meaning, but does not necessarily affect the construction of the sentence in consequence. Thus the *do*-construction is used in

*He didn't build that bridge*, whether *he*, *build* or *bridge* is stressed. Compare JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 44.

67. Weak *do* is used in most sentences with inverted word-order. The word-order is said to be inverted when the subject is placed after (the finite verb of) the predicate (Ch. VIII, 5 ff).

The reason of this practice is not far to seek. It is, no doubt, due to a desire to avoid the inconvenience of having the subject in the place which is ordinarily occupied by the object (Ch. VIII, 33 ff). Thus replacing \**Saw you it?* and \**Catch dogs mice?* by respectively *Did you see it?* and *Do dogs catch mice?*, in which a mere form-word is placed before the words conveying the thought of the speaker, practically restores the normal word-order: subject-verb-object. At the same time it falls in with the construction observed in all other sentences with a complex predicate, such as *Can (will, etc.) dogs catch mice?* Compare O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 25, b; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2181; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, 2ff, 2; 35, 2; JESPERSEN, *Pr ogr.*, § 73; id. *Negation*, 10; id., *Philos. of Gram.*, 26.

Weak *do* is, accordingly, used:

a) in interrogative sentences of the first kind (i. e. such as open with a finite verb (Ch. VII, 3, a); thus in: *Do you know the exact time?*

b) in interrogative sentences of the second kind (i. e. such as open with an interrogative word (Ch. VII, 3, b) whose subject is not an interrogative pronoun or a noun modified by an interrogative word(-group). Thus in *Where did you buy your hat?* But: *Who broke that window? Which boy did this?*

Also subordinate questions, which have the ordinary word-order, are constructed without *do*; thus:

This depends upon how you did it. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 250.

But let us see a little more about what Jesus came on earth for. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 20.

c) in some imperative sentences that have the subject expressed (Ch. VIII, 24; Ch. XLIX, 58). Usage may be equally divided between periphrasis with *do* and the construction without *do*; e. g.:

i. Lucy, do you watch! SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2.

David, do you look for Sir Anthony! ib., V, 1.

Do you give me a minute's calm attention without looking at Rick! DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXIV, 208.

He must want a secretary. He would be shy at an offer of one from me. Do you hint it if you get a chance! MER., *Ormont*, Ch. III, 62.

ii. Barnaby, take you that other candle, and go before. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XII, 50 a.

Tattycoram, stick you close to your young mistress. id., *Little Dor.*, Ch. II, 9b. Stand you with your bow by the side of the coppice. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. XX, 82.

Find you the heart to go, I'll find the means. ib., Ch. IX, 48.

Go you off, and do as I bid you. BIRMINGHAM, *Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. I, 11.

I think I'd better get out and give her (sc. the boat) a bit of a tow. Take you hold of the tiller. BRADBY, Dick, Ch. VII, 70.

In the higher literary style *to do* is not used in such sentences; thus; Spare thou them, O God, which confess their faults. Restore thou them that are penitent. Common Prayer.

Laud ye the Gods! BAIN, H. E. Gr., 316.

"Speak you," said Mr. Chester, "speak you, good fellow!" DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXIII, 96 a.

This craven tongue, | These features which refuse the soul its way, | Reclaim thou! BROWN., Soul's Trag., I.

Save me thou. TEN., Merl. & Viv., 77.

Note a) It will be observed that in the first group of the above examples the pronoun mostly has extra-strong stress due to the contrast which is implied. This extra-strong stress is absent in the literary construction without *do*. The construction without *do* and with the pronoun weak-stressed is also met with in the vulgar *hark'ee! look'ee!* (Ch. XXXII, 10, e), and in the colloquial *mind you! mark you! look you!*, which may be looked upon as survivals of a once common practice: e.g.:

"Yes! and look'ee here, Mr. Snagsby," resumes Bucket [etc.]. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXII, 190

I don't refer to his profession, look you! *ib.*, Ch. XXX, 254.

That was the reason you got the place, mark you, and not on account of your miserable three thousand pounds. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 85.

For, mark you, what would be the result? DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman. Ch. XVIII.

Salaries alone, mind you. Times.

β) The pronoun has also strong, but not necessarily contrasting stress, in the frequent construction with the ordinary word-order, as in:

You do it at once! SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 506.

You take my advice! JEROME, Idle Thoughts.

You take your mother's washing-tub home again, and bring us a boat! *id.*, Three Men, Ch. XIX, 287.

But the pronoun has weak or medium stress in sentences opening with *never*, as in *Never you mind that, you give him a pint of ale!* (JEROME, Idle Thoughts); in which the first *you* has weak (or medium) stress, the second strong stress.

d) in conditional clauses that do not open with any conjunctive (Ch. VIII, 22; Ch. XVII, 78).

Did the wind blow fresh and fair, you ate away with a careless ease and a happy conscience highly beneficial to your digestion. LEVER, Jack Hint, Ch. II, 11.

God remains, | Even did men forsake you. BROWNING, A Soul's Trag., I. Did Nature act with full consciousness, these imperfect formations were inexplicable. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2184.

Think what my life would be, did I know that you had not forgiven me. 11. Lond. News.

Canadian Redskins could be safely trusted to uphold the meteor flag, did fitting occasion arise. Graph.

e) in many declarative sentences or clauses that open with an

adverbial adjunct, an object, or a predicative adnominal adjunct of the second kind (Ch. VI, 1, *b*).

It should be distinctly understood that in the sentences or clauses here referred to the use of *do* in ordinary Standard English depends solely on inversion, and that in some kinds inversion is far from regularly observed. In the case of inversion we find the *do*-construction:

1) almost regularly when the opening adverbial adjunct or object is negative, contains a negative, or implies a negative. A negative is, among other words, implied in such adverbs as *hardly* (or *scarcely*), *rarely* (or *seldom*), *only*; and in *little* (*less*, *least*), which, of course, occurs also as an indefinite numeral in a negative word-group (Ch. VIII, 7). Compare DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 17, 3 (page 36); JESPERSEN, Negation, 38 ff.

i. Never before and never again, while Tom was at school, did the doctor strike a boy in lesson. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. VIII, 155.

Rarely did the weekly papers come out without some paragraph about me. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XIII, Ch. III, 369.

No sooner did Boxer hear the gun than he jumped up with a howl. SWEET, The Picnic.

Only when the witch had shut her door, did he get up and run after his companions. ASCOTT R. HOPE, Old Pot.

ii. Not a single word did Peggotty speak. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 31 *b*.

Only one scapegrace did he take into his crew. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 131 *a*.

Not a word did he say of Richard's return. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXIV, 308.

Very little attention did I pay to her. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, VII, Ch. III, 257.

Never a straggler did we meet. Times, No. 1815, 816 *c*.

Still less do we know to which side the whole court will incline. Times. At no time of the day does one walk easily on Broadway. Manch. Guard., 1913, 1926, 234 *c*.

Only when the predicate is an intransitive verb and semantically distinctly inferior to the subject, is *to do* dispensed with; thus in:

No less strange to us seemed the garb and manners of the people, their language and their religion. STOF., Handl., III, D, 4 *b*.

Never dwelt in a delicate body a more resolute mind and will than that of my mother. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 40.

2) practically regularly when, although the opening adverbial adjunct is not necessarily negative, the sentence or clause contains an object (Ch. VIII, 9); thus in:

Well did I know him, and well did he know me. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXV, 184 *b*.

With what mingled joy and sorrow do I take up the pen to write to my dearest friend! THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 76.

Very well do I recollect our arrival at that place. RID. HAG., Sol. Mines, 61.

Many a time in the course of that week did I bless the good fortune which had thrown me in contact with Simla's best and kindest doctor. RUDY. KIPL., The Phantom Rickshaw, 22.

3) often when the object, whether prepositional or non-prepo-



sitional, although not necessarily negative, opens the sentence (Ch. VIII, 13); thus in:

i. To such extravagance does the political temper of the Protectionist lead! *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 1c.

ii. Many sweet little appeals did Miss Sharp make to him about the dishes at dinner. *THACK., Van Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

So much skill and probity did he show in all his dealings that he gained a high character among the merchants. *VAN NECK, Easy Eng. Prose*, 19.

Note. In appended and parenthetical sentences accompanying quotations *do* is never used; thus:

"Hold out your other hand, sir!" roars Cuff to his little school-fellow. *THACK., Van Fair*, I, Ch. V, 44.

"It's useless to escape them," whispered I to John. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 123.

4) apparently regularly when the sentence opens with a predicative adnominal adjunct of the second kind (Ch. VI, 1, b); thus in: So selfish does our life make us. *ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. compared*, § 66.

Such, in fact, do we find the usage to be. *MOLLOY, The Irish Difficulty*, I, Ch. IV, 41.

68. In not a few cases the use of *do* in sentences with inverted word-order appears to depend mainly on the relative stress of the predicate and the subject.

a) This applies especially to sentences which open with a, not necessarily negative, adverbial adjunct, and in which the predicate is formed by an intransitive verb. In them the use of *do* is common only when the predicate is of more importance and has, accordingly, stronger stress than the subject. In the opposite case *do* is mostly dispensed with. Compare also *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 2185; *SWAEN, E. S.*, XLI, ii, 308.

i. Two mortal hours did he preach at a breathing. *SCOTT, Old Mort.*, Ch. XVIII, 194.

Most bitterly did she cry. *JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab.*, Ch. XXV, 190.

As brisk as heels, if not altogether as light as fairies, did the poor Pickwickians assemble on the morning of the twenty-second day of December. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 245.

Most gladly, we can well believe, did the Nana come. *MCCARTHY, Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 184.

So high did political animosities run that [etc.]. *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 2184.

So quietly did he come that [etc.]. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *do*, 24, Note.

How bitterly did I repent. *ib.*, 25, b.

ii. Soon after began the busy and important part of Swift's life. *BAIN, Comp.*, 296.

Then came the struggle and parting below. *THACK., Van Fair*, I, Ch. I, 7. In the train of peace came industry and all the arts of life. *MAC., Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 282.

And now what does this story mean? to what issue comes all I have written? *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 504, 3c. (Observe the varied practice.)

b) It is probably on the same principle that the use or absence of *to do* depends in sentences opening with adverbial *what* in



which the predicate is formed by *to avail*, *to care*, *to matter*, *to signify*, and, perhaps, some other verbs. The practice may, in a manner, be considered as a continuation of Early Modern English usage, which distinctly preferred the construction without *to do* in questions of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3, *b*). Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 600; also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2183.

i. \* What do these arrangements avail, if you cannot carry them into effect?

\*\* What do I care that a young jackanapes buys his colonelcy over my head? LYTTON, *Caxt.*, III, Ch. I, 56

What do I care for them? EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVIII, 255.

\*\*\* What did Cecilia Cricklander's insults matter? What did anything on earth matter? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIII, 293

\*\*\*\* What does it signify how we dress here at Cranford? MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. I, 10.

ii. \* But what avail all these accomplishments, in *Vanity Fair*, to girls who are short, poor, plain, and have a bad complexion? THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 370.

What avail his golden youth, his high blood if they help not now. DISR., *Coningsby*, VII, vii, 275.

I have the knowledge still, but what avails that when the hand trembles? READE, *Cloister*, Ch. IX, 46.

\*\* What cared she so long as her husband was near her? THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 263.

We were very poor, but what cared she? *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 162.

What care I to be a colonel or a general? *id.*, *Esm.*, II, Ch. XV, 290.

What care I for the cause? BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. I.

What care I . . . about being what they call a gentleman? BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXXI, 372.

\*\*\* What mattered it? TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XXX, 363. (The construction is at variance with the above principle.)

What matters what the girl says? *id.*, *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. IV, 36.

What matters it to me? what do I care for the rigours of climate. LEVER, *Jack Hint.*, Ch. I, 6. (*Me* has the main stress.)

He was there — beside her — and what mattered anything else? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXI, 271.

\*\*\*\* What signifies what weather we have? GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I. What signifies kneeling, when you know I must have you. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2.

Note *a*) In sentences with the verb *to matter* as the predicate there is some tendency to regard *what* as the subject, which, of course, renders the use of *do* uncalled-for. Compare Ch. II, 20; Ch. LIII, 6, *e*; 24. But what matters a few failings? THACK., *Pend.* (Observe that the predicate is placed in the singular.)

What matters a little name or a little fortune? *id.*, *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 250.

There can be no doubt of *what* being the subject of the verb *to matter* in such sentences as the following:

i. If he chooses to frequent gambling-tables and lose his money to blacklegs, what matters to me? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 71.

But what matters? TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XLVII, 629.

There had been always before our eyes the prospect of a time when the estates should be free — in a year or two, perhaps, more or less; what mattered? BESANT, *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. VI, 53.

ii. What matters about a few paltry guineas? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 291.

What matters about fame or poverty? *ib.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

With sentences of the last type compare the following which shows that they admit of another interpretation:

What does it matter about any other name? BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 316.

β) Possibly *what* is also felt as the subject in such a sentence as *What signifies what weather we have?* GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

69. Weak *do* is, besides, often resorted to:

a) in verse to secure the required metre. See O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 25, a.

He was a rat and she was a rat, | And down in one hole they did dwell.  
The small birds twitter, | The lake doth glitter [etc.]. WORDSWORTH, *A Morning in March*, I.

b) in both prose and verse to secure a rhythmical movement. A striking illustration of the influence of rhythm or metre on the use of periphrastic *do* is afforded by sentences in which *but* is made to modify the predicate, even when it belongs, strictly, to another element of the sentence. Compare the two following groups of examples:

i. \* I do but jest. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2.

Wine does but draw forth a man's natural qualities. *id.*, *School*, III, 3, (398).  
Not caring to what extent property was destroyed ... so that he did but make head against the enemy. MAC., *Fred.*, (698 a.)

I could wait for years ..., if I did but know. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XLVI, 612.

She does but want to talk with you. CON. DOYLE, *Rodn. Stone*, I, Ch. III, 65.

All fights are won if one does but fight long enough. *ib.*

\*\* Some thought that Philip did but trifle with her; | Some that she but held off to draw him on. TEN., *En. Arden*, 472—3. (Observe the varied practice.)  
I am sure I did but speak | Of my mother's faded cheek. *id.*, *Maud*, I, XIX, III.

ii. I but mentioned that Mr Warrington had lost a pocket-book containing letters. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXV, 367

If the Finns but say the word, we shall move on to Stockholm. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 202, 373 b.

\*\* I would my father look'd but with my eyes. SHAK., *Mids.*, I, I, 56.

Alike the busy and the gay | But flutter through life's little day. GRAY, *Ode*, I, 36.

And life's enchanted cup but sparkles at the brim. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, III, VIII.

I but wait the coming of some man | To make this voyage. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 5a.

Note a) In imperative sentences *but* appears to occasion the use of *do* regularly. Compare O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 30, c.

Do but hear me! GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, V.

Do but observe how yon Nazarene scowls at the piety of the sacrificial possession. LYTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. I, 62 a.

β) There can be little doubt that substitution of *only* for *but* would make the use of *do* uncalled for in most, if not all, of the first group of the preceding examples.

c) Conversely it is the construction without *do* which, chiefly for the same purpose, is often used in cases where ordinary prose would have periphrasis. It is hardly necessary to add that the non-periphrastic construction has a solemn impressiveness which is lacking in the *do*-construction.

Woodman, spare that tree, | Touch not a single bough! GEORGE P. MORRIS. Yet think not that I come to urge thy crimes. TEN., Guin., 529.

Compare: Did ye not hear it? — No: 'twas but the wind, | Or the car rattling o'er the stony street. BYRON, Ch. Har., III, XXII.

70. a) In Early Modern English the use of weak *do* did not follow the rules, discussed in the preceding sections and now generally observed in ordinary prose, with anything like regularity, but was mainly determined by the requirements of metre, rhythm, euphony, or convenience. Even in the English of quite recent times one meets with repeated instances of the rules being disregarded, not only in verse or the archaic language that is under the influence of the Liturgy or the Law, but also in ordinary prose. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *do*, 24 f; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2175; ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 39, a; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 597; SWAEN (in E. S., XLI, II, 308), and especially H. DIETZE, Das Umschreibende *do* in der neuenglischen Prosa, 27.

i. It boots not what becomes of me. HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. IV, 148.

Think not, the idle threats of my ridiculous aunt can have any weight with me. SHER., Riv., III, 3.

Whether Mr. Tupman was already tired of retirement, or whether he was wholly unable to resist the eloquent appeal which was made to him, matters not, he did *not* resist it at last. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XI, 91.

ii. Looks it not like the king? SHAK., Haml., I, 1, 43.

Well, father, how do all at home? how does brother Dick, and brother Val? CONGREVE, Love for Love, III, 3, (247).

How goes on your own affair? GOLDSM., She stoops, I, (172).

Why, man! what do you out of bed with a small sword through your body? SHER., School, V, 2, (428).

What means this? id., Riv., V, 1.

O heart, how fares it with thee now? TEN., In Memoriam, IV, II.

And how slept Frank that night? TROL., Dr. Thorne, Ch. XLVII, 616.

Well, Aby, how goes on the war? id., Castle Richm., Ch. VI, 87.

Never saw they Hereward again upon the Scottish shore. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. II, 24b.

Could Giotto or Filippo Lippi, think you, have got a picture into the Exhibition? SAM BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. I, 4.

iii. If you do meet Horatio and Marcellus, | The rivals of my watch, bid them make haste. SHAK., Haml., I, 1, 12.

You do assist the storm, id., Temp., I, 1, 15.

The course of true love never did run smooth. id., Mids., I, 1, 134.

And at even, when the sun did set, they brought unto him all that were diseased. Bible, Mark, I, 32.

"And now, my dear, you must take a glass of port wine. It will do you good H. POUTSMA, Ii.

after your journey." Dorothy attempted to explain that she never did drink any wine. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. VIII, 64.

On the 10th of August, Phineas Finn did return to Loughton. id., Phin. Finn, II, Ch. IX, 114.

I think that I did stamp out that evil. id., Autobiography, I, Ch. V, 121. I recollect that I positively began to have a dread of myself as a kind of wild boy who did bite. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 39 b.

Before they had ceased to look at each other, he did speak again. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, Ch. VII, 118.

Lord Landsdowne's "Rustic Concert" did once, we believe, belong to the National Gallery, but it was ejected when [etc.]. II. Lond. News, No. 5678, 540 a.

For some unknown reason, John addressed the two last letters to her. He never did do that. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. II, 228.

For the rather frequent *How goes it?*, not uncommon in (mock-) dignified style, see Ch. II<sup>2</sup>, 3.

In questions the construction without *do* is very common with *to come* when expressing an adverbial notion approaching to that of *to happen*.

i. How came you to know all that? THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XIX, 208.

How came you to care that we should know beforehand? EDNA LYALL, We Two, I, 40.

How comes he to have stayed? GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXV, 230.

How comes it that in many country towns and villages farthings are not accepted? Notes & Quer.

ii. This is a strange note ... How do you come to have it open? STEVENSON, Dr. Jekyll, The Last Night, 73.

Note α) In the majority of cases, however, prose-instances of the construction without *do* in negative sentences with *not* or interrogative sentences of the first kind are now to be considered as deliberate archaisms, mostly used for an impressive rhetorical effect. See O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 27; JESPERSEN, Negation, 14.

There were voices within the house. He listened, but they fell strangely upon his ear; he knew them not. DICK., Pickw., Ch. VI, 53.

No word more spake Toots that night. id., Domb., Ch. XII, 108.

β) In some south-western dialects the use of weak *do* in connexions that are neither negative nor interrogative is quite common. See O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 25.

A strapping lad like Dick d'know better than let anything happen onawares. HARDY, Under the Greenwood Tree, I, Ch. V, 49.

The next thing he do do is to think about altering the church. ib., II, Ch. II, 90. (Thus *passim* in this novel.)

b) Certain verbs, most of them quite common in ordinary written or spoken English, more or less frequently reject the construction with *do* in negative sentences with *not*. This applies especially to *to care*, *to doubt*, *to know*, *to mistake*; Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2187; STORM, Eng. Phil., 490; JESPERSEN, Negation, 14.

i. A romantic lover is a strange idolater, who sometimes cares not out of what log he frames the object of his adoration. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. V, 35 b.

ii. If, as I doubt not, the goods come up to my expectations, I hope to have the pleasure of extending my relations with your house. Business Letter-



Writer, II. (Compare: I do not doubt but England is at present as polite a Nation as any in the World. STEELE, Spect., No. 6.)

iii. (I told her) that this was the last money I had; and when that was gone, I knew not what was to become of the best wife that ever a man was blest with. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 167.

He felt within him a something which moved him he knew not how, he knew not why. LEWES, Hist. of Philos., I, Ch. II, 31.

She came back from Manchester, restless for she knew not what. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 153.

I turned to look for Lady Julia, but she was gone, when and how I knew not. LEVER, Jack Hint., Ch. I, 8.

iv. Your friend placed her money in your name; and you, if I mistake not, Mr. Titmarsh, were suddenly placed over the heads of twelve of your fellow-clerks as a reward for your service in obtaining it. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 153.

There is, if we mistake not, a great surprise awaiting those who are about to make a first acquaintance with "Lord de Tabley". Lit. World. (Compare: If I don't mistake, I am talking to Mr. Phillotson. HARDY, Jude, V, Ch. VIII, 397.)

# 71. The use of *do* with certain verbs calls for some special comment.

*to be*. In Standard English the verb takes *do* only in the imperative. *Don't be afraid* = the literary *Be not afraid*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2189. This use of the periphrastic construction may be due to the fact that the imperative, and especially the negative imperative is always more or less emphatic; e.g.:

If God has destined vengeance on the oppressor's house, do not you be the instrument. SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. XVIII, 186.

Note a) In the language of the illiterate *to be* is connected with weak *do* also in other cases; thus in:

I don't know why you do be hating him so. TROL., Macd., Ch. VI, 83.

Some days she do be awful about her food. DOR. GER., The Eternal Woman, Ch. XV.

He is wearing himself out about something he is writing. Up half the night he does be. JAMES JOYCE, Exiles, I, (3).

Now, boy, why don't you be perlit and get up and give one of these young ladies a seat? PUNCH.

The following is a remarkable example drawn from literary prose, the speaker being no less a person than the Queen:

Sir, if we marry, we shall still maintain | All former treaties with his Majesty. | Our royal word for that! and your good master, | Pray God he do not be the first to break them. TEN., Queen Mary, I, V. (590 a).

β) According to A. G. VAN HAMEL (On Anglo-Irish, E.S., XLV, 278) the use of *do* with *to be* + present participle is a common practice in Anglo-Irish, the whole constituting a kind of unidiomatic Expanded Form. See also KRÜGER, Syntax<sup>2</sup>, II, § 2741.

They do be cheering when the horses take the water well. YEATS, Cathleen Ni Houladan.

*to dare*. a). As to negative sentences with *not* the tendency seems to be to use the construction without *do* in the literary language, and that with *do* in colloquial language. When the infinitive has to be supplied from what precedes, there appears to be a distinct preference



for the construction with *do*. Periphrasis is also distinctly the rule in the rather unusual imperative; e.g.:

i. He dared not think of what he feared. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 52.

She had misgivings and fears which she dared not acknowledge to herself. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 184.

She dares not influence her husband to give up my acquaintance. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, II, 192.

We dare not utter our longing; we are too shy. SHAW, *Cand.*, II, (145).

ii. \* She did not dare to own that the man she loved was her inferior. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 184.

The rascal does not dare to return to England. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 462.

\*\* I think my mother would show me the book, if she dared, but she does not dare. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 27 b.

I didn't think Miss Creakle equal to little Emily in point of beauty, and I didn't love her (I didn't dare). *ib.*, Ch. VII, 46 a.

\*\*\* "Shall I ask him to come to you, madam?" — "Don't you dare to do it, if you love me!" G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, II, Ch. I, 345.

Don't you dare say a word against him! JEROME, *Miss Hobbs*, II, (25).

b) In sentences with inverted word-order the periphrastic construction is distinctly unusual, especially in questions of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3, b).

i. \* Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against the sweetest of young women? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 188.

Dared he? After all, dared he go so far as that? GALSW., *In Chanc.*, Ch. IV, (478).

\*\* How dare you insult me like that? FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 42.

How dare you say such a thing? SHAW, *Cand.*, II, (145).

ii. Do you dare say this? JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 446.

Did he dare set himself up to be finer clay than that common soldier? W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. IX, 100.

For further illustration and other points of syntax about *to dare* see Ch. LV, 17—31. Compare also DEAN ALFORD, *The Queen's English*<sup>8</sup>, § 53; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 64.

*to have*. According to MURRAY (O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 27, Note) the use of the periphrastic construction is "colloquial and recent chiefly in U.S." BRADLEY (*The Making of English*, Ch. II, 71, foot-note) gives it as his opinion that "the use of the auxiliary *to do* is correct English only when *have* expresses something occasional or habitual, not when the object is a permanent possession or attribute. It is permissible to say *Do you have breakfast at eight?* or *We do not have many visitors*; but not *Does she have blue eyes?* or *He did not have a good character*. Many American writers violate this rule, and the faulty use appears to be gaining ground in England."

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2189—2191) is practically of the same opinion as BRADLEY. According to this grammarian we can say either *What sort of a passage did you have?* or *What sort of a passage had you?* But in British-English we avoid the American-English periphrasis in *He does not have to work* by the use of the construction *He has not got to work*, although we feel instinctively that the strong meaning of the *have* in this case justifies the American construction."

The following examples are intended to illustrate the views of the above-mentioned English scholars. In the first group *to have* is used in its ordinary meanings, approaching to those of *to possess* or *to hold*; in the second in a variety of other meanings, which in this place need not be defined.

*a) negative sentences with not:*

1), *a)* He had not courage to make inquiries. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 53.

He went to church thrice every Sunday when he had not a party. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 78.

The British ambassador had not time to offer further expostulation. *Punch*.

*β)* He had not a post in which he could display his talents.

When I saw him he had not the revolver in his hand: it lay on the floor.

2), *a)* They didn't have a bad evening, I believe. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 260.

He looks as if he did not have enough sleep. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, I, Ch. II, 16.

*β)* If those boys don't have something done to them, it is a shocking shame. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 90.

When I was your age, Matilda, ladies of rank and position did not have their photographs exposed in the shop-windows. *Punch*.

*γ)* I didn't have to speak. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. V, 112. They do not have to trim their sails to catch the passing gusts of popular passion. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5185, 1c.

*δ)* They are good stories all, because Mr. Roberts is a good naturalist. His psychology is well guarded. He does not have his creatures thinking too humanly, which is the danger in animal tales. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/12, 1922, 12a.

*ε)* I've wondered why book-publishers and merchants do not have blank biographies on their shelves. *Athenæum*.

*b) sentences with inverted word-order:*

1) *a)* How many shares have you in the company? O. E. D.

*β)* What had he in his hand?

2) *a)* Whom did you have for dinner? THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XIX, 211.

*β)* Did you have a pleasant evening? *Punch*.

In the following examples the use of periphrasis seems to go against the practice observed in Standard English:

i. In a number of monosyllables (*bade*, *come*, etc.) the 'e' does not have its usual effect of lengthening the sound of the preceding vowel. WEBST., *Princ. of Pron.*, § 57.

We have already seen that all back vowels do not have exactly the same degree of tongue-retraction. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 98.

The great estates do not always have as their owners titled or untitled proprietors. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 38.

If he doesn't have your eyes and hair, I'll disinherit him. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 201 *b*.

Schoolmistresses do not always have a chance of getting hold of such a first-class kind of girl as Lucy. PHILIPS, *Mad. Leroux*, Ch. XIII.

ii. Did she have some past history, some unhappy complication of the affections, which made her as bold as Dian? BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XIV, 112.

*to let* in the imperative mood, as modal auxiliary in hortative sentences. The construction without *do* is chiefly met with in literary style, the

colloquial language preferring periphrasis. Compare JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 51.

i. Let me not think that I discovered something of coldness in your first salutation. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 2, (242).

Let us not be for ever calculating, devising and plotting for the future! DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 9*a*.

But, let us talk not of it! LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. XI, 89*a*.

Let us recur not to that impious man! *ib.*, IV, Ch. II, 93*a*. (This placing of *not* after, instead of before, the main verb of the predicate appears to be very rare.)

Let not the traveller omit to visit the site of Caere under the impression that there is nothing to be seen. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3858, 418*b*.

ii. Oh! do not let us say that gold is dross, when it can buy such things as these. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XIX, 165*a*.

Do not let my respected reader exclaim against this unselfishness as unnatural. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

Don't let me catch you again sneaking about the School-house. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. II, 222.

Do not let us commit ourselves! JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, H, 104.

Do not let any young Englishman come out with the idea that they are to oust the Dutch Africander from the country! *Times*.

Do not let my noble friend go off with the idea that, if I had a mandate to deal with this question, I would go to Germany and clap on a big duty on every German product! JOS. CHAMBERLAIN, *Speech*.

The following sentence is ambiguous: Do not let any one read this letter but yourselves. STEPH. GWYNN, *Moore*, Ch. I, 21.

*to need*, followed by an infinitive. *a*) In negative sentences with *not* the verb dispenses with *do*: 1) usually in the present tense, the suffix of the third person being mostly suppressed. Instances of periphrasis are not, however, very uncommon; e.g.:

i. You needn't mind sending up to me if the child cries. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 21

You need not to have those head-aches. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVI, 251. (The use of *to* before the infinitive, as in this example, is very rare.)

The study of English can make its own way, and needs not to be supported by any rudeness. SKEAT, *A Student's Pastime*, No. 128.

ii. Rich baronets do not need to be careful about grammar. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VIII, 78.

One does not need to be middle-aged to remember the time when the only outstanding concert was given at Sydenham. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3858, 410*a*.

You don't need to tell me. WILLIAMSON, *Lord Loveland*, Ch. XXVIII, 252.

I do not need to leave the rotunda. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. VII, 60.

You don't need to be mad to do that! MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. III, 59.

The quasi-impersonal *it needs not* (Ch. XLV, 5; Ch. LIII, 6, *b*) varies with *it does not need*, the latter being, apparently, less common than the former; e.g.:

i. It needs not to tell what she said and promised on behalf of Nelly. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 318.

ii. It does not need to take everything Lord Charles Beresford says without a grain of salt. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Sept., 284.

2) almost regularly in the preterite indicative in subordinate clauses, the tense-suffix being mostly suppressed. Instances of *did not need* or the literary *needed not* are distinctly uncommon; e.g.:

- i. He told me that I need not make myself at all uneasy about his daughter's unhappiness. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 276 a.
- ii. There were ... moments when her thoughts ... seemed to yield her such fullness and happiness that she did not need to lift a finger to increase the joy. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XIII, 294.
- iii. She saw that she needed not to fear. BLACKMOORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XVI, 96.

Except for subordinate clauses the construction with *do* is the usual one in the preterite indicative, *needed not* appearing only as a literary variant; e.g.:

- i. They did not need to speak much to each other. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. VI, 130.
- ii. John needed not to reply. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXXVI, 393.

3) apparently regularly in the preterite conditional followed by a perfect infinitive, the tense-suffix being mostly suppressed; thus in:

- i. He need not have done it after all. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XI, 71.
- ii. He needed not to have undertaken an arduous march of 260 miles. SOUTHEY, *Penins. War*, II, 630.

b) In sentences with inverted word-order *do* appears to be regularly dispensed with, the suffix of the third person being suppressed; thus in:

Need I tell my reader that so innocent a girl as Susan was too high-minded to watch the effect of her proceeding behind the curtains? READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. VI, 72.

Why need she herself be so scrupulous? GALSW., *Beyond*, III, Ch. XII, 333. Note. When not followed by an infinitive, *to need* follows the common rules about the use of *do*, like an ordinary verb; e.g. *I do not need your assistance*, *Do you need my assistance?*, *Who needs any assistance?* Thus also when it is construed with an accusative + infinitive, as in:

I don't need you to tell me what she is. SWINNERTON, *Nocturne*, I, Ch. III, II, 74.

For further illustration and discussion of other points of syntax see 36, and Ch. LV, 7—15.

*to use a)* In negative sentences with *not* periphrasis is, apparently, obligatory, so far as the present tense is concerned. The construction is now, however, distinctly unusual, if not obsolete (52); e.g.:

Folks don't use to meet for amusement with fire-arms. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

In the preterite tense, on the other hand, periphrasis is rather exceptional than the reverse (52); e.g.:

- i. My lady used not to spare Colonel Esmond in talking of him. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. IV, 35.

Hetty dear, you used not to be so nervous when papa was away in Minorca. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXIV, 674.

It used not always to be sir and Colonel Warrington between me and your excellency. *ib.*, Ch. XCII, 985.

She used not to say much. *id.*, *Lov.*, Ch. II, 26.



I used not to have horrible feelings. G. ELIOT., *Dan. Der.*, III, viii, Ch. LXI, 288.  
I used not to be so poor as I be now. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. VIII, 73.

You used not to be a fellow for sneaking once. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XII, 238.

We used not to talk, in my days, about two keels to one, or two-Power standards and ten-per-cent. margins. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5207, 7.

ii. "He has been subject to talking and starting." — "And did not use to be so" CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 4, (257).

I did not use to be so before that man came and ruined me. MRS. OLIPHANT, *Neighbours on the Green*, *The Scientific Gentleman*, Ch. VI.

b) In sentences with inverted word-order periphrasis is, apparently, non-existent, not a single instance having turned up.

i. Used your uncle to fish when he was at home? MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. VII, 109.

Used you to kiss my mother's hand like this? TEMPLE THURST., *Mirage*, Ch. XVII, 144.

Used you to make the fairy stories up out of your head? SHAW, *Cand.*, II, (157).

ii. Used not you to tell me how, when I was a baby, I cried and wanted the moon? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 341.

I used to be great on material forces, usen't I? *Eng. Rev.*, No. 52, 599.

iii. What used the late lamented O'Connell to say, over whom a grateful country has raised such a magnificent testimonial? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXV, 360.  
What used we to say to each other during the endless hours of meeting? *ib.*, Ch. LXXV, 792.

Where used you to go? G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXIII, 157.

Note. In natural speech the *d* of the sequence *used not* falls out according to a phonetic law which throws out one of a succession of three dentals. This is frequently shown in print; thus in:

"I am not one of her admirers." — "I usen't to be, but I am now." OSC. WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan.*, III, (102).

My face is covered with little shadows that usen't to be there. PINERO, *The Second Mrs. Tanq.*, 189.

You usen't always to say I was silly. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. X, 2, 245.

## 72. Strong *do* is distinguished from weak *do* (64) in that it imparts an emotional element to the sentence. It is used:

a) to indicate a high degree or intensity of what is expressed by the predicate with its enlargements. The force of this *do* is often expressed in Dutch by an intensive adjective or adverb; thus in:

Dress *does* make a difference! SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (251). (Dutch: *De kleeding maakt een enorm verschil*!)

"Father!" said Minnie, playfully "What a porpoise you *do* grow!" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 62 b. (Dutch: *Wat wordt u een geweldige dikkerd!*)  
I *do* wish you'd stay so. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46. (Dutch: *Ik wou zoo graag dat u nog wat bleef.*)

Mr. Titmarsh, I *do* hope you will not be angry. *ib.*, Ch. III, 37.

I think there will be war . . . I *do* fear it, Agneta. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, II, Ch. II, 171. (Dutch: *Ik ben er erg bang voor.*)

A man *does* change in eighteen years. SHAW, *You never can tell*, II, (252).



What grand service these British fine twill flannel shirts do yield! Manch. Guard., Advertisement.

Note a) Emphasizing the intensity of an action should be carefully distinguished from emphasizing the nature of an action. This latter duty is not served by *to do*. Thus the answer to the question *Did you come by tram?* could not be *\*I did walk*, instead of *I walked*. As has been shown in ample detail in Ch. LII 23—28, the Expanded Form is often employed when it is the speaker's intention not only to emphasize the nature of the action, but also to state its actually going forward; thus in:

I knew he was shamming. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XI, 108.

β) According to SWEET (N. E. Gr. § 2180) the (unemphatic) *do*-forms were possible in Early Modern English also to emphasize the nature of the action. He quotes *For otherwise they do pervert the faculties of the mind, and not prepare them*. When he adds, "This usage lasted longest with verbs of requesting — *I do entreat you* — and asserting — *I do assure you* — but is now almost extinct in the spoken language", we should bear in mind that this statement holds good only for unemphatic *do*-forms. Compare also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 595.

b) to affirm or deny emphatically what is expressed by the predicate. In rendering this force of *to do* the Dutch sometimes has *vast*, occasionally *to ch*. When a contrast not concerning the nature of two actions (72, a, Note a) is to be expressed, it often has *wel*, sometimes *to ch*; e.g.:

i. \* His partner lies upon the point of death, I hear; and there he sat alone. Quite alone in the world, I do believe. DICK., *Christm. Car.*⁵, II, 46. (Dutch: ... dat geloof ik vast.)

She was looking down at some primroses she had gathered, and pulling them all to pieces, and I do believe she was crying. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 271.

In a sort of way I do rather want to win this ally. W. E. NORRIS, *An Eclipse*, Sc. I.

They tell Sarah Jane to knock at the door and call them, and Sarah Jane does knock at the door and does call them, and they grunt back "awri", and then go comfortably to sleep again. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 76.

\*\* What terrible women some men do marry! JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, E, 62. (Dutch: Wat trouwen sommige mannen toch met vreeselijke vrouwen!)

\*\*\* You know I never did care much for fishing. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. XVIII, 150.

I never do have any money. FL. MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood*, Ch. VI, 119. You don't understand. How should you? We never did understand each other very well, you and I. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 222.

ii. While, however, the apparent immediate effect of the Conquest on the English language is partly an illusion, there is no doubt that that event did introduce a new influence. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 33. (Dutch; ... deze gebeurtenis bracht wel een nieuwe invloed.)

"The administration has nothing to do with determining that point." — "Who does determine it then?" BELLAMY, *Look Backw.*, Ch. VII, 33.

He (sc. Walt Whitman) often said that he did not envy men their wives, but he did envy them their children. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 211, 59 a.

(This drug has) no harmful effects upon the system, but it does prevent seasickness. *Manch. Guard., Advert.*

\*\*\*\* Things like this ought not to happen. When they do happen, it is usually a sign either of incompetence on the part of the whips or of indifference on the part of the government majority. *Manch. Guard., VIII, 15, 282 a.* (Dutch: *Wanneer zij toch gebeuren.*)

c) to state that an action actually takes (took) place. This notion is sometimes emphasized by such adverbs as *actually, certainly, really*, and is often expressed in Dutch by *werkelijk, inderdaad, eigenlijk*, or some such adverb. It is, however, sometimes hard to distinguish from that described under b); e.g.:

i. Anne could have said much, and did long to say a little in defence of *her* friend's not very dissimilar claims to theirs, but her sense of personal respect to her father prevented her. *JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XVII, 163.* (Dutch: *verlangde er werkelijk naar.*)

"I don't think it'll hurt me if I throw my head back and take it off quick. Shall I?" ... When he did throw his head back, and take it off quick, I had a horrible fear, I confess, of seeing him meet the terrible fate of the lamented Mr. Topsywayer. *DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 34 b.*

"My eye!" he said, "It seems a good deal, don't it?" — "It does seem a good deal," I answered with a smile. *ib., Ch. V, 34 a.* (Dutch: *Het lijkt inderdaad een heele boel.*)

Parties at Vauxhall always did separate. *THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. VI, 55.*

She had been quite right when she had accused him of over-indulgence in his grief. He did give way to it till it became a luxury to him. *TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XII, 126.*

I tried to make things easy by saying to myself that Ned's parents did want us to go. *SWEET, Old Chap.*

I did think you cared for him; but I see you don't now. *HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. XXX, 230.*

It would be interesting to hear what his conversation is like. I should be quite amused to know what you did talk about. *BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. III, 13.* (Dutch: *waarover jelui eigenlijk praatte.*)

ii. I certainly do think there has been by far too much trouble taken to procure the acquaintance. *JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XVI, 153.*

The Countess did actually leave Camp villa before many months were past. *G. ELIOT, Scenes, I, Ch. IV, 38.*

I did not see that the old man really did box Jim's ears. *SAM. BUTTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. I, 4.*

d) in the imperative, the nature of the speaker's wish being a request, an advice, an exhortation, or even a command (*O. E. D. s.v. do, 30*), as reflected in the modulation of the voice. In Dutch the nature of the speaker's wish often finds additional expression in the semi-interjectional *toe*, which precedes, or *toch*, which follows the imperative. It is worth observing that this *do* is as frequent in nominal as in verbal predicates.

You are the most teasing, captious, incorrigible lover! — Do love like a man! *SHER., Riv., II, I, (226).* (The Dutch translation would have *toch*.)

"Oh, *do* skate, Mr. Winkle," said Arabella. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 268.* (The Dutch translation would have *toe*.)

Do go on, Fred. *id., Christm. Car., III.*

"There shall be *no game at all* in the house of a Sabbath eve," said Mrs. Roundhand; and out she flounced from the room, without ever so much as wishing us good night. "Do stay," said the husband, looking very much frightened, — "do stay." She won't come back while you're here; and I do wish you'd stay so. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 46.

"Dearest creature!" says Mr. Preston, "do but listen to me, and I'll make your husband consul at Timbuctoo. id., Ch. XIII, 179.

Note. Sometimes *do* is divided from the main verb or placed in back-position. The latter may then also be apprehended as an independent imperative. Compare O. E. D., s.v. *do*, 30, *b*.

Do, sir Lucius, let me begin with a damme! SHER., Riv., III, 4.

No, do, pray, be reasonable! MEREDITH.

Help me, do; make haste, do! ANNANDALE, CONC. Dict., s.v. *do*.

Let me say a prayer. Do! DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. LII, 495.

Come and sit down on your little stool and hold your tongue. do! G. ELIOT. Mill., I, Ch. III, 17.

73. *To do* is often used to replace a preceding verb, frequently together with all or some of its adjuncts, a function for which it is pre-eminently adapted on account of the indefiniteness of its meaning (65, *a*). Some applications of this vicarious function of the verb have incidentally been touched on in other parts of this grammar. See Ch. XXXII, 29; 30, *c*, *f*; 31; 32 *f*; 37 ff. It is weak-stressed when its subject or some other element of the sentence or clause is strong-stressed, and vice versa.

i. His spirits rose with eating as some men's do with drink. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 363.

It is as you think, not as I do. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. IV, 52.

But I did not know the Countess of Drum near so well as that sly minx, her granddaughter, did. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 32.

He learned, before I did, to distinguish between needing and wanting. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. XXX, 270.

High jinks and Low jinks tickles me, and doesn't her. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, Ch. II, V, 23.

ii. It was curious that this should make me uncomfortable, but I think it did. I know it did. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXX, 255.

If Heaven did not send the young gentleman to us, who did? THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXIII, 338.

"We are come on business of state to the Queen, and even her sleep must give way to that." It did. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 2.

I am sorry I spoke to you as I did. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. III, 10.

If she does not deserve to be happy, who does? W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV.

He knows, if any one does, where the shoe pinches. MACM. Mag.

74. Obs. I. Sometimes *to do* is followed by an infinitive representing a preceding verb. This seems to be usual only when some other element finishes the sentence. Compare the examples in Obs. V, *a*), and the first example in 73. It is hardly necessary to say that *to do* cannot be said to do vicarious duty when an infinitive follows; e.g.:

They smiled at each other, as men *do* smile on such occasions. BEATR. HAR., Ships I, Ch. III, 12. (One would have expected *will smile* as more appropriate).

It is of some importance to observe that in a complex sentence whose members have one and the same main verb, the latter is sometimes dropped in the second. Compare the two following examples:

- i. What Mr. Balfour does not say is, as usual, more important than what he does say. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5195, 1 c.
- ii. A few sentences spoken by Lord Phillimore, the eminent judge, who is an active worker in League affairs, may be quoted as typical of the attitude of responsible critics, as much for what he did not say as for what he did. *Manch. Guard.*, 193, 1926, 236 a.

II. Weak *do* is mostly placed after the subject, as in all the Examples cited in 73, but may also stand before it, as in:

He speaks uncommonly well, does Casaubon. *G. Eliot, Mid.*, Ch. IV, 25.  
 He never did care for the river, did Montmorency. *Jerome, Three Men*, Ch. I, 13. (Note the curious absence of the negative).  
 Englishmen . . . understand the temper of their American kindred better than do the Germans. *Times*, No. 1998, 330 d.

III. It should not be supposed that *do* is always required to do vicarious duty for the preceding verb. Not unfrequently this verb is simply repeated, as in:

They had never taken such a pleasant walk as they took that night. *Dick., Chuz.*, Ch. L, 388 b.

I'd think shame to stick to nursie as that shadow sticks to me. *Stev., My Shadow*.

IV. In its function as "verbum vicarium" *to do* is also used in other forms than the present, preterite or imperative.

Mrs. Gummidge did not always make herself so agreeable as she might have been expected to do. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. III, 19 b.

He was looking younger and more cheerful than he had done in the summer. *Norris, My Friend Jim*, Ch. IV, 29.

He hoped that they would all do their duty to their country, as Englishmen should do. *Daily Chron.*

V. The use of *to do* in this function is a fitting expedient: a) to avoid the clashing of two (pro)nouns in different grammatical functions, one subject and the other object, as in:

He has all his life dressed very well, and remembers habits as others do men. *Addison, Spect.*, No. 8.

I cannot consent to go on, unless you carry your gun as Winkle does his. *Dick., Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

I do love thee, Molly! . . . but then, mind you, your father never did me. *Thack., Virg.*, Ch. XXXIII, 339.

Sometimes the use of the intervening *do* is dispensed with; thus in:  
 "Oh, Floy!" cried her brother, "How I love you! How I love you, Floy!" —  
 "And I you, dear!" *Dick., Domb.*, Ch. XII, 112.

β) to avoid discrepancies as to tense, as in:

You Scotchmen have overspread us of late as the locusts did Egypt. *Smol., Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 108.

It does not smell here any sweeter than it did last half. *Hughes, Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 241.

γ) to give prominent front-position to the main verb, which in this case is placed in the infinitive-form or in the present-participle-form the latter in adverbial clauses of cause (Ch. XVII, 35, Obs. II).

i. The hand in which he wrote the address was not a steady one, but write it he did somehow. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 95.

"I recommend you to go for a few minutes whenever you are asked." And go I accordingly did sometimes. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 50.

Compare with this the Dutch practice in such a sentence as *Hoesten zonder de hand voor den mond te houden doet een goed Hagenaar nimmer*.

ii. Living as we do in the closing year of the 20th century [etc.]. BELLAMY, *Look Backw.*, Pref., 1.

But coming, as it does, on the morrow of defeat, Mr. Turner's high-flown praises are likely to fall very flat indeed on the majority of readers. *Lit. World*.

VI. In most of the examples cited in this and the preceding section *to do* may also be regarded to be used absolutely, i.e. with the infinitive, its natural complement, understood. This absolute use of *to do* is, indeed, on a par with that of *to be* and *to have*, and that of *can*, *may*, *must*, *need*, *ought*, *shall*, *should* and *will*, all of which form a kind of unit with the following verbals. Compare *Did you tell him? Yes, I did* with *Have you told him? Yes, I have*; *Can you come? Yes, I can*; etc. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2193; and compare *O. E. D.*, s.v. *do*, 24.





## CHAPTER II.

---

### THE SUBJECT.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Kinds of Subjects peculiar to English . . . . .	1
The Sham-Subject . . . . .	2— 9
The Anticipating Subject . . . . .	10—20
Shifting of the Subject . . . . .	21—38
Repetition of the Subject . . . . .	39—43

---

## KINDS OF SUBJECTS PECULIAR TO ENGLISH.

1. a) The kinds of words or word-groups that may be used as the subject of a sentence or clause are, in the main, the same in English as in Dutch.

The term subject as used in this chapter, is to be understood as short for grammatical subject, i. e. the word or word-group which determines the form of (the finite verb of) the predicate. For discussion of what is denominated the logical subject, the psychological subject, and also of what is meant by the term illogical subject, see Ch. XLV, 5.

b) Peculiar to English is the use as subject: 1) of absolute genitives or possessive pronouns (Ch. XXIV, 45 ff; Ch. XXVIII, 21 ff), which is, however, current only in the higher literary style and naturally confined to sentences with a nominal predicate whose significant part is a noun; thus in:

i. Mrs. Gummidge's was rather a fretful disposition. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III.  
Chambers's is the only Ercyclopædia that is always up-to-date. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 631 a.

ii. Mine are true-born English legs. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4.  
And mine has been the fate of those | To whom the goodly earth and air | Are  
bann'd and barr'd. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*

Yours is the greater treason, for yours is the treason of friendship. LONGF.,  
*Miles Stand.*, IV.

Is yours a strong constitution? DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 105.

Ours is a happy, humble Christian home. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 74.  
Hers was a death by misadventure. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. XXXVII, 210.

Note. Sometimes doubts may arise as to which element in sentences of the above type is the subject, which the nominal part of the predicate. The best test to be applied is to ascertain which element indicates the thing described, which describes the state or quality predicated. It stands to reason that, unless a contrast is to be expressed, it is the latter which in the spoken language would receive the stronger stress. Compare Ch. XXVI, 4. Considered in this light the above sentences admit of no other interpretation than that which assigns to the absolute genitive or possessive pronoun the function of subject. In the following examples, on the other hand, the absolute possessive pronoun constitutes the describing element and is, accordingly, to be apprehended as the nominal part of the predicate:

For Thine is the kingdom, The power and the glory, For ever and ever. The  
Lord's Prayer.

Theirs is the time of life for happiness. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2.

Be mine the philosopher's life in the quiet woodland ways. TEN., *Maud*, I, IV, ix.

Ours are the villages on the heights. RUDY. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

Thus also in the following examples, in which the copula is suppressed:

Their's not to make reply, | Their's not to reason why, | Their's but to do and die. TEN., *Charge of the Light Brig.*, II.

His not to reason why society is in an ugly mess. His but to do, and, if need be, die. *Manch. Guard.*, 11/6, 1926, 435 a.

In the far more common construction in which the absolute genitive or possessive pronoun is in back-position there is not often any difficulty in assigning to each element its grammatical function; but even here there may be some hesitation; thus, perhaps, in:

Thoughts of great deeds were mine, dear Friend, when first | The clouds which wrap this world from youth did pass. SHELLEY, *Revolt, Dedication*, III.

For detailed discussion of what constitutes the nature of subject and predicate see JESPERSEN, *Phil.*, Ch. XI.

2) of substantive genitives or possessive pronouns (Ch. XXIV, 49 f; Ch. XXXIII, 26), the former indicating an establishment, firm, residence, place of worship, or a day dedicated to a patron-saint (Ch. XXIV, 48), the latter a letter (Ch. XXXIII, 26, c); e. g.:

i. The doctor's is on the other side of the street. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 88.

There was Sowerberry's the undertaker's just as it used to be. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 474.

St. Stephen's has once more become the centre of the Empire. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 195, 227 a.

ii. Yours of the 18th has just reached me here this morning. *Times*.

3) of gerunds and gerund-clauses (Ch. XIX; Ch. LVI); e. g.:

Walking is good exercise. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 385.

My girl's singing after that little odious governess's is unbearable. THACK. *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

## THE SHAM-SUBJECT.

2. Some sentences express the mere existence of an action or state, without mentioning the person(s) or thing(s) to which it is ascribed or can be ascribed. The predicate and the verb contained in it are then said to be impersonal. As in English a finite verb, excepting only the Imperative, requires some word or word-group by way of subject, such a predicate is then furnished with an empty word to perform this function. See, however, 8. The word used for this purpose is the indefinite *it*. Not having any meaning, it may, in this function, be called a sham-subject. The placing of the sham-subject affords a formal expedient to distinguish between a statement and a question. Compare *It was very hot that day* with *Was it very hot that day?* In subordinate statements and subordinate questions, the sham-subject, however, occupies the same place, i.e. before the finite verb of the predicate. Compare *I told him*

*that it was very hot that day with I asked him whether it was very hot that day.* For further discussion see also Ch. XLV, and Ch. LIII, 5 ff; and compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 257; PAUL, Prinz.<sup>3</sup>, § 91; DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakkunst, I, § 12; III, 83; ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 191; JESPERSEN, Phil. of Gram., 25, 241.

3. Impersonal predicates mostly express a natural phenomenon (often a state of the weather), a point or length of time, a distance, or a state of things generally; thus in:

i. What a hard winter it was! It froze straight on for two months. SWEET. I wake when it blows. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 18 b.

It has turned abominably cold. Mrs. WARD, Tres., I, Ch. I, 1 a.

ii. When it grew towards evening, the master horse ordered a place for me to lodge in. SWIFT, Gul., IV, Ch. II, (193 a).

It was three days after the death of Philip Beaufort. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 40.

It is getting on for ten o'clock. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, I, 136.

It is my birthday on Sunday. SWEET, Old Chapel.

It wants five minutes to the half-hour. O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, c.

It was a long time to wait. Times, Lit. Sup. 29/4, 1926, 309 b.

iii. How far is it to London? It is only 6 miles to Oxford. It is a long way to the sea. O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, c.

It is a long, long way to Tipperary.

iv. It will soon come to a rupture between them. It is all over with poor Jack. O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, d.

Where does it feel painful? *ib.*, s.v. *it*, 3, e.

Honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be prolonged, and it may go well with thee in the land which the Lord, thy God, giveth thee. Bible, Deut., V, 16.

It is quite a strange world to me. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. IX, 69.

Evidently this old fool had not the nerve, when it came to the point, to deface the idol. ANSTEY, A Fallen Idol, Prol., 20.

The expressions illustrated in the following examples are now archaic or literary, but are not unfrequent in mock-dignified style:

i. How is it with you? SHER., Critic, I, 2.

ii. He (sc. Captain Cuttle) merely said: "How goes it?" DICK., Domb., Ch. IV, 32.

"How goes it?" said Kentuck, looking past Stumpy towards the candle-box. BRET HARTE, Luck of Roaring Camp, 9.

How goes it, my girl? GALSW., Strife, II, (225).

Hullo, Sabre, How goes it? HUTCHINSON, If Winter comes, II, Ch. VII, vi, 135.

"Hello, Oliver!" — "How goes it?" — "Splendid," said Doggie. "You all right?" W. J. LOCKE, The Rough Road, Ch. XIX, 238.

iii. How fares it with thee? BYRON, Manfred, III, 4.

So fared it with Geraint. TEN., Ger. & En., 343.

And you, young man — how has it fared with you? LYTTON, Night & Morn., 39.

Ill fares it now with our youngsters. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. VII, 141.

Her thoughts wandered, as ever, to her lover. Where was he and how had it fared with him? EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XXXIV, 298.

4. Obs. I. Instead of the indefinite *it* we sometimes find a noun as the subject of a predicate denoting a natural phenomenon; thus in:



In the stormy east-wind straining, | The pale yellow woods are waning, | The broad stream in his banks complaining, | Heavily the low sky raining | Over tower'd Camelot. TEN., *Lady of Shal.*, 121.

They were on a most desolate hill, far from every human habitation, and the hour was getting late. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXIX, 226.

In this case the verb is mostly furnished with a kind of effective or cognate object, which, however is frequent enough also when the indefinite *it* is the subject. For examples with *to rain* see also Ch. XLVI, 6; 49, *a*; Ch. XLVII, 18, *d*; 30.

i. I can weather the roughest gale | That ever wind did blow. LONGF., *Wreck of the Hesp.* 31.

The wind hath blown a gale all day. SOUTHEY, *Inchcape Rock*, 47.

There could not well be more ink splashed about it (sc. the school-room), if it had been roofless from its first construction, and the skies had rained, snowed, hailed, and blown ink through the varying seasons of the year. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 39 *a*.

ii. It rained a November drizzle. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXI, 285.

Also a pronoun denoting a person is sometimes found as the subject of such a predicate; thus in:

Behold I will rain bread from heaven for you. Bible, *Exod.*, XVI, 4.

Upon the wicked he shall rain snares, fire and brimstone, and an horrible tempest. id., *Psalms*, XI, 6.

Very common also, especially in expressions denoting the state of the weather, is the practice of replacing *it* by a noun denoting the time at which that state prevails; e.g.:

The night had been fine and warm. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXXVII, 289.

To-day has been beautifully fine throughout. Manch. Exam., 229, 1885, 56. (O. E. D., s.v. *to-day*, B, 1.)

II. Peculiar to English is the frequent use of the name of a point of time as subject, instead of the indefinite *it*. Compare the two following groups of examples:

i. What day of the month is to-day?

Is to-day my birthday? DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XVII, 69 *a*.

For then was latter April. TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 450.

Summer was in England. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. III, 33.

ii. What day of the month is it to-day? SWEET, *Elementar-Buch*, 91.

It's my birthday on Sunday. id., *Old Chapel*.

Compare also: This is the fourth of October. TROL., *Orley Farm*, I, Ch. IV, 46. (= this day.)

III. In sentences denoting a state of things generally the plurals *things*, *matters* and, occasionally, *affairs*, which are hardly more definite than the indefinite *it*, often do duty for the latter; thus in:

i. Things were faring badly indeed with the conquering army of the Alma. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 149.

Things could not go on so smoothly for ever. Mrs. CRAIK, *A Hero*.

ii. How stand matters between you and Lydia? SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

iii. Thus stood affairs in the castle when [etc.]. SCOTT, *Abbot*, I, 12.

For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 57; Ch. XL, 194, *b*; and compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, § 5.443.

5. a) The mere existence of a state of things can also be expressed by the verb *to be*, which in this function is almost regularly preceded by weak *there*. Thus *There had been rain the night before* (GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. I, 127) is equivalent to *It had rained the night before*.

b) This construction is also the usual one to render the passive voice of subjective verbs (Ch. XLV, 20), so common in Dutch and German, but non-existent in English (Ch. XLVII, 13, a). Thus *There was a knock at the door* (BARRY PAIN, *Culminating Point*) corresponds to the Dutch *Er werd aan de deur geklopt*. Further instances of this construction are found in:

There was more laughter at this. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 126.

At each fall there was a cheer. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 45.

There was much drinking of healths and clinking of glasses. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. III, 31.

There was a tripping through the gallery, and soft cheerful laughs, and opening and closing of doors, and, for a time, a hush. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 202.

Note a) Passive conversions of objective verbs with weak *there* opening the sentence, although not so common as in Dutch, are frequent enough in English, but are not, of course, impersonal; e.g.: There were, two or three nights ago, some fiddles heard in the street. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 311.

There had been, some time before, a murder committed on or near Hounslow Heath. DE QUINCEY, *Conf. of an Opium-Eater*, 30.

Then there was nothing more said about it between the squire and his sister-in-law. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

There would be just as many crimes committed without it (sc. whiskey). MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 182.

For more detailed comment on these passive constructions see Ch. XLVII, 11, 13.

β) Some further renderings of Dutch passives of subjective verbs are found in:

i. After the vote was taken, the Assembly broke up. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113. (Dutch: *Nadat er gestemd was, ging de vergadering uiteen*.) At last the dishes were set on, and grace was said, DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 67. (Dutch: *en er werd gebeden*.)

Prayers were offered in all the churches. BESANT, *London*, I, 34. (Dutch: *Er werd in alle kerken gebeden*.)

ii. A great part of the evening had worn away, when a knock came at her door. DICK., *Chimes*, III, 69. (Dutch: *Een groot deel van den avond was reeds verstreken, toen er aan de deur geklopt werd*.)

;) "In archaic ballad style, the introductory *it* (*it was, it is*) is sometimes = *there* (as in mod. Germ. *es war, es ist*); but in other cases, 't appears to mean *the subject of my song or tale*." O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 2, c.

It was an English Ladye bright, | And she would marry a Scottish knight. SCOTT, *Lay. VI. M.*

It is an ancient mariner, | And he stoppeth one of three. COLL., *Anc. Mar.*, I.  
It is the miller's daughter, | And she is grown so dear. TEN., *Mill. Daught.*, 109.

6. Apart from the predicates commented on in 4, Obs. I and II, mention may here be made of some verbs whose subject may be either the indefinite *it*, or some (pro)noun denoting a person or thing, the meaning of the sentence being practically the same. This variation of subject is, among other verbs, possible with:

*to fare*: i. Ah, my son! it is so seldom that I see thee: how fares it with thee? — well? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. II, 83.

How fares it with the happy dead? TEN., *In Mem.*, XLIV, 1.

ii. How fares my Kate? SHAK., *Taming*, IV, 336;.

III fares the traveller now, and he that stalks | In pond'rous boots beside his reeking team. COWPER, *Task*, IV, 341.

A man might go farther and fare worse. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 33.

Note. Except for the saying (*he*) *might go farther and fare worse*, both constructions are now only in literary use, the latter being, however, more common and less dignified than the former. For illustration of the construction with the indefinite *it* see also 3.

*to need*: i. It needed this new sense to make men human. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. I, 18.

It needed all his influence to prevent his countrymen from insisting that Britain should make peace. *Westm. Gaz.*, 7/10, 1922, 28 a.

ii. There needeth not the hell that bigots frame | To punish those who err. SHELLEY, *Queen Mab*, III, 79.

There needs no fostering for such memories as those. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 256.

Note. Besides the above there is the passive construction, as in: Some such reform is needed. *Graph.*

*to require*: i. Surely it does not require a palace to be happy with Mary. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*

ii. If there requires further evidence of the rude undeveloped character of our education, we have it in the fact that the comparative worths of different kinds of knowledge have been as yet scarcely discussed. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 11 b.

*to want*: i. "What is the hour?" — "It wants but one till sunset, | And promises a lovely twilight." BYRON, *Manfred*, III, 1, 2.

It wanted but two days to his departure for Guestwick. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LI, 247.

It only wants five minutes to dinner. TROL., *Belton Est.*, Ch. VI, 65.

ii. There still wanted half-an-hour to dinner. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 353.

Note. The construction with the indefinite *it* appears to be the usual one. According to the O. E. D. (s.v. *want*, 1, c), however, the phrase *it wants of six (o'clock)* in the meaning of *it is not quite six*, is now obsolete.

*to strike*: i. It struck two. MRS. GASK., *Mary Bart.*, Ch. XXII, 231.

ii. The clock struck nine. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, Ch. XIII, 319.

iii. Nine o'clock struck. O. E. D., s.v. *strike*, 41, b.

Note. The three constructions illustrated by the above examples, appear to be equally usual.

7. a) Many predicates which in Dutch are used impersonally as well as personally correspond to a personal construction, often one with weak *there*, in English; thus:

i. *Het stinkt hier* = There is a bad smell here. *Het ruikt hier lekker* = There is a sweet smell here. *Het rookt hier erg* = There is a good deal of smoke here. *Het tocht hier* = There is a draught here. *Het stuift hier erg* = There is a great deal of dust here. *Het*

*scheelt hem aan het hoofd* = There is something the matter with his head.

ii. *Het duizelde hem* = He was giddy. *Het jeukt hem aan zijn been* = His leg itches. *Het spookt in dit huis* = This house is haunted. *Het woont hier aardig* = This is a nice place to live in.

b) Of some special interest is the usual English rendering of the impersonal *het ontbreekt aan* and its variations, which mostly opens with weak *there* and is especially frequent in negative connexions; e. g.:

There have never wanted those who have trod in their footsteps. TRENCH, 1, Eng. Past & Pres., 37.

There are not wanting signs that the wealth thus inherited and squandered is coming to an end. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 5 b.

Note. The use of the passive voice as in the following example appears to be rare:

There were not wanted some who suspected my uncles of being concerned in my father's fate. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. II, 11.

β) When besides the thing wanting a person is concerned in the predication, a construction like that in the following example is the usual one:

Hereward wanted not for quick wit or for chivalrous feeling. KINGSLEY, Her., Ch. III, 26 a.

γ) Conversely the impersonal English *it wants* may correspond to the Dutch personal *Er is noodig*; e. g.:

It wanted but a feather to turn the scale. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XX, 178.

It wanted this to complete the defeat. id., Hard Times, III, Ch. II, 105 a.

I was watching the boys getting in sticks for the bonfire — and it wants plenty of sticks. LEW. CARROLL, Through the Looking-glass, Ch. I, 3.

8. a) Sometimes the predicate makes the impression of having discarded the indefinite *it*; thus in:

Nowhere is so pleasant to while away a few idle weeks at, as one or other of the Universities. LAMB., Es. of El., II, 158.

Now that Rebecca is with us will be the very time. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 28.

Now was Eustace's turn to be roused. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. IV, 29 b.

It will be observed that the absence of the indefinite *it* causes the function of subject to be shifted to the opening adverbial adjunct. Compare such a sentence as:

From Picnic Point to Old Windsor Lock is a delightful bit of river. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. XII, 146.

b) It is difficult to consider predicates like those in the following examples in another light than that of instances of such as stand without a grammatical subject:

Being Sunday, we had service on deck after we left the bay. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. II, 39.

Being summer, the rivers were open and navigable. HUGH CONWAY, Called back, Ch. XI, 124.

For further discussion and illustration see also Ch. LIII, 6, a.

c) There also appears to be ellipsis of the indefinite *it* in the combination *needs must*, chiefly used after *than* or *if*, as in:

i. I ... would have no more of these follies than *needs must*. SCOTT, *Ken.* Ch. XVI, 185.

ii. If *needs must*, the Allies themselves are bound to face the situation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8273, 2*a*.

d) In the expression *if need be* (or *were*) (Ch. XLIX, 37, *a en c*) analysis now assigns to *need* the function of subject, but it may be elliptical for *if it need be*, in which *need* would be a verb followed by an infinitive and *it* the indefinite pronoun.

A true woman gives — (her life, if need be). READE, *Never too late*. I, Ch. VI, 71.

Lord Kitchener went to Paris, prepared, if need were, to relieve Lord French of his command. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8103, 9*a*.

In the first of the following constructions it is a (pro)noun indicating a person, in the second, which appears to be very rare, the anticipating *it* (10 ff), that might be supplied:

i. *Needs must* when the devil drives. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. III, 31.

ii. He could produce some fifteen hundred pounds; and would if *needs be* that he should do so. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXXVIII, 469.

e) Instances of a finite verb standing without a subject appear to have been more common in Older English than they are now. See MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 198. Thus the Old English (West-Saxon ± 1000) JOHN, VI, 35:

Ne hingrað þone þe to me cymð, and ne þirst: one nātre ðe on me geiyrð.  
runs in the Oxford Bible for Teachers, which is based on the Authorized Version of 1611:

He that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.

In the Revised Version of the year 1881 the verbs *to hunger* and *to thirst*, which are now obsolete, have been replaced by *to be hungry* and *to be thirsty* respectively.

9. A remarkable instance of change of subject, due to the omission or absence of the indefinite *it*, may be seen in certain locutions with *woe*, in which the word is now made to do duty as the subject, although it originally held the function of an adverbial adjunct. For detailed discussion see especially STOFFEL's article on the subject in E. S., XI. Compare also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 75; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, §§ 19, 151; EINENKEL, *Streifzüge*, 113. For the use of *woe* as an element of an elliptical sentence see Ch. XXIII, 13.

i. Woe betide us if we are late! SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2263.

But woe betide the wandering wight. | That treads its circle in the night! SCOTT, *Marm.*, III, XXIII, II.

The house was in a flame, presently; and woe betide the wretched fellow who afterwards came home to look for his house and his children! THACK., *Barry*



Lyndon, Ch. IV, 70. (Observe that *betide* undergoes no modification, although the time-sphere is the past).

ii. But, woe is me, you are so sick of late, | So far from cheer and from your former state, | That I distrust you. SHAK., Hamlet, III, 2, 138.

"Ah, woe is me for Gloucester, wretched man!" — "Be woe for me, more wretched than he is." id., Henry VI, B, III, 2, 72—73. (Observe the changed grammatical function of *woe* in the second part of this quotation.)

Woe is me! Authority forgets a dying king. TEN., Morte d'Arth., 115.

It is doomed to wander through the world — oh, woe is me! — and witness what it cannot share! DICK., Christm. Car., I, 20.

iii. Woe be to those whom he found there! THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 351.

Woe be to that man or woman who relied on her one inch beyond the point where it was her interest to be trustworthy! CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. VIII, 88. (Observe that in this and the preceding example *to be* is kept in the present tense, although the time-sphere is the past.)

Woe indeed was to the man who trod upon his toes! PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, A, 10.

iv. Son of man, prophesy and say, Thus saith the Lord God; Howl ye, Woe worth the day! Bible, Ezek., XXX, 2.

Woe worth the chase, woe worth the day, | That costs thy life, my gallant grey! SCOTT, Lady, I, IX, 15.

Note α) Except for the fourth, which is now obsolete, the above locutions are still common in the higher literary style.

β) Some instances of the older construction are here added for comparison.

Phedra answerde, "y-wis, me is as wo | For him as ever I was for any man. CHAUC., Leg. of Good Women, 1985.

O! wo were us alyve! id., Cant. Tales, E., 139.

Wa worthe þan monne. LAZAR., I, 142 (MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, 229).

γ) With *woe be to you!* compare *Peace be to you!* as in:

Peace be to this house, and to all that dwell in it! Bk. of Common Prayer.

δ) A further travelling of *woe* from its original application may be seen in the following examples, in which the word is the nominal part of the predicate:

I am woe for't, sir. SHAK., Temp., V, 1, 139. (Compare: I am sorrow for thee. id., Cymb., V, 5, 297.)

Kind uncle, woe were we each one, | If harm should hap to brother John. SCOTT, Marm., I, XXII, 4.

## THE ANTICIPATING SUBJECT.

10. As anticipating pronoun *it* is used to represent a variety of clauses, and also simple elements of the sentence. Although in this function it may be said to stand for a certain notion, it sometimes has some vagueness about it, which makes it difficult to distinguish it from the indefinite *it* used as the grammatical subject of impersonal predicates. Thus it is not easy to decide whether *it* is anticipating or indefinite in:

It does not promise well for any of the parties concerned when a young woman can bring herself to show the love-letters of him to whom she is engaged to the lover whom she has refused. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXIII, 296.

A rigid discrimination between anticipating *it* and indefinite *it* can, accordingly, hardly be sustained and is of little practical importance. It is maintained in these pages only because it affords some convenience to discuss certain grammatical phenomena in a systematic way. Compare Ch. XLV, 5, *b*; Ch. LIII, 5 ff; also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 191—194.

Anticipating *it* may represent: *a*) a subordinate statement, as in *It was agreed (determined, etc.), that some action should be taken without any delay*. Instances being found in plenty in practically every page of prose or verse, documentary illustration is hardly necessary.

*b*) a subordinate question; thus in:

What does it signify how we dress here at Cranford? *Mrs. GASK., Cranf.*, Ch. I, 10.

It was not generally known whither he had fled. *MAC., Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 108.  
What is it to me what he is? *HARDY, Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXX, 230.

*c*) a substantive clause (Ch. XV, 6; Ch. XXXIX, 25); thus in:

'Tis strange my Theseus, that these lovers speak of. *SHAK., Mids.*, V, 1, 1.  
He it is for whom I am thus anxious and malicious. *SHER., School*, I. I. (364).  
After all it isn't the trade that signifies. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hall*, Ch. X, 108.  
The poor gentleman was never quite clear who it was that went for Dr. Brown. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 120.

It may be noted that he it was who persuaded English capital to build the Canadian Pacific Railway. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3901, 119 *b*. (The first *it* represents a subordinate statement).

*d*) an infinitive-clause; thus in:

It would be ungrateful not to drink his health. *DICK., Christm. Car.*, III, 73.

It doesn't become you to talk about him. *HARDY, Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXIX, 224.

*e*) a gerund-clause; thus in:

i. What avails it speaking? *SCOTT, Mon.*, Ch. XXI, 233.

It's hot work dancing. *TROL., Macd.*, Ch. XIII, 231.

ii. It is of no use your saying so. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*, § 494.

Is it not extraordinary his taking a fancy to me? *Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest*, II, Ch. X, 177.

*f*) an element of the sentence together with its adjuncts; thus in:

'Tis not a farthing matter her death. *SWIFT, Journ. to Stella*, LXI.

It isn't your fault about that filthy paper. *TROL., He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XII, 93.

It is perfectly brutal the way most women nowadays behave to men who are not their husbands. *Osc. WILDE, Lady Wind Fan.*, III, (107).

It's inconceivable the ass he was. *MAY SINCLAIR, Khaki (Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 190).

11. Obs. I. Other relations than that of head-clause to subjective clause sometimes shine forth more or less distinctly in sentences of the above type. Thus in the following example quoted by KRUISINGA (*Handbk.*, § 1968) the *ing*-form may also be apprehended as a present participle modifying a nominative to be supplied from the context, an inter-

pretation that would entail the conclusion that *it* is the indefinite pronoun:

The vinery was of their own designing, and of extraordinary interest. In contemplation of its lofty glass and aluminium-cased pipes the feeling of soreness left her. It was very pleasant, standing with Gerald, looking at what they had planned together. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XII, 145. (i. e. as she was standing etc. It should be added that Mr. KRUISINGA's interpretation differs materially from the above.)

In many cases an objective relation is clearly felt to exist between the main word of the predicate in the head-clause and the following subordinate statement; thus in: *It is my hope (or expectation) that he will succeed. It is hoped (or expected) that he will succeed.* See especially the interesting discussion of the subject in KRUISINGA, *Handb.*<sup>1</sup>, § 1968, where, however, the grammatical and the semantic analyses of the sentences discussed are not properly discriminated.

II. Instead of the phrases *it says, it tells*, etc. (used in quoting from books, etc.), which are archaïc or colloquial (O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, f), the passive construction *it is said, it is written*, etc. are now more common.

It says in the newspapers that he has been caught. It tells in the Bible how David slew Goliath. SCHOOL-BOY. Please, sir, it says so in the book. O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, f.

III. The subordinate statement to which *it* refers is not expressed, but can easily be supplied from the context in sentences like the following:

Of course I must go, but it is a great nuisance. He has come out at the top of the list; is it not splendid? O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 1 c.

The reference of *it* is less distinct in such a sentence as:

I should go abroad if it were not for my parents. O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 3, g. i. e. \*it, viz. my not going abroad, is for my parents, in which *for* has the value of *on account of*.)

IV. The grammatical relation of the clause or word-group to its representative, the pronoun *it*, is that of apposition (Ch. IV, 10, d).

It will, perhaps, be thought that in the examples under 10 (c) the clause should be apprehended as an adnominal clause, *it* being, possibly, understood as the antecedent of the relative by which it is introduced. The chief argument adduced in support of this view is that the relatives *which* and *that* are never used without an antecedent. But this view is refuted a) by the fact that in the older stages of the language *that* was frequently, and *which* occasionally, used as an independent relative, i. e. one without an antecedent. See especially WESTERN, *De Engelske Bisætninger*, § 173, b) and c). The older practice may still be seen in the often-quoted saying *Handsome is that handsome does*.

Also in the following example *that* is best regarded as a relative without an antecedent:

He knew in his heart that heaven could not call it murder that he had done. TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. XXIII, 420.

β) by a comparison with such a sentence as *He's a lucky fellow*

*whoever gets it* (Tit-bits), in which *he* cannot be considered as the antecedent of *whoever*, compound pronouns with (*so*)*ever* being never used in adnominal clauses.

γ) by the incongruity of a plural, or a person-indicating, relative having the neuter singular *it* for its antecedent.

On a superficial view there appears to be some show of reason in considering the (pro)noun preceding the relative pronoun as the antecedent of the latter. This would, of course, mean that the clause introduced by the relative pronoun has an adnominal function. This view finds some support in the fact that the predicating verb in the relative clause agrees in person and number with the (pro)noun in the head-clause, as in:

It is not I who have lost the Athenians; it is the Athenians who have lost me. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, II, Ch. II, 86.

But the correctness of this interpretation can be disproved by the analysis of such a sentence as *It was that which made him ill*. If *that* were the antecedent of *which*, substitution of *what* for *that which* would be possible, which is regularly the case wherever *what* introduces a substantive clause, bating, of course, some semantic modification (Ch. XXXIX, 24, *b*). It is hardly necessary to say that *\*It was what made him ill* is unintelligible.

Also the personal pronouns *he* (*she*) and *they*, or the demonstrative pronouns *this* (*these*) and *that* (*those*), which are sometimes found in the place of *it*, are best considered as anticipating pronouns representing substantive clauses; thus in:

i. They were royal troops the French sent against you. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VI, 65.

Are they gods that attend there on men? TROL., *Framl. Pars*, Ch. XX, 192.

ii. Is this a dagger which I see before me? SHAK., *Macb.*, II, I, 33.

Was that your brother who knocked at the door? MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, 251.

The alternative view is more plausible in the case of the head-clause having another predicating verb than the meaningless *to be*; thus in: Call it not vain: — they do not err, | Who say, that when the Poet dies, | Mute Nature mourns her worshipper. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, 1.

He makes no friend who never made a foe. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1082.

When, however, the head-clause with such a predicate has *it* for its subject, this pronoun is best regarded as the representative of a substantive clause; thus in:

Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying [etc.]. Bible, *Matth.*, I, 22.

Attention may here be drawn to such constructions as *Who is that just rang?* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2124), and *What is that you say?* (SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVIII, 184), in which the anticipating *it* is dispensed with, as appears from a comparison with *Who is it that gives those three shrieks?* (THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLIV, 463), and *What is it that you ask?* (TEN., *En. Ard.*, 424). SWEET, (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2124) regards *that* as used in these examples as a demonstrative pronoun, a view which is hardly consonant with its distinctly weak stress. From what has been observed above the student will readily



conclude that the present writer considers *that* as a relative pronoun without an antecedent, and *it* as found in the two last examples, as the anticipating pronoun representing a substantive clause. For further discussion and illustration see Ch. XXXIX, 25, *b*.

V. Sometimes the clause containing the anticipating *it* is placed parenthetically in the body of the accompanying clause; thus in:

Augusta was, it will be remembered, an exceedingly pretty woman. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VI, 55.

VI. *It* is not the anticipating, but the indefinite pronoun, in sentences like the following, in which the adjective stands attributively before the gerund:

It's easy listening to him. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XII, 134.

It is ill dancing with a heavy heart. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. X, 407.

It's easy talking when you are young. BESANT, The World went very well then, Ch. I, 7.

VII. In sentences of the above type weak *there* sometimes takes the place of the indefinite *it*, which speaks for the fact that the functions of the two words are felt to be very much alike; e. g.:

I'm told there is very snug lying in the Abbey. SHER., Riv., V, 3, (279).

Nor is it matter of surprise that the Dutch frequently has weak *er* where the English has anticipating *it*; thus especially in a head-clause with a passive verb, or the verb *to remain*, as in:

i. It was muttered that the catastrophe was to be attributed to negligence. STOF., Handl., II, 129.

ii. It only remains to say that every one who was any one, seemed to be at the Durbar. PUNCH.

VIII. Such a sentence as the following is remarkable in that it dispenses with three empty words, viz: *it*, *is*, and the conjunction *that*, without any detriment to its semantic significance:

Mr. Snowden was almost as brief as Mr. Lloyd George, but, needless to say, his speech was not in support even of a qualified second reading. Manch. Guard., 24, 1926, 264 *b*.

12. *a*) A separate group of sentences with anticipating *it* is formed (24) by those which in the literary language are in frequent use to give prominence to the word(-group) which indicates the foremost notion in the speaker's thoughts, i. e. what has been called the psychological subject of the predication (Ch. XLV, 5). The sentences here referred to open with *it* followed by some form of the verb *to be*. Thus from the simple sentence *Yesterday I offered your brother a shilling for his knife* the following complex sentences may be evolved:

- 1) It was yesterday that I offered your brother a shilling for his knife.
- 2) It was I that (who) offered your brother a shilling for his knife yesterday.
- 3) It was your brother to whom I offered a shilling for his knife yesterday.
- 4) It was to your brother that I offered a shilling for his knife yesterday.
- 5) It was a shilling that I offered to your brother for his knife yesterday.
- 6) It was for his knife that I offered your brother a shilling yesterday.

It will be observed that the subordinate clauses in the above sen-



tences, some of which are awkward enough, are of a different description. In 1), 4), and 6) they are subordinate statements introduced by the conjunction *that*; in 2), 3) and 5) they are substantive clauses introduced by an independent ("condensed") relative pronoun. Nor is the function of *to be* the same in all of them: in 2), 3) and 5) it is a pure copula without any meaning whatsoever; in 1), 4) and 6) it stands for a weak *to happen*.

The connecting word, whether it has the function of a conjunction or a relative pronoun, is frequently dispensed with; thus in:

i. It is not often we have snow in the middle of May. SWEET, *Elementarbuch*, No. 62.

It is only of late I have found out how hard it is to forgive him. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 216.

ii. 'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view. CAMPBELL, *Pleas. of Hope*, I, 7.

b) The connective word is sometimes a conjunction of place or time; thus in:

i. Yet it was in Venner's office where Michael found the perfect fruit of time's infinitely fastidious preservation, the survival not so much of the fittest as of the most expressive. COMPT. MACK., *Sinister Street*, 636 (KRUISINGA, *English Studies*, III, vi, 170).

ii. It was long before people ceased to take long walks for the sake of asking his aid. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. II, 14.

c) Complexes with a subordinate clause opening with *since* deserve more than a passing mention. This conjunction suggests a preceding *ago*, which, however, appears to be frequently dispensed with; e. g.:

i. It is ten hours since I had anything to eat. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 109. It was forty years since I read "the Winter's Tale". *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 202, 359 a.

ii. It was not three months ago since, wild with joyful expectation, she had there run backwards and forwards some ten times a-day. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXIX, 229.

When *that* takes the place of *since*, the use of *ago* is, of course, obligatory; thus in:

It was only two years ago that Esther had come home to live permanently with her father. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. VI, 111.

Let's see, it was fifteen days ago that we first met. MAX. PEMB., *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. IX, 46.

It was only three years ago that he left Cambridge. BARRY PAIN, *Culminating Point*.

d) The sentences here considered can be called complex only on the strength of their containing two (finite) verbs. As the introducing *it is* (or *was*) conveys little or no meaning, they are, however, semantically as distinctly simple as the originals from which they may, in a manner, be said to be evolved. This applies, of course, also to those in which the subordinate clause precedes, or in which it is replaced by an adverbial adjunct, as in:

i. But since I heard him make reply | Is many a weary hour. TEN., Talk. Oak, VIII.

ii. It is but some four or five weeks since his return to Rome. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. IV, 31.

It was now more than three weeks since Bernardine's return to London. BEATR. HAR., Ships, II, Ch. I, 113.

For further discussion see also DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 19, 4; and especially KRUISINGA in English Studies, III, VI, 170 ff.

13. Special interest attaches also to such sentences as *It is difficult* (12) *to describe this adequately* (a), in which the infinitive-clause, represented by the anticipating *it*, stands after a predicative adjective or adjectival equivalent. These sentences admit of several variations, as is shown by *This it is difficult to describe adequately* (b), *To describe this adequately is difficult* (c), *This is difficult to describe adequately* (d). It will be observed that in the last the grammatical relations between the different elements of the sentence differ from those in the three others; i. e. *this*, which is the object of *to describe* in the three first, is the subject of *is difficult* in the last; *to describe this adequately* is the subject in the three first, while *to describe adequately* is adverbial adjunct of *difficult* in the last.

Construction (a) gives rise to no comment. Illustration is afforded by:

'Tis hard to say, if greater want of skill | Appear in writing or in judging ill. POPE, Es. on Crit., I.

It became very difficult to drag her mind away HUTCHINSON, This Freedom, IV, Ch. I, 260.

Construction (b) is the usual one when the object of the infinitive is represented by: 1) an interrogative pronoun; thus in:

What's it possible to say? DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, I, 28.

What would it be right to do? id., Cop., Ch. XXIX, 283 a.

What would it be right to pay the waiter? Ch. V, 35 a.

2) a relative pronoun; thus in:

There are some things which it is quite beyond the power of any judge or jury to decide. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 223.

I shall only mention a few points which it is very easy for each one to find out for himself with a little careful observation. WYLD, Growth of Eng., Ch. II, 19.

3) an independent relative pronoun; thus in:

What it concerns us to know about this early passion is given in a letter from a brother of Miss Grove. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. II, 18.

What it is necessary for the Commons to face is that they must either adopt these drastic measures or appeal to the country. Rev. of Rev., No. 203, 452 b.

4) a subordinate question; thus in:

Where the doctor had studied, how he acquired his medical knowledge, and where he had received his diploma, it is hard at present to say. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl. I, 107.)

But what pleasure she can have found in having Miss Burney about her, it is not easy to comprehend. *MAC., Mad. d'Arblay, (722 b.)*

Whether the widower grieved much for the loss of his sweet young wife, it was impossible to tell. *Mrs. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., B, 69.*

What Mr. Lauderdale felt, it is impossible to guess. *MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. V, 98.*

Thus also when an equivalent verbal predicate is used, as in:

But how another eleven millions sterling is to be raised by taxation, it will puzzle the acutest of French financiers to discover. *Westm. Gaz., No. 4937, 2 b. (approximately = ... it will be difficult for ...)*

5) a substantive clause; thus in:

Whatever accomodation he can have ... it is our duty to afford him. *SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XVI, 194.*

What were the faults in his character it must be the business of the tale to show. *TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. I, 6.*

It may also be rather common when the object is represented by a (pro)noun furnished with a lengthy adjunct, as in:

The amount of plunder he collected in this way it is impossible to estimate. *MAC., Lord Bacon, (375 b.)*

A disciple less likely to make converts than Father Cullen it would be difficult to imagine. *TROL., Macd., Ch. V, 44.*

Anything more funereally dismal than the tone of its leading articles it would be impossible to conceive. *Punch, No. 3670, 332 c.*

It appears to be unusual when the object is represented by a subordinate statement; as in:

That there is a strong feeling against things Irish it is impossible to deny. *TROL., Castle Richmond, Ch. I, 1.*

That he was a foreigner it was easy to see. *HUGH CONWAY, Called Back.*

Construction (c) is not, apparently, a very common one, except, perhaps, in continuative relative clauses, which, however, are only in literary use.

i. To find one's way in London is not easy. *JESP., Phil. of Gram., Ch. I, 25.*

To take or send the money to her at the inn would be impolitic. *HARDY, Return, III, Ch. VII, 270.*

To give anything like a correct amount of the loss ... would be impossible. *Daily Telegraph, 209. 1864.*

ii. That she would behold face to face the owner of the awakening voice within the limits of such a holiday was most unlikely, unless she were to haunt the environs of his mother's house like a robin, to do which was difficult and unseemly. *HARDY, Return, II, Ch. IV, 145.*

In the first place Mr. Sutherland was a seventh child — to be which is always a mystical asset in life. *A. BENNET, The Vanguard, Ch. I, (in Pall Mall Mag., May, 1927, 20 a.)*

Construction (d) is the usual one when the object of the infinitive is a (pro)noun not attended by a lengthy modifier; thus in:

His luggage ... was not difficult to carry. *DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. IV, 50.*

This is very satisfactory to know. *THACK., Newc., I, Ch. X, 125.*

This is important to observe. *SWEET, Words, Logic & Gram., 3.*

This is impossible to do. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8203, 3*a*.

It appears to be more or less uncommon when the object of the infinitive is: 1) an interrogative pronoun, as in:

When Wildevé was gone, Mrs. Yeobright stood and considered what would be the best course to adopt with regard to the guineas which she had not liked to entrust to Wildevé. *HARDY, Return*, III, Ch. VII, 230.

She would ... see what would be best to do. *EL. GLYN, Halcyone*, Ch. XXV, 215.

2) a relative pronoun, as in:

He was the first poet who led the English people into that world of nature which has enchanted us, but which was entirely impossible for Pope to understand. *STOPP. BROOKE, Prim. of Eng. Lit.*, 162.

This is a subject which will be requisite to consider carefully. *HUXLEY, Man's Place in Nature and other Essays*, V, 182.

The former terms (sc. voiced and voiceless) have a clear and precise meaning, which is quite easy to grasp. *WYLD, Growth of Eng.*, Ch. II, 18.

There is hardly a page in this book that is not a delight to read. *Westm. Gaz.*

There are certain attitudes of mind which are almost impossible to render in English. *ib.*, 26 12, 1908.

Thus also when an equivalent verbal predicate is used, as in:

The young stranger comprehending in one glance the result of the observation which has taken us some time to express [etc.]. *SCOTT, Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 42.

There yet existed certain latent prejudices of theirs, as middle-class people, which would require some tact to overcome. *HARDY, Tess*, IV, Ch. XXVI, 214.

3) an independent relative, as in:

When her father went on to direct her to pack what would be necessary for her to take, her heart died within her. *HARDY, Life's Little Ironies*, VI, III, 162.

4) a subordinate question, as in:

Why the Head should sway about and shout like that was impossible to conjecture. *E. F. BENSON, Dav. Blaize*, Ch. II, 30.

What effect the sight of the victorious Austrian army might have had upon the hesitating politicians at Bucharest is not easy to say. *The New Statesman*, No. 89, 260 *b*.

14. Obs. I. By the side of the four constructions illustrated above there is a fifth, of which *An arduous undertaking is to describe this adequately* would be a typical example in its simplest form. This construction appears to be distinctly uncommon: in fact the following is the only instance that has come to hand:

It (sc. the Geneva fiasco) is the main topic wherever you go, and an interesting point is to see how closely the matter has been followed by women in every grade. *Manch. Guard.*, 19.3, 1926, 236 *a*.

II. Apart from various shades of meaning dependent on the relative importance of the constituent elements of the sentence, on which the choice of the construction will mostly depend, there may be a distinct semantic difference between a given construction and its alternative. Thus there is a material difference between *It is extremely easy to condemn other people* (*GALSW., White Monkey*, III, Ch. XII, 281) and *Other people are extremely easy to condemn*.

III. In the case of the predicative adjective indicating no quality of the action denoted by the infinitive, but of the person or thing indicated by the subject in construction (*d*), the alternative construction would, of course, be impossible. Thus *My horse ... is quiet to ride* (THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 346) cannot be replaced by *\*It is quiet to ride my horse*. See also Ch. LV, 81, Obs. V; and 86, *a*.

Naturally this applies also to sentences in which there is a distinct relation of purpose between the adjective and the following infinitive, as in *This apple is not fit to eat* (MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 372). See Ch. LV, 86.

IV. Owing to the objective relation between the subject and the infinitive in construction (*d*), the latter is not unfrequently placed in the passive voice (Ch. LV, 82); thus in:

The hand-writing is very difficult to be read. BOSW., Life of Johnson, 24 *b*.

V. Instead of the adjective *easy* we not unfrequently find the adverb *easily* in construction (*d*), naturally because it is the action denoted by the infinitive whose nature is described. The latter is then regularly placed in the passive voice; thus in:

Portman Square was easily to be reached. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XL, 121.

Curiously enough no such alternative practice seems to occur in the case of other adjectives. For further illustration see Ch. LV, 83.

VI. In conclusion it is worth observing that in the construction under (*d*) the pronoun or clause which is in the subjective relation to the nominal predicate, is in the objective relation to the following infinitive.

15. *a*) The anticipating *het* is sometimes dispensed with in Dutch (13) in connexions which hardly tolerate such omission in Present English. This is the case: 1) after the conjunctive adverbs *hence*, *whence*, *thence*, and their periphrastic equivalents *from this*, etc., and after such adverbial adjuncts as *from this description*; thus in:

The moon always presents the same face to the earth, whence it follows that it must turn round on its axis in the same time that it revolves round the earth. CASSILL'S CONC. CYCL.

Some correspondence has taken place between Mr. S. E. Short and Lord Rosebery, from which it appears that his lordship has consented to address a meeting of Derbyshire Liberals. TIMES.

From this description it might be supposed that the English squire of the seventeenth century did not materially differ from a rustic miller or ale-house keeper of our time. MAC., HIST., I, Ch. III, 316.

2) in adverbial clauses with *as* or *than* containing an infinitive- (clause); thus in:

i. Those suspicions, indeed, were such as it is painful to mention. MAC., WAR. HIST., (646 *b*).

He was a man placed in about as terrible a position as it is possible to conceive. RID. HAG., MEES. WILL, Ch. XXI, 220.

ii. You must not expect more than it is in my power to bestow.

We were fortunate enough to dispose of these 20 hogsheads just previous to the fall of prices in this market, and so obtained fully 4 per cent. more than it would be possible to obtain to-day. PITMAN, COM. CORRESP., No. 129.



The absence of *it* in the following examples have a incongruouse ffect:  
 "What news?" — "Such news, my lord, as grieves me to unfold." SHAK.,  
 Rich., III, II, 4, 39.

She is more in love ... than is good to see. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch.  
 XXX, 279.

16. The anticipating pronoun is dispensed with in English: *a*) in (14)  
 the phrases *If you please!* and *Please God (Your Majesty, Your  
 Worship, etc.)*, as in:

i. If you please, sir, I want leave of absence for a week or two. CH. BRONTË,  
 Jane Eyre, Ch. XXI, 271.

You may, if you please, decline to pursue my story farther. G. ELIOT, Scenes,  
 I, Ch. V, 39.

ii. Don't you say almost every day, "This and that will happen, please God."  
 G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, Ch. II, 19.

Please your Majesty ... I was explaining the Golden Bull to his Royal High-  
 ness. MAC., Fred., (662 a).

*b*) in the antiquated expressions *methinks (methought)* and  
*meseems (meseemed)*, for which ordinary English now has *I think*  
*(thought)* and *it seems (seemed) to me* respectively; *e. g.*:

i. Methinks the lady doth protest too much. SHAK., Hamlet, III, 2, 240.

Anon methought the wood began to move. id., Macb., V, 6, 34.

ii. Meseems, that there is much discourtesy, | Setting this knave, Lord Baron,  
 at my side. TEN., Gar. & Lyn., 833.

For they talked | Meseem'd, of what they knew not. id., Lanc. & El., 671.

Me seemeth in the highest bark I know | The Flemish handiwork. MORRIS,  
 Earthly Par., Prolog., 8a.

17. Obs. I. The phrase *if you please* is used not only in making a cour- (15)  
 teous request, but also in deprecating displeasure at a contemplated  
 action, i. e. in circumstances in which the Dutch commonly has such  
 a phrase as *met uw verlof, met uw welnemen, or neem (het)  
 mij niet kwalijk*; thus in:

I believe I am the head of this family, ... and however much I may regret  
 any circumstance which may lead to your Ladyship quitting this house, must,  
 if you please, continue to govern it as I see fit. THACK., Van Fair, II, Ch. V, 54.

I know that I ought not to stay, as I cannot do what you wish. So, if you  
 please, I will go back, to Nuncombe ... I cannot stay where people think that  
 I am ungrateful. If you please, Aunt Stanbury, I will go. TROL., He knew  
 he was right, I, Ch. XXXVI, 288.

I was going to take you into this one (sc. cottage) if you please. READE,  
 Never too late, I, Ch. VI, 78.

Thus sometimes in the language of servants to deprecate a fancied  
 displeasure at an unwelcome communication, and also partly to acknow-  
 ledge an inferior station, as in:

"Mr. Prendergast is in the library, sir, if you please," said the old servant.  
 TROL., Castle Richmond, Ch. XXXV, 607.

Colloquially it is also used as a more or less sarcastic apology for  
 making a surprising statement; thus in:

He must travel, first class, if you please, like his betters. O. E. D., s. v. *please*, 6, b.  
 Lord Lackington comes here, mumbles about his music and his water-colours,  
 and his flirtations — seventy-four, if you please, last birthday! Mrs. WARD,  
 Lady Rose's Daught., I, Ch. II, 19 b.

Has Oxford any atrocities? I'm afraid it has. There is that chapel at Balliol with its slate roof, glittering blue slate, if you please, that shrieks aloud at the surrounding immemorial grey of the hall and library. *Daily Mail*.

II. Some applications of the Dutch *Als 'tu belieft*, not usually rendered by *if you please*, deserve special mention. Thus the English phrase is unusual: *a*) in expressing courteous acceptance of what is offered. Thus the ordinary response to such questions as *Would you like to have another glass of wine? Shall I help you on with your coat?* would not, in case of acceptance, be *If you please*, but *Thank you* (or *Thanks*).

MURRAY (in O. E. D., s. v. *please*, 6, *b*), however, expressly states that *If you please* is, in this case, in common use. His illustrative example is *Will you take another cup? If you please*. Compare also: "Will you have another cup?" — "Please." GALSW., *Escape*, II, VIII, 84. *b*) in courteously handing or reaching anything for acceptance. This is often unattended by any polite formula. In familiar intercourse with persons of equal or inferior standing a common phrase is *Here you are!*

III. In familiar style *if you please* is often replaced by *please*, the latter being mostly understood as short for the former, although its origin appears to have been different (O. E. D., s. v. *please*, *c*). Like the fuller phrase, *please* is often used in making a courteous request or in deprecating dissatisfaction; thus in:

Please, may I go out? May I come in, please? Come here, please; Give me my hat, please; Please, Sir, did you call? Shall I ring the bell? Yes, please. Will you, please, take a message for me? O. E. D., s. v. *please*, *c*.

Contributors and Publishers will, please, send all matter intended for the German department of the Notes to Professor Hermann Collitz, Bryn Mawr College, Pa. *Modern Language Notes*.

Of some special interest is the habit of servants, school-boys, etc., in speaking to their superiors, to begin their sentences with *Please, sir; Please, Ma'am*, etc., by way of apologizing for taking a liberty, or deprecating displeasure; e. g.:

Here the little boy on the top of the trunk gave a violent sneeze. "Hallo, sir!" growled the schoolmaster, turning round. What's that, sir?" — "Nothing, please, sir," replied the little boy." — "Nothing, sir!" exclaimed Mr. Squeers. — "Please, sir, I sneezed," rejoined the boy, trembling till the little trunk shook under him. DICK., *Nick*, Ch. IV, 16 *b*

Please, mother, I've broken schoolmaster's head. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 12 *b*

MISTRESS (to New Maid). "Just tell me, which day do you like best?" MAID, "Please, mum, my day out!" PUNCH.

IV. Before an infinitive *please* has the value of *be pleased*; thus in:

Please to return the book soon; Please not to lose it. O. E. D., s. v. *please*, 6, *c*. Will you please to remember this? THACK., *Pend.* II, Ch. XIII, 137.

Will you and the captain please to walk into the parlour? G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. VI, 67.

Subscribers will please to note the following terms on which the Graphic will be posted to any part of the world. Graph. (Dutch: ... gelieven er op te letten ...)

V. The semantic similarity of *please* and *if you please* may have given rise to the occasional use of the infinitive instead of the imperative after the latter; thus in:

Sir, if you please to give me a small certificate of three lines. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 1.

Major Dobbin, if you please not to break my scissors. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXX, 339.

VI. The use of *so please you*, in which also anticipating *it* is dispensed with, appears to have become entirely obsolete; e.g.:

So please your lordship to accept our duty. SHAK., *Taming*, Ind., I, 82.

So please my lord to quit the fine, I am content. *id.*, *Merch.*, IV, 1, 380.

18. In older English instances of anticipating *it* being dispensed (17) with are more numerous than they are now. Also in archaic English of more modern times some of the following verbs are occasionally found without *it*. Compare ABBOT, SHAK. Gram., § 404; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 193.

*to befall*: Bifel that, in that seson on a day, | In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay ... | At night was come in-to that hostelrye | Wel nyne and twenty in a companye. CHAUC., *Cant. T.*, A, 19.

*to behove*: Behoves no more, | But side-long, to the gently-waving wind, | To lay the well-tun'd instrument reclin'd. THOMSON, *Castle of Indolence*, I, xl.

*to beseem*: And ill beseems your rank and birth | To make your towers a flemens-firih. SCOTT, *Lay*, IV, xxiv. (flemens-firih = asylum for outlaws).

*to boot*: Him booteth not resist, nor succour call. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, iii, xx.

What boots whether it be Westminster or a little country spire which covers your ashes? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 191.

*compare*: Alas! what boots it with incessant care | To tend the homely, slighted shepherd's trade. MILTON, *Lycidas*, 64.

It boots not what becomes of me. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. IV, 148.

*to chance*: How chance she is not in your company? MILTON, *Comus*, 568

*to seem*: Seem'd to the boy, some comrade gay | Led him forth to the woods to play. SCOTT, *Lay*, III, xii.

Seem'd some primeval giant's hand | The castle's massive walls had planned. *id.*, *Bridal*, I, xiii.

*to shame*: To asken help thee shameth in thyn herte. CHAUC., *Cant. T.*, B, 101

*to suit*: We will set you down wherever suits you best. SCOTT, *Heart*, Ch. I, 22.

*to vail* (= to avail): Vails not to tell each hardy clan, | From the fair Middle Marches came SCOTT, *Lay*, V, iv.

For *to like*, *to list* and *to be lo(a)th* when standing without the anticipating *it* see 26.

19. Sometimes the subject is not expressed either by a (pro)noun (18) (or substantival equivalent) or by anticipating *it*, but may be supplied from the context in the shape of a subordinate statement. This applies especially to:

*a)* certain adverbial clauses of quality introduced by *as*; thus in:

In insist on your behaving as becomes a young woman. SHER., Riv., IV, 2. (i.e. as it becomes a young woman that she should behave.)

Mrs. Bennett received them exactly as might be expected. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 280.

George received these presents graciously, as became his superior merit. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. V, 48.

Note *a)* When the clause is continuative, it has practically the same value as a relative clause with *which* or *what* (Ch. XVII, 104, *b*; Ch. XXXIX, 13).

Mr. Kane had, as was anticipated, a bumper. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 124.

I've just had to sack Clark — drink, of course, and, as always happens, one of the nicest boys has been led away by his example. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

As may be imagined, nobody concerned of our party passed an over-comfortable night. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 213.

*β)* The use of *it* in sentences of this type, as in the following examples, is distinctly exceptional:

They (sc. your parents) have failed, as it is generally the case, in too much neglecting to cultivate your mind. SWIFT, *A Letter to a Young Lady on her Marriage*, (471 *b*).

This made me love her, as it was usual. LAMB, *The Witch Aunt* (Sel. Short Stor., I, 54).

Widows burn themselves on their husbands' bodies, as 'tis well known. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. VI, 55.

*γ)* The construction in the *as*-clause of the following example appears to be an unusual one:

It appears to me ... that Shakespeare held the Grand Style in the hollow of his hand, letting it loose or withholding it, as good seemed to him. SAINTSB., *Shak. and the Grand Style* (A. C. BRADLEY, *Es. & Stud.*, 114).

*b)* adverbial clauses of degree introduced by *as* or *than*; thus in:

We have not so many flowers as usual this year (i.e.: as it is usual that we have). We have more flowers than usual this year (i.e.: than it is usual that we have).

As sure as can be, here he comes. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, III.

He was a better scholar than was usual in those days. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*.

One beautiful night they had taken a longer walk than was customary with them. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, 247 (WESTERN, *De Eng. Bisætninger*, § 171.)

On they went as briskly as need be. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 165.

We all three set off for the Old Chapel as happy as could be. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

Note. The above interpretation does not, of course, apply to such sentences as the following in which *that which* can be supplied after *than*: No greater moral change ever passed over a nation than passed over England during the years which [etc.]. GREEN, *Short Hist.* (WESTERN, *De Eng. Bisætninger*, § 23).

Never has greater courage ... been shown on any field than was shown by both combatants at Waterloo. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § IV, 835.

20. Of some special interest are certain sentences opening with *what matters* (or *mattered*), in which the absence of *it* appears to be due to the fact that *what*, although, strictly, adverbial, is understood as the subject. Compare 24; also Ch. I, 68, *b*, Note *a*); Ch. LIII, 6, *e*; and see below, 24.

i. If he chooses to frequent gambling-tables, and lose his money to blacklegs, what matters to me? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 71. (i. e. what does it matter to me that he ...)

ii. What matters about fame or poverty? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381. (Compare: What does it matter about any other name? BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLVIII, 136.)

### SHIFTING OF THE SUBJECT.

21. For what in these pages is understood by shifting of the (25) subject of which many predicates have been capable, or are still capable, the student is referred to Ch. LIII, where the subject has been discussed in detail viewed from another angle. Several cases that have already been incidentally touched on in the preceding sections of this chapter will here be passed in brief review.

22. The indefinite *it* as the subject of an impersonal predicate is sometimes replaced by a noun or substantival equivalent, denoting: *a*) the time at which a natural phenomenon prevails, a happening or state of things occurs, or on which a date or season falls (3); e. g.:

i. The night had been fine and warm. TROL. He knew he was right, I, Ch XXXVII, 289.

To-day has been beautifully fine throughout. MANCH. EXAM., 22/9, 1885, 56 (O. E. D., s. v. *to-day*, B, 1).

If Easter happens to be wintry this year, the minds of many people will probably nurse a regret that Lord Desborough has not succeeded in his attempts to secure a fixed date for the festival. MANCH. GUARD., 2/4, 1926, 261 c.

ii. Yesterday was my birthday.

Summer was in England. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. III, 33.

iii. To-day is the first of April. Next-week is Passion-week.

*b*) the source from which a natural phenomenon proceeds; thus in:

(It seemed as if) the skies had rained ... ink through the varying seasons of the year. DICK., *Cop.*, V, 39 a.

*c*) a space of time or distance between two fixed points; e. g.: From now till next January is a considerable time.

From Picnic Point to Old Windsor Lock is a delightful bit of river. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XII, 146.

23. In the second place the indefinite *it* as the subject may be replaced by a noun or the substitute for a noun in the case of the following verbs:



*to fare* (6): Ill fares the land, to hastening ills a prey, | Where wealth accumulates, and men decay. GOLDSM., *Des. Vil.*, 51.

*to need*, *to require*, and *to want*, weak *there* taking the place of *it* (6)

i. There needs no ghost, my lord, come from the grave | To tell us this. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 5, 125.

ii. If there requires further evidence of the rude undeveloped character of our education, we have it in the fact that the comparative worths of different kinds of knowledge have been as yet scarcely discussed. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 11 b.

iii. There wanted still half-an-hour to dinner. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 353. *to strike*, in expressions denoting the time of day: i. The clock struck nine. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, Ch. XIII, 319.

ii. Nine o'clock struck. O. E. D., s. v. *strike*, 41 b.

24. It is again the indefinite *it* which in the function of subject of the verb *to matter* is often ousted by another word, viz. the interrogative *what* or the indefinite pronouns *nothing* or *anything*. Thus *What does it matter what he says?* *It matters nothing so long as the secret is kept; I do not think that it matters anything so long as the secret is kept* may become, respectively, *What matters what he says?* *Nothing matters so long as the secret is kept; I do not think that anything matters so long as the secret is kept* (20). Compare 20; also Ch. I, 68, b, Note; Ch. LIII, 6, e.

25. In comparing two such sentences as *It is difficult to describe this* and *This is difficult to describe*, we may notice a shifting of the subject which does not concern the indefinite, but the anticipating *it*. For detailed discussion see above, 13; and Ch. LV, 80 ff.

26. In the case of some predicates, especially such as denote a physical state or psychical disposition of a person, there has been, from a remote period, a tendency to substitute a personal construction for a non-personal, i. e. to make the (pro)noun indicating the person concerned the subject, instead of the word(-group), or clause denoting the cause of this state or disposition. The change may have been due to, or furthered by: a) the (pro)noun indicating the person concerned being often placed before the predicate when the indefinite *it* was dispensed with (18); thus in:

Me lists not tell what words were made. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, XXV.

b) the formal difference between the nominative and the accusative (or dative) of nouns becoming early obliterated.

In some cases the struggle for the mastery between the personal and the non-personal construction is still undecided, in others the former has carried the day with the result that the latter has been practically ousted from ordinary language.

For discussion of this interesting subject see also JESPERSEN, *Prog.*, § 173 ff; EINENKEL, *Streifz.*, 114; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 45, 7; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, §§ 72, 7; 75; 192; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*,

§ 151; § 337 f; MÄTZ., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 198; FITZEDW. HALL, Americ. Journ. of Phil., Vol. II, No. 7; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 69; STOF., *had rather* and analogous phrases, Taalstudie, VIII; and especially VAN DER GAAF, The Transition from the Impersonal to the Personal Construction in Middle English; id., The Origin of *would rather* and some of its analogues, E. S., XLV, 111.

It is especially the following verbs that have undergone or are undergoing the change here referred to:

*to ail*. "The earlier construction is now restricted to interrogative, relative, and indefinite sentences as *What ails you? If anything ailed me.*" (O. E. D.): i. Here Western interrupted her with much earnestness, and begged her, if anything ailed his daughter to acquaint him immediately. FIELD., Tom Jones, VI, Ch. II, 87 a.

There's nothing ails her. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, 80 (JESPERSEN, Prog., § 179).

ii. What ail'st thou? SCOTT, Marm, V, xxiv.

For what she ails, they cannot guess. WORDSW., The Idiot Boy, 26.

Note. The verb is now chiefly used to denote a general state of illness, no cause being mentioned; thus in:

My cousin ails. SHAW, Admir. Bashv., II, (301).

The children are always ailing. Westm. Gaz., 2/5, 1925, 8 b.

*to behove*. The ordinary construction is still with *it* representing an infinitive (-clause): i. It behoved him to keep on good terms with his pupils. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 346.

ii. Could they not go farther afield, if they behoved to make such a din? SCOTT, Mon., Ch. IV, 71.

*to delight*. The personal construction is distinctly more usual than the non-personal with anticipating *it*: i. Woman is to him no sentimental abstraction, no impossible deity: it delights him to show us that she is flesh and blood, and none the worse for it. W. J. DAWSON, Makers of Eng. Fiction, Ch. XV, 196.

ii. He delights to draw forth concealed merit. SHER., Critic, I, 2, (460).

*to grieve*. The personal construction is more common than the non-personal and requires a preposition, mostly *at*, sometimes *for*, before the (pro)noun denoting the cause of the grief: i. So down he came: for loss of time. | Although it grieved him sore. | Yet loss of pence, full well he knew. | Would trouble him much more. COWPER, John Gilpin, XIV.

That will grieve your mother a bit, though she mayn't say so. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. LXXXVI, 614.

ii. \* I grieve thus to distress you. SHELLEY, Cenci, IV, II.

\*\* I grieved at the thought of the mortification I should inflict upon him. DE QUINCEY, Confes., Ch. II, 13.

\*\*\* The widower grieved much for the loss of his sweet young wife. Mrs. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., B, 69.

*to like*. The non-personal construction occurs now only archaically. As early as the days of SHAKESPEARE the personal construction appears to have been quite common. In the case of the non-personal construction the anticipating *it* is sometimes dispensed with: i. \* I am free | To wedde . . . wher it lyketh me. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, D, 50.

But if it lyke to this companye, | I wol yow of a somnour telle a game. ib., 1278. It likes us well SHAK., Hamlet, II, 2, 80

Some (women) are made to scheme, and some to love; and I wish any respected bachelor that reads this may take the sort that best likes him. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 120.

It would like her ill to see her son give all and take none himself. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. II, 11.

\*\* And if yow lyketh alle, by oon assent, | Now for to stonden at my jugement. CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, A, 779.

So like you, sir, ambassadors from Rome. SHAK., *Cymb.*, II, 3, 59.

Let each as likes him best his hours employ. THOMSON, *Castle of Indolence*, I, xxviii.

I can ... bring him back ... by fair means or by force, as best likes your reverence. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXIV, 368.

ii. And, for he was a straunger, somewhat she | Lyked him the bet. CHAUC., *Leg of Good Women*, *Dido*, 1076.

For several virtues | Have I liked several women. SHAK., *Temp.*, III, 1, 43.

How like you the young German, the Duke of Saxony's nephew? *id.*, *Merch.*, I, 2, 90.

Note the colloquial use of *if you like* in: There was a fine young officer for you, if you like. PERCY WHITE, *To-day*, Ch IV, 34 (= and no mistake.)

*to list*. Now current only in the higher literary style. The personal construction has been traced to quite early times. The O. E. D. registers an instance dated 1200. SHAKESPEARE appears to have used it to the exclusion of the non-personal construction, no instances of the latter being given by A. SCHMIDT. In the case of the non-personal construction the anticipating *it* is mostly dispensed with (18): i. \* When it listeth him to call them to an account. RALEIGH, *Maxims St.*, 49 (O. E. D.).

\*\* A yeman hadde he, and servaunts namo | At that tyme, for him lister yde so. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 102.

Me lists not tell what words were made. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, xxv.

Me lists not tell you SWINBURNE, *Tale of Balen*, VI, 22.

ii. Now, by my mother's son, and that's myself, | It shall be moon, or star, or what I list. SHAK., *Taming*, IV, 5, 6.

The wind bloweth where it listeth. BIBLE, *John*, III, 8.

Nor list I say what hundreds more, | From the rich Merse and Lammere-morc, | And Tweed's fair borders, to the war, | Beneath the crest of old Dunbar, | And Hepburn's mingled banners come. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, iv.

We list not buy to-day or flesh or fell. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Proud King*, 88 b.

It would be better to leave her free to go as she listed. HUGH CONWAY, *Called back*, Ch. VIII, 92

*to be lo(a)th*. The non-personal construction, apparently mostly without anticipating *it*, has entirely fallen into disuse. The personal construction is only current in the higher literary style: i. Me were looth be lykned, douteless, | To Muses that men clepe Pierides. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, B, 91.

ii. Lammeter isn't likely to be loth for his daughter to marry into *my* family. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, I, Ch. IX, 62.

I were loth | To fight as one perforce made wroth. SWINB., *Tale of Balen*, VI, 14.

*to misgive*. Now only used with a word-group containing *heart* or *mind* as the subject. In older English it appears to have occasionally been furnished with anticipating *it* in this function: i. It much misgives me that this scene is concocted to affront me. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, 172.

ii. Torrida's heart misgave her KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XII, 56 b.

My mind misgives me dreadful about Miss Sarti. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. XVII, 162.

Note. The use of *to give* in analogous applications is now obsolete. See the O. E. D., s.v. *give*, 22.

*to need.* In Present English the person whose need is affirmed or, more frequently, denied is always indicated by the subject (Ch. I, 36f; Ch. LV, 7 ff); in earlier English this person is often indicated by the (dative) object: John knew the wey, hem nedede no gyde. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 4020.

But dame, here as we ryden by the weye, | Us nedeth nat to speken but of game. *ib.*, D, 1275.

Little, I hope, needeth me at large to discourse the first original of *Æglogues*. SPENSER, *General Arg. to Sheph. Cal.*

*ought.* The older construction, now quite obsolete, is met with in CHAUCER, side by side with the modern: i. He shal ... stidefastly purposen in his herte to have shrift of mouthe, and to doon satisfaccioun, and never to doon thing for which him oghte more to biwayle or to compleyne. *Cant. Tales*, *Persones Tale*, § 2

ii. Your wyf oghte rather to be preised than y-blamed. *Cant. Tales*, B, *Melib.*, 2283.

*to please.* Both constructions are found in Present English. That with the anticipating *it* is preferred when the clause is expressed, that without when it is understood: i. It pleased him to tell Arthur's mother ... that there was no hand in all the band of penmen more graceful and light, more pleasant and more elegant, than Arthur's. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 165

I'll go into harness again and do my duty in that state of life in which it has pleased Heaven to place me. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 363.

ii. Is not a back-stairs favourite one that can do what he pleases with those that do what they please? GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, II.

A clever man with a clever wife may take any place they please. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 79.

Observe the colloquial use of the phrase *as you please* in: There are bridges on the rivers | As pretty as you please. CHRIST. ROSSETTI.

And with that he walked off as graceful as you please. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audl.*, I, Ch. XIX, 214.

Note a) Instead of *it pleases me*, etc. we often find *I am pleased*, etc., especially in referring to acts of persons of authority; thus in: The sovereign was pleased to advance Colonel Sir Michael O'Dowd to the rank of Major General THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

In consequence of the marriage you have been pleased to contract, he ceases to consider you henceforth as a member of his family. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXV, 256.

β) *To be pleased* is also found in the meaning of *to be happy* (or *satisfied*), as in: You were pleased enough to listen to me. SHER., *School*, III, 1.

I was rather pleased that the gents in our office should hear a part of my adventure. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 38.

We shall be pleased to execute an order on receipt of remittance and await your further commands.

Thus especially in the opening formula of testimonials and in letters, as in: I am pleased to certify. (= I have much pleasure to certify, or I am happy to certify.)

γ) Observe also the idiomatic use of the phrase in: i. This is my beloved son in whom I am well pleased. *Bible*, *Matth.*, III, 17.

ii. It was enough that Tom called her Magsie and was pleased with her. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 32.

iii. O, you're pleased to say so. *id.*, *A. D. Bede*, Ch. VI, 67.

*to reck.* The older construction is now rarely used. As early as CHAUCER the two constructions occurred side by side: i. What rekketh me, thogh folk seye vileinye | Of shrewed Lameh and his bigamy? CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, D, 53.

Of night and loneliness it recks me not. MILTON, *Comus*, 404.

Little it recked us and helped them less, that they were our founder's citizens. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. II, 4.

ii. \* But natheless I recche noght a bene. CHAUCER, Cant. Tales, B, 94. That's all I reck. SHAK., Cymb., IV, 2, 154.

But little he'll reck, | If they let him sleep on | In a grave where a Briton has laid him. WOLFE, Burial of Sir J. Moore.

\*\* If this last, I shall have done better for my charge than I recked of. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 154.

They recked little of the *etiquette* of the older diplomacy. Times.

*to repent*. The older construction is now rarely met with. The verb is sometimes construed with the preposition *of*, and used reflexively: i. \* It repented the Lord that he had made man. BIBLE, Gen., VI, 6.

It repenteth me that I have set up Saul to be king. ib., Sam., I, Ch. XV, 11.

\*\* How bitterly it repented me now of this ill-founded diffidence. BLACKM., The Maid of Skerr, II, 186 (ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 69.)

ii. \* The Lord repented that he had made Saul king of Israel. Bible, Sam., I, XV, 35.

He repented his marriage. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. XII, 94.

\*\* He thought that she might have repented of her bargain. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, II, 256.

I was in mortal fear lest the Captain should repent of his confessions and make an end of me. STEV., Treas. Isl., Ch. III, 27.

iii. Hallin repented himself. Mrs. WARD, Marc., III, 227.

Robert repented him. id., Rob. Elsm., III, 97.

*to yearn*. In SHAKESPEARE the verb occurs in the meaning of *to stir with emotion*; in Present English it is chiefly used in that of *to be stirred with emotion*, with the noun *heart* as the subject: i. It yearns me not if men my garments wear. Henry V, iv, 3, 26.

O, how it yearn'd my heart when I beheld, | In London streets, that coronation-day, | When Bolingbroke rode on roan Barbary. Rich. II, V, 5, 76.

ii. \* No: for my manly heart doth yearn. Henry V, II, 3, 3.

The heart of the old bushranger yearned towards the young man. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (138).

Her heart yearned over the child. RID. HAG., Sol. Mines, 112.

My heart against her yearned. SWINB., Tale of Balen, III, 6.

\*\* Mrs. Crupp expressly intimated that she should always yearn towards me. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXIII, 176 b.

He yearned to her. Mrs. GASK., Wiv. & Daught., Ch. X, 104.

27. A similar shifting of the subject has given rise to the formation of the interesting locutions *I had rather* (*sooner*, *liefer* or *liever*), *I had as soon* (*as lief* or *as lieve*), *I had better* (or *best*), *I had as good* (or *as well*) and their variations for person and number. These phrases are now all but regularly construed with an infinitive without *to*. For instances with the alternative construction see Ch. LV, 32. Compare also Ch. XLIX, 13, c; Ch. LIII, 9; and Ch. LV, 62.

i. I had rather hear my dog bark at a crow than a man swear he loves me. SHAK., Much ado, I, I, 132.

I had rather live in a wilderness of monkeys and listen to their chatter than in a company of men who denied everything. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIV, 268.

ii. Oh, gemini, I'd sooner cut my tongue out. SHER., Riv., II, 1.

I'd sooner kill a man than a dog any day. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXI, 82 a.



iii. Far liefer had I in my country hall been reading some good book. TEN., *Queen Mary*, III, 1, 24.

Far liever by his dear hand had I die | Than that my lord should suffer loss or shame. id., *Ger. & En.*, 927.

iv. I'd as soon see Mrs. Pipchin. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 111.

v. I had as lief not be as live to be | In awe of such a thing as I myself. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 95.

I'd as lieve let it alone. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3.

I'd as lieve stand. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XIII, 118 a.

vi. Arthur had better have taken a return-ticket. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 380.

Hadn't you better come into the carriage? id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 33.

You had better tell me. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

vii. I'd best go and settle the score. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 372.

They had best take care of her. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, III, 70.

viii. I think we had as good go back again. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXII, (480).

You had as good be kinder to me. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXI, 81 b.

He had as good mind his own business. id., *Bleak House*, Ch. LVII, 477.

ix. You had as well come to the window. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XIV, 161.

You must give way, and you had as well do so voluntarily. MOZLEY, *Essays*, II, 27.

## 28. Observations about *I had rather* (sooner, *liefer* or *liever*).

I. *I had liefer* (or *liever*) is the oldest of these locutions. It is not found in SHAKESPEARE, and occurs now only archaically, especially in poetry. *I had lever* is, however, frequent enough in Middle English, where it alternates with *me were lever*. The latter locution may be instanced from SPENSER, but, as it does not occur in SHAKESPEARE, it was apparently quite obsolete before the beginning of the 17th century. It is probable that for some length of time *I were lever* was used as an alternative form of *me were lever*, owing to the tendency of using the nominative form of a pronoun instead of the objective wherever it precedes the predicate (26). It does not, however, seem ever to have found much favour in the vernacular, at any rate hardly any instances are found in the printed documents of that time. On the other hand another locution with *lever* was seized on to replace the obsolescent *me were lever*. This was *I had lever*, which originally had the same meaning as the present Dutch *Ik had liever* (or *Ik zou liever hebben*), and, like it, required a full subordinate statement. The subsequent changing of *lever* into *rather*, i. e. the replacing of an adverb of manner by one of time, is natural enough, and affords an exact parallel to the frequent use of *eerder* for *liever* in Dutch. Thus *Ik zou hem eerder zijn geld teruggegeven hebben* = *Ik zou hem liever zijn geld teruggegeven hebben*. It is but natural that, before *I had rather* had become a fixed idiom, there was a good deal of confusion relative to this and the rival phrases, which led to the use of such monstrosities as *me had lever* and *me had rather*. In conclusion it must be observed that we also find instances of the present indicative *have* used for the preterite subjunctive *had*.

In the following quotations are included some with the finite verb in the indicative mood.

i. For him was lever have at his beddes heed | Twenty bokes, clad in blak or reed, | Of Aristotle and his philosophye, | Than robes riche, or fithele, or gay sautrye. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 293. (Fithele = fiddle; sautry = psaltery, a kind of harp.)

For dredelees, me were lever dye | Than she of me ought elles understode | But that, that mighte sounen in-to gode. *id.*, *Troil. and Cris.*, Bk. I, 1034. (Dredeless = without doubt; sounen = to redound, to tend.)

Me lever were with foemans speare be dead SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, III, 2, 6 (STOF., *Taalst.*, VIII, 219).

ii. I were lever than all wardly wyn, | That I had fon hym onys onkynde. *Townley Myst.*, 40 (März., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 3).

iii. I hadde lever than a barel ale | That goode lief my wyf hadde herd this tale! CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, B, 3085. (In a rejected stanza, intended to conclude the *Clerkes Tale*, there occurs the following passage: Me were lever than a barel ale | My wyf at hoom had herd this legende ones. See SKEAT's *Student's Chaucer*, foot-note to *Cant. Tales*, E, 1162.)

iv. Al had hir lever have born a knave child. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, E, 444. Me rather had my heart might feel your love | Than my displeased eye see your courtesy. SHAK., *Rich. II*, III, 3, 192.

v. And he hath lever talken with a page | Than to comene with any gentill wight. CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, F, 692.

But natheless, yet have I lever lese | My lyf than of my body have a shame. *ib.*, 1360.

II. *I had rather* is in the spoken language regularly shortened into *I'd rather*; consequently we often find it thus in print, as in:

*I'd rather have been shot myself.* Mrs. WARD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 44.

The 'd in *I'd rather* (or *liever*) is now felt as short for *would*, with the result that *I would rather* is not seldom met with in the written language; thus in:

I thought you would much rather have been left at home. Mrs. CRAIK, *Ogilvies*, Ch. I, 8.

I would rather have you go to Australia. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. II, 32.

Some writers, who are ignorant of the genesis of *I had rather*, go so far as to pronounce *I would rather* the only legitimate form. Thus ROBERT BROWNING (see Mrs. S. ORR, *Handbook of the Works of Robert Browning*, 14) writes: "As regards my objection to the slovenly *I had* for *I'd*, instead of the proper *I would*, I shall not venture to supplement what LANDOR has magisterially spoken on the subject. An adverb adds to, and does not by its omission alter into nonsense, the verb it qualifies. *I would rather speak than be silent, better criticize than learn* are forms structurally regular; but what meaning is in *I had speak, had criticize*?"

A stage further from the original form is *I should rather*, which, however, is as yet distinctly unusual; e.g.:

I think I should rather have died than undergone this disgrace. SWIFT, *Gull*, II, Ch. VIII, (159 a).

They bury men with their faces to the East. I should rather have mine turned to the West. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XVI, 128 a.

I must go, though I should much rather stay. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. V, 81.

III. A frequent variant of *I would rather* is *I would sooner*, also

regularly abbreviated to *I'd sooner* in the spoken language. Of *I had sooner* no instances have come to hand.

Joseph replied that he would sooner die than have any such thought. FIELD., JOS. ANDREWS, I, Ch. VIII, 18.

Godfrey had told her that he would sooner die than acknowledge her as his wife. G. ELIOT, SIL. MARN., Ch. XII, 94.

IV. Sometimes we find the infinitive placed between *would* and *rather*; thus in:

He was a man of such rigid refinement, that he would have starved rather than have dined without a white neckcloth. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. IX, 87. He would die rather than yield. MER., RICH. FEV., Ch. II, 11.

V. *I had* (or *would*) *rather* (or *sooner*) are also found construed with a subordinate statement; thus in:

I had rather her boys should follow a different model. THACK., VIRG., Ch. I, 9.

I would rather have lost all the plants in the green-house. I would rather the best tea-set were broken. LYTTON, CAXT., I, Ch. IV, 18.

I'd sooner she left the heavy end of the work to some one else. BIRMINGHAM, THE ADVENT. OF DR. WHITTY, Ch. III, 55.

## 29. Observations about *I had as soon* (*lief* or *lieve*).

I. *I had as lief* (or *lieve*), although now antiquated and mostly replaced by *I had as soon*, has never fallen completely into disuse. It is frequent in SHAKESPEARE, and is not rare in modern prose or poetry. It is probable that it has lived through changes analogous to those of *I had rather*. Documentary evidence of the process is not, however, available at the moment of writing.

"Brother," quod he, "heer woneth an old rebekke, | That hadde almost as lie to lese hir nekke | As for to yeve a peny of hir good. CHAUCER, CANT. TALES, D, 1574. (rebekke = old woman.)

"Now sirs," quod he, "if that yow be so leef | To finde Deeth, turne up this croked wey. ib., C, 760.

As lief were loyal men to lie | Or scorn what honour saith. SWINBURNE, Tale of Balen, IV, 5.

II. The shortening of *had* to *'d* has given rise to *would* being sometimes substituted for it. Instances of *I should as soon* for *I would as soon* appear to be very rare (28, Obs. II); e. g.:

i. I would as lief go there as anywhere else. THACK., ESM., I, Ch. VI, 53.

The king's daughter cannot abide him, and would as lief marry a seal. KINGSLEY, HEREW., Ch. III, 26 b.

ii. I should as soon call her mother a wit. JANE AUSTEN, PRIDE & PREJ., Ch. XLV, 265.

III. Like *I had rather* the phrase is also found construed with a subordinate statement; thus in:

I had as lief the town-crier spoke my lines. SHAK., HAMLET, III, 2, 4.

I'd as lieve you married Lammeter's daughter as anybody. G. ELIOT, SIL. MARN., Ch. IX, 62.

## 30. Observations about *I had better* (or *best*).

I. *I had best* is far less common than *I had better*, and appears to be slightly colloquial. *I had better* stands for an older *I were better*,

which in its turn represents a still older *me were better*. This last phrase had become quite obsolete before the beginning of the 16th century. Both *I were better* and *I were best* are common in SHAKESPEARE. By the side of *I were better* SHAKESPEARE also has *I had better*, but no instances of *I had best* have been found in his works. *I had better* (or *best*) owes its development to the influence of *I had rather*, and has long since superseded *I were better* (or *best*).

i. Him were better go beside. GOWER, Conf., III, 241 (O. E. D.).

Yet were hit bei for thee | Have holde thy pees, than shewed thy nycete!  
CHAUCER, Minor Poems, V, 571. (bet = better.)

ii. He were better his deth to take Townley Myst, 187. (KELLNER, Hist. Outl., § 151.)

Thou wert better gall the devil. SHAK., King John, IV, 3, 95.

Poor Lady, she were better love a dream. id., Twelfth Night, II, 2, 27.

iii. You were best knock louder. id., Taming, V, 1, 15.

You were best to tell Antonio what you hear. id., Merch., II, 8, 33.

Thou wert better dally with a lioness than with Elizabeth. SCOTT, Kenilw.

II. In using *I had better* the alternative case, suggested by the comparative *better*, is frequently only vaguely thought of. In fact the phrase is mostly used in recommending what is thought advisable or desirable. See the examples in 27. Thus such sentences as the Dutch *Mij dunkt wij moesten het venster nu maar sluiten; Ik zou u aanraden uw overjas aan te doen in dit gure weer* might be rendered by respectively *I think we had better close the window; You had better put on your great-coat in this bleak weather*.

Sometimes, however, the two alternatives of a given case are distinctly present to the speaker's mind, so that a two-membered sentence is unavoidable, thus in:

You had better murder him than marry him. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXX, 256.

He hinted to Pen that he had better have him for a partner at whist than play against him. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIX, 197.

Such an application of *had better* as is illustrated by the following example appears to be an unusual one:

By the Lord, if ever I come up with him, he had better be in Greenland, that's all. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. III, 19.

III. In place of *had better* + passive infinitive we often meet with *to be better* + past participle, which admits of all the ordinary variations. In some cases the two expressions hardly differ in meaning. Thus *The letter had better be written at once* is practically equivalent to *The letter were better written at once*. In others the latter is distinguished from the former in indicating rather a state than an action; e.g.:

i. That functionary thought that ... the subject was better avoided. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. V, 59. (= that the subject had better be avoided.)

ii. Far better were I laid in the dark earth, ... | Than that my lord thro' me should suffer shame. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 97.

They were subterranean thoughts, Nature's original, such as the sense of injustice will rouse in young women; and they are better unstirred. MER., Ormont, Ch. III, 65.



In such a sentence as the following the combination *to be better* + past participle has a distinctly different meaning from that in the above examples:

He is better lost than found. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. I, 13. (i.e. It would be better that he should be lost than that he should be found.)

IV. This seems a suitable place to register the constructions illustrated in:

i. 'Twill be better I should not venture out again till dark. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1, (270.) (practically equivalent to: I had better not venture out again till dark.) Mrs. Kirk would be much better mending her husband's clothes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 82. (approximately = Mrs. Kirk had much better be employed in mending her husband's clothes.)

And thence | That which he better might have shunn'd, if griefs | Like his have worse or better, | Enoch saw. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 736. (approximately = ... that which he had better have shunned ...)

The Opposition leaders would have been better advised in abstaining from a formal vote of censure. TIMES. (approximately = ... had better have abstained from a formal vote of censure.)

ii. 'Twere best he speak no harm of Brutus here. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 74. (practically equivalent to: He had better speak no harm of Brutus here.) I tell thee, fellow, | He that doth naught with her, excepting one, | Were best he do it secretly, alone. id., *Rich.* III, I, 1, 100.

i. He questioned whether we had best have our meeting or not: And whether it might not be better for me to depart. BUNYAN, *Rel. of my Imprisonment*, 105. (practically equivalent to: ... whether I had not better depart.)

iii. Some folk who had wiser attended to their own affairs said that I ... ought to do something against the Doones. BLACKMOORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XII, 71 (approximately equivalent to ... who had better have attended to their own affairs.)

31. Another remarkable and frequent shifting of the subject is due to the condensing of a complex sentence, mostly one with a subjective subordinate statement, into a simple sentence. The subject of the statement then becomes the subject of the simple sentence, while the predicate of the former is represented by an infinitive in the latter, where it appears as a constituent of a kind of complex predicate (Ch. I, 15). Thus *It happened that I knew the man* may be condensed into *I happened to know the man*. Shifting of the subject of this description occurs with: a) the verbs *to chance* and *to happen*; b) the verbs *to appear*, *to seem* and *to turn out* (or *to come out*); c) the nominal predicates with *certain*, *(un)likely*, *sure* and *safe*.

In the expanded construction *it* is the anticipating pronoun representing the following subjective subordinate statement. In the condensed construction the above verbs and adjectives perform much the same function as adverbs, denoting as they do some accessory circumstance attending the action or state indicated by the predicate with which they stand (Ch. XLV, 26). JESPERSEN's interpretation of the condensed construction differs from the above, but squares well with the expanded construction. According to him in such a sentence *He seems to work hard* the word-group *He to work hard* represents the logical or notional



subject of *seems*, which practically coincides with the view which regards *that he works hard* as the logical subject and *it* as the grammatical subject of *seems*. See his *Philosophy of Grammar*, page 118.

32. Of the verbs *to chance* and *to happen* both the non-personal and the personal construction are in common use without any appreciable difference in meaning; e. g.:

i. \* One day it chanced that he and Arthur went thither together. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 32.

In the course of that very day it chanced that the Major had stationed himself in the great window of Bays's Club in St. James's Street. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 385. It chanced the song that Enid sang was one | Of Fortune and her wheel. TEN., *Ger. & En.* 345.

\*\* He chanced to remark the agitation under which she laboured. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 80.

There chanced to be on the breakfast table certain cards of invitation. *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 45.

ii. \* Now it happened that Proteus' father had just been talking with a friend on this very subject. LAMB, *Tales*, Ch. VI, 98.

It happens that the fire is hot. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. II, 9.

\*\* The cards of invitation happened to come from some very exalted personages. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 45.

Note a) After *to chance* the infinitive sometimes stands archaically without *to*. In the following examples, quoted by the O. E. D. (s. v. *chance* sb., c), the word may also be apprehended as an adverb.

It may chance cost some of us our lives. SHAK., *Henry IV*, B, II, 1, 12.

Lest some mischief may chance befall them. LOWELL, *Biglow P.*, 167.

β) In older English *how chances it* that was sometimes replaced by *how chance* (uninflected) without anticipating *it* (O. E. D., s. v. *chance*, v, 5); thus in:

How chance you went not with Mr. Slender? SHAK., *Merry Wives*, V, 5, 230.

γ) *To happen* is often attended by the adverb *so*, especially in the expanded construction; thus in:

It so happened last July, that I ... found myself in a first-class carriage. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, XVIII, 282.

33. Also of the verbs *to appear*, *to seem*, and *to turn out* both the expanded and the condensed constructions are in common use.

a) *To appear* occurs in two shades of meaning, severally corresponding to the Dutch *blijken* (English *to be(come) manifest*), and *schijnen* (English *to seem*). In the expanded construction its usual meaning is, apparently, that of *blijken*; in the condensed construction it mostly admits of either interpretation.

i. It appeared that Mr. Pen's bills in all amounted to 700 l. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XX, 209.

There were some differences between Emily's orphanhood and mine, it appeared. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 18 a.

It thus appears that the chief basis of French is the popular Latin. SKEAT, *Princ. of Eng. Etym.*, II, 184.

ii. He appears to be honest. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 393.

My unfortunate friend the waiter did not appear to be disturbed by this. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 a.

Toots appeared to be the only exception to this rule. *id.*, *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 106.

b) In specializing sentences *to seem* is often attended by a person-adjunct with *to*. Such an adjunct appears, however, more frequently in the expanded than in the condensed construction.

i. It seemed to the boy that she cast longing eyes at his cake. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

It seemed to him that his mind was opening like a flower. *II. Lond. News*.

ii. The day seemed to him to become a dream. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, vi, Ch. XXVIII, 272.

This action of Domini's . . . seemed to him . . . cruelly heartless. *ib.*, 277.

Note. Also *to appear* may be attended by an adjunct with *to*, but instances are, apparently, less common than with *to seem*; thus in:

i. It appeared to him that Sunday afternoon . . . was so singularly favourable an opportunity . . . that [etc.]. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I, (475)

ii. (His books) did not appear to him to be masterpieces of human intellect. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

c) Of *to turn out* the expanded construction is less frequent than the condensed.

i. It turned out that my library is regarded as an objection. GISSING, *Christopherson*.

It turned out that the enemy had blown up one or both of the huts. *Punch*.

ii. Many a wild colt has turned out a noble steed. SCOTT, *Kenilw.*, Ch. I, 13.

Our business in Belgium may turn out to be a mere military occupation. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 255.

It turned out to be quite a mistake. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 29 a.

Note. *To come out* is an uncommon synonym of *to turn out*.

i. If . . . it should come out that the vice admiral's complaints were founded. *Ann. Reg., Hist. Europe*, 162/2 (O. E. D., s.v. *come out*, i).

ii. There, egad! he comes out to be the very captain of the privateer who has taken Whiskerandos prisoner. SHER., *Critic*, III, 1.

Why, Jack, you are not come out to be any one else, are you? *id.*, *Riv.*, IV, 3.

34. Obs. I. Sometimes a difference can be discerned between the condensed and the expanded construction, as is shown by a comparison of the following examples:

He seemed to be as incapable of active exertion as of unkindly feeling. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 184.

It seemed that she had little cause for anxiety. MAC., *Fred.*, (665 b).

The first sentence implies that the circumstances justifying the statement have been observed in the subject, the second that they have been observed in his surroundings.

Only the expanded construction is available when the time-sphere of the action or state referred to is subsequent to that of the utterance. Thus the condensed construction could not be substituted for the expanded in:

It seems to me this matter will never be settled except by arbitration. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, XVIII, 286.

Nor is substitution possible when the subordinate statement is itself complex, as in :

Howe'er it be, it seems to me, | 'Tis only noble to be good. TEN., Lady Clara Vere de Vere, 53.

II. The phrases *it appeared* or *it seemed* are sometimes placed in the body of the sentence, in which case they have the value of the adverbs *apparently* or *seemingly* respectively; thus in :

All the drains were choked, it appeared, from their being so very narrow. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*

III. In the condensed construction the copula *to be* is often suppressed after *to appear*, *to seem*, and *to turn out*; thus in :

i. Long after dark I sat there wondering whether anybody else would come. When this appeared improbable for that night, I undressed. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 29 b.

I took heart to tell him that I had had nothing all night. He appeared surprised at this. *ib.*, Ch. V, 37 b.

ii. These circumstances seemed very suspicious to Mr. Beaufort. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 103.

Ned. Tunstall seemed to us the most knowing of mortals. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

iii. I had no doubt that he was her brother, and so he turned out. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 16 a.

In a year they were married, and a very happy marriage it turned out. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 252

With *to seem* the copula is frequently dispensed with also in the expanded construction; thus in :

It seemed to me a bold thing even to take notice that the passage looked uncomfortable. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 41 a

Before a present participle the suppression of *to be* is unusual. Instances are found in :

He seemed endeavouring to collect his thoughts. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 25.  
Winifred seemed trying to move away from me. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 66.

The sight of herself (*sc.* in the looking-glass) became intolerable to her, it seemed burning her. VICTORIA CROSS, *Life's Shop Window*, Ch. I, 37.

IV. Peculiar is the frequent use, especially in the expanded construction, of *would*, now less frequently of *should*, with *to appear* and *to seem* to emphasize diffidence (Ch. I, 34, Obs. V).

i. It would appear that on his way home he was overcome with the effects of wine. *Times*.

It would appear that, when circumstances permitted, a quasi-religious costume was the custom. *Graph*.

ii. \* It would seem — to look at the man as he sat there — that he had grown old before his time. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, I, Ch. I, 1.

It would seem that Mr. Balfour was somewhat nettled by the criticisms of the leaders of the Opposition. *Times*.

\*\* Hastings called upon Johnson, with the hope, it should seem, of interesting in his project a man who enjoyed the highest literary reputation. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (600 a). (Thus regularly in the works of this writer.)

It should seem there was soon discovered to be no such vast discrepancy at bottom between this and Chiappono's theory. BROWN., *Soul's Trag.*, II, (27).  
Torture should seem to them mere ordinary and natural life. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 72.

V. In the condensed construction *to seem* sometimes approximates to *to think*; thus in:

There at times in the silent hours I seem to hear their voices and feet. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 9. (Dutch: *meen ik hunne stemmen en voeten te hooren*.)

He seemed to see the ancient sage. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *The Man born to be King*, 42*b*.

I seem to know these fields again. SWEET, *Elementarbuch*, 39.

Another shade of meaning of *to seem* may be observed in:

I seem to have been reading all my life. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. V, 18. (= I have a kind of feeling as if I had been reading all my life; Dutch: *Ik heb een gevoel (or Het is net) alsof ik mijn geheele leven gelezen heb*.)

VI. An adverbial clause introduced by *as if* (or *as though*) is not unfrequent after both the non-personal and the personal construction. Needless to say that it implies additional diffidence; thus in:

i. But it seemed as if I was destined to offend all the men that day. THACK., *Sam Titm.*, Ch. III, 31.

It seemed to me as if a spirit had opened to me a new world. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, IV, Ch. II, 87.

ii. They seemed as if they had never missed Sylvia. MRS. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. VI, 75.

Dick and Torpenhow had roared with laughter, in which the man seemed as if he would join. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VIII, 105.

The young people seem as if they must usurp everything nowadays. L. B. WOLFORD, *Stay-at-Homes*, Ch. I.

VII. Also the constructions represented by the following examples deserve mention:

Why seems it so particular with thee? SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 75. (Observe the use of *with* instead of *to*.)

There seemed no order in these latter visions. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 101. (The verb *to be* that could be supplied here would have the meaning of *a weak to exist*.)

There seems nothing grown but rice. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6517, 6*a*. (i. e. It seems that nothing is grown there but rice. Evidently it is the auxiliary of the passive voice which could be supplied here.)

The bell was hidden in the carving of the mantelpiece, but she found it at last and gave it a lusty pull. It seemed answered instantaneously. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. I, 10. (Also in this sentence it is the auxiliary of the passive voice that could be supplied.)

35. With the adjectives *certain* and *likely* the condensed construction expresses the speaker's personal opinion as to the certainty or likelihood of a future action or state coming into fulfilment, while the expanded construction represents the certainty or likelihood, not necessarily of a future action or state, as a fact apart from the speaker's opinion. Thus *He is certain (or likely) to do it* is practically equivalent to *I have no doubt (or I have little doubt) that he will do it*. In the condensed construction *sure* frequently takes the place of *certain*. No instances have come to hand of *sure* being used for *certain* in the expanded



construction. In the condensed construction *to be certain* (or *sure*) often implies a notion of inevitableness, so that it is frequently practically equivalent to *to be bound* (Ch. I, 35, Obs. III).

i. \* It is certain that he only regarded him as one of a body of conspirators. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VII, 53.

It is certain that at this time he continued poor. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (599 *b*).

\*\* We are certain to meet him in the course of our rambles. O. E. D.

He is certain to prove ungrateful. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 68 *a*.

People said that he was certain to become a great soldier. *id.*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. IV, 33 *a*.

Their cause is certain to triumph in the end. *Times*.

ii. \* It is very likely he may fall in love with one of them. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 8.

Is it likely that he will spend almost the whole of his yearly vacation in writing a story just to amuse people? HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, Pref., 13.  
It is not unlikely that Mr. Freely had early been smitten by Penny's charms. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. II, (513).

It was not likely she would have given him any serious confidences. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. V, 18.

\*\* This was the place where he was likely to find the powers and dignities of Raveloe. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. V, 37.

He was not likely to feel much concern about leaving his brother in suspense. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 51.

The story of the bear is likely not to be a myth. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. II, 19 *b*.

iii. If we both stay, we both are sure to die. SHAK., *Henry IV*, A, IV, 5, 20.  
We shall be sure to meet there. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, IV, Ch. V, 103.

36. Obs. I. It is of some interest to compare the construction in such sentences as *It is certain that he will succeed*, and *He is certain (or sure) to succeed* with that in which *sure (or certain)* is followed by *of* + gerund or noun of action, as in *He is sure (or certain) of succeeding*, or, which is more usual, *success*. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *sure*, 11) and 12), Notes. This last construction is, however, not unfrequently used in the same meaning as that represented by *He is sure (or certain) to succeed*. It necessarily can have no other meaning in sentences in which the subject denotes a thing, as in:

London was the mart where abilities of every kind were sure of meeting distinction and reward. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XX, (362).

An attempt to rescue the guns was by no means so certain of failure as Sir H. Colville maintains. *Times*.

If it had been the deliberate intention to create an atmosphere in which any scheme was certain of rejection, no surer method could have been chosen. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8251, 1 *b*.

The same interpretation is most probably to be put on the following examples in which the subject denotes a person:

They who have warm fortunes were always sure of getting good husbands. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVI, (331).

Bingley was sure of being liked wherever he appeared, Darcy was continually giving offence. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. IV, 20.

No ambiguity naturally attaches to *to be sure* + perfect gerund, as in:



He is sure of having met him more than once.

*Certainly* seems to be improperly used for *certain* in:

Everybody invited was certainly to come. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXIX, 240.

For illustration of *for a certainty*, *of a certainty* and *to a certainty*, conveying various shades of meaning approaching to that of *certain* in either the expanded or condensed construction, see Ch. LIX, 12. Compare also Ch. XIX, 38.

II. For *likely* as used in the above examples, Early Modern English often has *like*, and the same form is still occasionally met with in colloquial diction; e. g.:

i. One of these three (sc. caskets) contains her heavenly picture. Is it like that lead contains her? SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 7, 49.

It's like enough that you'll stop there. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. VIII, 82.

ii. Now you are like to lose your hair. SHAK., *Temp.*, IV, 1, 237.

I suppose that is all we are like to have for the reckoning. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XIV, 35.

It struck me that he was very like come after you. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (544). (Note the, apparently, unwarranted absence of *to* before the infinitive)

The new Provost that's like to be. BROWNING, *Soul's Trag.*, II, 6.

A condensed form in which *like* is followed by a perfect infinitive has developed a peculiar meaning which in Dutch may be expressed by the aid of the adverb *haast* (= English *nearly*); thus in:

The vivacity of this good lady, as it helped Edward out of his scrape, was like to have drawn him into one or two others. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXI, 152*a*. The lapwings, flitting and crying above him, were like to have drawn the English soldiers to his retreat. ANDREW LANG, *Advent. of Lord Pittligo*. Probably through the influence of *had rather*, etc. *was like* + perfect infinitive is mostly replaced by *had like* + perfect infinitive. Instances occur already in SHAKESPEARE.

We had like to have had our noses snapped off with two old men without teeth. SHAK., *Much ado*, V, 1, 115.

The first jolt had like to have shaken me out of my hammock. SWIFT, *Gul.*, II, Ch. VIII, (159*b*).

This menace had like to have produced fatal consequences. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XII, 74.

Wherever the giant came, all fell before him; but the dwarf had like to have been killed more than once. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XIII.

It had like to have cost you so much, sir, that you may take my advice and leave the affair alone. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 401.

The construction *was* (or *had*) *like* + perfect infinitive is disappearing. For *The dwarf had like to have been killed* ordinary English would now have *The dwarf narrowly escaped being killed* (or *killing*).

III. A remarkable substitute for *certain* (or *sure*) in the condensed construction is *safe*, not, apparently, current in this application before the first half of the nineteenth century. Compare STOFFEL, E. S., XXXI, 108*f*; O. E. D., s. v. *safe*, 12, *b*.

He had grown into an extremely clear-headed, cautious, prudent young man, who was safe to rise in the world. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. I, 51*b*.

I thought it better to take the anthem myself than give it to a junior, who would be safe to make a mull of it. MRS. WOOD, *The Channings*, Ch. I, 4.

Like Lolardy, four centuries earlier, free-thought merely took to running underground, safe, sooner or later, to return to the surface. HUXL., *Lect. & Es*, 63 *b*.

You'll be safe to meet the reddleman that I told you of. HARDY, *Return*, I, Ch. III, 39.

She is safe to get the worst of it. FLOR. BARCLAY, *The Rosary*, Ch. III, 19.  
The book will be safe to appeal to wayfaring men. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3681, 65\* *a*.

My friend Michigan has a question to the Home Secretary on the paper, which is safe to lead to a row. *Punch*.

Also in other connexions *safe* and *sure* may be close synonyms. Compare the following examples:

i. I'm a safe shot. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. II, 15.

ii. He was a sure marksman. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (111).

i. The clothes will floor us as safe as houses. HARDY, *Mad. Crowd*, Ch. LVII, 472.

ii. To-morrow came, and, as sure as fate, Mr. Joseph Sedley made his appearance before luncheon. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 37.

37. Another condensing and consequent shifting of the subject takes place when a complex sentence with an adverbial clause introduced by *before* or *ere*, is replaced by a sentence in which such a clause is changed into a gerund-clause with the preposition *in*; e. g.:

i. It was some time before the soldiers could make a lane for the survivors. MAC., *Clive*, (514 *a*).

It was long before people ceased to take long walks for the sake of asking his aid. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. II, 14.

It will be long ere you have such a chance. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

ii. He found his uncle Barty, and was not very long in delivering his message. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXVIII, 301.

We are not long in using ourselves to changes in life. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXV, 275.

They were nearly an hour in walking the half-mile they had to go. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 271.

They were not long in doing this. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 55.

The patient was some time in coming to. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, II, 270.

The were not long in re-appearing. ANSTEY, *Fallen Idol*, Ch. VIII, 119.

He was late in returning. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, IV, Ch. XX, 111

It is hardly necessary to say that the nature of the predicate often makes an exchange of one construction for the other impracticable.

38. Obs. I. In the complex sentences with an adverbial clause with *before* or *ere*, the non-personal construction is sometimes replaced by the personal, the subject of the clause being transferred to the head-clause and repeated or replaced by a pronoun in the former; thus in:

The Austrians and Russians will be a long time before they can bring their troops down. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 242.

I hope he will not be long ere he publishes another book. MRS. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 265.

II. The gerund in the above construction often loses the preposition *in*, with the result that the *ing*-form assumes the grammatical function of the present participle (Ch. LVI, 50); e. g.:

She was a long time coming to the point. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXVIII, 303.

Richard's a long time saying it. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 16.

How long shall you be going there with this letter? KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, I, 12 a.

Twenty years have I been getting those things together. id., *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XIV, 121 a.

I was nearly a month doing it. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. IV, 53.

Motorists say they were forty minutes getting through the congested thoroughfares. Man ch. Guard., 28 5, 1926, 381 d.

A comparison of the participle-construction with the two others shows that while the latter point to a certain result of an activity, the former draws the attention to the activity itself. Thus *It was nearly a month before he did it*, and *He was nearly a month in doing it* suggest such a sentence as *Nearly a month elapsed before he did it*, while *He was nearly a month doing it* is tantamount to saying *He was nearly a month engaged in doing it*.

It follows that an originally momentaneous verb assumes a durative aspect in the participle-construction; thus *to deliver* and *to call* in:

We were a long time delivering a bedstead at a public-house, and calling at other houses. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 14 b.

Is is hardly necessary to say that the above distinction is too delicate to be always present to the mind of the speaker or writer, and that, consequently, the alternative construction would sometimes seem to be more in harmony with the apparent meaning of the sentence than the one actually used. Thus the gerund-construction would appear to be more appropriate than the participle-construction used in:

People thought that he would not be long getting through his property. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 218.

This may also be said of the following example, it being clearly the result of the action that is thought of:

You'll be a month learning them (sc. the rules of football). HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 92. (*learning* is practically equivalent to *mastering*.)

In the following sentences the gerund- and the participle-construction are even used in absolutely identical connexions:

The Shah seems to be an unconscionable long time in dying. Rev. of Rev., No. 205, 4 b.

He (sc. Charles II) apologized to those who stood round him all night for the trouble which he had caused. He had been, he said, a most unconscionable time dying. Mac., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 12.

III. In the gerund-construction the word(-group) denoting a lapse of time is sometimes replaced by a word(-group) indicating the rate of rapidity with which the action or state is accomplished; thus in:

The doctor said that I should be slow in recovering. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 277.

The Irish Executive was very slow in recognizing the necessity of using the powers entrusted to it by Parliament. Times.

A notion similar to that implied by the participle-construction is conveyed by:

He was as long about taking off his coat as he dared. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XI, 218.

The doctor was a long time over that call. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 240.

IV. The gerund-, or participle-clause is often understood, being but vaguely present to the speaker's mind, and readily suggested by the context; thus in:

What an awful time you've been! O. E. D., s.v. *awful*, 4.

You won't be longer than a week at the outside. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. X, 132.

## REPETITION OF THE SUBJECT.

39. For various reasons the subject is often repeated. The repeated subject, often followed by part of the predicate, or *to do* as *verbum vicarium* (Ch. I, 73), is: *a*) an exact repetition of the preceding (pro)noun which does duty as the subject; *b*) a pronoun representing a word(-group) or clause in the subjective relation to the predicate; *c*) a noun, either a proper name or a common noun furnished with (a) specializing modifier(s), added to state definitely what is indefinitely indicated by a subjective pronoun.

40. *a*) The exact repetition of a subject is chiefly met with in sentences in which the subject is divided from the predicate by some parenthetic clause, or by lengthy adjuncts, suspending the main drift of a communication; thus in:

"That", said Sarah, "yes, that would make a proper gown for your wife." COOPER, *Spy*. (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, II, 17).

For he, by foul hap, having found | Where thistles grew on barren ground, | In haste he drew his weapon out. BUTLER, *Hud.*, I, II, 839.

*b*) Of a different nature is the colloquial repetition of the subject, often together with a verb of incomplete predication to wind a statement up with. It is, indeed, very much like the practice referred to under 39, *c*) and illustrated in 43.

*i.* Tell him I must have money, I. BEN JONSON, *Poët*, I, I. (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, II, 17).

He was not going to be a snuffy schoolmaster, he. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. I, 191.

I'm ready too, I am. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 424.

I'm going too, I am. *ib.*

You're a deep little puss, you are. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVI, 121.

41. The subject which is repeated in the shape of a pronoun may be a noun, as in *The skipper, he stood beside the helm* (LONGF., *Wreck of the Hesp.*, III), the pronoun being placed in immediate succession to the subject-noun.

*a*) This form of repetition is especially frequent in verse, where, as in the above example, the pronoun is used to supply a word that is necessary for the metre; e.g.:



The nobles they are fled, the commons they are cold. SHAK., *Rich. II*, II, 2, 88.  
For the deck it was their field of fame, | And ocean was their grave. CAMPB.,  
*Ye Mar.*, II.

And this maiden she lived with no other thought | Than to love and be loved  
by me. POE, *Annabel Lee*, I.

But our love it was stronger by far than the love | Of those who were older  
than we. *ib.*, v.

Sohrab alone, he slept not. MATTH. ARN., *Sohr. & Rust.*, 5.

For the sake of the rime the repeating pronoun is placed in back-  
position in:

Under a spreading chestnut-tree | The yillage smithy stands; | The smith, a  
mighty man is he | With large and sinewy hands. LONGF., *Vil. Blacksm.*, I.

b) It is also common enough in slipshod prose, where, however,  
it mostly improves the rhythm of the sentence. (Compare Ch.  
IV, 10, e); and see ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 41.

And then Robin postman went on one way, and the gardener he went the  
other. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 40.

The blood it runs as strong, the pulse it beats as steady. BESANT, *The  
World went very well then*, Ch. I, 7.

Her father he couldn't come, so I come instead. GALSW., *Freelands*,  
Ch. IV, 27.

My 'orse 'e shied at your feet. PUNCH.

This practice bears a close resemblance to a common habit in Dutch,  
especially with unpractised speakers, of repeating the subject in the  
guise of the demonstrative *die*, as in *Jan Smit, die heeft zijn fortuin  
gemaakt in Amerika*.

c) In literary prose, especially in Early Modern English, the use  
of a repeating pronoun is not uncommon when the predicate is  
divided from the subject by other elements of the sentence of  
great length; thus in:

But this same Cassio, though he speaks of comfort | Touching the Turkish  
loss, yet he looks sadly. SHAK., *Oth.*, II, 1, 31.

Very good orators, when they are out, they will spit. *id.*, *As you like it*,  
IV, 1, 68.

The lord your God, which goes before you, he shall fight for you. Bible,  
*Deut.*, I, 30.

Note a) The placing of the repeating pronoun followed by a verb  
of incomplete predication at the end of the sentence bears a close  
resemblance to the practice referred to under 39, c) and illustrated in 43.  
*Mrs. Sanders is going, she is.* DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 424.

β) The French practice of placing in questions a noun at the head  
of the sentence and repeating it in the shape of a pronoun as in  
*Votre frère, quel âge a-t-il?* is uncommon in English, and seems  
to betray the speaker's unpreparedness to put his question in proper  
form. The following illustration has been taken from ELLINGER,  
*Verm. Beitr.*, 42:

These persons who have just gone — had they anything to do with your  
quarrel? FARJEON, *London's Heart*, I, 122.

This girl Lizzie, how old is she? *ib.*, I, 219.

Your friends, what will they say? PHILIPS, *One never knows*, I, 52.



The opposite practice, i. e. the placing of the noun in back-position instead of front-position, may be more common.

Are they learned men, your priests? WILK. COL., After Dark, 216. T.

;) Rather frequent is the gathering up of the members of a compound subject by a demonstrative, or by *all*, or by a combination of a demonstrative with *all* (Ch. IV, 10, f); thus in:

The knell, the shroud, the mattock and the grave; | The deep damp vault, the darkness and the worm, | These are the bugbears of a winter's eve. YOUNG, Night Thoughts, IV, 10.

Not to follow your leader whithersoever he may think proper to lead; to back out of an expedition because the end of it frowns dubious, and the present fruit of it is discomfort, to quit a comrade on the road, and return home without him; these are tricks which no boy of spirit would be guilty of. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. III, 16.

His face, his figure, his mode of speech, his habit of thought, all were masculine exceedingly. Rev. of Rev., No. 195, 306 a.

δ) In such a sentence as the following there is not, of course, a repeating of the subject, the nouns with which it opens being predicative adnominal adjuncts to the subject:

A captive in the land, | A stranger and a youth, | He heard the king's command. BYRON, Vision of Belshazzar, V.

42. The subject which is repeated in the shape of a pronoun may also be a clause, i. e. a subordinate statement, a subordinate question, a substantive clause, or an undeveloped infinitive-clause. The repeating pronoun is mostly the neuter singular *it*; only when the reference is to a substantive clause may it be *he* (or *they*), or a demonstrative. In no case is repetition at all common. To the following examples are added some sentences without the repeating pronoun intended to show the usual practice. The student is recommended to compare the following examples with a subordinate question with those in 13, b), 4 in which *it* represents the following infinitive.

i. That I have ta'en this old man's daughter | It is most true. SHAK., Oth., I, 3, 78.

That Keats often abused both these classes of adjective, that both abound in poetry of the second rank, and that both are snares to eloquent young poets, it is beyond question. RANNIE, Essays, III (KRUIS., Handb., § 1000).

\*\* That such an event might happen cannot be disputed. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 68 a.

That I should love him is no wonder. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. XXIV, 90 a.

That he was greedy, idle, and told lies, is certain. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXIV, 673.

ii. \* Hostilities have broken out between Hungary and Roumania, exactly on what scale or with what object, it has not yet been made clear. Westm. Gaz., No. 8062, 3 a.

\*\* How Miss Sharp lay awake, thinking, will he come or not to-morrow? need not be told here. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 37.

What their states were was no business of Mr. Draper's. id., Virg., Ch. XXXVII, 387.

Whether this remark bore reference to the husband, or the teapot, is uncertain. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII, 212.

iii. \* Whosoever, therefore, shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven. Bible, *Matth.*, V, 19.

What the leaves are to the forest, | . . . That to the world are children. LONGF., *Children*, 21.

\*\* What reduces the power and authority of the House of Commons must reduce the power and authority of the electorate. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5195, 1 b. What the fourteen millions want is not more work, but better wages. *ib.*, 2 a. iv. \* For me or neighbour Coster here to take such an oath, 'twould be a downright perjury. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, II, 3, (278).

For any one, even his son, to take John's place, to stand in John's room — it was not a pleasant thought, even in jest. Mrs CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 412.

\*\* For me to put him to his purgation would perhaps plunge him into far more choler. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 318.

To see Dobbin holding the infant and to hear Amelia's laugh of triumph as she watched him, would have done any man good who had a sense of humour. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 391.

43. a) The practice of indicating what is indefinitely denoted by a pronoun by a substantival word-group with a definite meaning is a very common one. See also Ch. IV, 10, e); and compare ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 41, where many instances are given.

He was a wonderful man, that uncle of yours. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2100.

It is entirely of the earth, that passion. BAIN, *N. E. Gr.*, 28.

She early left her sleepless bed, | The fairest maid of Teviotdale. SCOTT, *Lay*, II, xxv.

She was of a spare and straight shape, this young lady. DICK., *Cricket*, I, 12. He was a splendid man, that count Schloppenzollern. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 44.

All, all are gone, the old familiar faces. *Manch. Guard*, 123, 1926, 213 d.

The opening pronoun may represent a compound word-group, as in: But we loved with a love which was more than love — | I and my Annabel Lee. POE, *Annabel Lee*, II.

A demonstrative pronoun used absolutely or substantively may do the same duty as the noun with its specializing adjuncts, thus in:

They (sc. the inns of court) are no ordinary houses, those. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 183.

It looks a nice warm exercise, that, doesn't it? *ib.*, Ch. XXX, 270.

It's killing me, this, Damon! HARDY, *Return*, I, Ch. V, 50.

b) The repeated subject is often attended by the finite verb of the preceding predicate or the verb *to do*, which, in conformity with a well-known principle of word-order, is mostly placed before it. The addition imparts a genial colouring to the sentence. See also Ch. IV, 10, e).

i. It is a country of vast extent, is China. O. E. D., s.v. *it*, 4, c.

He will come to a bad end, will that young Lord. THACK., *Esmer.*, II, Ch. II, 165.

It's board and lodging to me, is smoke. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XX, 181.

Oh! she was indeed a "gushing thing," was the youngest Miss Pecksniff. *id.*, *Chuzzle*, Ch. II, 7 a.

He was very much attached to me, was Dick. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 33.

He speaks uncommonly well, does Casaubon. G. ELIOT, *Mid*, Ch. IV, 25.

He never did care for the river, did Montmorency. JER., *Three Men*, Ch. I, 13. (Observe the absence of a negative in the second part of the sentence.)

He doesn't make mistakes, doesn't Squire Darneley. RICH. BAGOT, *Darneley Place*, I, Ch. II, 25.

ii. That bedstead would make any one go to sleep, that bedstead would. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLI, 376.

It's puzzling work, talking is. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 5.

He's close, Mr. Tom is. *ib.*, VI, Ch. III, 361.

She was but a young woman when she died, my mother was. *ib.*, III, Ch. IX, 241.

Sometimes the repeating word-group is found in the body of the sentence; thus in :

He's interested, is George, in all beasts and birds. VACHELL, *Spragge's Canyon*, 81 (*KRUIS.*, *Handbk.*<sup>4</sup>, § 614).

The repeated subject often appears in the shape of a gerund-clause; thus in :

It is dangerous work, playing with explosives. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch. IV, 33.

It is a great bore, having to answer letters. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XIII, 222.

For further illustration see Ch. XIX, 11.



## CHAPTER III.

### OBJECTS.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Observations on Objects in general . . . . .	1— 5
The Non-prepositional object . . . . .	6—50
Peculiar Features of some Non-prepositional Objects . . .	6—21
The Sham Non-prepositional Object . . . . .	22—24
The Anticipating Non-prepositional Object . . . . .	25—36
Repetition of the Non-prepositional Object . . . . .	37
The Indirect Object . . . . .	38—50
The Prepositional Object . . . . .	51—60
Peculiar Features of the Prepositional Object . . . . .	51
The indefinite <i>it</i> as part of a Prepositional Object . . .	52
The Anticipating Prepositional Object . . . . .	53—60
Objects governed by two or more Verbs . . . . .	61



## OBSERVATIONS ON OBJECTS IN GENERAL.

1. For an exposition of what, in the opinion of the present writer, constitutes the essential difference between objects and adverbial adjuncts, the student may be referred to Ch. XLV, 18-25, where an attempt has been made to describe with some precision the characterizing features of each of these adjuncts of the predicate. Some of these features have been worked out in further detail in Ch. XLVI, while in Ch. XLVII they have been dealt with so far as they bear on the adaptability of the English verb to being used in the passive voice.  
In the present chapter we shall be mainly concerned with some particulars not at all, or only incidentally, dealt with in the above chapters. Some repetition of what has there been observed will, however, be unavoidable.
2. As to their form objects may be divided into: a) non-prepositional objects, i. e. such as have not their relation to the predicate expressed in any way beyond position; e. g.: *I see a flying-machine, He gave John an apple.* b) prepositional objects, i. e. such as have their relation to the predicate expressed by a preposition, e. g.: *I attended to his words, I am fond of music.*
3. Many predicates are regularly, or all but regularly, attended by two objects. In this case: a) both the objects are non-prepositional, as in *I offered John an apple*; b) both the objects are prepositional, as in *He spoke to us on the subject*; or c) one of the objects is non-prepositional, the other prepositional, as in *They accused him of theft.*
4. When a predicate is attended by two objects, one of them almost regularly indicates a person, the other a thing. It will, therefore, often be useful to distinguish person-objects and thing-objects. Even when both objects, considered apart from the context, are the names of things, one of them more or less distinctly suggests, through its connexions, thoughts of personal qualities (Ch. XLV, 19); thus in:

I have never given the matter a thought. POE, *Purloined Letter*, (197).

He struck the table a heavy blow. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 17 a.

I never gave the existence of Captain Dobbin a single moment's consideration.

THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 62.

We wish this publication all success. ACADEMY.

In the case of both objects being non-prepositional the one indicating the thing is often called the direct object, the one indicating the person the indirect object.

5. a) The words or word-groups that may be used as objects are, in general, of the same nature in English as they are in Dutch. Peculiar to English is, however, the frequent use of gerunds or gerund-clauses in this function, as in *He likes skating, He is very fond of skating long distances* (Ch. LVI, 11).

b) As to the words or word-groups that may govern objects, it is again the gerund which constitutes a feature peculiar to English (Ch. LVI, 7); e. g.:

Hating one's neighbour is forbidden by the Gospel. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 368.

There is nothing so bad as parting with one's friends. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 323.

## THE NON-PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

### PECULIAR FEATURES OF SOME NON-PREPOSITIONAL OBJECTS.

6. A general rule we may say that in English the non-prepositional object stands in the same relations to the other elements of the sentence as it does in Dutch. The following cases are of particular interest.
7. The predicate is sometimes attended by a *me* or *you*, which add (6, a) no distinct notion to the import of the sentence, but mainly serve the purpose of imparting liveliness to the narration; thus in *He pluck'd me ope his doublet and offered them his throat to cut* (SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 270); *I'll rhyme you so eight years together* (id., *As you like it*, III, 2, 85).

It is of no practical interest to inquire curiously into the problem whether the pronouns as used in the above examples should be set down as objects or adverbial adjuncts. If objects are correctly described as necessary complements of the predicate, i. e. as adjuncts without which the predicate would not convey complete sense, then surely the emotional *me* and *you* can lay no just claim to the name (Ch. XLV, 22). But when we bear in mind that it is also in the nature of objects to imply intimate interest or participation in the action or state denoted by the predicate, we may pause to meet the claim with a flat denial. There can, indeed, be no doubt that by the use of the pronouns the speaker wishes to indicate the particular interest of either himself or his assumed interlocutor in the action in question. Redundant object, accordingly, seems a suitable designation of these adjuncts of the predicate. In grammars which persist in distinguishing a dative and an accusative in Modern English they are mostly designated by the term of ethical dative (Ch. XLV, 22). For discussion and illustration see also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*

§ 101; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*, § 192; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 220; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 294; KRUISINGA, *Handb.*<sup>4</sup>, § 1869; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 125, 3.

The emotional *me* and *you* are found with intransitive as well as with transitive verbs, with the latter more frequently than with the former. They appear to have been more usual in Early Modern English than they are now; e. g.:

i. \* As I was smoking a musty room, comes me the prince and Claudio, hand in hand, in sad conference. SHAK., *Much Ado*, I, 3, 61.

Go, hop me over every kennel home, | For you shall hop without my custom, sir. id., *Taming*, IV, 3, 98.

\*\* I will roar you as gently as any sucking dove; I will roar you an 'twere any nightingale. SHAK., *Mids.*, I, 2, 85.

I will rhyme you so eight years together. id., *As you like it*, III, 2, 101.

ii. I am not yet of Percy's mind, the Hotspur of the north; he that kills me six or seven dozen of Scots at a breakfast, washes his hands, and says to his wife, "Fie upon this quiet life! I want work." SHAK., *Henry IV*, A, II, 4, 115.

Give me your present to one master Bassanio. id., *Merch.*, II, 2, 98.

When an ugly old patrician finds fair words will not win fair looks, and carries me off a dame on the back of a German boar . . . — then I say, he is a wicked man, and an adulterer. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. III, 25.

One Colonna cuts me the throat of Orsini's baker. ib., I, Ch. III, 22.

The jungle's the school for a general, mark me that. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 303.

\*\* Nothing introduces you a heroine like soft music. SHER., *Critic*, II, 2.

He could knock you off forty Latin verses in an hour. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

8. Redundant object also seems to be a suitable name for reflexive pronouns, or personal pronouns doing duty as reflexive pronouns, sometimes added to certain intransitive or transitive verbs: for syntactical, metrical (or rhythmical) reasons in the case of the intransitives, for the purpose of giving an emotional colouring to the sentence in the case of the transitives.

a) The redundant reflexive (personal) pronoun is not unfrequently found connected with the intransitives *to rest* and *to sit*, especially in literary style; less frequently and archaically with *to lie*. The main purpose of this addition is to impart an ingressive aspect to the primarily durative verbs (Ch. LI, 14, Ofs. II); e. g.:

i. When my mother is out of breath and rests herself in an elbow chair, I watch her winding her bright curls round her fingers. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 8*b*. Will you rest yourself here an hour, Miss? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 276.

ii. She sat herself on a couch in a window. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. II, 13*a*.

He sat himself suddenly upright in his chair. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XLIII, 159.

After this she came and sat herself on a slab of flat stone. RID. HAG., *Jess*, II, 186.

iii. He had lost his way and lain him down to die. JEROME, *Three Men* Ch. X, 127.

Note a) The same change of aspect is in ordinary English effected by the addition of certain adverbs, especially *down* or *up* (Ch. LI, 13); thus in:

i. He lay down and begged her to put out the lights. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVIII, 353.

ii. After several turns he sat down again. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

iii. At this point the Court invited Mr. Lackington to stand down. PUNCH, No. 2952, 51 a. (Dutch: *weer te gaan zitten*.)

Mrs. Lauderdale rose from her chair and stood up. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 130. (Dutch: *stond op* or *ging staan*)

Not unfrequently the two means are adopted together, especially in the case of *to sit*; thus in:

At his bidding she sat herself down beside him on the sofa. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. XIX, 249.

She sat herself down before a cheerful fire. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII, 211.

Having set him there, by the fireside, the good old lady sat herself down too. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 114. (*Herself* is emphatic, or emphatic reflexive.)

He sat himself down under the shade of a great chestnut. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 289.

β) Besides expressing a change of aspect the addition of the reflexive personal pronoun may serve to secure the required metre or to improve the rhythm; thus in:

i. He had lost his way and lain him down to die. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. X, 127.

ii. Here will I rest me till the break of day. SHAK., *Mids.*, III, 2, 446.

Enter, and rest thee there a space. SCOTT, *Lord of the Isles*.

iii. They sat them down upon the yellow sand. TEN., *Lotos-Eaters*, V, 37.

The Rector sat him down to his task. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 151.

γ) It may be observed that the verbs in the above examples, through taking a reflexive (personal) pronoun, may also be understood to have been converted into causative transitives. This is borne out by a comparison with such sentences as:

You may sit down twenty with ease. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

He decided to rest her in a clump of trees during the afternoon. HARDY *Tess*, VII, Ch. LVIII, 511.

b) The transitives which, in the higher literary style, not unfrequently stand with a redundant *me* in the function of a reflexive pronoun, are especially *to doubt*, *to dread*, *to fear*, and *to warrant*. Besides imparting an emotional colouring to the sentence, the pronoun may, not unfrequently, have been used for the sake of the metre or rhythm. See also Ch. XXXVI, 2, Obs. II; 23.

i. It has a strange ring in my ears after all these years, and I doubt me that thy accent does not fall as the Romans put it. RID. HAG., *She*, Ch. XIII, 92.

I doubt me very much if the modesty of the unknown and unheralded is responsible for the strict anonymity of the book. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No 483, 167 a.

ii. If I go to the lists, I dread me, we shall be shamed. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIX, 308.



I dread me, if I draw it (sc. the lance-head), you will die. TEN, *Lanc. & El.*, 511.

iii. I fear me nothing can reclaim him. MARL., *Doct. Faust.*, II, 35.  
Something, however, I fear me, must have gone wrong. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 367.

I fear me the mistake hath cost him dear. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 16.  
Ay, a flash, | I fear me, that will strike my blossom dead. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 965.

iv. Your aunt Pedigree will keep you secure, I'll warrant me. GOLDSM., *She stoops*, IV, (217).

I warrant me there's not one of them but, in describing the battle of Minden, would manage to bring Prince Ferdinand ... into presence. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 68.

In place of the rats and owlets, I warrant me there were ladies and knights to revel in the great halls. id., *The Legend of the Rhine* (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. VI, 140).

Note α) The use of the emotional *me* in the following example appears to be distinctly vulgar:

As I passed under the great painted window, ... I hears me the lattice open. SCOTT, *Kenilw.*, Ch. II, 25.

β) With intransitives the use of this emotional *me* appears to be very rare; thus in:

I grieve me much for the accident. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 16.

I dreamt me of two mighty yeomen. *Robin Hood & Guy of Gisborne*, III.

9. ABBOT (*Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 414) describes as redundant object the first object in such a sentence as *I know you what you are* (SHAK., *Lear*, I, 1, 272). It seems, however, to be more rational to regard the construction as an instance of ἀπὸ κοινοῦ: it readily admits, indeed, of being split up into *I know you* and *I know what you are*. Numerous instances of this construction are given by the distinguished grammarian. We copy a few.

I see you what you are. *Twelfth Night*, I, 4, 269.

You hear the learn'd Bellario what he writes. *Merch.*, IV, 1, 167.

See the dew-drops, how they kiss | Every little flower that is. BEAUM & FLETCH., *Faithf. Sheph.*, II, 1.

In Present-day English the construction seems to be non-existent.

10. In the strict sense of the word we cannot call objects the adjuncts of the predicate which state in whose behalf an action is said to take place, as in *Make me a coat* (MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 364). When they are omitted, the remainder of the sentence would convey complete sense. Considering, however, that they indicate a person intimately interested in the action denoted by the predicate some case might be made out for bestowing the above name on them (Ch. XLV, 22, *b*). Pseudo-object would, perhaps, be a suitable denomination of this variety of adjuncts of the predicate. KRUISINGA (*English Studies*, VII, II, 43) proposes to call them adjuncts of benefit.



Pseudo-objects, to adopt this name for convenience sake, may be found with practically all transitive verbs that express an action by which a person can be benefited; thus in:

Build me, O worthy Master! | Staunch and strong, a goodly vessel, | That shall laugh at all disaster, | And with wave and whirlwind wrestle! LONGF., *The Building of the Ship*, I

I could see, from my window, the lantern they had left him burning quietly. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 269.

We all took the opportunity, ... to purchase her a birthday present. G. ELIOT, *Lifted Veil*, Ch. I, (407).

Note a) The person benefited may be the same as that indicated by the subject, in which case the pseudo-object is a reflexive (personal) pronoun; thus in:

We petty men | Walk under his huge legs. and peep about | To find ourselves dishonourable graves. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 138.

After many days of hard and patient labour they had bored themselves a new hole in the tree. *Illustr. Mag.*

β) The pseudo-object mostly admits of being replaced by an adjunct with *for*; thus that in all the preceding examples. There is, indeed, no semantic difference between the two constructions beyond that of the relative significance of the elements concerned. Thus *for* could be dispensed with in:

He filled for himself a bumper of claret. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. X, 123.

Naturally a change for the alternative construction would sometimes be rendered impracticable by the general structure of the sentence; thus in:

Who bought it for us? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XI, 59 a.

In older English also an adjunct with *to* seems to have been used as a substitute for the pseudo-object; thus in:

Thou shalt not make to thyself any graven image. *Decalogue*, II.

γ) It is of some interest to compare *to open the door for a person* (6, b) with *to open the door to a person*, the former expressing an act of assistance, the latter an act of showing in or, more rarely, showing out.

i. Now hang my cloak across my arm. Now my hat. Now open the door for me. SHAW, *Can d.*, I, (134).

It isn't a usual thing for you to have the door opened for you. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, III, (84).

Compare: Closing the door for her as he entered the room, he sat himself down on the sofa, close to her chair. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. IX, 113.

ii. Happening to arrive at the door as it was opened to the afternoon milkman, I was reminded of Mr. and Mrs. Micawber more forcibly yet. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXVII, 199 b.

And again as they opened the front-door to him, and he stepped out into the dark wintry night, he looked back. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. VIII, 73.

In the transferred applications of *to open*, the verb would more frequently be followed by an adjunct with *to* than one with *for*; thus in:

At night she opened her heart to Jane. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIX, 366.

It seemed to me as if a spirit had opened to me a new world. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, IV, Ch. II, 88.

Her aunt opened her mind to her on that subject. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch I, 12.  
He had opened his soul to these two. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 3.

However, BRADLEY (*The Making of English*, Ch. III, 85) writes:

The new conditions brought about by the Norman Conquest, however opened the door for a far more abundant influx of foreign words.

δ) A *for*-complement with the reflexive pronoun sometimes appears as a rather superfluous addition; thus in:

He had been so astounded, ... that it had been impossible for him to form for himself any line of conduct. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. II, 14.

He and his wife took for themselves a very small house near the Regent's Park. *id.*, He knew he was right, II, Ch XCIX, 383.

Professor Moore Smith, the editor of the 'Modern Language Review', has won a distinguished place for himself among Elizabethan scholars. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 24. 477 *b*.

11. In Dutch we often find a pseudo-object both with verbal and (7) nominal predicates indicating the person or thing for whom the intensity of an action or quality is excessive, as in *Hij loopt mij te hard*, *Zij geeft mij dien bedelaar te veel*, *Dit boek is haar te moeilijk*. This practice is unknown in English, an adjunct with *for* being regularly used instead; thus in: *Miss Amory begged and prayed ... Mr. Arthur to come to dinner, if a humdrum party were not too stupid for him*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 236.  
*I was so faint and tired, that the idea of holding out for six miles more was too much for me*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37 *b*.  
*The Spaniards were too many for them*. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 2 *b*.

12. While numerous nominals or nominal equivalents may be con- (9) strued with non-prepositional objects in Dutch, their number is limited to a very few in English (16). In comparing such Dutch nominals or nominal equivalents with their approximate English equivalents, it will be found that the latter require either *to* or *for*. The majority take *to*, some few *for*, while in some cases usage is variable. The prevalent use of *to* deserves all the more the attention of the Dutch student, because in his language *voor* is invariably used in the potential prepositional equivalent of the non-prepositional adjunct.

The registering of such cases as have *to* in English where the Dutch has *voor*, which might be collected within a few hours' diligent search, would run into page upon page, and may safely be left to the diligent interest of the student. See also O. E. D. s.v. *to*, A, 33. In these pages we shall, therefore, be mainly concerned with those combinations in which *for* is the only or ordinary preposition, or varies with *to*.

The main reason for the rather frequent vacillation between *for* and *to* in the combinations here referred to appears to be the fact that in them these prepositions do not stand for any well-defined or precise notion, but serve hardly any other purpose than that of bringing about

a connexion between the nominal (or equivalent word-group) and its complement (Ch. LX, 48, 62, 65).

13. Apart from the case mentioned in 11, *for* is now regularly used (10, b) with *enough* and *sufficient*, or word-groups containing either of these words; thus in:

i. His own heart laughed, and that was quite enough for him. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 99.

Your face is quite yellow enough for us. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

ii. Two good names would be sufficient for my friend. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXI, 184.

A word to the wise is sufficient for them. *id.*, *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. II, 9a-Note. CHAUCER has *enough* with *to* in:

Experience ... were right y-nough to me | To speke of wo that is in mariage. *Cant. Tales*, D, 2.

SHAKESPEARE has it without any preposition in:

Me, poor man, my library | Was dukedom large enough. *Temp.*, I, 2, 109.

14. There is some tendency to use *for* by the side of, or in preference (11) to *to*, when the complement of the nominal is followed by an infinitive(-clause). This is strikingly illustrated by the following example, in which the two prepositions are used alternately in connexion with one and the same adjective:

Although ardent expressions in writing to pretty women are pleasant to male writers, it is not pleasant for a gentleman to be asked what on earth he means by that sort of thing at his time of life. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XX, 156.

It is worth observing that when an infinitive (-clause) follows, the *to*-adjunct is more intimately connected with the nominal than the *for*-adjunct. The latter, indeed, is more or less distinctly felt to constitute the subjective element to the infinitive(-clause). Compare Ch. XVIII, 45 ff; and especially Ch. LX, 65 ff.

The tendency to use a *for*-complement is most pronounced after *difficult*, *easy*, *hard*, (*im*)possible, *necessary*, and words or word-groups of a similar import, naturally also when the infinitive (-clause) is not expressed, but may be supplied from the context. With other nominals or nominal equivalents it appears only exceptionally. The examples with a *to*-complement added to some of the following illustrations are meant to show the not-unfrequent wavering between the two constructions:

(dis)agreeable: i. It was very agreeable for them to come down with their portmanteaus. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

ii. It will be very disagreeable to the Boers to receive terms of peace at the hands of Lord Milner and Mr. Chamberlain. LORD ROSEBERY, *Speech*.

Note. The use of *for* appears to be exceptional.

convenient: i. I came to inquire if it would be convenient for you to accompany me on my morning's rounds. MRS. GASK., *Mr. Har. Conf.*, Ch. II, (397).

ii. It will hardly be convenient to me to release you from your engagement. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. VIII.

Note. *To* may be more common than *for*.

*difficult*: i. His business and near prospect of marriage made it difficult for him to leave home. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (543).

She chose the very words that were most difficult for her to say just then. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, III, Ch. XIII, 321.

ii. The older a man gets, the more difficult it is to him to retain a believing conception of his death. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. V, 34.

Note. *For* is, presumably, distinctly more common than *to*.

*easy*: It is easier for a man to describe a man than a woman. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. II, 34.

Won't it be much easier for you (sc. to resist the craving for drink), when you have me to help you? *ib.*, I, Ch. XIV, 266.

Even where the signification of the two forms (sc. the genitive and the *of*-construction) is identical, there is a distinction of emphasis which it is not easy for a foreigner to apprehend. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 60.

It is easy for him to see what she is. GALSW., *Escape*, Prol., Stage-dir.

Note. Instances with *to* have not come to hand, and are, presumably, rare.

*hard*: It is hard for a man to change his habits. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XVIII, 216.

He (sc. Christ) was a genius! It makes it hard for us who try to follow Him. GALSW., *Escape*, II, IX, (94).

Note. Instances with *to* have not come to hand, and are, presumably, rare. In the following example *for* has replaced (*up*)*on*, the ordinary preposition of *hard* in the meaning of *cruel* when no infinitive (-clause) follows (Ch. LX, 67): It was hard for Abel Fletcher to have for his only child such a sickly creature as I. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 6.

*necessary*: A political leader is so sure of support and so sure of attack, that it is hardly necessary for him to be even anxious to be right. TROL., *Phin. Finn.*, I, Ch. VI, 76.

Note. Instances with *to* have not come to hand, and are, presumably, rare.

*pleasant, pleasure*: i. She presumed that he intended to tell her something as to their future mode of life — something which he supposed it might be pleasant for her to hear. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XII, 138.

ii. It would be quite a pleasure to me to serve so good a neighbour. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*; 90.

It was a pleasure to her ... to see him there. HARDY, *Under the Greenwood Tree*, II, Ch. I, 85.

Note. *To* is, probably, more common than *for*.

*impossible*: i. It was impossible for Pulteney not to discern the motive of such an offer. MAC., *Wil. Pitt*, (289*b*).

He began to see that it was not possible for him to shine. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, Ch. III, (528).

So long ... as my hands are not tied, it is impossible for me to be depressed. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XVI, 369.

There was an opening ready, an opening to this great glory, — if only it might be possible for him to fill it. TROL., *Phin. Finn.*, I, Ch. I, 15.

ii. When we are subdued by sickness, it seems possible to us to fulfil pledges which the old vigour comes back and breaks. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. IX, 240. I often wonder ... whether it is impossible to their (sc. the men's) natures to retain a constant interest and affection for those they see every day. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 274.

There was an instinct within her which made it almost impossible to her to express an objection to a suitor before the suitor had declared himself to be one. TROL., *He knew he was right*, Ch. XXX, 235.

She thought that it would be impossible to her to be ashamed. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, III, Ch. XV, 15.

Note. There is, presumably, some predilection for *for*.  
*preferable*. For him now it would have been preferable to remain in the arm-chair by the fireside in his own library. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. II, 21.  
 Note. *For* may be the ordinary preposition.

15. a) In some cases *for* has been found to vary with *to* notwithstanding the absence of an infinitive-clause expressed or understood. *companions*: i. They (sc. the kittens) are quite companions for me. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XXIII, 217.  
 ii. I hope it (sc. the book) will be a companion to me. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 124.

Note. *To* is, presumably, more common than *for*.  
*easy*: i. Upon my word, Mr. Dockwrath, you have made my work to-day uncommonly easy for me. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XIV, 182.  
 I want to make it easy for you, and I hope you want to make it easy for me. GALSW., *Escape*, II, vi, (73).

ii. This would not only be more easy to themselves, but more edifying to the people. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 106.

At our former short distance from town, access was more easy to those who did not keep a carriage. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

Oblivion, is not so easy to me as you represent it to be. DICK., *Two Cities*, II, Ch. XX, 235.

I discovered that the days became easier to me. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 123.

Note. *For* appears to be unusual. This applies also to *difficult* and *hard*, both strict opposites of *easy*.

i. Both are equally difficult to me. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. IV, 33.  
 Again there was the silence that seemed characteristic of this man before he spoke, as if speech were difficult to him. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al*, I, II, Ch. VII, 136.

ii. This is a difficult hour for me. MASON, *House with the Arrow*, Ch. VI, 75.

To pass the frontier, even in a train, is difficult matter for the Arethusa. STEV., *An Inland Voyage*, at Maubeuge, 24.

It made her position difficult, speech hard for her. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al*, I, III, Ch. XIII, 314.

*necessary*: i. Change and alternation are necessary for the mind as well as for the body. JOWETT, *Plato*, IV, 12 (O. E. D., I).

ii. I do not believe that their services are necessary to you. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. IX, 15.

Some form of amusement is necessary to a young girl in the height of her youth. HALL CAINE, *Christ*, I, 94.

Note. There appears to be some predilection for *to*.

(un)pleasant: And thus the course of love was not all smooth to our Apollo. It was still pleasant for him when he was there on the croquet-ground, or sitting in Mrs. Dale's drawing-room with all the privileges of an accepted lover. It was pleasant to him also as he sipped the squire's claret. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. VII, 74. (Observe the varied practice)

If you stay here long, the servant may hear something, and it would be unpleasant for all parties. EDW. SPENCE, *A Millionaire's Crime*, Ch. II.  
 Now this was pleasant for me, wasn't it? Miss BRADDON, *Captain Thomas* (STOF., *Eng. Leesb.*, II, 66).

Note. So far as the available evidence goes, *for* is more in favour than *to*.  
*(im)possible*: i. On such a morning much speech was impossible for them. id., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. X, 124.

"Repentance is easy; at any rate it is possible." — "Oh, Lady Mason, is it



not possible for you?" *ib.*, III, Ch. XVI, 208. (*For you* is, perhaps, to be understood in the meaning of *so far as you are concerned, in your case*.)

It was now absolutely necessary that she should. . . say to Peregrine Orme what words of comfort might be possible for her. *ib.*, III, Ch. XXVI, 343.

ii. This would under the present circumstances have been impossible to him. *TROL.*, *Small House*, II, Ch. LIV, 294.

All study was impossible to him. *id.*, He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXVII, 212. Truth and honesty . . . had been impossible to her. *id.*, *Orl. Farm.*, III, Ch. IX, 112.

Note. There does not appear to be any preference for either *for* or *to*.

b) Conversely *to* has been retained in the following examples, although the nominal stands with an infinitive(-clause). It is not, however, to be supposed that substitution of *for* for *to* would in any of them yield exceptionable, or even unusual English.

*comfort*: It is a comfort to me to talk to you about these family matters of mine. *DICK.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXX, 254.

*honour*: It is only too great an honour to a young man as I am to find myself in the same duel with your worship. *KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 107 *b*.

*joy*: It had been a joy to him to hear Joseph Mason and Dockwrath exposed. *TROL.*, *Orl. Farm.*, III, Ch. XIX, 243.

*pleasant*: It would be pleasant to him to have back his two fields. *ib.*, III, Ch. XIII, 169.

How pleasant it must be to you to find yourself on such affectionate terms with — the heir. *ib.*, III, Ch. XIV, 180.

*trouble*: It was a trouble to me to move. *MRS. CRAIK*, *John Hall*, Ch. I, 5.

*use*: It will be of use to me to hear the succession of events again. *CON. DOYLE*, *Memo.*, I, III, 117.

16. The only nominals that govern, or may govern a non-prepositional (12) object, are: a) *proof*, *worth*, and *worthy*; b) *(un)like*, *near* (*nearer*, *nearest*, *next*), *nigh*; and *opposite*.

17. a) *Proof* has an object without a preposition when standing after (13) its complement, with which it forms a kind of compound; thus in *fire-proof*, *weather-proof*, *water-proof*. When it precedes its complement, it requires the preposition *against*, as in:

I found thee proof against all temptation. *MILTON*.

b) 1) *Worth* always stands without a preposition to link it to its complement; thus in such combinations as *worth a hundred pounds* (*little*, *much*, etc.); *worth notice* (*the trouble*, *an effort*); *worth while*.

2) *Worth* is often followed by a gerund, which, though passive in meaning, is always placed in the active voice (Ch. LVI, 26, c); thus in: During these two hundred and fifty years Protestantism has made no conquests worth speaking of. *Mac.*, *Popes*, (542 *b*).

3) In Early Modern English, and archaically in Late Modern English, *worth* is sometimes found after its complement. The combination *nothing worth* may still be more or less current.

O, from this time forth, | My thoughts be bloody, or be nothing worth! *SHAK.*, *Hamlet*, IV, 4, 66.

His health was never better worth than now. *id.*, *Henry IV*, A, IV, 1, 27.

The heart of the wicked is little worth. *Bible*, *Prov.*, X, 20.

His hypocritical expressions on the side of mercy were very little worth. *MOTLEY*, *Rise*.

These twelve books of mine | Were faint Homeric echoes, nothing worth, | Mere chaff and draff, much better burnt. TEN., *Epic*, 40.

4) *Worth*, although generally regarded as an ordinary adjective, is functionally not distinguishable from (significant) prepositions denoting a quality used in predicative preposition-groups, such as *against* in *He is against the measure*; *below* in *He is a little below the middle size*. Not only, as has just been observed, is it connected with its complement without any link-word, but it admits also, like ordinary prepositions, of being transferred to the end of the sentence, as in *What's fashion worth?* (TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XLVI, 189). See also Ch. XLV, 27; and Ch. LX, 46. The semi-prepositional nature of the word also appears from its not admitting of the degrees of comparison.

c) *Worthy*, and its negative *unworthy*, are mostly construed with *of*, but, perhaps owing to the influence of *worth*, are not unfrequently found without this preposition; e.g.:

i. The labourer is worthy of his hire. Bible, Luke, X, 7.

ii. What hath proceeded worthy note to-day? SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 181.

My heart... was unworthy our friendship. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, V, (158).  
I have heard enough to convince me that she is unworthy my regard. SHER., *School*, III, 1, (391).

His private life is peculiarly worthy the attention of the citizens of our young and busy country. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, III, 19.

Nora is worthy a rank more lofty than mine. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. XVI, 317.

And if indeed I cast the brand away, | Surely a precious thing, one worthy note, | Should thus be lost. TEN., *Morte d'Arthur*, 89

The Englishman into whose soul these tales have not sunk is not worthy the name. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. II, 226.

There was only one place where she could buy scones which she considered worthy the name. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 17.

d) 1) *Like* and *unlike* are now almost regularly construed with a (14) complement without a preposition; thus in:

Uncle Jack was like a book of reference to my father. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. II, 37.  
She is so unlike a *Dombey*. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. V, 36.

In Early Modern English the use of *to* or *unto* after *like* and *unlike* seems to have been fairly common. In Late Modern English the prepositions appear frequently enough in verse, evidently to serve metrical purposes in the majority of cases. In prose the construction with the preposition is now met with only as an archaism. For illustration see also Ch. LX, 26; and ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 23.

i. For Romans now | Have thews and limbs like to their ancestors. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3, 81.

The state of man, | Like to a little kingdom, suffers then | The nature of an insurrection. *ib.*, II, I, 68.

For good ye are and bad, and like to coins, | Some true, some light. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 25.

The gemmy bridle glitter'd free, | Like to some branch of stars we see | Hung in the golden Galaxy. *id.*, *Lady of Shal.*, 83.

Nor yet for all his lore doth Laurence hold | Within his crucibles aught like to gold. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 5a.

ii. They (sc. the letters) should be very like to each other. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXXV, 400.

Then he remembered that such a speech on his part was like to a subterfuge. *id.*, He knew he was right, I, Ch. XLI, 321.

I am like to one who has been brought through a fearsome sickness. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XLII, 303.

If women were in nervous constitution like to men, they would be unfitted for their racial functions. *Ninet. Cent.*, Aug., 1927, 264.

*Unto* may once have been as common as *to*, but now does duty only as a metrical or rhythmical variant of the latter.

For ye are like unto whited sepulchres. BIBLE, *Matth.*, XXIII, 27.

That is the first fact, and the second is like unto it. ASQUITH, *Speech*.

*To* (or *unto*) is never dispensed with when (*un*)*like* is divided from its complement by other elements of the sentence, as in:

How much unlike art thou to Portia! SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 9, 56.

I have heard cousin Holman murmur ... and tell herself how like she was growing to Johnnie. MRS. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, IV, 78.

2) Some idioms with *like* deserve particular notice; viz.:

i. There is nothing like travelling. (Dutch: *Er gaat niets boven reizen.*)

ii. It was like you to send it. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 191. (Dutch: *Het was net iets van u om mij dit te sturen.*)

It's just like you ... to talk about my selling Wildfire in that cool way. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. III, 23.

iii. His father thought that it was like his impudence. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XIX, 76 *b*. (Dutch: *Zijn vader vond dat zoo'n onbeschaamdheid net van hem te verwachten was.*)

"Like his impudence," said Peggotty. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. X, 69 *b*.

Poor thing! it's like her ill-luck. HARDY, *Return*, IV, Ch. IX, 459.

iv. They didn't feel like fighting just then. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 65. (Dutch: *Zij hadden op dat oogenblik geen zin in vechten.*)

I feel much more like a stroll in Luxembourg Gardens. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, III, 147.

Do you feel like eggs this morning? FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. XX, 329.

Every right-thinking man and woman must feel like demanding that some steps shall be taken to prevent its occurrence. *Times*, No. 2297, 3 *c*.

v. The widow ... inquired whether Tom wished to insult her: whether he thought it like a gentleman to take away the character of another gentleman behind his back. DICK., *Pick.*, Ch. XIV, 126. (Dutch: *of hij het passend voor een heer vond een ander (heer) van zijn goede naam te berooven achter zijn rug.*)

vi. She was nothing like that good old funny Miss Honeyman at Brighton. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XX, 220. (Dutch: *Zij was niets in vergelijking met die goede oude komieke Miss H.*)

Charles says that Hurd is not a bit like he was. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, II, Ch. V.

He is not anything like the equal of Burns or Shelley. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 98.

Am I anything like a hare? *Punch*. (Dutch: *Lijk ik in iets op een haas?*)

Sherry to start with, then hock, then claret and champagne (nothing like so dry as we have to drink it now). *Punch*. (Dutch: *lang niet zoo vrij van die zoete smaak als wij ze nu hebben te drinken.*)

3) When followed by a (pro)noun, as in the above examples, (*un*)*like*

is used in a function which is essentially the same as that of prepositions which convey a distinct meaning. Compare what has been said about *worth*, and see Ch. LX, 24. This prepositional function of (*un*)*like* is shown by the fact that, like other prepositions, it is normally placed after, instead of before its complement, when the latter is an interrogative or relative pronoun: mostly at the end of the sentence or clause, rarely in immediate succession to its complement.

i. Tell me whom (what, which of your relatives) he is like. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 100.

The hero as pugilist has been the burden of many headlines; we have been told what he looks like, what he talks like. Manch. Guard., VI, 17, 339 d.

ii. What like was he? SCOTT, Mon., IV, 73.

Barnaby again asked what like the man was. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. VI, 26 b.

4) For discussion of *like* in the function of an adverb or a conjunction see Ch. LX, 19 ff; for a comparison of *like* with *as* see also Ch. XVII, 105 ff.

e) *Near* and its degrees of comparison stand as frequently with (14) as without a preposition. That preposition is either (*un*)*to* or (*up*)*on*. In Ch. LX, 28 ff a few hints have been thrown out as to the conditions on which the use of (*un*)*to* seems to depend. It has there been said that the available material, although rather extensive, is not comprehensive enough to warrant any reliable pronouncement on the relative frequency of the construction with (*un*)*to* and that without. The material has since been considerably added to, but is still far from sufficient to draw well-founded conclusions from. This being so, it must be left to future collectors to undertake the task of informing those interested in the subject, on the strength of adequate statistics, which is the prevalent usage in the various combinations and shades of meaning in which the words occur. In this place we will confine ourselves to giving, without comment, a few examples illustrating either construction.

1) *near*: i. \* When a man goes near them (sc. the great monsters), .. they open their great jaws, and attack him. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 103.

A few wild ... mountain sheep, quietly grazing near the road, ... was all the life she saw on the bleak moorland. Mrs. GASK., Ruth, Ch. VIII, 65.

Let her come near me. The ship was near the land. WEBST., Dict.

\*\* It was now near night. SCOTT.

Your mother, who has long been ailing is, I believe, near her end. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. LXXXII, 375.

\*\*\* A translation near the original. BAIN, H. E. Gr.

I was near a joke. DICK., Cricket, I, 9.

(In that case) we get as near perfection in the correspondence between sound and symbol as it is possible to attain. WYLD, Growth of Eng., Ch. VII, 89.

\*\*\*\* (He) is near me in blood. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

\*\*\*\*\* Molly was near crying again. Mrs. GASK., Wives & Daughters, Ch. X, 105. To tell you the truth, I half an hour ago was fearfully near becoming neither more nor less than a Christian. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XVII, 86 b.

ii. \* Unhappily these two men, though they dwelt so near to one another, hardly came in contact. Academy.



As they drew near to the top of the path, the other man whispered something to him. TROL., *Mal. Cove* (Short Stor., I, 286).

\*\* The German Emperor is near to the throne of Great Britain. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 100. (But: The Prince of Wales stood near (or near to) the throne.)

\*\*\* To the English he (sc. William the Third) appeared in a most unfortunate point of view. He was at once too near to them and too far from them. MAC., *Hist.*, IV, Ch. XI, 50.

She never felt so near to him as at that minute. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. XXXIII, 334.

\*\*\*\* She put out her hand behind her, held mine in it, until we came near to where he was standing. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 a.

\*\*\*\*\* He was one of that thorough breed of misers that goes near to make the vice respectable. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. III, (203).

I at first was near to laugh. EMERSON, *Eng. Traits*, I, (80 a).

\*\*\*\*\* Such pieces as 'We are seven' certainly gain nothing by their namby-pamby dialect, and sometimes go near to losing the beauty that really is in them, by dint of it. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 53.

Once or twice she came very near to throwing away all her chances of happiness. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. VII, 43 b.

2) nearer: i \* Dangers nearer home forced the Empire to recall its legions. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, § 1, 6

If she is religious, it brings her nearer Heaven. BESANT, *All Sorts*.

\*\* I was no nearer my revenge than I had been of old. BUCHANAN.

\*\*\* If Arthur Hallam had been somewhat nearer Alfred Tennyson — his brother instead of his friend — I should have distrusted this rhymed and measured and printed monument of grief. CH. BRONTË.

\*\*\*\* I had imagined him, I confess, a degree or two nearer gentility. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. IV, 31.

ii. \* Mr. Barkis was sliding nearer to her on the seat. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 69 a. "Oh!" said Dunsey, sneeringly, coming nearer to his brother. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. III, 21.

The host of the Punchbowl drew his chair a little nearer to Mrs. Mary Shaw. BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*, Ch. III, 17.

She . . . came nearer to the gate. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, III, Ch. XI, 283. (She) had gone nearer and nearer to him in her ecstatic admiration. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38 b. (Thus, probably, regularly in this construction).

The pair were coming at that moment much nearer to where we lay. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, VIII, 204. (Thus, probably, regularly when the complement is a clause.)

\*\* He lived to be a very old man, dying some time nearer to 1840 than 1830. MRS. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, Ch. VI, 89.

\*\* On the whole he is probably nearer to the truth than Mr. Gerard. TIMES, 30/4, 1925, 489 a.

Never was there a time when the Navy was nearer to the people's heart. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 466, 51 b.

3) nearest: i. \* Mrs. Gamp took the chair that was nearest the door. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXV, 207 a.

She went to church . . . and sat in the most forward pew, nearest the chancel-step. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, V, III, 143.

\*\* He introduced the subject which was nearest his heart. MAC., *Hist.*, VI, Ch. XVII, 170.

ii. \* But is it not wonderful that a man wealthy as is Mr. Mason . . . should . . . carry in his bosom for twenty years so bitter a feeling of rancour against those



who are nearest to him by blood and ties of family? TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XVIII, 239.

\*\* One misty June evening Sir Michael took an opportunity ... of speaking upon the subject nearest to his heart. MISS BRAD., *Audl.*, I, Ch. I, 13.

\*\*\* It (sc. the stone rolling down a hill) becomes most furiously rapid in its course when it is nearest to being consigned to rest for ever. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXX, 171 *b*. (Thus presumably regularly when the complement is a clause.) 4) next: i. \* He fell to tearing up whole handfuls of the scorched skin with the flesh next it. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, Roast Pig.

Toots ... sat next Mr. Feeder on Paul's side of the table. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 106.

I have borrowed it (sc. the money) ... from the farmer who used to occupy the farm next our field. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, III, II, 60.

\*\* Miss Rushworth, however, though not usually a great talker, had still more to say on the subject next his heart. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. VI, 56. (*next* archaically used instead of *nearest*.)

ii. \* Next to Sir Andrew in the club-room sits Captain Sentry. SPECT., II. Paul's chair was next to Miss Blimber. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 105.

\*\* One man is next to another in excellence. WEBST., *Dict.* (In this and the other examples of this group *next* (= following in importance upon) never discards *to*.)

Next to the capital, but next at an immense distance, stood Bristol. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 330.

Next to his own interests those of his party were dear to him. MAC., *Hist.*, VI, Ch. XVII, 168.

Next to her I love all those who are faithful to her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 269.

Next to Providence the success of the expedition would be dependent on the efficiency of the medical staff. FRANKF. MOORE, *Secret of the Court*, 22.

\*\*\* Though with diligence and good luck he may be rich in time, it is next to impossible that he should have realised any thing yet. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. IV, 29.

An unmarried man can live on next to nothing. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LIII, 243. (In these and similar combinations *next* regularly stands with *to*.)

*f*) *Near (up)on*, used to express proximity to a period, may discard the connecting *(up)on*, which, be it observed, conveys in this connexion no more a distinct meaning than *to* in *near to* (Ch. LX, 27, *b*, Note *γ*; 31).

i. Near upon morning he roused with his tender fit strong on him. MER., *Trag. Com.*, XV (O. E. D., s.v. *near*, 2, *b*).

ii. However, there was still the Thames sparkling under the sun, and near high water. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. II, 4.

*g*) Also *nigh* may stand with or without a connecting preposition, either *(un)to* or *(up)on*, most probably with observance of the same distinctions as *near*, of which it is an archaic or literary doublet.

i. I am almost ashamed to come nigh 'em. SHER., *Trip to Scarb.*, V, 2. They had reached a bay, nigh the northern termination of the lake. J. F. COOPER, *Mohicans*, II, III, 50.

ii. Then Dan thought of Mona, and his heart was nigh to breaking. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XXII, 161.

When their king drew nigh to death, | But still had left in him some little breath, | They bore him to that hill. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Wand.*, 19 *b*.

iii. Nigh unto the sea | Were gathered folk for some festivity. *ib.*, *The Doom of King Acrisius*, 78 *b*.

iv. Nigh upon two thousand years have gone. HALL CAINE, *Christ*, II, 243.

*h*) When divided from their complement, *near* and *nigh*, and also their comparatives and superlatives, never stand without a connecting preposition; e.g.:

William determined to have another dwelling near enough to his capital for the transaction of business. MAC., *Hist.*, IV, Ch. XI, 58.

He took .. the nearest course to the one from which he was debarred. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch XXXI, 133.

The next best thing to knowing all about a subject is to have a good impressive phrase which will cover your ignorance. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/12, 1923, 511 *d*.

*i*) The grammatical functions in which *near* (and its degrees of comparison), and *nigh* are used in the above examples differ in some respects. When used as part of a nominal predicate, *near* is best regarded as an adjective; thus in such a sentence as *The ship was near the land*. When it modifies a verbal predicate, or the sentence as a whole, as in *Let her come near me*, it is best apprehended as an adverb. As, however, its function approaches in this case to that of predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. VI), it is not devoid of adjectival features. But whether mainly adjectival or adverbial, *near* partakes of the nature of a preposition, and *near to* or (*up*)*on* of that of a group-preposition (Ch. LX, 12, *c*; 27). It should, however, be observed that, unlike ordinary prepositions, *near* hardly admits of being removed to the end of the sentence. Such a sentence as the following, indeed, has an incongruous effect. See, however, Ch. VIII, 91, *d*.

He was passed as Richard Doubledick; age, twenty-two; height, five foot ten; native place, Exmouth, which he had never been near in his life. DICK., *The Seven poor Travellers*, Ch. II (*Short Stor.*, I, 251).

*j*) *Opposite* is used with or without *to*, no difference being, apparently, observed between the two constructions.

i. Oliver had fixed his eyes, most intently, on a portrait which hung against the wall; just opposite his chair. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XII, 114.

ii. Opposite to our pew was situated the pew of a retired naval officer. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas*.

18. *a*) In some constructions what is indicated by a non-prepositional (15) object in Dutch is denoted by an adnominal adjunct in the shape of a genitive (or an *of*-adjunct), or a possessive pronoun in English; thus in:

1) *a*) That's the school where they broke the boy's ribs. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35*a*. (Dutch: *Da is de school waar zij de jongen de ribben kapot sloegen.*)

If he was so bold as say a word to me, I should slap his face. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 55*a*. (Dutch: ... zou ik hem in het gezicht slaan. The absence of *to* before the infinitive after *as* is very rare. See Ch. LV, 46, *b*.)

β) I broke my head against the sash. THACK, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 45. (Dutch: *Ik stootte mij het hoofd open tegen een raam.*)

I tore my fingers with the point of my diamond-pin. THACK, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 45. (Dutch: *Ik schramde mij de vingers aan de punt van mijn diamanten doekspeld.*)

The English had to make their way through the awful pass of Koord Kabul. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 51. (Dutch: ... moesten zich een weg banen ...)

Mr. and Mrs. Creakle were both wiping their eyes. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 42a. (Dutch: Mijnheer en Mevrouw Creakle wischten zich beide de tranen uit het oog.)

He bit his lips. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.* (Dutch: Hij beet zich op de lippen.)

2) John ... twisted the necks of the pigeons. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 11. (Dutch: Jan draaide de duiven den nek om.)

He denied the right of the Council to sit in judgment on the Governor. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (613a). (Dutch: Hij ontzegde (aan) den Raad het recht om recht te spreken over den Gouverneur.)

3) The tears rolled down the poor child's face. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 39. (Dutch: De tranen liepen het arme kind langs het gezicht.) I served both for his prop and guide. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 552. (Dutch: Ik diende hem zoowel tot steun als gids.)

The examples under 1 (a) and 1 (b) are distinguished only in that in the latter the subject and the possessive pronoun indicate one and the same person; in those under 2) the genitive is replaced by an *of*-adjunct; in those under 3) the predicate is formed by an intransitive verb.

It will be observed that in the Dutch equivalents the first object in the examples under 1) and 2), and the only object in the examples under 3), does not represent a person as undergoing an action but, rather as intimately concerned in it. In German it would, accordingly, be placed in the dative. German grammarians call it *dativus sympatheticus*. Compare DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 125, c.

b) The Dutch construction is also used in English in certain (16) locutions with *to look* (or some synonym of *to look*), and in the expression *to stand in good stead*, in which the verb forms a kind of sense-unit with the following word-group and loses some of its full meaning (Ch. XLVI, 56, Obs. I).

i. You must not look a gift horse in the mouth. *Prov.*

He looks the whole world in the face, | For he owes not any man. LONGF., *Vil. Blacks.*

Blanche ... looked her archly in the face. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 256. He should be one who can look thee in the face without a blush. LYTTON, *Lady of Lyons*, IV.

She looked him full in the face one moment. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XVI, 70a. He looked me straight in the eyes. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 169.

ii. That peculiarity has often stood me in good stead. HUXLEY, *Autobiography*.

This dogmatic disposition, backed as a rule by good judgment, stood him in good stead in all of the many campaigns he took part in. *Graph.*

Note a) When *to look* conveys a meaning by itself, i.e. expresses a pure act of the organs of sight, there is, apparently, no occasion for the above construction.

Anybody that looks in his face may see that he's consumptive. GOLDS., *She stoops*, I, (168).

"Oh!" said Dunsey, sneeringly, coming nearer to his brother and looking in his face. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. III, 21.

H. POUTSMA, I, I.

She looked very steadily into his eyes. TEMPLE THURSTON, *C t y*, Ch. XV, 121.  
 He turned and looked full in her eyes. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 111.  
 When I looked in his face with its pale delicate features, I thought I could see traces of the same mental struggle that I had gone through. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

β) Naturally there is no alternative construction when either the subject or the object is the name of a thing, as in:

i. Ruin seemed to be staring him in the face. THACK., *P e n d.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 309.  
 ii. One has ... to look the facts in the face. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXVII, 294.

c) In comparing two such sentences as *De tranen rolden het meisje langs de wangen* and *Hij kustte het meisje op de mond*, it is easy to see that the object in the first sentence represents a person in another relation to the action than that in the second. Only in the second sentence does it distinctly represent a person as undergoing an action; in the first it conveys no such notion, and pseudo-object would, accordingly, be a suitable name for it. Whereas, as we have seen, the construction of the first sentence is distinctly unusual in English, that of the second is as common in English as it is in Dutch. For illustration see also Ch. XXX, 15, *b*.

He patted the boy on the head. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 310.  
 Patting him on the cheek, (she) told him he must be very quiet, or he would be ill again. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XII, 112.

Mr. Wardle grasped him warmly by the hand. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 166.  
 Permit an old fellow to shake you by the hand. THACK., *P e n d.*, I, Ch. XI, 116.

Note. There is, of course, a difference between such sentences as *He patted her on the cheek*, *He kissed the girl on the mouth*, *He seized the man by the shoulder*, etc. and *He patted her cheek*, *He kissed the girl's mouth*, *He seized the man's shoulder*, etc.; but the difference is not seldom slight enough to be practically indiscernible. This will be brought home to the reader on comparing the above examples with the following:

He squeezed Foker's hand. THACK., *P e n d.*, I, Ch. IV, 50.  
 He squeezed her hand with the kindest and most paternal pressure. *ib.*, I, Ch. XI, 116.

"Let it alone, will you?" Adam called out, laying down his tools, striding up to Ben, and seizing his right shoulder. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, Ch. I, 3.  
 They grasped each other's hands. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 258.

19. Verbs of asking or requesting are in Dutch often construed with (17) a non-prepositional object denoting a person and a prepositional object with *om*, denoting a thing, as in *Hij vroeg mij om geld*. This construction is common enough in English also, the preposition *for* representing the Dutch *om*, but only when the (pro)noun in the prepositional object is not a noun of action, as in:

Each man asked his neighbour for news. THACK., *V a n. F a i r*, I, Ch. XXXII, 338.  
 The porter asked them all for money. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 73.



This construction is, however, unusual when the noun in the prepositional object is a noun of action, as in:

To see the Master, late so haughty and reserved, ... supplicating her father for forgiveness, was a change at once surprising, flattering, and affecting. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVI, 165.

The wretch ... besought him for mercy. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 995.

I could not have asked for your blessing. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 106.

I am come to that low, lowest stage — to ask a woman for pity. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXI, 236.

b) Instead of this construction we mostly find one in which the prepositional object has become non-prepositional and is preceded by a subjective genitive or possessive pronoun representing the person object in the other construction; thus in:

I speak not to implore your grace. SCOTT, *Marm.*, II, xxvii.

I beg my friend Winkle's pardon. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

If I could have seen my mother, I should have gone down on my knees to her and besought her forgiveness. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 30 *a*.

It was long before people ceased to take long walks for the sake of asking his aid. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. II, 14.

Frank must at least ask the Queen's leave to go. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVI, 129 *b*.

I beg all your pardons. SHAW, *Cand.*, II, (164).

c) Far less common are the constructions illustrated by the following examples, although they are sometimes rendered preferable or even unavoidable by the structure of the sentence:

i. I beg your ladyship ten thousand pardons. SHER., *School*, V, 3, (436).

I beg my friends in the United States pardon for calling these zealous senators men. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1912, May, 305.

ii. But we beg pardon of our readers for arguing a point so clear. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (609 *b*).

She ought to have gone down on her knees and ask pardon of her. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIX, 208.

I ... never implored pardon of living man. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, IV, Ch. VII, 104 *b*.

20. a) Dutch intransitive verbs that have become transitive through being coupled with a separable adverb, often answer to intransitive verbs with the corresponding preposition in English. Compare the following sentences with their Dutch equivalents: I at last got over it. ADDISON, *Spect.* II. (Dutch: Ik kwam het eindelijk te boven.)

The landlord bounced out of the room. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXX, 279 *b*. (Dutch: De waard stoof de kamer uit.)

Of course you will stay over the New Year. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XIV, 150. (Dutch: Natuurlijk blijf je Nieuwe Jaar over.)

Observe also the difference of construction between the English *He has been before me* (TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXVI, 346) and the Dutch *Hij is mij voor geweest*.

b) But in these constructions the particle may be an adverb also in English; thus in:

The boy had almost talked over his mother. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 80. (Dutch: De jongen had zijn moeder bijna omgepraat.)



The boy has actually talked the woman round. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 85.

The mouse gnawed through the rope. (Dutch: *De muis knaagde het touw door.*)

It will be observed that the particles in the above examples have weak stress when they are prepositions, and strong or medium stress, when they are adverbs. For further discussion of the subject see Ch. XLVI, 55—56, and Ch. LX, 123—124.

c) Very rare is the construction observed in the following examples, in which the particle is best regarded as a preposition placed after, instead of before its complement:

Never harm. | Nor spell, nor charm | Come our lovely lady nigh. SHAK., *Mids.*, II, 2, 18.

Hermia, sleep thou there: | And never mayst thou come Lysander near! *ib.*, II, 2, 136.

In stooping her over to kiss her, I saw the little book of Hartright's drawings half hidden under her pillow. WILK. COL., *The Woman in White*, 145.

d) In numerous cases Dutch compounds of the above description correspond semantically to English verbs without either a preposition or an adverb, many of which may take two non-prepositional objects. Thus *toestaan* = *to allow* (or *to permit*), *aanreiken* = *to reach*, *toefluisteren* = *to whisper*. For illustration see 44.

21. Many Dutch compound verbs with a separable adverb for the (18) first element which take two non-prepositional objects correspond to English verbs with one object, the person-object of the Dutch being represented by an adjunct with a preposition in English. A few examples may suffice, illustration being the task of lexicography rather than that of grammar. Detailed information will, besides, be given in a contemplated work dealing with the constructions of verbs, adjectives and nouns, for which the present writer has long been collecting the necessary materials.
- He has extorted money from him time after time. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIII, 355. (Dutch: *Hij heeft hem keer op keer geld afgeperst.*)
- She took them into her house, set meat and drink before them, and showed them where they might take rest. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 207. (Dutch: *Zij nam ze op in haar huis, zette hun spijs en drank voor, en wees hun aan waar zij rust konden nemen.*)
- Prudence and economy were inculcated on her, as though she had been born to be poor. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 2. (Dutch: *Zuinigheid werd haar ingeplant, alsof zij tot armoede geboren was.*)
- Your true rustic turns his back on his interlocutor. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 13. (Dutch: *Je ware plattelander draait de persoon met wie hij zich onderhoudt den rug toe.*)

In numerous cases, however, such Dutch compounds correspond to English verbs that may take two non-prepositional objects. Thus *aanraden* = *to advise* (or *to counsel*), *aanbevelen* = *to recommend*, *toewenschen* = *to wish*, etc. For illustration see 44 and 45.

## THE SHAM NON-PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

22. Like the subject, the non-prepositional object is sometimes represented in a vague manner by the indefinite *it*, which in this function may be called the sham-object. Many combinations with the sham-object are met with only in colloquial or vulgar diction, some are also current in the ordinary language of the educated, but, except for *to lord it* and, perhaps, a few more expressions, they are rarely met with in the higher literary style. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *it*, 9.

Owing to the extreme vagueness of *it*, the transitiveness of the verbs is questionable; or rather they are only syntactically, but not semantically transitive (Ch. XLVI, 3); naturally they do not admit of passive conversion (Ch. XLVII, 16, a).

The indefinite *it* as sham-object is found:

a) after normally transitive verbs, in which connexion it may (19, a) sometimes be said to stand for such a vague notion as is often expressed by the plural nouns *matters* or *things*. Compare, for example, two such sentences as:

(Tom Smart was) rather staggered; though he pretended to carry it off so well. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 122.

Feeling intensely ashamed, he made a feint of carrying off things with a careless hand. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. XXVI, 350.

In other combinations the meaning of *it* may be more definite. Thus in *to fight it out* the reference is clearly to a dispute or contest alluded to in the context; e. g.:

Three times did Richard make a lane to me. | And thrice cried, 'Courage, father! fight it out!' SHAK., *Henry VI*, C. I, 4, 10. (In the following example the contest is with an equal lack of precision referred to by *point*: Oliver and Nature fought out the point between them. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 20.)

In most combinations of this description, however, only the vaguest notions are suggested, baffling all precise definition; thus in most of the following examples with:

*to brave*: However we brave it out, we men are a little breed. TEN., *Maud*, I, iv, v. (Dutch: het hoofd er voor houden.)

*to bring*: (He) had brought it so far that he could now "mount his horse with little assistance." CARLYLE, *Sart. Res.*, III, Ch. III, 156.

He will never bring it far even in his art. FRANK HARRIS, *Contemp. Portr.*, Ch. IV, 108 (Instances appear to be rare.)

*to carry*: i. And so demurely as Olivia carried it too. GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, II. (= to behave; in this sense now obsolete, according to O. E. D., s. v. *carry*, 22, b.)

ii. Quantity carried it against quality, numbers against intelligence. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 266 (= to win the contest, O. E. D., s. v. *carry*, 15, b; Dutch *het winnen*.)

iii. (They) think they carry it off through the height of their plumed bonnets and the jingle of their spurs. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VI, 67. (= to win [the prize, honours, etc.], O. E. D., s. v. *carry*, 51, b.)

iv. (Tom Smart was) rather staggered; — though he pretended to carry it off so well. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 122. (= to bear it out, face or brave it out, O. E. D., s. v. *carry*, 51, *d*; Dutch *zich er uitredden*, *zich er doorslaan*.)

*to catch*: (Noah ... consoled) him with the assurance that "he'd catch it." DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 55. (Dutch *er van langs krijgen*.)

You will catch it hot. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 55.

*to chance*: Our present method of chancing it is simply scandalous. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 232 *a*. (Dutch: *het er op aan laten komen*.)

*to chuck*: There were only two things to do: either to hold on or 'to chuck it.' Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lyd.*, Prol., 9. (Dutch: *het er aan geven*.)

*to cut*: Gentlemen in alarming waistcoats and steel watch-guards ... 'cutting it uncommon fat.' DICK., *Sk. Boz*, 54 (O. E. D., s. v. *cut*, 8, *b*; Dutch: *opscheppen*, *de banjer uithangen*.)

*draw*: I shall alter a few inaccuracies in the composition of our friend F. B., who has, as he says, 'drawn it uncommonly mild' in the above criticism. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXII, 248. (Dutch: *het zacht uitdrukken*, *niet overdrijven*.)

*give*: Give it him with the left, Figs, my boy. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46.

*fight*: It was announced that, on the second day, there should be a general tournament, in which all the knights present ... might take part; and being divided into two bands of equal numbers, might fight it out manfully. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. VIII, 79.

*to have*: i. If people were always kind and obedient to those who are cruel and unjust, the wicked people would have it all their own way. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. VI, 64. (Dutch: *zijn zin krijgen*.)

The Arab chiefs are allowed to have it much their own way. *Athen.*, No. 4560, 261 *b*.

ii. Sir Robert Horne, who led the attack, has it that the Government by its decision has announced its complete inability to offer any protection to the Dominions, should they be attacked. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/3, 1924, 342 *b*. (Dutch: *beweren*.)

iii. He will have it that all virtues and accomplishments met in his hero. MAC., *Wil. Pitt*, (286 *a*). (Dutch: *stokstijf volhouden*.)

He will have it that I am related to Lady Drum. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 55.

The Laird would have it that there was another Madame Svengali somewhere, the real one, and that Trilby was a fraud. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 195.

iv. \* As luck would have it, Raggles' house in Curzon street was to let. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. II, 13. (Dutch: *alsof het spel sprak*, *als of het zoo wezen moest*.)

\*\* As ill-luck would have it, Pen again fell in with Mr. Huxter. *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIII, 135.

\*\*\* As hap would have it, I went there also. O. E. D., s. v. *hap*, 4.

*to hit (off)*: i. They think that it is impossible for them to hit it off or pull together with the partners of their lives. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. XXIII, 222. (Dutch: *het samen kunnen vinden*.)

We hit it off as well as most people, until we separated. SHAW, *Phil.*, II, (103).

ii. I do wish you and he could hit it together. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 194, 124 *b*.

*to make up*: i. After having made it up with my mother, she kneeled down by the elbow-chair, and made it up with me. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 *a*. (Dutch: *zich verzoenen*.)

ii. I should like to make it up to you. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XXV, 167. (Dutch: het weer goed maken.)

iii. He and Miss Georgina made it up to run away. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. X, 107. (Dutch: overeenkomen.)

iv. If you and he can make it up together, I'll give you the money at once. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXII, 177. (Dutch: het eens worden.)

*to stick (out)*: i. I enlisted, I swore I'd stick it as a Tommy without anybody's sympathy. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XX, 248. (Dutch: volhouden.)

ii. Every one thinks of him now and loves him as Doggie. It was Oliver's name for him, don't you see? And he has stuck it out and made it a sort of title of honour and affection. *ib.*, Ch. XXIV, 297.

*take*: i. \* Parson Dale was ordained ... at a time when churchmen took it a great deal more easily than they do now. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. XII, 61. (Dutch: het gemakkelijk opnemen.)

\* You are taking it easy! II. *Lond. News*.

ii. The great point, as I take it, is to be exorbitant enough in your demands. SHER., *School*, III, I. (Dutch: het er voor houden.)

I take it it was the first tune of that sort you ever played. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 323.

You are too great for this kind of work I take it. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXI, 280.

May I take it that you will sign the document? O. E. D., s.v. *it*, O, *b*. (The O. E. D. considers this *it* as anticipatory.)

iii. I'll soon take it out of him. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*. (Dutch: het betaald zetten.)

You shan't take it out in saying anything against Marie Bromar. TROL., *Gold. Lion*, Ch. XX, 229.

A separate group is formed by such expressions as *Damn it!*, *Dash it!*, *Hang it!*, *Bother it!*, *Confound it!*, etc., used in vulgar language by way of expletives.

*b*) after normally intransitive verbs. In this connexion *it* (19, *b*) sometimes vaguely stands for a kind of vague cognate object, as in the case of *to walk* and its synonyms, but more often cannot be said to convey any meaning at all (Ch. XLV, 3).

*to come*: That is coming it a little too strong. MCCARTHY & Mrs. PRAED, *Ladies Gallery*, I, II, 48 (O. E. D., s.v. *come*, 28). (Dutch: het kras uitdrukken.)

*to go*: i. I say, young Copperfield, you're going it! DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 43a. (Dutch: het er van nemen.)

He's going it pretty fast. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVI, 282.

ii. When the hour of battle came, he was almost ashamed to say: 'Go it Figs!' *ib.*, I, Ch. V, 45. (Dutch: Toe maar!)

*to run*: He never comes a moment too soon, and at the theatre often runs it even closer than this. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. XXV, 234. (Dutch: op het nippertje komen.)

*walk*: We can walk it perfectly well. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. IV.

Here belong also the verbs, derived from adjectives or nouns, which only in connexion with the indefinite *it* are used in a verbal function. Such verbs are very common, not a few adjectives or nouns admitting of this conversion. In many cases, however, they serve only an



occasional purpose. As will be observed in the following illustration, the construction imparts a peculiar liveliness to the description, and it is only natural that it is in special favour with persons who are fond of giving a comic dash to their diction.

i. *brazen*: I see you intend to brazen it out. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXV, 232. (Dutch: *brutaal volhouden*.)

*rough*: Lord bless you! if you were to see how I rough it sometimes. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. III, 31. (Dutch: *het zwaar hebben*.)

He looked old — ten years older than he really was — much bowed down, and as if he had roughed it all his life. DU MAURIER, Trilby, II, 263.

ii. *battle*: We will battle it out together. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXIX, 304 b. *foot*: Foot it fealty here and there. SHAK., Temp., I, 2, 380.

He has to foot it until the remount is found somewhere. Graph.

*funk*: Don't funk it, Dick! ANSTAY, Vice Versa, Ch. IX, 192. (Dutch: *bang zijn zich aan koud water te branden*.)

*to lord*: She is inclined to lord it over her brothers. O. E. D., 9. (Dutch: *de baas spelen*.)

Allen was accustomed to lording it over the upper floor. MARK TWAIN, The American Claimant, Ch. I, 1. (In the same meaning the verb is occasionally used without the indefinite *it*, as in: Young Georgy lorded over this soft and yielding nature. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXI, 228.)

*pig*: The employers ... can't start their mills and factories, because there are no houses for their workmen, the decent families ... are obliged to pig it in two or three rooms for the same reason. Westm. Gaz., No. 8132, 5a. (Dutch: *samen hokken*.)

*star*: Lord Milner has been starring it in Canada. Rev. of Rev., No. 230, 105 b. (Dutch: *als held van den dag optreden*.)

*stump*: Stump it, my cove! LYTTON, Night & Morn., 120.

*trip*: Come and trip it as ye go, | On the light fantastic toe. MILTON, l'Allegro, 33.

The following examples, containing more than one instance, clearly exhibit the free use of which the practice is capable:

Under Charles the Second the rants of Byron's rhyming plays would have pitted it, boxed it, and galleried it, with those of Bayes or Bilboa. MAC., Moore's Life of Byron, (160 a).

We therefore decided that we would sleep out on fine nights; and hotel it, and inn it, and pub it, like respectable folks, when it was wet. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. II, 21.

I'll train it as far as the twopence will take me, and I'll tramp the rest. SHAW, Doct. Dil., II, 44.

For further discussion and illustration see MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 184; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 295; ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 226; KRUSINGA, Handbk.<sup>4</sup>, § 1001 ff.

23. While among the above examples there are not a few for which (20) Dutch would not have an equivalent with the sham-object *het*, there are, conversely, a good many combinations with the sham-object in Dutch that correspond to other constructions in English. This is shown by a comparison of the following quotations with their approximate Dutch equivalents:

Mr. Tibbits is not so far out. LYTTON, Caxt., IV, Ch. III, 91. (Dutch: *Mijnheer Tibbits heeft het niet zoo ver mis*.)



He breaks out on a pay-day. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 323. (Dutch: Hij neemt het er van op een betaaldag.)

Nature meant very gently by women when she made that tea-plant. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXIII, 347. (Dutch: De natuur meende het heel goed met de vrouwen, toen zij die theeplant maakte.) Observe, however: Never mind, Pot! You meant it kindly. ASCOTT, R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*)

Mayfair and Belgravia are siding with Spain. *Graph.* (Dutch: M. en B. houden het met Spanje.)

Although he was not doing well, he did not see how he could do any better. BARRY PAIN, *Culminating Point.* (Dutch: Ofschoon hij het niet bijster goed had, zag hij niet hoe hij het beter zou kunnen krijgen.) I hope you'll be able to make out tolerably well till Monday. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXI, 207. (Dutch: Ik hoop dat ge het behoorlijk tot Maandag zult kunnen uithouden.)

"Well, sir, if you can make out here, for a fortun, 'long wi' her," nodding at his sister, "and Ham, and little Em'ly, we shall be proud of your company." *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. III, 16a.

Of some special interest are the numerous English equivalents of the Dutch *het opnemen voor* (*opkomen voor*), as is shown by the following examples:

i. Paul was dreadfully frightened; but still he made a stand for the absent Glubb. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 103.

ii. "He gives devilish good dinners," said Foker, striking up for his host of yesterday. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. II, 27.

iii. Pitt Crawley suddenly took up the cudgels in favour of the man of Destiny. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 367.

iv. But I did not like to hear my friend abused, and so spoke out for him. *id.*, *Sani. Titm.*, Ch. III, 26.

v. You are quite right to stand up for your friends. *ib.*, Ch. III, 26.

"Never mind, Pot! You meant it kindly, and that's the great thing" said his mother, standing up for her shamefaced son. ASCOTT, R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

vi. Front Benches had a way of sticking up for one another. *Times.*

24. Also reflexive pronouns when forming a sense-unit with the (21) verb with which they are connected, are often little more than sham-objects. Such they are not only in most of those combinations in which the verb never stands without a reflexive pronoun, such as *to bethink oneself*, *to deport oneself*, *to perjure oneself*, *to pique (to plume, to pride, to value) oneself*, and such compounds with *over* as *to oversleep oneself*, *to overwork oneself*, *to overeat oneself*, etc., but also in many of those in which the verb may, indeed, have another object than the reflexive pronoun, but in connexion with the latter has little of its ordinary meaning, such as *to avail oneself*, *bear oneself*, *to carry oneself*, *to collect oneself*, *to conduct oneself*, *to enjoy oneself*, and a good many others.

Even when the reflexive pronoun seems to suggest some more definite notion, it is often so indissolubly connected with the verb that is not felt as a real object, i.e. as an element of the sentence which indicates a person or thing that is subjected to an activity. This is more or less the case with the reflexive

pronouns in *to absent oneself*, *to bestir oneself*, *to betake oneself*, *to demean oneself*, which are never used without the reflexive pronoun; and *to abandon oneself*, *to address oneself*, *to lose oneself*, and a good many others, which in their original meaning often take another object than the reflexive pronoun.

Many of the above verbs would admit of being replaced by intransitives or by a group-verb consisting of a copula and an adjective. Thus *to conduct oneself* = *to behave*; *to betake oneself* = *to go*; *to absent oneself* = *to go away*; *to pride oneself* = *to be proud*; *to compose oneself* = *to become calm*; *to oversleep oneself* = *to sleep too long*. For further comment and for illustration see Ch. XXXIV, 5—6; Ch. XLVI, 3, 2; Ch. XLVIII, 2—7. See also DEN HERTOOG, Ned. Spraakk., III, §§ 80—82.

### THE ANTICIPATING OBJECT.

25. a) Such a sentence as *He thought that it was clear that the plan (22) would fail* may be replaced by *He thought it to be clear that the plan would fail*. Whereas in the first sentence *it* is the anticipating subject, it has come to stand in the objective relation to *thought* in the second and may, therefore, be called an anticipating object. It is almost needless to say that *it* is as indispensable in the second sentence as it is in the first. See also JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 26.

I cannot understand how anybody can suppose it to be wrong that Emily should see papa's very oldest friend in the world. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXI, 162.

b) The same indispensability of *it* appears to be felt in the more common construction in which the meaningless *to be* is dispensed with; thus in:

Maggie ... felt it impossible that she should go down to dinner and endure the severe eyes and severe words of her aunts. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 55. He thought it best that there should be no definite promise as yet on either side. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, VI, III, 157.

He deemed it good | That Atys with the other knights should wend. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræsus*, XXIV.

Note. Instead of a subordinate statement we sometimes find a conditional clause, especially after a comparative or superlative; e. g.: I should like it better if my better would relieve me of this dreadful necessity. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 109.

Papa would like it best if you would give up your writing, and think of nothing but the law. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXVI, 342.

26. Similarly *it* is normally used in sentences of like construction as the above with *to make* (or *to render*), although idiom would not tolerate insertion of *to be*. Compare 29.

He made it clear that the plan was impossible. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 405. There are reasons which would seem to make it expedient that you should stay away. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XX, 160.

Instances of *it* being dispensed with appear to be rare. In the first of the following examples it may be due to the verb and the following nominal forming a kind of sense-unit: *to make clear* = *to show*.

Both groups are very anxious to make clear to us that they remain masters in their own household. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 1 *b*.

Sir Charles has made a rule that he is never to be called. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 228, 524 *b*.

27. *a*) What has been said about the above complex sentences (24) containing two subordinate statements and their conversions into such as contain an accusative with infinitive, in which the accusative anticipates the second subordinate statement, applies in many respects to complexes in which the second subordinate statement is represented by an infinitive-clause. Thus *I thought that it was my duty to stick up for my absent friend* may be converted into *I thought it to be my duty to stick up for my absent friend*. In this conversion anticipating *it* is as indispensable as it is in the sentence with the alternative construction; and *it* has come to stand in the objective relation to the predicate in the head-clause, instead of the subjective relation in which it stands to the predicate in the subordinate statement.
- b*) It is only natural that *it* as anticipating object is mostly equally indispensable when the sentence loses the meaningless copula *to be*, and becomes *I thought it my duty to stick up for my absent friend*. Thus we find it in:

His ordinary pace was such that those who were admitted to the honour of his society found it difficult to keep up with him. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 1. Brother Solomon, and the lady who had been Jane Featherstone for twenty-five years before she was Mrs. Waule, found it good to be there every day for hours. *G. Eliot*, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXXII, 226.

She considered it the beginning of wisdom for a woman to make herself attractive. *Sarah Grand*, *Our Man*. *Nat.*, 51.

Note. The normal word-order observed in the above examples is sometimes departed from for the sake of giving prominence to a particular element of the sentence; thus in:

But this ... Dame Glendinning did not think it convenient to hear. *Scott*, *Mon.*, Ch. XIII, 157.

- c*) Of particular interest is the use of anticipating *it* in adnominal (24) clauses containing a curtailed form of an accusative infinitive, Dutch practice requiring no anticipating pronoun.

She went to and fro between the loft-room and the house with such stimulants and comforts as we thought it safe to give him. *Dick.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXI, 268.

Although Miss Halcombe had ended all that she thought it necessary to say on her side, I had not ended all that I wanted to say on mine. *Wilk. Col.*, *Wom. in White*, I, Ch. X, 70.

He (listened) with an air of good-natured amenity, dashed with that unconscious roguish archness I find it difficult to describe. *Ch. Bronte*, *Villette*, Ch. X, 116.

The language of a savage exhibits complexities which a well-trained European finds it difficult to master. Huxl., Darw., Ch. V, 175.

The statement is one that no Englishman will find it easy to dispute. Times, No. 2304, 161 b.

He has a way with him which even opponents find it difficult to resist. Westm. Gaz., 9/5, 1925, 35 c.

28. In some combinations resembling those in the examples in 27, b) or c), the anticipating objective *it* appears to be more or less regularly dispensed with.

a) The absence of *it* is practically regular in the combinations to (24) *think* (or *see*) *fit*, and *to think proper*, when expressing a kind of sense-unit approximately equivalent to *to decide (arbitrarily)*; e. g.:

i. \* Becky never thought fit to tell her what was passing under her innocent eyes. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 364.

In which all the principal personages think fit to leave Brighton. ib., I, Ch. XXV. I did not think fit to answer him. id., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 65.

\*\* In Sir George Tressady Mrs. Humphry Ward has seen fit to test the sincerity of our admiration for the central character of one of her former works by introducing Marcella as the *deus ex machina* of her present novels. Acad.

She saw fit to tell it to me herself. MAR. CRAWF., Lonely Par., Ch. XIV, 117.

ii. If the doctor thinks proper to turn me from my cure, God will provide me, I hope, another. FIELD., Jos. Andr., IV. Ch. II, 206.

They had thought proper to fall ill. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXIV, 369.

The Colonel did not think proper to notify his arrival at Brussels. id., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXIV, 371.

He thought proper to tell him that the public recognition he accorded to a particular lady was, in the present state of the world, scarcely prudent. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXVIII, 351.

When the words are not intended as a semantic unit, they are separated by the anticipating *it*; thus in:

i. Pen did not think it fit to tell his uncle all the particulars. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. III, 33.

I think it not fit that so much evidence should perish. STEV., The Master of Ballantrae, 9. T.

ii. Apparently he did not think it proper to decline this invitation. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. VI, 50.

Mrs. Bardell felt it proper to be agitated. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXVI, 235.

Compare also: The passages in which the Imperial Chancellor, Count von Bülow, thought it becoming to refer to Mr. Chamberlain's Edinburgh speech, in his address to the Reichstag yesterday, will cause disappointment to all who desire to see more friendly feelings between the British and German peoples. Times.

b) Also in the following examples the combination verb + nominal may be understood to convey a semantic unit. This would, at any rate, account for the absence of *it*:

What housewife in Grimsworth would not think shame to furnish forth her table with articles that were not home-cooked? G. Eliot, Brother Jacob, Ch. II, (499). (Compare, however, the following example, in which *it* may have been inserted on metrical considerations: My liege hath deem'd it shame, and lack | Of courtesy, to turn him back. SCOTT, Mar m., 198. T.)



Germany has at last seen good to modify her attitude towards us. Eng. Rev., No. 57, 135.

c) The anticipating pronoun appears to be regularly dispensed with in a construction like the following, in which *it* would represent an objective clause to be evolved from the preceding part of the sentence:

I can only act as I think best. TROL., Or1. Farm, III, Ch. XXI, 269.

d) In the following examples the absence of *it* seems to be due to mere carelessness, either of the writer, the press-reader, or the compositor:

I thought best to respect his silence. THACK., Newc., II, Ch. XXXVII, 395.

The coward ... has thought wiser to fly. T. P.'s Weekly, XVIII, No. 468, 522 a.

29. Also *to make* and *to render* sometimes appear in sentences like the above with anticipating objective *it*, although they do not admit of being construed with the copula *to be*. Compare 26.

i. He made it a rule to tell his wife everything that happened. E. J. HARDY, How to be happy though married, Ch. XI, 116.

He did not ... find the lost one, though he made it the entire business of his over-hours to stand about in by-streets in the hope of discovering her. TH. HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, VII, 197.

ii. These several interruptions rendered it impossible for them to hope to reach Rotherwood without travelling all night. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XVII, 181.

Besides constantly jerking his head up, ... and tugging at the reins, which rendered it a matter of great difficulty for Mr. Pickwick to hold them, he (sc. the horse) had a singular propensity for darting suddenly every now and then to the side of the road. DICK., Pickw., Ch. V, 41.

Note. Of some particular interest is the expression *to make it a point* + infinitive, as in:

He usually made it a point to choose his walk in a different direction. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXIX, 306.

He made it a point to be able to take wine with any man he met at table. G. ELIOT, Fel. Holt, I, Ch. II, 46.

If my grandmother breakfasted with us, I should make it a point to be in time. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XIII, 222.

According to the O. E. D. (s. v. *point*, 27, b), "formerly also *to make a point to do something*." THACKERAY uses both constructions, as is shown by the following examples:

i. Mr. Polonius ... made it a point to recollect everything. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 23.

ii. I made a point to act the fine gentleman completely. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 48.

I make a point never to play before candles are lighted. THACK., Fitzboodles's Confessions, Pref., (202).

It may be added that these infinitive-constructions vary with a gerund-construction, which appears to be more common (Ch. XIX, 39; 49, Obs. V); thus in:

There was a peculiar tenet which I made a point of supporting. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. II, (240).



30. a) The anticipating objective *it* may also be divided from the (24) subordinate statement it represents by a passive infinitive; thus in such a sentence as *I wish it to be understood that the man is no relation of mine*.

b) This *it* is naturally equally indispensable when the bare past participle takes the place of the passive infinitive, as in the case of verbs of perceiving and *to have* (Ch. XVIII, 32).

i. He recollected to have heard it said that spirits have no power to speak until they are spoken to. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, 121). We often hear it said that the world is becoming more enlightened. MAC., *Popes*, (542 b).

ii. I would not ... have it thence concluded that the English are the worst-natured people alive. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, I, 211. T.

I am not going to have it said hereafter that I deceived her. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXI, 168.

Note. For *I heard it said* the Dutch has *Ik heb hooren zeggen*, (22) without an anticipating object. The Dutch construction was still common in Early Modern English, but is now a distinct archaism, surviving only in some dialects.

i. I heard say your lordship was sick. SHAK., *Henry IV*, B, I, 2, 118.

I have heard say that people may be guessed at by the behaviour of their servants. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, III, 3, (399).

ii. I never heard tell that we were put here to get pleasure out of life. CON. DOYLE, *Ref.*, 231.

Compare with these the equally archaic constructions in:

I like to hear speak of the country, and trees, and such like things. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XIII, 77.

I've 'eard tell of dumb dawgs. HERBERT JENKINS, *Bindle*, Ch. V, 72.

31. The anticipating objective *it* appears to be in normal use also in (22) sentences containing a construction which in some connexions is used as a variant of an accusative with infinitive, i. e. one in which the conjunction *as*, or the preposition *for*, does a similar duty as the copula *to be*. See also Ch. VI, 15 ff.

i. He gave it as his opinion that the boy was labouring under a severe concussion of the brain. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLII, 330 a. (Compare: She gave it to be understood that Lady Mildred's affections were engaged. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVI, 107; also: He had expressed his opinion that he ought to be looked after. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXV, 196.)

She delivered it as the general result of her observation and experience, that those marriages in which there was least of what was romantically and sillily called love, were always the happiest. DICK., *Cricket*, 289. T.

Take it as a rule that John knows everything. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXVI, 383.

The jury might take it as proved that Lady Mason at the former trial had sworn that she had been present when her husband signed the codicil. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXI, 277.

ii. I take it for granted they deal exactly in the same manner with me. SHER., *School*, II, 1.

He took it for granted I knew who Miss Jellyby was. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. IV, 21.

We take it for granted that the decision arrived at will conform to both these conditions. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4925, 1 c.

Note. *To take for granted* being felt as a kind of sense-unit some- (24) times discards the anticipating *it*; thus in:

I took for granted that she knew what the place was like. *KINGSLEY*, *Alt. Locke*, Ch. II, 26.

I took for granted that he intended to marry me. *LESLIE KEITH*, *Miss Providence*, Ch. V.

32. The anticipating objective *it* is also common in many combinations in which an adverbial preposition-group may be considered to have the function of a predicative adnominal adjunct.

a) This is clearly the function of the preposition-group in the following example, which would readily admit of insertion of the copula *to be*:

Mary Martin had often wished it in her power to show them some attentions. *LEVER*, *The Martins of Cro' Martin*, II, 157. T.

b) This function is less evident in the preposition-groups used in the following examples in which insertion of *to be* would be out of the question:

*to have it in charge (trust or command)*: i. He had it now in charge to wait upon Waverley. *SCOTT*, *Wav.*, Ch. XXIV, 77 b.

Perhaps you are not unprepared for the announcement I have it in charge to make. *DICK*, *Hard Times*, Ch. XV, 44 a.

ii. I had it in trust to tell him something. *DICK*, *Bleak House*, I, 152. T.

iii. I have it in command from Lady Rockminster to ask whether I may take you in to supper. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 284.

*to have it in one's power*: He might possibly have it in his power to serve me also. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. VIII, 45.

No man has it more in his power to reform our diseased state. *LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 30.

Note. Thus also *it* is used in: A result which would place it beyond his power to claim any wages, board or otherwise, in all times to come. *DICK*, *Pickw.*, II, 288. T.

The absence of *it* is abnormal in: The fair form of Edith Bellenden also mingled in his dream, weeping, and with dishevelled hair, and appearing to call on him for comfort, which he had not in his power to render. *SCOTT*, *Old Mort.*, Ch. VI, 61.

*to have it in view (or contemplation)*: i. Did he feel that to these soft influences his hard bosom ought to be shut; that here once more, Fate had it in view to try him. *CARL.*, *Sart. Res.*, I, Ch. V, 97.

ii. I myself have it in contemplation to give a ball on the same date. *TAUCHN.* *Mag.*, 1891, II, 7.

33. The use of the anticipating objective *it* is, further, often extended to combinations in which the element intervening between the verb and the objective subordinate statement or infinitive-clause is not to be regarded as a kind of predicative adnominal adjunct, but as a prepositional object or adverbial adjunct.

a) The preposition-group may be understood as a prepositional object in:

I must leave it to your own judgment to decide whether you will come to Nuncombe Putney or not. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XX, 160. Pierre Corneille was a great man; but I put it to you whether, had he been an Englishman, he could have been the father of European tragedy as Peter Crow? LYTTON, Ken. Chil., I, 29. T.

b) The use of the anticipating objective *it* is, however, distinctly unusual before *to* + (pro)noun having the value of a non-prepositional person-object.

I shall prove to you, gentlemen, that, about a year ago, Pickwick suddenly began to absent himself from home during long intervals. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 310.

The doctor called to us to fetch some water. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 236.

He soon allowed to Tom that Arthur was a thorough gentleman. *ib.*, II, Ch. II, 223.

With the above compare the following examples, in which the (22) use of *it* is the rule. (See O. E. D., s. v. *recommend*, 7, a.)

In his will he particularly recommended it to me, to promote his advancement in the best manner that his profession might allow. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej*, Ch. XXXV, 199.

Break it to my lady and Miss Assher that Anthony is ill. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. XIV, 156.

It is, however, very common with the verb *to owe*, the alternative (22) practice being, apparently, exceptional; e. g.:

i. To the brave peasants of the West he owed it to show that they had not poured forth their blood for a leader unworthy of their attachment. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 186.

Miss Matty said that we owed it to society to apprehend them (sc. the thieves). MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 185.

Lufton owes it to me to do more than this. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 83.

The person to whom I owe it that I am not still waiting the end of the world in a living tomb. BELLAMY, *Look. Backw.*, Ch. XVI, 84.

We owe it to her as well as to him to dispel all mystery. LESLIE KEITH, *Miss Providence*, Ch. XXV.

ii. She owed to herself to be a gentlewoman. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. VII, 47.

Unto him you owe | That Mary hath acknowledged you her heir. TEN., *Queen Mary V*, 2 (646 b). (In this example the absence of *it* may be due to metrical considerations.)

c) Among the combinations in which an intervening adverbial (22) adjunct is or may be the occasion of the use of the anticipating *it*, the following deserve special mention:

*to cast (to fling or to throw) it in a person's teeth* (O. E. D., s. v. *cast*, 65; *id.*, s. v. *tooth*, 4, d): i. No man can cast it in my teeth that I am weak enough to believe or disbelieve any phenomenon or theory. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. VII, 62 a

ii. He never threw it in Mrs. Trevelyan's teeth that she had been separated from her husband by her own fault. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LX, 78.

Her mother threw it in her teeth that Stanbury would not be ready to marry her. *ib.*, II, Ch. LXXXV, 275.

Note. The absence of *it* is abnormal in: And I would not have you cast in my teeth that I am a haughty Aexonian. JOWETT, Plato, I, 101 (O. E. D., s. v. *cast*, 65).

*to find it in one's heart (mind, or conscience)*: i. \* He could not find it in his heart to deal harshly even with imaginary persons. MAC., Addison, (766 b).

Were it not for very shame, he would have found it in his heart to return to London. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. XXX, 372.

The veriest ogre could not have found it in his heart to be severe with her. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXXII, 286.

He could not find it in his heart to refuse. RID. HAG., Nies. Will, Ch. XXII, 232.

\*\* I could have found it in my mind to cry out aloud. STEV., Kidn., Ch. X, (245).

\*\*\* I could not find it in my conscience to send him away. TEMPLE THURSTON, The open Window, II, 12.

ii. I could find in my heart to disgrace my man's apparel and cry like a woman. SHAK., As you like it, II, 4, 3.

I wish I could find in my heart that I had not a hard heart. id., Much a do, I, 1, 127.

The girl shows such readiness, and so much concern, that I almost could find in my heart to forgive her. GAY, Beg. Op., I.

I could find in my heart to put you in a passion any day. Mrs. Gask., North & South, Ch. XVI, 102.

Note. In the latest English the use of *it* appears to be practically regular. The phrases with *mind* or *conscience* are comparatively rare.

Compare also: And supper being ended, the devil having now put into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's son, to betray him. Bible, John, XIII, 2.

*to have it on good authority (or by all accounts)*: i. I have it on the best authority that she will come. TAUCHN. Mag., 1891, II, 1.

ii. I have it by all accounts that Mr. Henry was more made up to from that hour. STEVENSON, The Master of Ballantrae, 15. T.

*to have (got) it in one's eye (mind, head, or thoughts)*: i. I have often fancied ... that my sister had it in her eye to make a marriage between you and that little ward of yours. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VIII, 95

ii. I have had it in my mind to do so for some time past. DICK., Domb., 71 b (Household Ed.).

iii. Mrs. N. has got it into her head that she don't want you for Polly. TROL., Ralph the Heir, I, 121. T.

iv. She may have it in her thoughts to [etc.]. DICK., Bleak House, III, 175. T.

Note. Observe that *it* is not used in *to bear in mind*, *to (re)call to mind*, as is shown by:

You are to bear in mind that you are Mr. Alexander's father. STEV., Master of Ballantrae, 260. T.

I can call to mind in the days of my youth being one of a party [etc.]. Graph.

*to take it upon one (or oneself)*: i. \* Mr. Tapley took it upon him to issue divers general orders to the waiters. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LIII, 415 b. I one day took it upon me to make serious inquiries as to whether the gentleman was such as her parents ... would be likely to approve. CH. BRONTË, Vil., Ch. IX, 104.

\*\* Sir Austen Chamberlain has now agreed to take it on himself to bring Signor Mussolini to reason in the Italo-Serbian dispute. Manch. Guard., 22/4, 1927, 305 a.



ii. \* They take upon them to decide for the whole town. SHER., Critic, I, 1.  
I will take upon me to say the matter was never scientifically treated. *ib.*

\*\* I have taken upon myself to make an arrangement for the deduction of a sum from his quarterly salary. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LIII, 488.

He takes upon himself to be the week-day preacher, so to speak. THACK., Eng. Hum., I, 2.

Mrs. Furnival took upon herself to say that they ought not have such interviews. TROL., Orf. Farm, II, Ch. XXI, 276.

It so happened that he did take upon himself the next morning to ask her why she had walked out so late. HARDY, Return, II, Ch. VII, 180.

So much of Dr. Wace's address either explicitly or implicitly concerns me that I take upon myself to deal with it. HUXLEY, Lect. & Es., 83 *b*.

Note. The construction with *it* appears to be unusual: the O. E. D. (s. v. *take*, 18, *d*) registers no instances. The use of the personal pronoun by way of reflexive pronoun is archaic.

*to take it to heart*: Don't take it to heart that I called you a conceited fool and an ass. LYTTON, Ken. Chil., II, 55. T.

*to take it into one's head*: One of the horses took it into his head to stand still. GOLDSM., Vic., 39. T.

34. In conclusion mention may be made of some combinations in which a simple adverb placed before the objective clause causes the use of *it*:

*to lay it down*: The ex-President lays it down that the American public wants the American labouring man to put on an equality with other citizens. Westm. Gaz., No. 5406, 1 *b*.

*to set it about*: The silly jade has set it about that I am married to her. GAY, Beg. Op., II, 1.

*to take it amiss* (*ill, unkindly, friendly*, etc.) (O. E. D., s. v. *take*, 42), in which the words *amiss*, etc. may also be apprehended as predicative adnominal adjuncts: You ... therefore cannot take it amiss that I have never written. JOHNSON, Let. (O. E. D., s. v. *amiss*, 6).

He seemed to take it ill that he should have been accompanied so far by the circle of tantalising gnats. DICK., Domb., III, 69 (Househ. Ed.).

Note *a*) Thus also in the following combinations which are followed by an adverbial clause of condition: You will not take it amiss if I take a cousin's privilege. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. III, 26.

I should like it better if my better half would relieve me of this dreadful necessity. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, 109.

*i*) In such a sentence as the following the use of the objective *it* is necessary owing to the preceding subjective *it*, which the context requires to be repeated: It has been a thousand times observed, and I must observe it once more, that the hours we pass with happy prospects in view are more pleasing than those crowned with fruition. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. X, (290).

35. *a*) There is no occasion for the use of the anticipating objective (23) *it* when the objective subordinate statement is not divided in any way from the predicate in the head-sentence, as in:

I own I am accessible to praise. GOLDSM., Good-nat. Man, II, (120).

I heartily concur in the wish, though, I own, not in your apprehensions. *ib.*, II.

I knew so many cakes would make him ill. THOM. HOOD, Ode.

He tried to make out that he was the heir. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 228.

*b*) This also applies to complexes in which a clause by way



of parenthesis intervenes between the predicate and the subordinate statement, as in:

The presence in our dictionaries of such terms would be sufficient to inform us, if we did not know already, that the Italians have been our teachers in music and the fine arts. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. III, 102.

c) Instances of *it* being used notwithstanding the absence of an intervening word, as in the following example, are very rare:

Elizabeth had settled it that Mr. Darcy would bring his sister to visit her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLIV, 253.

For discussion of *it* anticipating a following objective clause see also KRUISINGA, *Handbk.*<sup>4</sup>, § 1011 ff; and especially HANS WILLERT *Anmerkungen zur Englischen Grammatik* (Wissenschaftliche Beilage zum Programm der Margarethenschule zu Berlin, Ostern, 1892).

36. Different from the use of the anticipating objective *it*, as discussed in the preceding sections, is that in which it represents a sentence co-ordinate with a preceding sentence, or the parts of a broken-up sentence, as in:

i. I am an older woman than you, and, though you will not believe it, I have seen more of the world. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I. Ch. XXII, 173. I was flushed, and tremulous from head to foot: tell it not in Gath, I believe I was crying. CH. BRONTË, *Vil.*, Ch. VIII, 93.

ii. In the desert there must be, there was — she felt it — not only heat to warm the body, but light to illuminate the dark places of the soul. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, II, Ch. VIII, 170.

#### REPETITION OF THE NON-PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

37. Like the subject, the object is sometimes repeated in the shape (26) of a personal pronoun, or the demonstrative *that* (or *those*).

a) The practice is at all common only when the object is represented by a substantive clause (Ch. XV). The repeated object stands the first word of the head-clause, except in the case of weak-stressed *it*; e.g.:

i. \* Whomsoever you love, him you shall wed. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 106

Whatever was implied in the bargain, that she will perform to the letter. JEROME, *John Ingerfield*, 45.

\*\* What he hath won, that hath he fortified. SHAK., *John*, III, 4, 10.

ii. What our contempt doth often hurl from us. I We wish it ours again. SHAK., *Ant. & Cleop.*, I, 2, 127.

Whatever he wrote, he (sc. Goldsmith) did it better than any other man could. JOHNSON

Note. Subordinate statements and questions are not repeated, as the following examples may show:

i. That I have been a fool ... I know well. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXIII, 319.

That he would consider himself beaten after one defeat, Mrs. Crawley never allowed herself to suppose. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

ii. Whether Mrs. Blifil had been surfeited with the sweets of marriage or

disgusted with its bitters ... I will not determine. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, III, Ch. VI, 38 a.

Whether it was the following Sunday when I saw the gentleman again, or whether there was any greater lapse of time before he re-appeared, I cannot recall. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 a.

b) Another rather common form of repetition is that in which a noun is added by way of explanation to a pronoun, as in:

Give me them again, those hands! BROWN., *In a Balcony*, II.

c) Repetition of a noun-object by a pronoun in one and the same sentence is unusual, unless there is a kind of halt in the utterance, as in:

The sheep-skin you scorn, I value it more than the skin of any he in Tergou. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. XII, 63

"That book", she said: "I read it weeks ago". GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, II, Ch. VIII, 175.

### THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

38. When the predicate is attended by two non-prepositional objects, (27) the person-object, whether a noun or a pronoun, is normally placed before the thing-object when the latter is a noun, or a heavy pronoun, such as *everything*, *anything*, etc.; thus in:

i. I taught the boys Latin. The duke brought the Queen a letter. This saved my father much trouble. I promised him every indulgence. Her father left her a very pretty fortune. Stay and keep me company. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 103.

ii. He told my brother everything. He gave the beggar nothing.

The reason why this word-order is observed is the fact that in most cases the thing-object has the stronger stress as the more important of the two objects.

This word-order is practically unavoidable when the thing-object is modified by an adnominal adjunct, as in:

He gave the boy the thing he had asked for. I handed him the paper on the table. We told him everything that he wished to know.

For the same reason this word-order is observed in the far less common case when the person-object is a noun and the thing-object a stressed demonstrative, as in:

As to Mr. Glascock, of course I shall tell mamma that. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XLI, 316.

I suppose he paid his butler that. HUXLEY *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. XI, 201.

"The laziest day-labourer on the road would laugh at the small amount of work which would content me now". She told the Disagreeable Man that one day. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VII, 28.

39. a) When both the non-prepositional objects are personal or (28) demonstrative pronouns, it is again their relative importance and consequent stress which determines their position. From this principle it follows that *it*, which almost regularly has very weak stress, normally precedes other pronouns.

i. Which of them asked you that? O. E. D., s.v. *ask*, 5, b

I would not advise you to tell her that? TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXIV, 189.

Bob's voice was tremulous when he told them this. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 67.

There's young East, I'll give you him. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IX, 184.

My dear young lady, ... if you really dislike such a prospect for your brother, and are in want of a few dirty coins wherewith to prevent it, perhaps I may be able to find you them. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XIII, 68 b.

They have promised me this. RUDY. KIPL., Jungle-Book, 37.

ii. \* "How now, Lorenzo! My clerk hath some good comforts too for you." — "Ay, and I'll give them him without a fee." SHAK., Merch., V, 290.

Now were the verses ten thousand times yours, sir, I'd never give 'em you. BRIDGES, The Humours of the Court, I, 872.

"Where did you get them (sc. the ducats), Tristram?" — "Ah! she gave them me" ib., II, 2, 1319.

Ask you him, for he won't lend her (sc. the mule) me. READE, Cloister, Ch. XII, 64.

\*\* "Give it me back," she said, when she heard by the refolding of the paper that the perusal (sc. of the letter) was finished. — "Of course, I shall give it you back." TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LIII, 30.

You must let me tell it you all. ib., II, Ch. LXXIII, 179.

There's a week in advance, my son being witness I paid it you. MRS. CRAIK, John. Hal., Ch. II, 22.

A hundred crowns to him that finds it (sc. the box) me again. READE, Cloister, Ch. XII, 62.

b) When neither object can be said to be more important than the other, either may stand first. Thus "*I cannot lend them you now* and *I cannot lend you them now* are equally possible." ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 103, 2.

It should, however, be added that in ordinary English the *you* of the first sentence would be changed into *to you* (41).

c) *It* sometimes stands last, especially in verse; thus in the following examples, in the first of which there seems to be no metrical or other reason for this position:

And that same morning officers and men | Levied a kindly tax upon themselves, | Pitying the lonely man, and gave him it. TEN., En. Ard., 660.

In mine own lady palms I cul'd the spring | That gather'd trickling dropwise from the cleft, | And made a pretty cup of both my hands | And offer'd you it kneeling. id., Merl. & Viv., 274.

Prose-instances are, no doubt, very rare. The following have been taken from KRUISINGA, Handb k.<sup>4</sup>, § 2083:

She told him her story and told him it often. Nation, 12/7, 1913.

Kindly Hostess (to nervous reciter who has broken down in "The Charge of the Light Brigade"): "Never mind, Mr. Tomkins, just tell us it in your own words." Punch, No. 3785, 45.

For discussion of the arrangement of the two objects see also Ch. VIII, 42—43.

40. The indirect or person-object is mostly replaced by a complement (29) with a preposition when the ordinary word-order: subject —

predicate — indirect or person-object — direct or thing-object, is departed from. As will be shown in 44, the change may concern the thing-object as well as the person-object. As to the latter it may as well be stated at once that it is not only *to* which has to do duty in this case, but also, in certain combinations, a variety of other prepositions. For the present we will concern ourselves only with the change of the person-object into a complement with *to*.

41. Substitution of a *to*-complement for the person-object is regular: (30)  
 a) when the thing-object is placed in immediate succession to the predicate and is a noun or a heavy pronoun; thus in:

They will allow good qualities to nobody, not even good-nature to our friend, Mrs. Pursy. SHER., School, II, 2, (380).

I hand the first book to my mother. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 27 a.

Fate awards this lot of solitude to many a man. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. X, 113.

She set up a school of children, and taught singing to some of them. id., Esm., III, Ch. VII, 381.

As has already been shown in 39, the preposition is not always needed in the case of the two objects being pronouns. It should however be observed that the absence of the preposition seems to be at all common only if the first pronoun is *it*, and the second is distinctly subservient to the following element of the sentence, as in:

You tell it me often enough. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 223. (Observe the prominence of *often enough*.)

When there is no such element, *to* appears to be less frequently dispensed with; thus it is retained in:

Lord Colchicum gave it to me. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 299.

I learnt the latter language in order to teach it to him. RID. HAG., She, Ch. II, 21.

May I ask what this admirable party were saying regarding me? Tell it to me in your own way. FRANK. MOORE, Jes. Bride, Ch. XVI, 138. (The prominence of *in your own way* might have been the occasion of dispensing with *to*.)

When the first pronoun is another than *it*, *to* is placed all but regularly before the second, at least in ordinary prose; thus in:

He wrote that to me. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 366.

I cannot tell you all the beautiful things he says about you, but I dare say he has told them to you himself. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXV, 195.

I... refused her to him. TEN., Ger. & En., 448.

For my part I never had any ancestors. But I do not grudge them to you. Graph.

b) when the person-object has front-position; thus in:

To you I envy neither fruit nor boughs. BYRON, Don Juan, Dedic. VII. To the policeman Nora had soon told the whole story. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXI, 92.

To them I taught the elements of grammar, geography, history, and the finer kinds of needlework. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXII, 449



Naturally interrogative and relative pronouns, which normally have front-position, require the preposition; thus in:

To whom did you lend your umbrella?

Old Sir Vindex had heart enough to feel that it was now his duty to take especial care of the fatherless boy to whom he tried to teach his *qui, quae, quod*. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 12 *a*.

I have a brother to whom my poor mother spared the rod, and who, I fear, has turned out but a spoilt child. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. III, 37.

Occasionally in verse, but rarely in prose, the preposition is dispensed with. As to the following prose-instance it should be observed that the absence of the preposition may be due to the fact that the verb forms a kind of unit with the thing-object (Ch. XLVII, 26).

i. But if you knew | How true a gentleman you send relief. SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 4, 6.

And me that morning Walter show'd the house. TEN., *Princ.*, *Prol.*, 10.

Him ... she promised that no force, | Persuasion, no, nor death could alter her. *id.*, *Aylmer's Field*, 417.

ii. What could he be thinking of so intently? — a poor working lad whom few would have given credit for thinking at all. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 6.

42. Usage is divided, the construction with the preposition being, (31) however, the more usual one: a) when the thing-object has front-position, as in:

i. \* He had often thought ... what a capital example he could set to his customers in the drinking department. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 120.

This have I already taught to her. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. IV, 22 *b*.

All these valuable lessons did Undy Scott teach to Alaric Tudor. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXIX, 361.

\*\* What answer will you send to him, papa? TROL., *Belt Est.*, Ch. II, 21.

\*\*\* The only rank we know in our country is in that precedence which man gives to woman. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXVII, 211.

All that Trevelyan told to him he repeated to Trevelyan's wife. *ib.*, II, Ch. XCVIII, 375.

i. \* Hundreds of pounds had he given Ned Strong. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIII, 251.

Some answer she must give him. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXXIX, 306.

Urgent grave advice Mrs. Doria tendered her nephew. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 355.

\*\* What would it be right to pay the waiter? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 *a*.

\*\*\* He was not a little pleased with the compliment which the governess had paid him on his proficiency. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 94.

Tom Pinch sadly followed thinking of the grief which the knowledge of this quarrel must occasion his excellent benefactor. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIV, 200 *b*.

Note. Varied practice may also be observed in adnominal clauses introduced by *as*, and such as have no introductory word; e.g.:

i. \* They were not at all unwilling to receive such little civilities as gentlemen can give to ladies when travelling. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXXVII, 293.

\*\* He offered me the same conditions as he offered you. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 38.



ii. \* He never recovered the money he had lent to his wife's sister.

\*\* He was unable to get the money back he had advanced them. Lit. World.

b) when the direct object is made the subject of a passive voice.

i. You were denied to me at first. SHER., Riv., I, 2.

Two hundred English soldiers were sent to him. MAC., Clive.

ii. A small cure was offered me in a distant neighbourhood. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. III.

This danger at any rate is spared our brother. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 189.

Twemlow, having no lady assigned him, goes down in the rear. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. II, 13.

Obedience was taught them. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 370.

The drowning man clings to the rope which is thrown him. BELLAMY, Look. Back w., Ch. III, 19.

Note. From the above examples it may be concluded that *to* is least frequently absent before a noun; it can hardly be dispensed with before a (pro)noun that is modified by an adnominal adjunct or clause, as in:

If falseness can be forgiven to a man in any position, it may be forgiven in that position which he then filled. TROL., Small House.

Much may be forgiven to a man who never, throughout his life, knew what it was to feel well. Athenæum.

43. a) In not a few cases the construction with a preposition-complement is employed, notwithstanding the ordinary word-order (40) is observed. This appears mostly to be due to an endeavour to impart a literary tinge to the style, or to improve its rhythm. It is met with not only with nouns or heavy pronouns, but also with personal pronouns, apparently more frequently with the former than with the latter.

i. He allotted to each of the family what they had to do. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. XXVI.

Lady Rockminster gave to Arthur one finger to shake. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIX, 318.

Laura accorded to him a smile of the most perfect good-humour. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 290.

History must do to both parties the justice which neither has done to the other. MAC., Hist., IV, Ch. XII, 133.

Trevelyan told to this gentleman all the history of his married life. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. XCVIII, 375.

We have made solitude impossible and denied to men of prominence the pleasure of a private life. Manch. Guard., 17/6, 1927, 462 d.

ii. Nature assigns to us mental defects as it awards to us headaches. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 24.

I meant to have handed to you the enclosed in person. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXIV, 322.

Clara handed to her the note to read. *ib.*, Ch. XXVII, 364.

The eras, as they pass, bequeath to us their successive legacies. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. V, 77.

The Earl offers to you as a home, Court Lodge, which is situated pleasantly, and is not very far from the castle. Miss BURNETT, Little Lord, Ch. II, 25.

They were on the edge of some vast vision, of some grandiose effect of Nature, that would bring to them a new and astonishing knowledge of the desert. HICHENS, *Gard. of A.I.*, II, IV, Ch. XIX, 94.

b) The construction with the preposition-complement appears to be in especial favour when an inanimate thing is concerned. God had vouchsafed to her prayers the life of her son. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 175.

The chivalry of men had given to her sex that protection against which her life was one continued protest. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXVII, 210.

The Low Countries ... rose in revolt, which ... gave to Europe the Republic of the United Provinces. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § vi, 412.

44. Apart from those cases in which the (pro)noun without a preposition (33) may be apprehended as a redundant object (7) or pseudo-object (10), the verbs which admit of being construed with two non-prepositional objects are limited in number, although numerous enough. The following enumeration mentions all that had come to hand at the time of writing. With not a few of them the thing-object is always an infinitive(-clause) or a subordinate statement: these are placed in a separate group (45).

In the exposition here presented the illustrative quotations have been followed by observations relative to the frequency of the construction they represent, and also regarding the alternative construction(s) with a preposition which more or less commonly take(s) its place. At the same time an opinion is offered about the currency of the passive conversions, primary or secondary (Ch. XLVII, 32), of which the verbs are capable. When no note is added, it is assumed that the alternative structural modifications here referred to are more or less natural.

These comments are all the more necessary because we often find it glibly stated that verbs construed with two non-prepositional objects admit of an alternative construction with *to*, and, which is worse, we are often made to believe that these verbs admit of two passive constructions. In making these comments the present writer has been seriously handicapped by lack of adequate material, very little information being given by the grammars and dictionaries at his disposal. Even the O. E. D. is regrettably deficient in giving hints as to the prevailing practice regarding the subject under discussion, although there can be little doubt that also English students would not seldom wish for some instruction on this head. This being so, he has had to rely largely on his own resources and his linguistic instinct, which, considering that he has devoted the better part of his life to a close study of the language may, it is hoped, be regarded to count for something.

As to the comments regarding the verbs mentioned in the following sections, two observations should be premised: (1) They cannot be said to be backed by positive evidence when the existence of a given construction is negatived, it being notoriously impossible to prove a universal negative. Thus when it is remarked about a given verb

that it does not admit of being construed with a complement with *to* or any other preposition, or does not admit of passive conversion, either primary or secondary, or of any passive conversion at all, this should be understood to mean that no evidence to the contrary has turned up or is likely to turn up. (2) In not a few cases the examples adduced to show the preference for a construction with *to*, or some other preposition, afford no proof of this preference, inasmuch as the structure of these examples may render the use of the preposition obligatory or preferable. Even in the case of a *to*-complement preceding the thing-object, such proof is lacking, the person-object being not seldom replaced by a *to*-complement for other reasons than those resulting from the structure of the sentence (43).

The complements with prepositions that serve as substitutes for either the person- or the thing-object may be called prepositional objects. They may, apparently, as justly lay claim to the denomination of objects as the elements of the sentence they replace, inasmuch as they have much in common with the latter. In both, i.e. in non-prepositional as well as prepositional objects, the indispensability, the main feature of objects, appears in various degrees of intensity (51, *a*). Thus it is easy to see that in such sentences as *He gave his son a bicycle* (or *He gave a bicycle to his son*) and *He promised his pupils a holiday* (or *He promised a holiday to his pupils*) the association of the action with the persons benefited by it is more intimate than in sentences like *He called her a hansom* (TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, Ch. XV, 121) (or *He called a hansom for her*) and *I will . . . carry Mr. Bates the comforter I have made for him* (G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. VII, 126) (or *I will carry to Mr. Bates the comforter I have made for him*).

No practical use can, however, be served by inquiring curiously into the problem whether the adjuncts of the predicate in some of the connexions here presented had not better be denominated adverbial adjuncts, i.e. as more or less adventitious complements of the predicate. In the following discussions, therefore, the terms complement with a preposition, complement with *to*, etc., have been chosen as suitable for either object or adverbial adjunct. For the rest a reasoned delimitation of objects and adverbial adjuncts has been attempted in Ch. XLV, 18—25.

The necessity of the association in the case of the prepositional as well as the non-prepositional objects is, of course, independent of the fact that they are frequently absent. As has been shown in ample detail in Ch. XXXII, 22 ff. and also in Ch. XLVI, 25 *f*, both are often suppressed, either because they are readily suggested by the context, or are too vague or too indistinctly present to the speaker's mind, to be indicated by a special (pro)noun.

In conclusion it should be stated that the majority of the verbs that figure in the following survey are also used in other meanings than that or those in which they may be construed with two non-prepositional objects, and in these meanings often admit of a variety of other constructions. It stands to reason that the constructions corresponding to these meanings cannot very well be discussed in this place.

*to administer*: By invading the North he might administer his old antagonist another severe blow. *Morning Star*, 1865, 31/3 (O. E. D., 7).

Note a) In the meaning of *to tender* (an oath) the verb always takes a person-complement with *to*; thus in: The Lord Chancellor administered the usual oath to the Queen. *McCARTHY, Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 3.

β) Secondary passive conversion hardly possible.

*to advance*: He advanced me 7l. 1s. 8d. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 21. Note. Secondary passive conversion hardly possible.

*to afford*: He could not afford them a room by themselves. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XI, 66.

Note. Secondary passive conversion hardly possible.

*to allot*: i. They returned within the time Hannah had allotted them. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXIX, 421.

ii. \* He was conscious of having made a full use of the faculties which had been allotted him. *FROUDE, Oc.*, Ch. XIV, 226.

\*\* She was allotted ... the spare room in Jude's house. *HARDY, Jude*, V, Ch. IV, 353.

*to allow*: i. \* I allow the gentleman every virtue. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXI, 855.

\*\* He had allowed me many indulgences. *DE QUINCEY, Conf.*, Ch. II, 13.

ii. I'm never allowed a way of my own for a moment. *TROL.*, *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXXVI, 284.

Note. In the meaning of *to admit* the verb always takes *to* in the person-complement; thus in: He soon allowed to Tom that Arthur was a thorough gentleman. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, II, Ch. II, 223.

Also in the two meanings illustrated above the verb is often enough construed with a *to*-complement; thus in: i. He and all the rest of the world were poor fools who allowed to things a significance which they did not naturally possess. *MORLEY ROBERTS, Time and Thomas Waring*, Ch. X, 90.

ii. The easy King ... allowed to his mistresses the same liberty which he claimed for himself. *MAC.*, *Com. Dram.*, (573 b).

*to allowance*: I am allowanced two glasses three hours before dinner. *MER*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVII, 119.

*to answer*: No man was able to answer him a word. *Bible, Matth.*, XXII, 46.

Note. The verb, apparently, admits only of secondary passive conversion, e.g.: When I asked where his servant was, ... I was answered, "an please your Honour [etc]." *STERNE, Tristram Shand.*, 137.

*to appoint*: Mrs. Reed .. had drawn a more marked line of separation than ever between me and her own children, appointing me a small closet to sleep in by myself. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 26.

Note. Secondary passive conversion incongruous.

*to apportion*: Well, Mary, I've tried to apportion you different duties for each day in the week. *Punch*.

Note. Secondary passive conversion hardly possible.

*to ask*: They asked me my name. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 370.

I'll ask him eight or ten per cent. on the loan. *SHER.*, *School*, III, 1, (389). He saw that I had been crying, and he stood silent and seemed to be asking himself the cause. *WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin*, XV, Ch. VII, 434.

Note a) *To ask* is often construed with *of*, less frequently with *from* in the complement denoting a person. *Of* is the ordinary preposition when the reference is to a question, *from* when a favour is concerned: e.g.:

i. I was coming to see you, and was asking your address of these ladies. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. X, 118.



Have you asked all the questions you wish to ask? And if so, may I ask one of you? BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. III, 14.

ii. He knew too well that he should never find courage to ask permission from him. ANSTAY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VIII, 161.

And well was I repaid for the struggle it had cost me to ask so great a kindness from a stranger. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 124.

"I shall be delighted", is the reply one usually receives on asking a favour from Mr. Clement Scott. *Tit-bits*, 1895, 133*a*.

But it is not what I ask of literature. What I ask from literature mainly is . . . something which represents life. BOOKMAN, 1912, Aug., 193*b*. (Observe that the two prepositions are used alternately.)

β) The use of both *at* and *to* in the person-complement is now quite obsolete or dialectal. O. E. D., s.v. *ask*, 3. *At* is still frequent in SCOTT.

i. Blithe would I battle, for the right | To ask one question at the sprite. MARM., III, xxix, 10.

This was | the question which men began anxiously to ask at each other. HEART OF MID-LOTHIAN, Ch. IV, 48.

ii. Would you know whether a man's heart be shut to the power of love ask what he is, not to his foes, but to his friends. LYTTON, *Paul Clif.*, Ch. XVIII, 218.

γ) Quite common, on the other hand, is the construction with *for* in the thing-complement (19), as in: Each man asked his neighbour for news. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 338.

Yesterday evening you wrote me a very beautiful womanly letter, asking me for help. OSC. WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, IV, (85)

Both a person-complement with *from* and a thing-complement with *for* are to be found in: It had been so sweet to have a lover . . . from whom she had a right to ask for counsel and protection. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, LXXIII, 182.

*to assign*: i. I obeyed her behest, in the hope that she might assign me some task I could undertake. CH. BRONTË, *Vil.*, Ch. IV, 40.

ii. He was assigned, however, a residence in Bithoor. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 183.

*to award*: i. He awarded every one a severe punishment. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VII, 97.

ii. Kenny was awarded the Victoria Cross. BROWN, *French Revol. in Eng. Hist.*, *Introd.*, 13.

Note. The following example shows that *to assign* and *to award* may stand for strictly identical notions, and also that both may take a person-complement with *to*: Nature assigns to us mental defects as it awards to us headaches. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24.

*to banish*: We banish you our territories. SHAK., *Rich.* II, I, 3, 139.

Note α) The person-object does not admit of being converted into a complement with a preposition. Conversely the thing-object often takes *from*, as in: Myself was from Verona banished. SHAK., *Two Gent.*, IV, I, 47.

β) The verb admits of no other passive conversion than that with the person-object as subject (Ch. XLVII, 35—37); thus in: He was banished the realm. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 32.

*to bar*: The lottery of my destiny | Bars me the right of voluntary choosing. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, I, 16.

It were too bad to have barred her that privilege. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XX, 212.

Note. According to the O. E. D. this use of *to bar* is now archaic. Instances of passive conversion have not come to hand, but may be common enough.



*to bate*: They offered ... to bate him the article of bread and butter in the tea-table account. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 488. (O. E. D., 6, b).

Note. No instances of the alternative construction with *to* have come to hand, any more than of either passive conversion.

*to bear*: i. I bear him a letter from M. Bentinck. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. I, 134.

ii. Bear me no ill-will at parting. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 11 a.

Some very likely bore her no good will. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 315.

I bear her always a lively gratitude. *id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. III, 30.

iii. Her father had promised to bear her company. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXV, 270.

iv. You will bear me witness that I have but a very small stock of English. Note to Shak. *Merch.* I, 2, 62, in *Clar. Press Ed.*

v. His wife had borne him nine children. MAC., *Hampd.*, (200 b).

Note a) In the meaning illustrated by the first example the construction with two non-prepositional objects appears to be rare. There are no instances in the O.E.D.

*To bear a person ill-will (etc.)* varies with *to bear ill-will (etc.) against a person*; e.g.: I bear no ill-will against none of 'em. DICK., *Chimes*,<sup>3</sup> II, 54. They were searching for another person against whom they bore enmity. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. IV, 47.

β) In the combination *to bear a person love*, etc., the ordinary alternative construction is, presumably, that in which the person-object is replaced by a complement with *to*. Compare, however, the following example, in which *for* and *to* are used alternately: He wants me to speak to you about — about the earnest love he bears for you ... Do you know what love means with him — this love which he bears to you? TROL., *Belton Est.*, Ch. XXX, 399.

γ) In the fifth application *to bear* implies a notion of giving or presenting, as is evidenced by its varying in this connexion with *to present*, which, however governs a person-complement with *with*; e.g.: On three occasions she presented her husband with triplets. *Tit-bits*.

δ) Passive conversion is practically non-existent: no instances have turned up. *To be born* hardly conveys a passive meaning, being equivalent to *to come into existence*, French *naître*, Latin *nasci*.

*to beg*: I beg your ladyship ten thousand pardons. SHER., *School*, V, 3, (436).

Note α) The verb may take a person-complement with either *of* or *from*. The construction with the former seems to be especially frequent when the thing-object is represented by an infinitive-clause.

i. \* And then to see him fall on his knees to beg pardon of his child! LAMB, *Tales*, *Lear*, 162.

\*\* I come to beg of you never to have any secret dealings with Mr. Portland. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 84.

I must beg of you to say no more. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XIV, 123.

\*\*\* I only begged of him that every Sunday he would pronounce one of them (sc. sermons) in the pulpit. ADDISON, *Spect.*, CIV.

ii. He would not unfrequently beg money from his daughter. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. V, 53.

I had been begging my bread from Robert Beaufort's lackey. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 198.

β) The construction with *at* in the person-complement is quite obsolete, the latest instance in the O. E. D. being dated 1450.

γ) Quite frequent is the construction with *for* in the thing-complement (19), as in: He seldom ... came home except to borrow or beg for money. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XIII, 109.

Svengali begged for the loan of two hundred pounds. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 89.  
*b*) The verb, apparently, admits of no passive conversion. No instances have come to hand, and none are given by the O. E. D.

*to begrudge*: Not that she begrudged her brother his luck. TROL, Dr. Thorne, Ch. XLVII, 616.

Nobody begrudges Newport their laurels of victory. Westm. Gaz., No. 6059, 13*b*.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement may be quite as usual; e.g.: Bernard was his adopted son, and no one had begrudged to the uncle the right of making such adoption. TROL., *Small House*, I Ch. XIX, 223.

*β*) The verb hardly admits of either passive conversion.

*to bequeath*: He bequeathed me a moderate fortune. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, III, Ch. III, 141.

Note. The verb, apparently, admits only of the primary passive conversion. *to bereave*: O first created beam, and thou great Word, | Let there be light, and light was over all; | Why am I thus bereaved thy prime decree? MILTON, *Sams. Agon.*, 85.

All joy was bereft me the day that you left me. SCOTT, *Wandering Willie* (O. E. D., I, *c*).

Note *a*) This construction is now archaic, the ordinary practice being to place *of* in the thing-complement, as in: The accident which had bereaved the father of his child. D'ISRAELI, *Amen.-Lit.*, 222 (O. E. D., I).

*β*) The construction with *from* in the person-complement is now obsolete: thus in: If, Collatine, thy honour lay in me, | From me by strong assault it is bereft. SHAK., *Lucrece*, 835 (O. E. D., 3, *b*).

γ) A passive construction as is shown by the first of the above examples is naturally uncommon. For the rest passive conversion is particularly frequent. *to beseech*: I beseech you a word. SHAK., *Love's Labour Lost*, II, 1, 197.

Note *a*) This construction with two non-prepositional objects, both represented by a noun, appears to be obsolete, the above being the latest instance recorded by the O. E. D. Quite usual, on the other hand, is that in which the thing-complement is represented by an infinitive(-clause); that in which it is represented by a subordinate statement being at all common only in literary language; e.g.: He besought the King to refuse his consent. BROUGHAM, *Brit. Const.*, XVI, 243 (O. E. D., 3, *d*).

I beseech your Grace that I may know | The worst. SHAK., *Mids.*, I, 1, 62.

*β*) The construction with *of* in the person-complement is pronounced obsolete by the O. E. D. (3, *e*; 4, *b*). The following is a Late Modern English example: Many prelates besought of their flocks and brother ecclesiastics to recognise the sacred right of the future sovereign. THACK., *Es m.*, II, 277 (WENDT, E. S., IV, 108).

γ) A frequent construction is that with *for* in the thing-complement (19), as in: The wretch ... besought him for mercy. THACK., *Virg*, Ch XCII, 995.

δ) Only the passive conversion with the person-object as the subject is admissible, but appears to be rarely called for.

*to bestow*: He bestowed him such a blow upon the crest that Athelstane also lay senseless on the ground. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 126.

Note *a*) This construction is now obsolete: the O. E. D. (6, *c*) registers no later instance than one dated 1588.

*β*) The construction with *to* in the person-complement, although also pronounced obsolete by the O. E. D. (6, *c*), has not, apparently, fallen into absolute disuse. The following are Late Modern English instances: He (sc. Congreve) came to live in the Middle Temple, London, where he luckily bestowed no attention to the law. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, II, 58.

Most likely she would bestow a quantity of money to a hospital. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. V, 49.

γ) The ordinary practice is to place (*up*)*on* in the person-complement, as in: The East India Company bestowed on him a sword set with diamonds. MAC., *Clive*, (510*a*).

δ) Before the name of an occupation, mostly expressed by a gerund, *in* appears to be the ordinary preposition; thus in: I would I had bestowed that time in the tongues that I have in fencing. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, I, 3, 98. He bestows every care in rearing a healthy plant. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 31*a*. *to bid*: i. They bade her half the price she asked. JOHNSON, *Rambler*, No. 161 (O. E. D., 3, *a*).

ii. The story-teller bids his kind reader farewell. THACK., *Pend.*, Pref. (Similarly in *to bid welcome*, *God speed*, *adieu*, *good bye*, *good morning*, etc., O. E. D., 9).

iii. The good woman bade me remain in the apartments we occupied. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 164. (For further instances see Ch. LV, 42.)

Note *a*) Only in the second of the applications illustrated above is *to bid* ever construed with a person-complement with *to*; thus in: Mrs. Winterfield bade farewell to her niece. TROL., *Belt Est.*, Ch. VIII, 107.

β) The secondary passive conversion would be possible in all the three applications, the primary only in the first.

*to blow*: i. It is an ill wind that blows no one good. PROV.

ii. He actually blew her a kiss. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. XXX, 200

She blew us kisses with both hands. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XIX, 234.

Note *a*) Substitution of a complement with *to* for the person-object is apparently rare with *to blow* in the second meaning. With the verb in the first meaning it seems to be less unusual. The following is an example: The honoured proverb which declares that to be an ill wind which blows good to nobody, was verified in the case of Sir Francis Clavering. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 247.

β) In both meanings either passive conversion is hardly possible.

*to bode*: So much thought bodes me no good. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (263).

Note. Passive conversion either way seems to be non-existent

*to bring*: He brought his mother a tragedy. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36. They ... married, although their marriage brought them the ill-will of several persons. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. I, 3.

Note. The secondary passive conversion is rare, but not impossible, as is shown by: Whatever she said when he asked her, whichever way she answered him, he would be brought relief from his intolerable stress. HUTCH., *If Wint. comes*, III, Ch. III, viii, 175.

*to bring in*: This brought her in £ 350 a year. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 25.

Note. Only the primary passive conversion appears to be admissible.

*to call*: i. Don't call me names! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 372.

ti. Then he called her a hansom—helped her within. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, Ch. XV, 121.

Note *a*) In the second application the verb might exchange the person-object for a complement with *for*.

β) In the first application the secondary, and in the second the primary passive conversion would be possible.

*to carry*: I will walk to the Mosslands, and carry Mr Bates the comforter I have made for him. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. VII, 126.

He was carrying 'em their dinner. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 88,

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement is, no doubt, more common than that illustrated above.

*β*) Secondary passive conversion is hardly possible.

*to cast*: Mr. Laing cast her a sidelong, somewhat curious glance. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVIII.

Note *a*) The person-object admits of being replaced by a complement with *at*, as in: He cast a keen glance of surprise at the group before him. G. ELIOT, *Romola*, I, VI (O. E. D., 7).

*β*) Passive construction is rare, and only practicable with the thing-object as subject.

*to catch*: She caught him a sounding box on the ear. O. E. D., s.v. *catch*, 1. Note. There is no preposition-complement that could be substituted for either object; and passive conversion either way is impossible.

*to cause*: The sight of her nephew would cause her such a shock that we should have to bring her to bed again. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I. Ch. XIX, 202.

(This) caused Mr. Havisham much diversion. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. III, 48.

Note *a*) Neither object could be replaced by a complement with a preposition.

*β*) Secondary passive conversion is rare, but not impossible, as is shown by: Nobody knows the heat and fret I have been caused by it. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 468.

*charge*: He charged me a shilling for the operation. O. E. D., s.v. *charge*, 18, *d*.

Note *a*) The thing-object is sometimes replaced by a complement with *with*, as in: His zeal for kirk and state had been lulled asleep by the opportunity of charging a stranger with double horse-hire. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch XXX, 93 *b*.

I have charged each patient with three attendances. PUNCH.

*β*) In another meaning the verb is construed with a (pro)noun denoting a person and an infinitive-clause (or subordinate statement); thus in: He charged them to protect Rajah Goordas. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (615 *b*).

*γ*) Either passive conversion is common in the first meaning, only the secondary in the second

*to command*: My master commanded me silence. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, Ch. V, (198 *a*).

What the Queen commands you, must be done. O. E. D., s.v. *command*, 1.

Note *a*) The thing-object is frequently represented by an infinitive-clause; thus in: The Princess Anne ... had commanded him to assure her illustrious relatives at the Hague that [etc.] MAC., *Hist.*, II, 260 (O. E. D., 1, *c*).

*β*) The person-object is never replaced by a *to*-complement.

*γ*) Passive conversion is only possible with the person-object as subject.

*to concede*: Concede me, I pray you, this small digression. HAYWARD, (O. E. D., 2).

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement is, most probably, common enough, but no instances have come to hand.

*β*) Only the primary passive conversion would seem to be usual; the secondary is illustrated by: The end of the struggle is nearly always that the public is conceded everything. TIMES, *Lit.*, 27/11, 1914 (KRUIS., *Handbk.*<sup>4</sup>, § 274).

*to create*: However, this humour creates him no enemies. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 2.

Note. No instances of alternative constructions with a preposition, or of passive conversion have come to hand.

*to cry*: I cry you mercy. SHAK., *Much ado*, I, 2, 27.

Note *a*) Only in this antiquated expression is *to cry* construed with two non-prepositional objects.



Compare: We hope the common sense of the two peoples will before long cry a halt to a rivalry as useless as it is suicidal. Rev. of Rev., No. 2187

β) There is no passive conversion either way.

*to deal*: i. Deal me the prize! SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. VII, 76.

ii. As he spoke thus, he dealt the stranger a blow with his weapon, which would, probably, have made his words good. *id.*, *Fair Maid*, Ch. IV, 46.

Note α) By the side of a complement with *to* there is one with *on*, which appears to be unusual: e.g.: But for the blow just dealt on them by Laura, she would have been supremely happy. Mrs. WOOD, *Lord Oakburn's Daughter*, Ch. XXV, 96*b*.

β) Secondary passive conversion appears to be very unusual. There are no instances in the O. E. D.

*to debar*: This debarred me the use of my pen. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. II, 13.

He debarred himself every kind of amusement and relaxation. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, II, Ch. VII, 191.

Note α) There is an alternative construction with a thing-complement with *from*, which appears to be as common, and one with *of*, which is archaic: e.g.: i. They (are) no longer debarred from the advantages of that Education. Macm. Eng. Clas. Princ., *Introd.*, 31.

I cannot debar myself from the satisfaction of writing. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XVI, 211.

ii. To debar themselves of their real strength and advantages. HAZLITT, *Tablet.*, Ser. II, iii, 75 (O. E. D., 1, *b*).

β) Both passive conversions appear to be in common use; e.g.: i. The free expression of my opinion is debarred me. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXVII, 210.

ii. You are debarred correspondence for the present. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXII, 154*a*.

*to deign*: Nor would we deign him burial of his men. SHAK., *Macb.*, I, 2, 60. Note. No instances of alternative constructions with a preposition, or of passive conversion have come to hand.

*to deliver*: i. And then we will deliver you the cause, | Why I, that did love Cæsar when I struck him, | Have thus proceeded. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 181.

ii. Deliver me the key. *id.*, *Merch.*, II, 6, 59.

Sophy ... delivered him the bird. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. III, 45*b*.

Note α) In the first meaning the verb is now obsolete, and no instances of alternative constructions, or of passive conversion are given by the O. E. D. In the second meaning the verb would often be construed with a *to*-complement, and placed in the passive voice with the thing-object as subject; e.g.: I begin to doubt now whether I am right to deliver him to you. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXVI, 285.

The letter was delivered to me.

β) *To redeliver*, no doubt, admits of the same constructions as *to deliver*; e.g.: Here has he commissioned me to redeliver you part of the purchase-money. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (408).

*to deny*: He shall not deny me vengeance. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVI, 283. Mr. Cunninghame Graham denies Morris humour, allowing him only a sense of fun. *Athen.*, No. 4466, 585*a*.

Note. All the ordinary structural modifications appear to be more or less in current use. See the comment in the O. E. D., s.v. *deny*, 5.

*to despatch* (or *dispatch*): He had despatched us a messenger. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XVIII, 177.



My son despatched me a letter by an officer of the —th. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 385.

Note. Only primary passive conversion appears to be possible.

*to dismiss*: They dismissed them the society. DEFOE, Crusoe, II, iv, 72 (O. E. D., 3).

Note *a*) There is an alternative construction with *from*, which may be more usual, and one with *of*, which is now obsolete.

*β*) The verb admits only of secondary passive conversion (Ch. XLVII, 37); e.g.: He had been severely reprimanded and dismissed his ship. Rev. of Rev., No. 201, 236 *a*.

*to dispute*: All his concerns were disputed their place in his mind by the incredible and enormous events that each new hour discharged upon the world. HUTCHINSON, If Winter comes, III, Ch. III, viii, 176.

Note *a*) The construction is, no doubt, a very unusual one; the ordinary practice being to place *with* before the (pro)noun denoting the person (49); thus in: Women and children, all day long, were seen searching gutters and dung-hills for morsels of food, which they disputed fiercely with the famishing dogs. MOTLEY, Rise, IV, Ch. II, 575.

*β*) The construction with a person-complement with *to*, as in the following example, appears to be unusual: No one ... will dispute to Johnson the title of an admirer of Shakespeare. J. S. MILL, in Westm. Rev., I, 535 (O. E. D., 5, *a*).

*to do*: i. But here thy sword can do thee little stead. MILTON, Comus, 611.

ii. The gentleman had done him the greatest service. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIII, 134.

iii. Your sentiments do you honour. *ib.*, I, Ch. XI, 117.

iv. We must do him the justice to say he always spoke of Mr. Dobbin with contempt behind his back. *id.*, Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 42.

v. Do you think it did Edward good? DICK., Coop., Ch. Vi, 43 *b*.

He wanted to do her good, not evil. TROL., Gold. Lion, Ch. XV, 171.

vi. It is in the power of my hand to do you hurt. Bible, Gen., XXXI, 29. Don't speak to me, or I shall do you a mischief. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 115 *a*.

He had some idea that too much precipitancy might do him an injury. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. V, 60.

Note *a*) In all the above combinations, with the exception of the first, substitution of the *to*-complement for the person-object appears to be more or less common, as is shown by the following examples: i. He has done an ill service to the peace of the world. Spect. (Newspaper).

ii. She was at every point such a lady as would do honour to the carriage and the bravery when it should be forthcoming. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. IV, 44.

iii. History must do to both parties the justice which neither has done to the other. Mac., Hist., IV, Ch. XII, 133.

iv. She did me good — and will do good to others. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. XCVI, 365.

v. Clara had never done harm to any one. *id.*, Belt. Est., Ch. I, 6.

What has he done to her? HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, I, Ch. IV, 62.

*β*) In the combination illustrated by the following examples *to* could not, presumably, be dispensed with: i. What could her husband do to her in his madness? TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXIX, 231.

Here was a man married to his daughter ... manifestly mad, — and yet he could do nothing to him! *ib.*, II, Ch. LXXVIII, 225.

ii. She had done her duty to him well. *ib.*, II, Ch. XCVIII, 380.

;) A *for*-complement often takes the place of the person-object in the combination *to do a person a good (or kind) turn*, as in: At our end of

London, perhaps, I can do a good turn for the Newcomes. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. V, 50.

No other construction would be possible in: I shall never forget all that you have done for me. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXXVI, 288.

δ) Only the phrases *to do a person (in)justice*, *to do a person harm* (or *an injury*) appear to be at all common in the passive voice; e.g.: i. She swore that she would have justice done her. *ib.*, II, Ch. LIV, 38.

That is no reason why they should be done injustice. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 75, 331.

ii. Miss Stanbury was quite as assured that the injury had been done to her. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XLVII, 361.

I was not beaten or starved; but the wrong that was done to me had no intervals of relenting. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 75 a.

*to dole out*: They, with the gold to give, doled him out silver. BROWNING, *Lost Leader*, 5.

Note α) The O. E. D. has two examples with *to*, and this may be the usual construction.

β) Only the primary passive conversion would seem to be in current use.

*to doom*: Each clansman's execration just | Shall doom him wrath and woe. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, ix, 10.

Note α) No doubt an unusual construction, one with *to* in the thing-complement mostly taking its place; thus in: And cursed be the meanest shed | That e'er shall hide the houseless head, | We doom to want and woe. *ib.*, III, x, 29.

β) Passive conversion appears to be possible only with the person-object as subject; e.g.: His patient was doomed to a long illness. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LI, 71.

*to drop*: i. The landlady dropped the heir of Fair Oaks a very respectful curtsey. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.

ii. You might drop him a note to that effect. O. E. D., s.v. *drop*, 15, b.

Drop him a hint, G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 16.

Note. Instances of the alternative construction with *to* in the person-complement, or of passive conversion, have not been found, and are, no doubt, very unusual.

*to earn*: These words at another time would have earned the speaker an admonition or a cuff. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. XXIII, 88.

Note α) The verb may be apprehended as a transitive used in a causative meaning (Ch. XLVI, 43), and may be construed with a person-complement with *for*, as in: His eccentricities had earned for him the nickname of "the Madman". O. E. D., s.v. *earn*, 1, b.

β) There are no passive conversions.

*to enclose* (or *inclose*): Mr. Bantam ... begs to enclose Mr. Weller the herewith invitation. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVII, 339.

I beg to enclose you a draft for £ 100. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 46.

Note α) The construction is, no doubt, rare. The preposition that might be used in the alternative person-complement would be *for*.

β) Naturally only the primary passive conversion is possible.

*to enjoin*: They left her to perform the important services she had enjoined them. LAMB, *Tales*, II, 31.

He enjoined that acute and intelligent servant the strictest caution with respect to Lucy. LYTTON, *Paul Cliff*, Ch. XXXIV, 398.

Note α) The ordinary construction is that with (*up*)*on* in the alternative person-complement, as in: A very good plan which I have always enjoined on you. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVI, 111.

The fourteenth chapter enjoins on the Faithful the duty of exterminating the Infidels everywhere. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XXXII.

β) Another common construction is that with a person-object (without a preposition) and an infinitive, as in: He enjoined Pen to peruse the book. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 68.

γ) The construction with a person-complement with *to* is now rare, that with a person-complement with *from* is said by the O. E. D. to occur only in law; see, however the example below: i. Discreetness, too, was enjoined to the upper household. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIII, 84.

ii. He enjoined nothing from his pupil and companion save absolute silence. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 109.

δ) Both passive conversions are quite usual, as the following examples may show: i. Sabbath: one day in seven appointed for rest or worship, the observance of which was enjoined upon the Jews in the Decalogue. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *sabbath*.

ii. He was strictly enjoined by the ladies to fix a day on which Mr. Glascock would come and dine at the American embassy. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XLVI, 356.

*to ensure*: This in itself ensures her my sympathies. DOR. GER., *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XVI, 196.

Note α) In the alternative person-complement *for* varies with *to* (O. E. D., 9); thus: i. The only rule, which ... can ensure for the officers ... the conveniences which they have a right to expect. WELLINGTON, *Disp.* I, 48 (O. E. D., 9).

ii. A constitutional government ensures to the King a wide authority. MAY, *Const. Hist.*, I, 1, 12 (O. E. D., 9).

β) Only the primary passive conversion appears to be practicable. No instances have, however, come to hand.

*to envy*: I almost envy you the pleasure. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 320.

I don't envy Sir Charles Mirabel his father-in-law. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 322.

Note α) The use of a complement with *to* to replace the person-object is rare. Compare, however: Mankind would have little to envy to future ages, if they had all enjoyed a serenity as perfect as mine has been for the latter half of my existence. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, Ch. V, 44.

β) A common construction is that with a thing-complement with *for*, as in: They envied him for his wealth.

γ) This latter construction, no doubt, admits of passive conversion; thus: He was envied for his wealth. For the rest the verb would be rarely placed in the passive voice.

*to excuse*: I do not excuse him his rivalry. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, xii, Ch. XIV, 432.

We will excuse thee all. *id.*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 45.

Note α) Substitution of a *to*-complement for the person-object is not particularly common; the following quotation affords an instance: There is no iniquity, no breach of promise, no treason that a woman will not excuse to herself. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXVI, 282.

β) The thing-object when represented by a gerund is changed into a complement with *for*, occasionally *in*, as in: i. A girl of your age, to shut herself up in a living tomb — no, it is a preposterous idea, excuse me for saying so. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XIV.

ii. Sir Walter might be excused, therefore in forgetting her age. JANE AUSTEN, *Persuasion*, Ch. I, 5.

I must ... be excused in giving a somewhat elaborate description. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. V, 40.

γ) There is also a construction with a thing-complement with *from*, which

conveys an entirely different meaning; e.g.: Clayering excused himself from joining the splendid assembly. *MAC., War. Hist.*, (619 a).

The jury were excused from attendance for the rest of the week. *O. E. D.*, 7. This *from* is sometimes omitted, as in: Young folks in their situation should be excused complying with the common forms. *JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park*, Ch. XII, 122.

Tom, as a new boy, was of right excused fagging for the first month. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VII, 137.

δ) Both the construction with *for* + gerund and that with *from* + gerund are often replaced by one in which the person-object is changed into a genitive or possessive pronoun (or the objective of a noun or pronoun), placed before the gerund. Such a sentence as *Excuse my (me) doing that* may naturally stand for two diametrically opposite notions. viz.: *Excuse me for doing that* and *Excuse me for not doing that* (*Ch. LIX*, 90, f).

ε) The thing-object may also appear in the shape of a subordinate statement, as in: Will you excuse me, sir, that I sit down? *GALSW., Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. V, 33.

ζ) Secondary passive conversion is quite usual; e.g.: He was excused the entrance-fee. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *excuse*, 7. For other examples see above. Primary passive conversion appears to be rare: no instances have come to hand. *to expel*: He expelled him the house. *LYTTON, Caxtons*, III, Ch. VII, 78. Note α) The construction with a thing-complement with *from* would seem to be more usual; e.g.: to expel a person from college, to be expelled from decent society. *WEBST., Dict.*, s.v. *banish*.

β) The verb admits only of the primary passive conversion; thus: i. They have been expelled the school. *ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 32.

ii. You are expelled from the house which you have indelibly disgraced. *PAE, Eustace*, 57 (*O. E. D.*, 2).

*to fetch*: He fetched me a slap across the face. *THACK., Den. Duv.*, Ch. IV, (230).

Note. In this meaning the verb is only in colloquial use, admits of no constructions with a preposition, and has no passive conversion either way.

*to fill*: Moses, fill the gentleman a bumper. *SHER., School*, III, 3, (398). Note. There are no alternative constructions with a preposition. *Fill a bumper for the gentleman* would have another meaning. Compare *to pour out*. Nor would either passive conversion be possible; not, at least, in the combination in which the verb appears above.

*to find*: I don't see just now how she could find you food. *Mrs. GASK., Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 255.

Do you think your husband could find me a place as clerk in his bank? *Punch*. Note α) *To find* appears here in a meaning approximating to that of *to procure*, and admits of being construed with an complement with *for*.

β) The secondary passive conversion is, naturally, rare. There is an instance in: Annette ... was found a situation with an ironmaster's family. *GILBERT CANNAN, Round the Corner*, 63 (*KRUIS., Handbk.*, § 274).

*to fine*: The little tailor whom he had fined five shillings. *DICK., Christm. Car.*, I, 12.

The magistrate fined him forty shillings. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *fine*, 8.

Note α) The thing-object may be replaced by a complement with *in*, as in: He fined each party in three shillings. *SMOL., Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 714

β) The primary passive conversion is, naturally, impossible.

*to flash*: She flashed him a desperate glance. *ETHEL M. DEIL, The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. IV, 45.

Note. Instances of alternative constructions with a preposition, or of passive conversion, have not come to hand and are, no doubt, rare.

*to fling*: He flung me a look of great scorn. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 82. He flung me back with scorn the troth which I had plighted. *id.* Pend., II, Ch. XXXVI, 383.

Note *a*) No instance of any alternative construction with a preposition has come to hand.

*β*) Passive conversion either way is, no doubt, very rare. The following example has an incongruous effect: While writing it (*sc.* the Vicar of Wakefield), Goldsmith had been hiding for debt, and had been flung half-crowns, and even shillings, by Newbery as generous advances. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XIII, 145.

*to forbid*: I forbid you this house. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVII, 154.

The general was compelled to forbid the Indian women his camp. THACK., Virg., Ch. VII, 69.

Note *a*) The construction with a person-complement with *to*, as in the following examples, would seem to be less usual: He could not forbid to her the use of the post-office. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXVII, 211. It may be that the theory of womanhood is right which forbids to women any such attempts. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXV, 279.

*β*) The use of a thing-complement with *from*, which appears to have been common enough in older English, is now rare; e.g.: He forbad Hilary Bishop of Narbonne from all metropolitan rights. HUSSEY, Papal Power, II, 61 (O. E. D., I, *e*). Observe that this construction is the usual one with the synonymous *to prohibit*.

*to foretell*: Are you the spirit, sir, whose coming was foretold me? DICK., Christm. Car., II, 28.

*to forgive*: i. He was to forgive me a small debt. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLVIII, 375 *b*.

ii. Can she ever forgive herself her own folly? TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXXVI, 282.

Note. *a*) The use of a person-complement with *to* appears to be common only in the passive conversion, as in: In saying all which, Captain Dale was no doubt very false; if falseness can be forgiven to a man in any position, it may be forgiven in that which he then filled. TROL., Small House I, Ch. IX, 96. (Compare: If she cries and has a red nose it is forgiven her. *id.*, He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXXVII, 297.)

*β*) Quite usual, on the other hand, is the construction with a thing-complement with *for*, as in: I can forgive him for everything. Sir, except his ignorance respecting my Dictionary. JOHNSON (FRANKF. MOORE, Jes. Bride, Ch. III, 26). Forgive me for bringing you here. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIII, 195 *b*.

*γ*) There is also a gerund-construction without *for*, as in: Please to forgive me my writing. GALSW., Silv. Spoon, I, Ch. III, 19.

*δ*) Both passive conversions appear to be in current use. For illustration of the primary, which is, presumably, the least common, see above. The secondary is used in: He had told himself that the woman should be forgiven her offence. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXII, 291.

*forward*: In reply to your favour I have this day forwarded you my illustrated catalogue by Parcels Post. PRIVATE CORRESP.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement appears to be the usual one; e.g.: We have this day forwarded to your address per S. W. R. three boxes marked [*etc.*]. O. E. D., *s.v.* *forward*, 3.

*β*) Only the primary conversion would be in ordinary use.

*to gain*: The shouting and yelling, which had gained the camp its infelicitous title, were not permitted within hearing distance of Stumpy's. BRET HARTE, Luck of Roaring Camp, 13.



Note *a*) As used in the above example, *to gain* may also be regarded as a transitive in a causative function (Ch. XLVI, 43). The construction with a person-complement with *for* also is quite usual; e.g.: His mind never reverted for a moment to that opinion which had gained for him such a round of applause. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XLVI, 355.

*β*) The secondary passive conversion is impossible, the primary would be unusual.

*to gather*: She gathered them flowers. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. XIV, 344.

Note *a*) A person-complement with *for* would be possible, but would convey another shade of meaning.

*β*) The primary passive conversion would be possible only with the *for*-complement.

*to get*: In the spring the wanton lapwing gets himself another crest. TEN., Locks! Hall, 18.

Note *a*) A complement with *for* would often be preferred to the person-object. One with *to* would but rarely be used instead (O. E. D., s.v. *get*, 18).

*β*) Only the primary passive conversion is admissible, but hardly with a non-prepositional object.

*give*: He does not readily give a stranger his confidence. O. E. D., s.v. *give*, 2, *b*.

I will give her a call as I pass. BEATR. HAR., Ships, Ch. IV, 15.

Note. Although *to give*, in its ordinary application, readily admits of the usual variations, it should not be concluded that this applies to all. Thus the construction with a *to*-complement could hardly be used instead of that with two non-prepositional objects in the second of the above examples. Nor would either passive conversion of it yield idiomatic English. Of the first of the above examples only the primary passive conversion would pass current. For further discussion see Ch. XLVII, 35, 40.

*to grant*: i. George III granted him a pension of £ 200. H. SWAN, Notes to Thack. The Four Georges, 132.

ii. He rebuked them for not granting the Frenchman his request. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 97.

iii. Yours is an old title, I grant you that. MARIE CORELLI, Mord. of Delicia, Ch. XI, 260.

Note *a*) In all three of the above applications the verb would often prefer a construction with a person-complement with *to*.

*β*) The primary passive conversion is, most probably, common enough in all three applications; the secondary is only admissible in the two first. According to SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2313) it is unusual (Ch. XLVII, 35). See, however, the instances in Ch. XLVII, 40.

*to grudge*: She grudged me a hundred pound to get me out of quod. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XIX, 208.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement may be as common; e.g.: He grudged to others the enjoyment denied to himself. FROUDE, O.C., Ch. XI, 174.

*β*) Either passive conversion appears to be impracticable.

*to guarantee*: (This) shall guarantee them a little life hereafter. GALSW., Fors., Pref.

If a man is guaranteed a good wage, there will be nothing to prevent him from going to his stall, heaving coal for half an hour, and then go to sleep for the rest of the day. Times, No. 1835, 170 *d*.

Note *a*) The construction appears to be uncommon. The ordinary construction is, most probably, that with a person-complement with *to*. The

O. E. D. (2) [has four examples. We copy one: In that case he promised to guarantee to the prince the earldoms of Holland and Zeeland. MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. III, 71.

β) Both passive conversions appear to be in common use.

*to hand*: Hand me the salt. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XII, 128.

He handed her over the cheque. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXI, 219.

Note. The secondary passive conversion would seem to be unusual; the following is an instance: Abdullah... was handed the dreadful decoction. A. E. W. MASON, The Winding Stair, Ch. IX, 110.

*to hear*: The teacher heard me my lesson. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 370.

Note. There is no alternative construction with a *to*-complement. Instances of either passive conversion have not come to hand, and are, no doubt, very rare.

*to hit*. The idea of hitting his enemy Osborne such a blow soothed, perhaps, the old gentleman. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XX, 211.

Note. α) The person-object admits of being replaced by a complement with *at*, as in: I lifted the stick and pretended to hit at it a back-handed blow. F. POLLOK, Sport Brit. B, I, 122. (O. E. D., 5).

β) No instances of passive conversion are available at the time of writing.

*to hold out*: Little Fanny walked boldly up to me, and held me out her little hand. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 37.

She held me out a box. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, X, Ch. IV, 300.

Note. Secondary passive conversion impossible.

*to impose*: Be thy tasks God imposed thee, or freaks at thy pleasure. BROWNING, Pippa passes, Introd., 18.

Note α) Instead of the construction with two non-prepositional objects, which appears to be rare, we mostly find that with a person-complement with (*up*), as in: Minos... imposed upon the Athenians a cruel tribute. JOWETT, Plato<sup>2</sup>, V, 58 (O. E. D., 4).

β) Only the primary passive conversion would be in current use.

*to insure*: You never spoke better in your life. Keep it up, and I'll insure you the victory. GOLDSM., She stoops, II, (188).

He failed, somehow, in spite of a mediocrity which ought to have insured any man a success. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IX, 87.

Note α) *Insure* is a rather uncommon spelling variant of *ensure*, and, most probably, may undergo the same structural modifications as the latter. We must confine ourselves to the following example: She had yet to determine... in what way she would insure to herself the power of carrying out her purpose. TROL., Gold. Lion, Ch. XV, 165.

β) There is, most probably, no secondary passive conversion.

*to intend*: I intended you no offence. GODWIN, Cal. Wil., Ch. III, 28.

Note. α) The construction with a *to*-complement appears to be unidiomatic: not a single instance has come to hand.

β) There is, most probably, no secondary passive conversion.

*to interdict*: In Italy... Women are interdicted the Pleasures of Society and Conversation. STEELE, Englishman, No. 9, 57 (O. E. D., 2).

Note. The verb appears to be mostly used in the passive voice: the thing-complement being generally furnished with *from*:

I was solemnly interdicted by her from touching my brother any more. DICK., Cop., Ch. VIII, 58 b.

*to keep*: This could be done by keeping their ally perfect faith. Westm. Gaz., No. 6642, 4 b.

Note. The construction seems to be an unusual one. There are two alternative constructions, one with *to* and one with *with*; the former, most probably, the ordinary one; e. g.: i. A gentleman should always keep his word to a lady. TROL., Last Chron., II, LXXX, 346 (O. E. D., 11)

ii. It is certain no Faith ought to be kept with Cheats. STEELE, Spect., No. 41 (O. E. D., 11).

*lay*: i. John lays you plots. SHAK., King John, III, 4, 146.

ii. I'll lay you both ten guineas a-piece that neither of them is so pretty, so witty, or so virtuous, as mine (sc. mistress). FARQUHAR, Const. Couple, I, 1, (49).

Note. In neither of the above applications of the verb would a *to*-complement as an alternative construction be admissible. Only the thing-object could be made the subject of a passive sentence.

*lead*: i. She led her parent the life of a dog. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXX, 239 b.

ii. A thief leads detectives a wild chase. Police News.

They will be led a giddy dance. Westm. Gaz., No. 8491, 5a.

Note. a) As used in the first of the above examples the verb may be understood as a transitive in a causative function. (Ch. XLV, 5, Ch. XLVI, 43; Ch. LIII, 4, Note 7). In all three any alternative construction with a preposition is out of the question.

β) In both applications the person-object can be made the subject of a passive sentence.

*to leave*: i. She left me a pretty property. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 184.

ii. You will leave us these testimonials, I suppose. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. XIV.

iii. A man leaves his wife the whole responsibility of managing a house. Westm. Gaz., No. 5543, 4a.

Note. Only in the application illustrated by the first example would the secondary passive conversion be possible; e.g.: Coulter—Kerr was an Englishman living in Calcutta, who had been left a great indigo-estate in the North-West by his uncle. W. LE QUEUX, An Eye for an Eye, Ch. XXIII, 123 b.

*to led blood*: Let them Blood in the Neck-Vein. BRADLEY, Fam. Dict., s.v. Garden (O. E. D. s.v. blood, 1, d).

Note a) According to the O.E.D. the combination is now obsolete. Compare, however. He let blood to whoever wished for that refreshment. BESANT, The World went very well then, Ch. I.

β) Passive conversion was, no doubt, common enough in older English.

*let off*: A third is willing to accept everything, if the Chancellor will only let him off the stamp duties. Westm. Gaz., No. 5042, 1e.

Note a) The thing object may be replaced by a complement with *from*, as in: I will let Clavering off from that bargain. THACK., Pend., Ch. LXX (O. E. D. 32).

β) Only the person-object admits of being made the subject of a passive sentence.

*to lend*: He lent his antagonist such a box on the ear, as made him stagger to the other side of the room. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIII, 81.

Note. In this particular meaning the verb hardly admits of any structural modifications.

*to lose*: His distresses have lost him the regard even of a brother. SHER., School II, 2, (383).

This lost him a probable scholarship. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 93.

Note. In these examples the verb may be apprehended as a transitive used in a causative function (Ch. XLVI, 43). Structural modifications are hardly possible.

*to make*: i. He made me a bet of a bowl of punch that [etc.]. II. Lond. News.

ii. Let me make you a present of the best fowl in the shop. DICK., Great Exp., Ch. XXV, 243

I suppose your papa will make you some allowance. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. XC, 324.

- iii. \* He made her no reply. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XI, 115.  
 You'd make me the same answer at th'end. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, Ch. VI, 66.  
 \*\* He made him a handsome speech of thanks. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 300.  
 \*\*\* If he is alive now, I make him my apologies. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. I, 22.  
 \*\*\*\* I made him a curtsey. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. III, 12.  
 iv. I immediately resolved to make him a visit. ADDISON, Spect.  
 v. She felt quite sure that Mr. Glascock would never make her another offer. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXXVI, 204. (Thus also *to make a person a promise*.)  
 vi. She made me a sign to leave him. NORRIS My Friend Jim, Ch. XVIII, 116.  
 vii. She will make him a good wife. J. PAYN, Luck of the Darrells I, Ch. VIII, 125.

Note *a*) As to the numerous combinations of *to make* with two non-prepositional objects it may be observed that, most probably, the first and the second admit of no structural modifications; the third would occasionally have a complement with *to*; the fourth and fifth would have such a complement quite commonly; the sixth would mostly prefer it to the alternative construction without *to*. In the last combination, in which *to make* approaches functionally to a copula (Ch. I, Ch. XLVI, 5, *b*), the *to*-complement would be rather unusual. We must confine ourselves to the following illustration:

- i. Nor was it possible that she would be able to make to Mrs. Askerton the visit of which they had been talking. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXIII, 305.  
 ii. Clara seems to be the very girl to make a good wife to such a one as I am. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 49.

*β*) *To* appears to be indispensable in the following combination: He had asked his cousin to be his wife, thereby making good his promise to his aunt. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XI, 139.

*γ*) Primary passive conversion seems to be possible of the second, third and fourth combinations.

*δ*) Instead of *to make a compliment (a visit)* it is now more usual to say *to pay a compliment (a visit)*. The former phrases were, however, quite common in the last century. Also the phrase *make my compliments to* (Dutch *doe mijn complimenten aan*), which is so frequently met with in 18th-century English, has given way to others, such as *present (send) my compliments to*. See SATTLER, E. S., VIII. Note also that we say: *That makes no difference (odds) to you*, etc., as in: A twenty-pound note more or less will make no odds to me. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIV, 258

*to mean*: He never meant me no harm. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 243.

This young dandy, who was making love to her, could mean her no good. OSC. WILDE, Dor. Gray, Ch. V, 89.

Note. No secondary passive conversion.

*to mete*. You did not know the measure you were going to mete me. HARDY, Return, III, Ch. V, 251.

Note *a*) Except for this particular combination, in which *measure* has the function of a cognate object, the verb appears to be regularly construed with a person-complement with (*un*)*to*. It is more often followed by *out* than not; e.g.: i. What punishment shall I mete to this thief? STANLEY, Dark Cont., II, XIII, 382 (O. E. D., 6).

ii. I cannot but think that a hard measure of justice was meted out to him. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. LIX, 353.



From this we can forecast the kind of measure they will mete out to the Trades Disputes Bill. Rev. of Rev., No. 198, 566 a.

Compare also: Let us mete to him with the same measure he measured to them. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. VII, 78.

β) Only the primary passive conversion appears to be possible.

*to nod*: The tipsy captain nodded him a welcome as he swaggered downstairs. THACK., Lov., Ch. I, 19.

Note α) The construction with a *to*-complement is, no doubt, frequent enough.

β) There is no passive conversion (Ch. LVII, 18, c).

*to obtain*: He obtained him liberty on parole. SCOTT, Wav., Introd. They are not so polished and elegant as ... other lyrical effusions of mine, which obtained me so much reputation in after life. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. I, 28.

Note α) In this application *to obtain* may also be regarded as a transitive with causative function (Ch. XLVI, 43). The construction with a person-complement with *for* would, however, be quite usual.

β) Passive conversion either way is out of the question.

*to occasion*: Her reserved nature occasions me great uneasiness of mind Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 278.

Note. No instances of alternative constructions have come to hand.

*to offer*: It was not in places of general resort ... that any avaricious or malevolent noble durst offer him injury. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. VII, 69.

I hope no one has offered you a rudeness. THACK., Lov., V, 90.

*to order*: The doctor orders me absolute quiet. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 169.

Note α) No alternative construction with a *to*-complement appears to be possible.

β) Passive conversion either way is quite usual.

*to owe*: i. The baronet owed his son a sum of money. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 90.

She ... owed her aunt everything. TROL., He knew he was right, II. Ch. LXXIII, 181.

ii. I owe you an apology for harassing you on such a subject at such a time. id., Belt. Est., Ch. XXI, 278.

iii. The act of one who owes us a grudge. O. E. D., 3.

Note α) The construction with a *to*-complement is quite as common, at least so far as the first application is concerned; e.g.: It was grievous to her to think that she should owe to him a bare pittance to keep her out of the workhouse. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. VIII, 95.

β) The primary passive conversion is unusual; the secondary is rare. Instances are found in: i. Christian Cantle ... was loitering about in the hope of a supper which was not really owed him. HARDY, Return, III, Ch. VII, 271.

There is an invalid in the house to whom attentions are owed. A. E. W. MASON, The House of the Arrow, Ch. VII, 88.

Much is also owed to the patience and forbearance of the French member Manch. Guard., VIII, 16, 3c.

ii. After the war the position was that Great Britain owed America about half what she was owed by Europe on account of war-loans. In addition she was owed whatever might be found due to her on account of German reparations. ib., 291, 1926, 82 a.

(He forgot) in the embarrassment of their happiness what he was owed. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. XII, 323.

*to pardon*: Well, sir, pardon me the question. BYRON, Manfred, II, I, (288 b).

Katharine pardoned him his pale face. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VIII, 152.



Note a) Instances of the construction with a *to*-complement, as in the following example, appear to be rare: This submi-sion, at first attributed to infidelity, has subsequently been pardoned to my husband. THACK., New c., I, Ch. III, 31.

Quite usual, on the other hand, is the use of a thing-complent with *for*, as in: Pardon me for neglecting to profit by your advice. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XVIII, 100.

β) The following constructions appear to be uncommon: i. Pardon me from dwelling so long on this sad theme. ANNA SEWARD, L et. IV, 81. (O. E. D., 3 b). ii. Modern poets may, therefore, be pardoned in seeking simpler subjects. SCOTT, Bridal of Triermain, Pref.

*to pass*: He passed him the mustard-pot. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. I, 6. Note. No secondary passive conversion.

*to pay*: He paid her rather more attention than usual. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. XXV, 90.

In the year "fourteen" it (sc. the City ball) was considered a proper compliment ... to pay the sovereigns. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 43.

Note a) All the ordinary structural modifications are more or less usual. Observe the difference between *to pay a person attentions* (Dutch *ie m a n d attenties bewijzen*) and *to pay a person attention*, or, which is more usual, *to pay attention to a person* (Dutch *ie m a n d a a n d a c h t s c h e n k e n*).

β) In the case of the compound *pay over*, *to* seems to be indispensable; thus in: I shall pay over to you the sum of fifteen hundred pounds, as soon as the will has been proved. TROL, Belt. Est., Ch. X, 118.

*to permit*: They hoped that health and strength would be permitted General Buller to further honour the noble profession to which he belonged. Graph.

*to play*: i. She played ner some waltzes. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXII, 235.

ii. It isn't a trick you are going to play me, now? G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. V, 161.

You have played me that dastardly trick. ANSTEV, Fal. Id., Ch. VII, 105.

Note a) In the first combination a *to*-complement is, perhaps, more frequent; in the second we often find a complement with (*up*)*on*, and occasionally one with *with*; e.g.: i. In the evening she played some of her favourite pieces to the guests assembled round her fireside.

ii. \* She gave her mother to understand that, if any trick were played upon her, the diocese should be made to ring of it. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LIV, 38.

He played the same trick upon her that he did on me. ANSTEV, Fal. Id., Ch. VIII, 120.

\*\* Destiny plays strange tricks with us when opportunity is our need. MAX PEMBERTON, Doct. Xavier, Ch. X, 52 b.

β) Either passive conversion is admissible; e.g.: He had been played that trick too many times to be unprepared. HARDY, Jude, II, Ch. V, 131.

*to pledge*: i. Well, you have pledged me one cup to your lady, pledge me another to the fair Irene. LYTTON, Rienzi, III, Ch. III, 138.

ii. How are we to trust men whom we now know to have been plotting our destruction when they were pledging us their friendship. Westm. Gaz., No. 7577, 4 b.

Note a) In the first combination a *to*-complement would be highly unusual; in the second it would be common enough.

β) Secondary passive conversion unusual.

*to point out*: What, if these weird seizures come | Upon you in those lands, and no one near | To point you out the shadow from the truth! TEN., Princ., I, 82.

A hundred different ways of disenchanting him exist, and Adrian will point you out one or two that shall be instantly efficacious. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXVII, 212.

Note *α*) The alternative construction with a *to*-complement is, most probably, the more usual one.

*β*) The primary passive conversion is, in all likelihood, common enough, the secondary would hardly be tolerated by idiom.

*to portend*: There were, two or three nights ago, some fiddles heard in the streets, which I am afraid portend me no good. ADDISON, Spect., No. 311.

Note *α*) The construction with a *to*-complement would, not improbably, be preferred by some; e.g.: The croak of the raven can portend no harm to such a man. FARRAR, Seekers, II, iv, 225 (O. E. D. 1, *a*).

*β*) There would rarely be occasion for the use of either passive conversion. *to pour out*: Sir Pylcher himself poured me out a glass. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XVII, 119.

Cyril gravely poured him out a glass of foaming ale. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, III, Ch. II, 264.

Note *α*) The alternative construction with a person-complement with *for* has a slightly different meaning. Compare *to fill*.

*β*) Only the primary passive conversion is possible.

*to preach*: "Love ruins me, my dear boy," he said, thinking to preach Richard a lesson. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXV, 192.

Do not preach me sermons to-night. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXVII, 209.

Note *α*) The construction with a *to*-complement would seem to be at least as frequent; e.g.: She preached to him a solemn sweet lesson on the wickedness of yielding to momentary impulses. TROL., Belt Est., Ch. XXII, 294.

*β*) Presumably the secondary passive conversion is rarely, if ever, used.

*to prescribe*: Prescribe not us our duties. SHAK., Lear, I, 1, 279.

Note *α*) This construction may be less common than the one with a *to*-complement.

*β*) Both passive conversions are admissible, but the secondary would mostly be avoided. The O. E. D. (2, *b*), gives two examples, one of which is copied here: And ten were prescribed the whip, and ten a brand on the cheek. BROWNING, Ned Bratts, 37.

*to present*: You all did see that on the Lupercal I thrice presented him a kingly crown. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 93.

Note. In this and other applications the construction with a *to*-complement seems to be more usual, e.g.: i. And eight years past, eight jousts had been, and still | Had Lancelot won the diamond of the year, | With purpose to present them to the Queen, | When all were won. TEN, Lanc. & El., 70.

ii. He presented to them a prince unable to speak a word of English. 11. Lond. News.

*β*) Very common also is the use of a construction with *with* before the name of the thing presented, as in: Captain Dobbin had asked leave to present her with a gold watch and chain. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXII, 228.

*γ*) The secondary passive conversion would be less usual than the primary. *to prevent*. He prevented me this trouble. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 106.

Note. Apparently a rare construction; not registered in the O. E. D. The Dictionary (7, *b*) however, has *prevent me going*, which appears to be short for *prevent me from going*, perhaps influenced by *prevent my going*.

*to procure*: The mere chance of becoming a baronet's daughter can procure a lady such homage in the world. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XV, 161.

Masaccio procured him that interview in the garden with his pretty cousin. BROWN., *Soul's Trag.*, II.

Could you procure me specimens? O. E. D., 5, *a*.

Note *a*) When the person-object is a reflexive pronoun, it is mostly dropped; thus in: At a heavy expense I procured the rods. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

*β*) The construction with a *for*-complement is a very common one; e. g.: He knew well who it was that had procured for him that comfort. TROL., *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. I, 9.

What a great good fortune my dear wife's conduct procured for me! THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 178.

*γ*) There is, of course, no secondary passive conversion.

*to produce*: A first cousin of mine had a Nova Scotia sheep that produced her twins. SHER., *School*, I, I, (371).

It produces me a good fifteen hundred a year. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 66.

Nota *a*) Also construed with a person-complement with *for*, as in: The true principle is to produce for one's self what one can best produce, and with the product buy elsewhere that which others can best produce. *Westm. Gaz.*, 6/9, 1901, 9/*a*. (O. E. D. 3, *d*).

*β*) The primary passive conversion is naturally quite common; the secondary is impossible.

*to prohibit*: Green tea was prohibited the house. MRS. GASK, *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 240.

Note. According to the O. E. D. (3, *c*) this construction is now obsolete or archaic. Very common is the construction with *from* + gerund(-clause), as in: There is no Act ... prohibiting the Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs from being in the pay of continental powers. MAC., *Clive*, (522 *a*).

The ship was prohibited from sailing. *id.*, *Hampton* (204 *b*).

*β*) Less usual are those illustrated in: (This motive) prohibits my sending forth this essay printed with the types of Caxton. SCOTT (quoted in *Lytton*, *Pomp.* Pref.).

ii. I opened a school and was prohibited to teach. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. XII, 75.

*γ*) The examples show that passive conversion is in great favour.

*to promise*: He was promised a new coat. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 187.

*to prophesy*: He prophesied her success in the metropolis. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 144.

For the man that prophesies us bad weather ... we entertain only bitter and revengeful thoughts. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. V, 54.

Note. All the ordinary structural modifications are, not improbably, possible.

*to provide*: I sent for Joram, and begged him to provide me a conveyance. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LVI, 397 *a*.

Take the goods the gods provide you. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXV, 335.

Note *a*) The alternative constructions, both of them quite common, are those with a person-complement with *for*, or a thing-complement with *with*; e. g.: i. She left a good round sum, part of it to her relations, but part in various bequests: so much to support starving cats, so much to provide flannel petticoats for old women in the workhouse. RUSKIN, *Sesame & Lilies*.

She did not ... expect that, for her, young pleasures should be provided. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. I, 9.

ii. He had provided himself with a strong line. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (150). Mary has been indefatigably kind in providing me with information. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 160.

*β*) The thing-object is understood in: It is hard work to provide for the little tender wants of many young children where the means are but limited. *ib.*, 34.

;) Quite obsolete is the construction with a thing complement with *of*, as in: I am provided of a torch-bearer. SHAK., Merch., II, 4, 24.

He had provided the king of sustenance. Bible, Sam., B, XIX, 32.

δ) The two passive conversions illustrated by the following examples are quite common: i. A seat in the banquet over the heads of the American ladies was provided for them. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXXVII, 291. ii. His valet (was) provided with phosphoric matches. SOPHIA LEE, Canterb. T., Yng Lady's T., II, 167 (O. E. D. 8, a)..

*to put*: Yesterday I put them a question. Westm. Gaz., 2016, 1925, 203b. Note a) The construction with a *to*-complement is far more common; e.g.: He put this question to himself as he travelled down to Exeter. TROL., He knew he was right, II Ch. 41, 11.

β) Secondary passive conversion unusual.

*to quote*: He used to quote me pages out of Voltaire. MRS. WARD, Tres., III, Ch. XXIII, 195b.

Note a) The construction is an unusual one, that with a person-complement with *to* being, most probably, more common.

β) Only the primary passive conversion would seem to be practicable.

*to raise*: His reputation raised him enemies. JOHNSON, Lives, Dryden, 245. The Lord raised them up deliverers. ALFORD, Queen's Eng., § 442.

Note. There would hardly be any call for alternative constructions.

*to reach*: Reach me the colchicum. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 402.

Note. No alternative construction but one with a *to*-complement; only primary passive conversion.

*read*: i. Mr. Allworthy failed not to read Tom a very severe lecture on this occasion. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. XI, 57b.

ii. Instead of hearing their proposals the aged monarch read them his terms. Rev. of Rev., No. 91, 341b.

iii. Read me my fortune. BESANT, St. Kath. Ch. VIII.

iv. He read her some poems. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXII, 235.

He read me some portions of the Great Work. LYTTON, Caxt., IV, Ch. II, 87.

Note a) In the combination illustrated by the two last examples the construction with *to* is the more usual one; thus in: He took Lady Rowley aside, and read to her the letter. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXXV, 273. The young lady was reading to him a play of Shakespeare. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 161.

β) No secondary passive conversion.

*to recommend*: Let me recommend you a little of this pike! DISRAELI, Viv. Grey, V, Ch. XV (O. E. D., 5, a).

She may have had some fear that her father-in-law would recommend her to go straight to the Rectory. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. XVII, 109.

*to refuse*: They refused him the permission. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 97.

*to reimburse*: His friends in Leadenhall Street proposed to reimburse him the costs of his trial. MAC., War. Hast., (655 a).

Note a) A construction with a thing-complement with *for* would seem to be at least as common, one with *of* is now obsolete; e.g.: i. reimbursing yourself for your charges. FLÜGEL, Dict.

ii. The Colonists were reimbursed by Parliament of all the expenses incurred by them in this expedition. BEATSON, Nav. & Mil. Mem., I, 266. (O. E. D., 2).

β) Secondary passive conversion is, no doubt, common enough; e.g.: I will send you an account of the expense I have been at in your education, with a view of being reimbursed (sc. for the expenditure). SMOL., Rod. Rand. Ch. I, 1.



*to relate*: She told him a score of tales, which her gossiping friends had just related her. WASH. IRV., DOLF. HEYL., (120).

Note a) The construction appears to be unusual. The O. E. D. has one more example dated 1652. The construction with *to* is, no doubt, the ordinary one.

β) Only the primary passive conversion is admissible.

*to remit*: My father was behindhand in remitting her money. MISS BRAD., AUDI., II, Ch. IX, 171.

Note a) The construction with a *to*-complement is, probably, far more common.

β) The secondary passive conversion would hardly be admissible.

*to render*: i. I have given him a penny, and he renders me the beggarly thanks. SHAK., AS YOU LIKE IT, II, 5, 29.

ii. I beseech your Lordship to render me my knife again. BEAUM. & FLETCH., KING & NO. KING, III, 2 (O. E. D., 3).

iii. I feel indebted to you for the service you have rendered me. MARRYAT, CHILDREN OF THE NEW FOREST, Ch. XVII (O. E. D., 12).

He hastened to Hamburg to render the sore-stricken city the aid it so greatly needed. REV. OF REV.

Note a) The construction with a *to*-complement is available in all three of the above combinations.

β) Either passive conversion is, probably, admissible, but seems to be rarely called for.

*to request*: Let me request thee this: Go to the new-made nunnery. MARL., JEW OF MALTA, III, 3 (O. E. D., 3, b).

Note a) This construction with two non-prepositional objects, both represented by a (pro)noun, seems at no time to have been in any favour, and is now quite obsolete. Quite usual, on the other hand, is that in which the thing-object is represented by an infinitive(-clause); thus in: Butler requested them to open the gate. SCOTT, HEART OF MID-LOTHIAN, Ch. VII, 83.

β) The constructions with *of* or *from* in the person-complement seem to be rather unusual; e.g.: i. All I request of you is that you will reflect upon this infirmity. SHER., RIV., V, 1.

ii. I request from you the same zeal and fidelity for my grandson. CON. DOYLE, REFUGEES, 384.

γ) Only the passive construction in connexion with an infinitive is at all common; thus in: You are requested to come as soon as possible.

*to resign*: I began to beg for Zillah's place at the Heights, offering to resign her mine. EM. BRONTË, WUTH. HEIGHTS, Ch. XXIX, 143 a.

Note a) The construction seems to be unusual, that with a *to*-complement mostly taking its place; thus in: They have just resigned their business to their eldest son. LYRTON, NIGHT & MORN., 509.

β) Only the primary passive conversion is admissible.

*to restore*: He took an immediate resolution to go himself, and endeavour to restore his Pamela her brother. FIELD., JOS. ANDR., IV, Ch. V, 210.

I come here to restore a parent his child. DICK., NICK., Ch. XLV, 297 b.

Note a) This construction, although not registered in the O. E. D., appears to be fairly common. However the construction with a *to*-complement is, probably, the usual one.

β) Secondary passive conversion hardly possible.

*to return*: The fellow, instead of returning him an answer, told him, that he hoped that his honour would pay his forfeit. ADDISON, SPECT., No. 329.

Very few returned me even the civility of a bow. FIELD., JOS. ANDR., III, Ch. III, 144.



The Lord Chancellor . . . returns him many thanks for a very agreeable morning's amusement. *Nichols, Anecd.*, IX, 263 (O. E. D., 20).

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement is, no doubt, a rather frequent variant.

*β*) The secondary passive conversion is, probably, inadmissible.

*to save*: i. He saved me a steward. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 71.

ii. He might have saved himself that mystification. *Times*.

Note *a*) The verb mostly takes *from* before the (pro)noun denoting what is regarded as an evil, a punishment, or inconvenience; thus in: He enjoyed my placard so much, that he saved me from the embarrassment of either disclosure or concealment. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. VI, 42 *b*.

I'm not one who wants to be saved from working by a wife's fortune. *TROL. Belt. Est.*, Ch. IV, 51.

*β*) The primary passive conversion appears to be less usual than the secondary; e. g.: i. Half Prague's troubles . . . might have been saved to it, had it possessed windows less large and temptingly convenient. *JEROME. Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. VIII, 148.

Then all this unnecessary labour would be saved to them. *ib.*, Ch. X, 181.

ii. Elinor began to find this impertinence too much for her temper; but she was saved the trouble of checking it. *JANE AUSTEN, Sense and Sens.*, Ch. XXXII, 216.

She will be saved the tedium of waiting about. *R. AUSTIN FREEMAN, The Cat's Eye*, Ch. XVI, 227.

*to say*: i. Godfrey has never been the man to say me an unkind word. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XVII, 137.

ii. I will sit here and say you some of Bjornson's songs. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. XVII, 161.

iii. Every time I have seen you I have loved you more. Don't say me nay — you don't know how I love you. *RID. HAG., Jess.*, Ch. IV, 36.

Note *a*) Except for the locution *to say a person nay* the person-object almost regularly has *to*.

*β*) Only primary passive conversion is possible, and that exclusively of *to say* in the first application.

*to scrawl*: Costigan scrawled him an order for a box. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 59.

Note *a*) A *for*-complement might take the place of the person-object.

*β*) Only primary passive conversion.

*to secure*: Some Birkenhead friends had secured me a compartment. *ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography*.

Note *a*) The construction appears to be an unusual one. The O. E. D., (s. v. *secure*, 3, i) pronounces it rare, giving only one example, with the verb in the passive voice: You shall be secured an opportunity of being fully heard. *SCOTT, Castle Dangerous*, Ch. XII.

*β*) The ordinary construction is that with *to* or *for*; e. g.: i. I know but one way of fortifying my soul against these gloomy presages and terrors of mind. and that is by securing to myself the friendship and protection of that Being who disposes of events, and governs futurity. *ADDISON, Spect.*, No. 7.

ii. He tries to secure fair play for every speaker. *Times*.

*β*) Only the primary passive conversion seems to be possible.

*to send*: I send you the Orphan of the Forest. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

*to sell*: I won't give you the book, but I will either lend it you, or sell it you, whichever you like. O. E. D., s. v. *give*, 1.

Note. The secondary passive conversion would have an incongruous effect.

*to serve*: i. I remember an honest gentleman who was served such a trick in Charles II's time. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 335.

You never in your life served me a worse turn than when you prevented me from hitting that man. W. E. NORRIS, *Major & Minor* III, 249 (O. E. D., 45).

ii. The frugal dinner which Mad. Fribsby served him. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 159.

Note *a*) In the first application the alternative construction would, most probably, be that with an (*up*)*on*-complement, in the second it would be that with a *to*-complement.

*3*) In the first application both passive conversions are possible; in the second only the primary; e.g.: The Colonel's breakfast was served to him in the same dingy .. plated ware. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XVIII, 193.

*to set*: You are charged with setting them the example of desertion. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXI, 93 *b*.

ii. Shakespeare seems to have set himself the task of realising the situation of a man oscillating between the evidence of two worlds. WATTS DUNTON, *AYLWIN*, Pref. to 2nd. Ed.

Note. The above are only a couple of the numerous possible combinations of *to set* with two non-prepositional objects. Both of them would admit of the ordinary structural modifications.

*to set up*: I don't think she encourages him so much for gaining herself a lover, as to set me up a rival. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, III, 2 (290).

Note. The construction with a *to*-complement would, no doubt, be admissible: thus also the primary passive conversion.

*to shoot*: She shot him a glance which was not meek. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. I, 5*b*.

Note *a*) A person-complement with *at* mostly takes the place of the person-object; thus in: That they were conscious of the presence of the intruders appeared only from the sullen and indignant glances which they shot at them. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XXXIII, 327.

*3*) Only the thing-object can, of course, be made the subject of a passive conversion.

*to show*: I will show you his letter; — though I am sure he didn't mean that I should show it to any one. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LVII, 60.

*to sing*: Ask him to sing you 'The Little Pig under the Bed'. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 55.

I am sure I have sung you ten songs at least. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 258.

Note *a*) A person-complement with *to* or *for* would sometimes take the place of the person-object: e.g.: Williams has taught me two songs, and I'll sing them for you. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVII, (337).

*3*) The verb admits only of the primary passive conversion.

*to smile*: Mrs. Fairfax will smile you a calm welcome. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXII, 297.

Note. The verb admits of no structural modifications (Ch. XLVII, 18, *c*).

*to spare*: i. He wishes to spare me a great deal of trouble. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 57*a*.

ii. God spare her that! MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XL, 397.

iii. Can you spare me a dance? RUDY. KIPL., *Gadsb.*, 13.

iv. Lord Morley might well have spared us speculations as to what he might or might not do, if his Ministerial existence were prolonged for another half-century. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 229, 13*a*.

Note *a*) There is an alternative construction with a person-complement with *to* and one with a thing-complement with *from*. The former, comparatively unusual, may be connected with the verb in the second and third

applications; the latter with the verb in the second and fourth and, perhaps, the first applications. There is a difficulty in discriminating between the various shades of meaning of this verb; e.g.: i. \* For my sake spare the gyves and the dungeon to some unhappy Christian. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. VI, 61.

I have a brother to whom my poor mother spared the rod, and who, I fear, has turned out but a spoilt child. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. III, 37.

\*\* You know I am not too proud to take anything you can spare to us. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XLIII, 331.

ii. \* Spare my boy from knowledge of this man! DICK., *Barn: Rudge*, Ch. XVII, 67*a*.

Your mother has interfered wisely to spare me from this. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XIII, 159.

\*\* It would have spared her from explanations and professions which it was exceedingly awkward to give. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIX, 370.

β) Both passive conversions are in actual use, but the primary one is more or less unusual (Ch. XLVII, 35, *a*, 4*ii*); the following are examples: That danger... at any rate is spared our brother. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 189.

Long may the survivors be spared to the country. *Daily Mail*.

*to stake*: I cannot stake my Sicilian (sc. cook) — you have nothing so precious to stake me in return. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. III, 17*a*.

Note. There would be no other structural modification than the primary passive conversion.

*to stand*: William said he'd stand the cabby a drink. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XXIX, 207.

Note. There are not, apparently, any structural modifications.

*to strike*: He struck the table a heavy blow. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. III, 17*a*.

Note. The primary passive conversion would be the only possible structural modification.

*to sweep*: She drank his health and swept him the prettiest curtsy. HALL CAINE, *Christ.*, II, 40.

He had fallen into a sudden silence, which made her sweep him a look of scrutiny as she took her candle-stick. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, I, Ch. II, 12*a*.

Note. There are no current structural modifications.

*to take*: Hadn't I better go back and take the fellow your message? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, III.

Perhaps I might take her a little preserve. MRS. GASK., *North & South.*, Ch. XX, 124.

I promised to take them some flowers. MRS. WARD, *Mar c.*, I, 44.

He has promised to take you a little present from me. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, 250.

Here: take George his hat and stick with my compliments. SHAW., *Mrs. War. Prof.*, II, (188).

I have took him in some negus. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, Ch. V, 481.

Note α) Although the O. E. D. does not register a single example of the verb being construed with two non-prepositional objects (see the ninth group of senses), the construction appears to be common enough. This does not, of course, mean that it is as usual as the construction with the *to*-complement. Observe also the construction in such a sentence as: Suppose he took her up that Chardin. GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, III, Ch. XI, 311.

β) Secondary passive conversion appears to be impossible (Ch. XLVII, 36).

γ) In such sentences as the following it may be assumed that a preposition is understood, before the second noun, which is to be regarded as an adverbial adjunct: I took him a ride over the common. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 34.

Take me a walk before dinner. Mrs. WARD, *The Mar. of Wil. Ashe* II, 48. (T.).

I took John a new way. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 122.

*to teach*: He was teaching a little boy tricks. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53. I will teach my old schoolmaster a more useful lesson than he ever taught to me. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. IV, 38. (Observe the varied practice.) Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement, although not so common as that without, is not particularly rare. Thus we have it in: He was to be found every day from nine till four, teaching a little learning to the little boys. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 150.

I learnt the latter language in order to help to teach it to him. RID. HAG., *She*, Ch. II, 21.

*β*) Both passive conversions are in current use, but the secondary is more common than the primary thus *He was taught Latin* is preferred to *Latin was taught him* (O. E. D., II). Compare 50, *a*).

*to telegraph*: Five minutes later I had telegraphed Helen my acceptance of her invitation. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 8.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement is, presumably, more common; e.g.: Our Special Correspondent telegraphs to us that he has received General Joubert's permission to remain as our correspondent with the Boer forces. *Times*.

*β*) There is no secondary passive conversion.

*to tell*: Who told you that? O. E. D., s.v. *tell*, 3.

*to tender*: I tendered the cabman eighteen pence. PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, D, 56.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement may be as frequent; e.g.: He tendered to her Majesty's Government the enthusiastic support of the citizens of London. *Times*.

*β*) No secondary passive conversion.

*to throw*: The officers threw her flowers. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IV, 50.

Warrington one day threw him a letter across the table. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

I wish people threw me such things. EDNA LYALL, *Kn. Er.*, Ch. XVII, 144.

He threw me a word as he passed. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 201 *a*. Throw me a rope. O. E. D., 8.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement seems to be common only when the notion of the mechanical action, as distinct from that of giving or passing, is foremost in the speaker's thoughts, as in: You look like the idiot we throw our nut-shells to at school. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 54.

The King of Spain has after all thrown his handkerchief to an English princess. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 194, 118 *b*.

*β*) Secondary passive conversion highly unusual, if not impossible.

*to tip*: i. Did not you observe me tip you the wink, to leave off in time. SMOL., *Rod. Rand*, Ch. XIV, 91.

I tipped him several more (sc. nods), and he was in great spirits. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXV, 248.

ii. I resolved ... that ... I would not tip Snakes so much as a threepenny bit. *Il. Mag.*

Note *a*) In the first combination the construction with a *to*-complement is, no doubt, frequent enough; e.g.: The lad tipped a wink to Joey. MARRYAT, *Poacher*, Ch. XXII (O. E. D., 3).

In the second it is impossible, but the thing-object is sometimes exchanged for a complement with *with*; thus in: Then I, sir, tips me the verger with half a crown. FARQUHAR, *Beaux' Strat.*, II, 2, (378).

*β*) There appears to be little or no occasion for the use of either passive conversion.



*to transmit*: (He) expressed his satisfaction and respect by transmitting him the title of Counsellor. CARL., Schiller, II, 78.

I shall do myself the pleasure of transmitting you an order. BUS. LET. Writ. Note a) The construction with a *to*-complement is, probably, the usual one.

β) Secondary passive conversion appears to be hardly possible.

*to turn*: Most of his old acquaintances turned him the cold shoulder. MAR. CRAWF., Don. Orsino.

Note a) The phrase seems to be unusual: it is not registered in the O. E. D., which has *to show* or *to give the cold shoulder*, and registers one instance with *to tip the cold shoulder*. For the rest *to turn* has (up)on in phrases of a similar import, such as *to turn one's back on a person*; e.g.: Just when I was down, you turned your back on me. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XV, 280.

β) Neither passive conversion is admissible.

*to usher*: He went with a smiling face and a light step. Lady Margaret ushering him the way. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XXIV, 286.

Note. There appears to be no occasion for any structural modification.

*to vote*: The Pickwick Club ... voted Mr. Pickwick a pair of gold spectacles. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XI, 99.

James called another Parliament, which voted him money. GARDINER, Outl. of Eng. Hist., 212.

Note a) The O. E. D. has no example of the verb being construed with two non-prepositional objects. The construction, however, appears to be common enough. Of the alternative construction with a *to*-complement no instance has come to hand, and it may be uncommon.

β) Probably both passive conversions would be admissible.

*to vouchsafe*: Good my lord, vouchsafe me a word with you. SHAK., Haml., III, 2, 307.

He vouchsafed me no answer. Vouchsafe me a visit. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict.

Note. Only the primary passive conversion appears to be usual; e.g.: For a moment a little gift of vision was vouchsafed to Jim Forbisher. A. E. W. MASON, The House of the Arrow, Ch. VIII, 100.

*to wage*: And some men over bold ... | Had waged them war. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Prol., 15a.

Note a) The construction with a person-complement with (up)on, with or against is the usual one; e.g.: i. For many a petty king ere Arthur came | Ruled in this isle and ever waging war | Each upon other, wasted all the land. TEN., Com. of Arth., 6.

ii. And knowest thou from whence I come — from him, | From waging bitter war with him. id., Guin., 431.

iii. At dawn (he) arose | To wage hot war against his speechless foes. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Atal. Race, XXIX.

β) There is no occasion for either passive conversion.

*to wager*: I'll wager the rascals a crown. GOLDS., She stoops, I, (173). I'm ready to wager any man ten pound. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. VI, 45.

Note a) There is no alternative construction with a preposition-complement.

β) The primary passive conversion alone is admissible; thus in: Everything dear to nations was wagered on both sides. MAC., Hist., VI, II, 137 (O. E. D., 2).

*to wave*: This brave woman ... waved them a cheer as they passed. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

She waved them an adieu from the window. ib., 320.

Note a) An alternative construction with a *to*-complement would be admissible.

β) There is no passive conversion (Ch. LVII, 18, c).



*to will*: We fell to discussing the settlement of the property that her husband had willed my daughter. SAVAGE, *My Of. Wife*, 149.

Note. All the ordinary structural modifications, although, no doubt, unusual, would seem to be possible.

*to win*: His learning ... at once won him the friendship of Johnson. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § 2, 770.

Note *a*) Like *to earn* and *to gain*, *to win*, as used in this example may be apprehended as a transitive used in a causative meaning (Ch. XLVI, 43). A construction with a *for*-complement instead of the person-object would, no doubt, be common enough.

*β*) The secondary passive conversion would not be possible, and the primary would be unusual.

*to wire*: Sir Edward Grey wires Sir F. Bertie that he told the German Ambassador in London not to be misled into thinking that England would stand aside if all the efforts made in the cause of peace failed. Eng. Rev., No. 70, 220.

Note *a*) As in the case of *to telegraph*, the construction with a *to*-complement, appears to be quite natural.

*β*) The secondary passive conversion would hardly be good English.

*to wish*: i. Doctor Beiram wished the baronet success. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVIII, 123.

ii. If wishing you joy would get you joy, I would wish it you while I lived. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXVII, 209.

iii. It's kind of you to wish us an Irish row. Mrs. WARD, *Marcc.* III, Ch. VIII, 390.

iv. He wished her good-bye. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 52.

Note *a*) In all the above combinations the alternative construction with a *to*-complement would be possible, though more or less unusual; e.g.: We wish to all our readers a happy and a prosperous year in 1925. *Westm. Gaz.*, 3/1, 1925, 291 *a*.

*β*) Neither passive conversion would appear to be distinctly exceptionable, although there would not often be occasion for either.

*to work*: The star-seers tell us that we feel a secret and uncontrollable antipathy to those whose astral influences destine them to work us evil. LYTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. IV, 107.

She wrought her people lasting good. TEN., *To the Queen*, VI.

Note *a*) There is an alternative construction with (*upon*), which, however, appears to be unusual; e.g.: Marie Bromar then asked Adrian Urmand to pardon her the evil she had wrought upon him. TROL., *Gold. Lion*, Ch. XXI, 239.

*β*) There is no secondary passive conversion.

*to write*: You wrote me word that you would send them the boy. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXXVI, 282.

I'll write you a line down-stairs. *id.*, *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXIV, 318.

He wrote me a very warm letter of thanks. *Manch. Guard.*, 11/6, 1926, 429 *c*.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement is, presumably, common enough, and appears to be the rule when the thing-object is represented by a subordinate statement; e.g.: Would I write to you such a letter as that? TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXIII, 304.

He wrote to his parents that he could not come.

*β*) This construction is frequently replaced by one in which *to tell* is placed before the person-object, as in: Will you write and tell Mr. Peggotty that I am not so bad as they might suppose. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 31 *a*.

Compare also: You'll write me a line to say when the shed is finished. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. VI, 75.

She had determined to remain in Florence, and had written to her husband

saying that she would do so. *id.* He knew he was right. II, Ch. LXXXVIII, 298.

γ) There is no secondary passive conversion.

*to yield*: i. Unless he yielded me the accommodation, I would give him a taste of my steel. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 86.

In all things she yields him wifely duty. JEROME, John Ingerfield, 45.

ii. I yielded myself this luxury. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. XX, 109.

iii. Mrs. Pendennis was willing to yield her up the first place. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 81.

Note α) A *to*-complement to take the place of the person-object would be admissible in all the three applications of the verb; e.g.: The boundless wealth of this 'province covered with houses' would yield to an enemy the most splendid prize in the world. Good Words.

β) Secondary passive conversion seems inadmissible.

45. In the case of some verbs that may be construed with two non-prepositional objects, the thing-object is regularly represented by an infinitive( clause) or a subordinate statement, most of them preferring the former, only a few the latter. With a few exceptions the alternative construction with a *to* complement is impossible or, at least, very uncommon. The primary passive conversion is naturally out of the question (See, however, Ch. XLVII, 16, *d*). The secondary passive conversion is exceedingly common with some of them.

*to adjure*: Frederic, falling on his knees, adjured the phantom to take pity on him. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. V, 176.

Note. Passive conversion appears to be unfrequent.

*to admit*: (They) had admitted him to join hand with them. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. VII, 64.

Note. Passive conversion is not unusual. See the examples in O. E. D., I, *c*.

*to advertise*: I do also advertise the most reverend fathers, the Eastern missionaries, that I have ... made use of such words and phrases as will best admit an easy turn into any of the oriental languages. SWIFT, Tale of a Tub, IV, (68 *b*).

Note. Passive conversion seems incongruous.

*to advise*: My host advised me to avail myself of the promising weather. TYNDALL, Glac., I, § 16, 104 (O. E. D., 9).

Note. Passive conversion very frequent.

*to assure*: I assure you these things are worthy your consideration. STEELE, Spect., No. 508 (O. E. D., 10).

Note. Passive conversion very frequent.

*to beckon*: The gentleman beckoned him to approach. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 151.

She beckoned me to follow her up the staircase. DICK., Cop., Ch. L, 356 *b*.

Note α) The construction with a *to*-complement appears to be at least as frequent; e.g.: He beckoned to the startled Stubmore to approach. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 160.

We beckoned to him ... to open the door. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LI, 400 *a*.

Lady Clavering beckoned to him to come up to her. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 273.

Louvois beckons to him to advance. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 20.

β) No passive conversion.

*to beteem*: So loving to my mother, | That he might not beteem the winds of heaven | Visit her face too roughly. SHAK., Hamlet, I, 2, 141.

Note. No passive conversion.

*to caution*: He cautioned me not to let so good an offer pass. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. XII.

Note. Passive conversion common.

*to certify*: Besides, Antonio certified the Duke, | They were not with Bassanio in his ship. SHAK., Merch., II, 8, 10.

Sir, if you please to give me a small certificate of three lines; — only to certify those whom it may concern, that the bearer thereof, Jeremy Fetch by name, has for the space of seven years, truly and faithfully served Valentine Legend, Esq. CONGREVE, Love for Love, I, 1, (201).

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement may be as common, but no instances have come to hand. Nor does the O. E. D. give any.

*β*) Passive conversion unidiomatic.

*to commission*: I commissioned a mutual friend to break the matter to this gentleman. THACK., Snobs, I, 14.

Note. Passive conversion quite common.

*to conjure*: The prisoner ... conjured Jeanie to tell her the particulars of the conference with Robertson. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. XX, 228.

Note. Passive conversion common.

*to counsel*: No: rather will I go to Benedick | And counsel him to fight against his passion. SHAK., Much ado, III, 1, 83.

Note. Passive conversion common.

*to direct*: He directed the officers of the garrison at Fort William and of all the neighbouring stations to obey no orders but his. MAC., War. Hist., (618 b).

Note. Passive conversion quite common.

*to entreat*: I entreated Miss Mills to see me that evening. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVIII, 276 a.

Note. Passive conversion common.

*to implore*: I implored him to spare her gentle nature. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVIII, 276 a.

Note. Passive conversion common.

*to motion*: Philip motioned him to be silent. LYTON, Night & Morn., 494. That gentleman, motioning Brittles to retire, brought in the two ladies. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXXI, 277.

One of them motioned me to follow. SAM. BUTLER, Erewhon, Ch. VI, 51.

Note *a*) The construction with a *to*-complement seems to be less usual; e.g.: She motioned to the handmaid to take the vase. LYTON, Pomp., II, Ch. VI, 50 a.

The tall Ethiopian slave ... motioned to her to proceed. *ib.*, II, Ch. IX, 57 a,

*β*) No passive conversion.

*to notify*: Sir A. Milner addressed to the President of the Orange-Free-State last week a telegram notifying him that [etc]. Times.

A proclamation was posted last evening in the district of Carrick-on-Shannon by the military authorities notifying the people that all fairs and markets are prohibited for the present. Daily Telegraph, 17/3, 1921.

Note *a*) The construction without *to* seems to be usual only when the thing-object is represented by a subordinate statement. With the above examples compare the following, in which *to* appears to be indispensable: The directors notified to him their high approbation. MAC., War. Hist., (601 b).

*β*) Passive conversion unusual. For illustration see O. E. D., 4.

*to pray*: He prayed God fervently to forgive him. SWEET, Old Chapel.

Note *a*) Also quite frequently with a *to*-complement; thus in: I pray to God night and day to send him safely back to me. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. IX, 84.

β) Passive conversion appears to be incongruous: no instances have come to hand.

*to sign*: The mother signed me to carry Guy away. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXIII, 239.

Note α) The construction with a *to*-complement is, most probably, more usual; e.g.: With the other hand he signed to Tom to make no noise. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. L, 390 a.

Mr. Reffold signed to the nurse to withdraw. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VIII, 33

β) No passive conversion.

*to signal*: He signalled the man to push on into the hall. BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. VI, 58.

Note α) The construction with a *to*-complement is, most probably, the ordinary one; e.g.: Dr. Huet signalled to her to enter. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 59.

β) No passive conversion.

*to whisper*: He whispered me in the ear that he was sure she would never have him. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 335.

She whispered met hat my partner was a nobleman. FANNIE BURNEY, *Evel.*, XI, 22.

The young lady whispered her that she should remain there some time longer. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 17 a.

"You are not going to do it now?" he whispered his brother. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. X, 103.

Note α) No instances with a *to*-complement have come to hand; nor are any given by the O. E. D. For all that this construction seems quite natural.

β) Passive conversion seems unidiomatic. An instance is found in: Evan was whispered that he was to join them. MER., *Ev. Har.*, Ch. V, 46 (KRUIS., *Handbk.*, § 274).

46. A survey of the material presented in the two preceding sections gives rise to the following observations: a) It is not only the person-object, but also the thing-object that in not a few cases admits of being replaced by a complement with a preposition.

b) the relations of the objects to the predicate are of a varied nature, so that different prepositions figure in the complements that may take their place.

c) The conversion of the objects into complements with a preposition is not equally current with all verbs that admit of being construed with two non-prepositional objects, nor is it practised by different writers and speakers with equal frequency.

Not only does it depend on the structure of the sentence but also on the relative prominence which the notion indicated by the object or its prepositional equivalent occupies in the speaker's mind. It is also influenced by considerations of diction, and of metre or rhythm.

d) The most common preposition in combinations that may be said to do the same duty as non-prepositional person-objects, is *to*. The other prepositions used in a similar function, *against*, *at*, *for*, *(up)on*, and *with* are only met with in connexion with some few predicates. The prepositions in combinations that may, in a manner, be regarded as substitutes for non-prepositional thing-objects are *from*, *in*, *of*, and *with*.

e) In the case of some verbs substitution of a complement with *to* or any other preposition for the person-object is impossible, or at least highly unusual. This applies to *to banish*, *to bid* (in some of its meanings), *to blow* (in a certain meaning), *to catch*, *to cause*, *to*



*command, to create, to cry* (in a certain combination), *to deign, to dismiss, to doom, to drop, to envy, to expel, to fetch, to flash* (in a certain combination), *to fling* (in a certain combination), *to hear, to lay* (in a certain combination), *to lead, to lose, to order, to pardon, to raise, to save, to smile, to stake, to stand, to strike, to sweep, and to work.*

f) The person-object admits of being replaced: 1) by a complement with *against* in certain combinations with *to bear, and to wage*; 2) by a complement with *at* in certain combinations with *to cast, to hit, and to shoot* (The use of *at* in connexion with *to ask* and *to beg* is now archaic or obsolete); 3) by a complement with *for* in certain combinations with *to do, to earn, to enclose* (or *inclose*), *to ensure* (or *insure*), *to fill, to find, to gain, to gather, to get, to obtain, to pour out, to procure, to produce, to provide, and to scrawl* (For varies with *to* in connexion with *to ensure, to secure, and to sing*); 4) by a complement with *from* in certain combinations with *to ask, to beg, to bereave, to excuse, and to request*; 5) by a complement with *of* in certain combinations with *to ask, to beg, and to request*; 6) by a complement with (up)on in certain combinations with *to bestow, to enjoin, to impose, to play, to serve, to turn, and to wage*; 7) by a complement with *with* in certain combinations with *to dispute, to keep, and to wage.*

g) The thing-object admits of being replaced: 1) by a complement with *for* in certain combinations with *to ask, to beg, to envy, to excuse, to forgive, to pardon, and to reimburse*; 2) by a complement with *from* in certain combinations with *to banish, to debar, to dismiss, to excuse, to expel, to interdict, to let off, to prevent, to prohibit, to save, and to spare* (The use of *from* in connexion with *to forbid* is now archaic); 3) by a complement with *of* in certain combinations with *to bereave, and to debar* (The use of *of* in connexion with *to reimburse* is now obsolete); 4) by a complement with *with* in certain combinations with *to charge, to present, to provide, to supply, and to tip.*

h) Both the secondary and the primary passive conversion appear to be in more or less current use in the case of *to allot, to allow, to allowance, to assign, award, to charge, to deal, to debar, to deny, to enjoin, to envy, to forbid, to foretell, to forgive, to give, to grant, to guarantee, to interdict, to leave, to lend, to offer, to pay, to permit, to prohibit, to promise, to provide, to recommend, to refuse, to render, to secure, to send, to serve, to set, to show, to spare, to teach, to tell, to vote, to vouchsafe, to whisper, to will, and to wish.*

i) The primary passive conversion is impossible, or, at least, highly unusual with *to banish, to bid* (in some of its applications), *to call* (in a certain meaning), *to command, to dismiss, to doom, excuse, to expel, to fine, to lead, to let off, to reimburse, and to save.*

j) The secondary passive conversion is impossible, or, at least, highly unusual with *to administer, to advance, to afford, to appoint, to apportion, to bequeath, to bring* (in), *to call* (in a certain meaning), *to carry, to cast, to concede, to (re)deliver, to despatch* (or *dispatch*), *to dole out, to enclose* (or *to inclose*), *to ensure* (or *to insure*), *to find, to forward, to gather, to get, to hand, to hold out, to impose, to intend, to lay,*



*to mean, to mete out, to pass, to pledge, to point out, to preach, to procure, to produce, to put, to quote, to reach, to read, to relate, to remit, to resign, to restore, return, to say, to scrawl, to sell, to set up, to shoot, to sing, to stake, to strike, to supply, to take, to telegraph, to tender, to throw, to transmit, to wire, to write, and to yield.*

k) Neither passive conversion appears to be possible, or is, at least, highly unusual, in the case of: α) *to answer, to bate, to bear, to begrudge, to bestow, to blow, to bode, to catch, to cause, to create, to cry, to deign, to drop, to earn, to fetch, to fill, to flash, to gain, to grudge, to hear, to hit, to keep, to lose, to nod, notify, to obtain, to portend, to raise, to smile, to stand, to sweep, to tip, to turn, to usher, to wage, to wave, and to work*; β) *to advertise, to beckon, to betem, to certify, to motion, to notify, to pray, to sign, and to signal.*

47. a) A remarkable variation of which not a few verbs governing an objective pronoun and an infinitive(-clause) are capable is that in which a possessive pronoun takes the place of the former and a gerund(-clause) that of the latter. This applies to:

*to advise*: I advise your giving Sybil her head in this matter. Mrs. ALEXANDER, *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VIII, 132.

*to begrudge*: And Adolphus, you don't suppose I begrudge your going. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XII, 133.

*to counsel*: Do you mean to say that you would counsel our giving up the paper-chase. PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, L, 185.

*to forbid*: The signal forbade his going farther. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. I

*permit*: His honour was too nearly concerned to permit his neglecting any means which might ensure victory over his presumptuous opponent. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. VII, 85.

Note. Instances of an analogous use of the genitive of a noun in such a gerund-construction have not come to hand.

b) As has been shown in 19, b), verbs of asking or requesting often govern a genitive or a possessive pronoun + noun of action.

48. There are numerous verbs, many of which express a declaring, a describing, an explaining, a relating or an unfolding, and belong to the Romance element of the language, which, it appears, regularly have a *to*-complement in place of a non-prepositional person-object, although they bear semantically a distinct resemblance to the verbs mentioned in 44-47. Such are:

*to accord*: Laura accorded to him a smile of the most perfect good-humour. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 290.

Note. Although no example with two non-prepositional objects has come to hand, the two following examples postulate such a construction: The Lord Mayor was accorded a mixed reception. *Times*, W. (KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 274). He was accorded an interview with Miss Brent. ZANGWILL, *The Grey Wig*, 208 (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 15, 3).

*to accredit*: We agree with Mr. Evans and Mr. Blake in their refusal to accredit guilty knowledge to the Colonial Secretary. *Times*.

Note. Also construed with a thing-complement with *with*, as in: a picture of the Blessed Virgin which is accredited with miraculous powers. *11 Lond. News*, Sup. 1896, 30 May, 2.

*to acknowledge*: I will acknowledge to you, Tony, that I don't think your manner on the present occasion is hospitable or quite gentlemanly. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXII, 276.

*to admit*: He admitted to me that he had made a mistake.

*to affirm*: She affirmed to us that the report was true.

*to announce*: A brass plate announced to him the house. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 399.

*to arrogate*: He had arrogated to himself the dignity of a chair. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 379.

*to break*: Philip had broken to Sidney the sad news of their mother's death. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 143.

*to broach*: It is you who are impolitic to broach to me my cousin's designs. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. XII, 147.

Note. The construction with a person-complement with *with* appears to be an unusual one: It is not preoccupation hath kept me away ... but distaste to broach with you matters on which we cannot agree. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 161.

*to cede*: He ceded his chambers to Mr. Bows and Captain Costigan. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. V, 52.

*to commit*: On her death-bed the mother of the boy committed him solemnly to you. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 141.

*to communicate*: I shall communicate to my reader the following letter for the entertainment of this day. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 371.

*to confess*: Could he, dare he confess to him the whole truth? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 2*b*.

He confessed to himself that he was compelled by a feeling that mastered him altogether. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXXIII, 212.

*to confide*: He confided to this guest his hopeless passion for a certain beautiful widow. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 106.

*to consecrate*: You will ... not censure me for consecrating so idle a pamphlet to you. ST. VINCENT, *Gallants Acad.* (O. E. D., 5).

*to convey*: With terrible resolution she conveyed to her the Doctor's instructions. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. XIII, 113.

*to declare*: He declared to himself that he did love this girl. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXXIII, 260.

*to dedicate*: When you shall have read this book ... you will be at no loss to discover why I have dedicated it to you. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, *Dedication*.

*to deliver*: I have delivered to Lord Angelo my absolute power. SHAK., *Meas. for Meas.*, I, 3, 11.

*to describe*: 'I described to the party our dinner at Mrs. Roundhand's. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 55.

*to detail*: He was detailing to me the particulars of the campaign.

*to dictate*: She dictated to Briggs a furious answer in her native tongue. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 380.

*to disclose*: Costigan did not disclose to him the whole of the previous events. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 121.

*to discover*: Rousseau's Confessions had discovered to him that he was not a dunce. EMERSON.

*to divulge*: For a word or tear, | Fool! I have divulged the secret gift of God | To a deceitful woman. MILTON, *Sams. Ag.*, 206.

*to entrust or intrust*: I should not like to entrust my safety to such a boat as that. O. E. D., s.v. *entrust*, 2.

Note. A common variant of the above construction is that shown by the following example, in which a non-prepositional person-object is followed by a thing-complement with *with*: They were intrusted by law with the right of naming and removing their Governor-General. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (634 *b*).

*to erect*: It was simply indecent for a statue to be erected to such a man. *Daily Chron.*

*to explain*: I presume it was he who explained to you the nature of the deed you were to witness. *TROL., Ori. Farm., III, Ch. XVII, 221.*

*to expound*: It was thus this affectionate uncle spoke, and expounded to Pen his simple philosophy. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 306.*

*to express*: She expressed to herself her conviction, that it could not possibly be so. *TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXVII, 214.*

*to extend*: Never once in their dialogues did I hear a syllable of regret at the hospitality they had extended to me. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXIX, 417.*

*to hint*: He hinted to Pen that he had better have him for his partner at whist than play against him. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XIX, 197.*

*to impart*: She imparted those stories gradually to Miss Crawley. *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 199.*

*to impute*: She had unconsciously imputed to him one fault. *TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XVIII, 229.*

*to indicate*: What I want to indicate to you to-night is how the conduct of the Government has directly led up to the crisis in which we find ourselves. *ROSEBERRY, Speech.*

*to insinuate*: The parson insinuates to them in almost every sermon that he is a better man than his patron. *ADDISON, Spect., No. 112.*

*to mention*: Mrs. Winterfield has not mentioned to me that you were coming to Perivale. *TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. VII, 82.*

*to name*: Had you been a man, you would not have named him to me after what you have done to me. *TROL., He knew he was right, Ch. LX, 86.*

*to own*: I will own to you, Lydia, that Falkland had before informed me of the whole affair. *SHER., Riv., V, 1.*

*to picture*: In his mind's eye he pictured to himself every roasting-pig running about with a pudding in his belly. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 351.* He pictured to himself what would be the wound to his pride if he were rejected. *TROL., Ori. Farm., III, Ch. I, 7.*

*to point out*: Here I must pause to point out to you the short-sightedness of human contrivance. *G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. I, (483).*

*to preach*: The Pope himself was forced to preach humanity and moderation to the Popish princes. *MAC., Hist., Ch. I, 136.*

*to present*: He presented to them a prince unable to speak a word of English. *II. Lond. News.*

*to profess*: Lady Rowley took her candle and went to bed, professing to herself that she could not understand it. *TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXVII, 216.*

*to propose*: i. I propose to him such a marriage as any nobleman in the land might be proud of. *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 243.*

ii. He proposed to himself to achieve such deeds as should be the theme of many a tale. *SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. IX, 102.*

*to prove*: I shall prove to you, by a witness whose testimony it will be impossible for my learned friend to weaken or controvert, that on one occasion he patted the boy on the head. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXIV, 310.*

*to recite*: He recited to her a little speech. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18.*

*to recount*: Mr. Foker amused his companions by recounting to them the scene which he had just witnessed. *ib., I, Ch. XIII, 132.*

*to relate*: Miss Brontë related to my husband a curious instance illustrative of his eager desire for riches. *MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 9.*

*to repeat*: Johnson will repeat to me to-morrow morning before breakfast.

without book and from the Greek testament, the first chapter of the Epistle of Saint Paul to the Ephesians. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 107.

*to report*: (He) reported to me ... that he seemed easier and inclined to sleep. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 268.

*to reserve*: Hume and his confederates had reserved to themselves the superintendence of the stores. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 121.

*to restore*: The failure of Gloucester restored to him the aid of Burgundy. GREEN.

*to return*: My papa has ordered me to return to you these presents. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 191.

*to reveal*: The doctor revealed to him his hopeless state. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 9.

He had revealed to her thoughts and feelings which he had unveiled for on one else. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, II, Ch. X, 205. (Note the use of *for* after *to unveil* in this example.)

*to signify*: She signified to her that bed was a place for sleeping, not conversation. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 72.

*to suggest*: Satan suggested to him that he might emigrate under easier circumstances, if he supplied himself with some money from his master's till. G. ELLIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I, (472).

*to swear*: Swear to me that you will be a father to the boy. RID. HAG., *She*, Ch. I, 3.

*to translate*: Campian translated to him the cipher of the letter. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. IV, 31 *a*.

*to trust*: He's an honest fellow and will be faithful to any roguery that is trusted to him. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, I, 1, (256).

Note. A common variant of the above construction is that with a non-prepositional person-object and a thing-complement with *with*, as in: I dare not trust him with the truth. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1, (235).

Trust me with the papers. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 249.

*to unburden*: I wish to unburden my mind to you. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (412).

*to unfold*: She unfolded to him a plan of escape. LOUIS BECKE & WALTER JEFFERY, *The Mutineer*.

49. It may be of some interest to Dutch students to mention a few cases in which a Dutch verb governing two non-prepositional objects closely corresponds to an English verb with an entirely different construction, i.e. one with a preposition-complement representing the Dutch person-object, or one with a preposition-complement representing the Dutch thing-object. For examples of constructions of the first description see also 21. The following examples are supposed to contain a close rendering of the Dutch phrases by which they are preceded:

*iemand iets verhelten*: I could not disguise from myself, or from the waiter that this was an uncomfortable coincidence. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35 *a*.

*iemand iets onthouden*: You withhold from me the truth. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. IX, 161.

*iemand iets ontrukken*: That cannot easily be wrested from us. HUME, *E.s.*, II, 12.

*iemand vertrouwen inboezemen*: He inspired confidence and affection in all. Times.

Note. In the same meaning the verb may also be construed with a non-prepositional person-object and a thing-complement with *with*; e. g.: His



presence and that of his friend inspired the little lady with intolerable terror and aversion. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 365.

iemand iets kwalijk nemen: Some of them take it ill of you that you mention fox-hunters with so little respect. ADDISON, Spect., No. 34.

Note. With *to take something ill of a person*, as in: Mrs. Mac Hugh will take it well of you that you should call on her. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXIII, 181.

iemand iets schenken: i. The utmost blessing that God can confer on a man is the possession of a good and pious wife. E. J. HARDY, How to be happy though married, Ch. II, 26.

ii. The East India Company bestowed on him a sword set with diamonds. MAC., Clive, (510 a).

Note. For other constructions of *to bestow* see 44.

iemand den oorlog verklaren: i. France declares war on England. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. X, § 3, 805.

ii. France might not declare war against us for depriving her of rights she claims, but it is far from certain that she would not do so. GRAPH.

iemand den oorlog aandoen: i. They do not make war on women and children. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. V, 47.

ii. The British were afraid lest the Mahdi should enter Egypt and make war against them there. F. YORK, POWELL, Life of Ch. Gordon.

Note. It deserves attention that in these and the preceding combinations with *war* the preposition belongs to this noun, not to the verb.

iemand iets betwisten: i. \* Germany is ostentatiously preparing a fleet to contest with us the supremacy of the seas. Daily Mail.

Not for twenty years can we even dream of contesting with Japan the Empire of the Pacific. Rev. of Rev., No. 190, 374 b.

\*\* John was contesting his position against the squire. MAR. CRAWF., A Tale of a Lonely Parish, Ch. IX, 70.

ii. (His) ambition for precedence ... had led him to dispute place with the extenuated and impoverished descendant of the line of Montdidier. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. VII, 75.

Swein, the king of Denmark, had for two years been preparing to dispute England with the Norman. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 5, 82.

Note. Observe also: He contested the right of the pope to dispense them. S. AUSTIN, Ranke's Hist. Ref., I, 339 (O. E. D., s. v. *contest*, 5).

For another construction of *to dispute* see 44; and compare also: I am monarch of all I survey, | My right there is none to dispute. COWPER, Al. Selk., I.

iemand iets mededeelen: i. He informed his brother-in-law of his departure. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 434.

ii. I take the earliest opportunity to apprise you of my intentions. *ib.*, 45.

iii. He advised the constable of this at once. PRESCOTT.

iemand iets verwijten: i. She reproached herself for having flung away such a treasure. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 363.

He reproached Fitzurse for ingratitude for past kindness. FREUDE, Short Stud., IV, I, x, 124 (O. E. D., 2, a).

ii. Lady Vargrave's heart reproached her with not ... having ... loved this sweet girl as she deserved. LYTTON, Alice, I, xiii (O. E. D., 2, b).

We have nothing to reproach ourselves with. BALFOUR, Speech.

iemand iets verschaffen: i. A diamond pin ... furnished him with observations upon certain mines in Mexico. LYTTON, Caxtons, II, Ch. II, 36.

ii. Mary has been indefatigably kind in providing me with information. MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 160.

iii. He supplied himself with some money from his master's till. G. ELIOT, Brother Jacob, Ch. I, (472).

*iemand iets toevertrouwen*: *to entrust* (or *intrust*), *to trust a person with a thing*, or *to entrust* (or *intrust*), *to trust a thing to a person*. See 45.

50. a) Some verbs that may govern two non-prepositional objects regularly stand with a preposition, mostly *to*, when the thing-object is understood; thus *to play*, *to preach*, *to read*, *to sing*, *to write* (44), with which the thing-object is a kind of cognate, or, at least, effective object. A few examples must suffice.

*to preach*: She could not but remember ... how he had preached to her himself and threatened her with the preaching of his mother. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXXII, 426.

*to read*: I think she wishes him to read to her. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXV, 126. (Compare: Oh these occasions our two little ones always read for us. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. V, (259).)

*to write*: Nothing could be settled further, — except that Nora would write to her friend. TROL., He knew he was right, II, Ch. LXXXVII, 295.

As to *to teach*, which rejects *to* when standing without a thing-object, it should be observed that its meaning admits of regarding both the person- and the thing-object as the direct recipients of the action in a different sense, such a sentence as *I taught him English* being, indeed, the union of two sentences into one, viz. *I taught him* (i. e. *I imparted information to him*, or *I instructed him*), and *I taught English*. The fuller construction *I taught him English* may, accordingly, be considered as an instance of ἀπό κοινοῦ. Compare the Latin *docere* which governs two accusatives. Of *to teach*, however, “the original construction had an accusative of the thing imparted, with dative of the person or recipient when expressed.” O. E. D., II. Compare 41.

b) Verbs which, besides a person-object, ordinarily govern an infinitive(-clause) by way of thing-object do not take *to* when the latter is understood. This applies to *to allow*, *to forbid*, *to permit*, *to refuse* and, perhaps, some others. It should, however, be observed that these verbs undergo some modification in meaning when stripped of the infinitive(-clause); e. g.:

It was Mr. Fitz-boodle ... who offered me the cigar, and I did not like to refuse him. THACK., Fitz-Boodle's Conf., I, (207). (= to displease by a refusal).

For further illustration see Ch. XXXII, 25.

## THE PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

### PECULIAR FEATURES OF THE PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

51. For a thorough discussion of what, in the opinion of the present writer, constitutes a prepositional object as compared with an adverbial adjunct with a preposition, the student is referred to Ch. XLV, 24 ff, where the subject has been viewed in its most important aspects. In this place it may be deemed sufficient to mention the three features by which a preposition-group should

be distinguished for it to assume the character of a prepositional object. These features, none of which should be lacking, are the following: *a*) The preposition-group is felt as a more or less indispensable adjunct of the verb or adjective with which it stands; *b*) The preposition is of a vague meaning, conveying no distinct notion of place, time, cause, purpose, agency, instrumentality, etc.; *c*) The preposition is intimately connected with the verb so as to form a kind of unit with it, not seldom one which in the same or some cognate language may be expressed by a verb without a preposition. Compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 26, *b*; SWEET, *N.E. Gr.*, § 251.

These features are more or less distinctly discernible in the preposition-groups with:

*about*, as in: I don't suppose he ever thought much about me. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXXI, 417.

I am curious about such things for good reasons. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*.

*across*, as in: I ran across him in the city yesterday. O. E. D., 1, *b*.

We come across more than one incidental mention of those wars. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.* III, xii, 191 (O. E. D., 1, *b*.)

*after*, as in: She was the prop and stay of the house, looking after everything. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 53.

*against*, as in: Dobbin's foolish soul revolted against that exercise of tyranny. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 44.

He is proof against columny. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 284.

*at*, as in: I wonder at you. E. OPPENHEIM, *The Mischiefmaker*, Ch. I. Note. Also, not unfrequently without *at*. Instances have been found in FIELDING, SCOTT, MRS. SHELLEY, HARDY, TEMPLE THURSTON, WELLS, the Times, The Review of Review, and the Manchester Guardian. Of the numerous instances that have come to hand we copy one: She stood there still wondering them. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, Ch. VII, 50.

*by*, as in: He stuck by his word. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 207.

*for*, as in: He sent for Mr. Blackwell. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 111.

*from*, as in: Childe Harold had a mother — not forgot. | Though parting from that mother he did shun. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, x.

*in*, as in: I could not concur in this idea. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 *b*.

*into*, as in: to inquire into the cause of a sudden death. WEBST., *Dict.*

*of*, as in: Beware of the first false steps into deceit. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 125.

The Beauforts were ignorant of his brother's fate. *ib.*, 486.

*off*, as in: Though he dined off boiled mutton, he had always three footmen to serve it. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IX, 89.

(*up*) *on*, as in: The necessity of not striking her colours was forced upon her by the warfare to which she was subjected. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXVI, 339. She railed him on his low spirits. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 223.

*over*, as in: A certain mysterious feeling, consequent on the darkness, steals over me again. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 43 *b*.

*out of*, as in: He defrauded him out of his property. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 377.

*round*, as in: The governess had come round everybody. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 100.

H. POUTSMA, II.

*through*, as in: When he had a duty to perform, Captain Dobbin was accustomed to go through it without many words. *ib.*, I, Ch. XX, 205.

*to*, as in: Rebecca responded to Brigg's offer of tenderness with grateful fervour. *ib.*, I, Ch. XV, 159.

I didn't think Miss Creakle equal to little Emily in point of beauty. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 46 *a*.

*towards*, as in: She could not relent towards the London smoke. *ib.*, Ch. XXXV, 256 *a*.

Philip glanced towards this personage. *LYTTON*, *Night & Morn.*, 133.

*under*, as in: He laboured under a scarcity of ready money. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 232.

*with*, as in: Bear with me a little longer. *LYTTON*, *Night & Morn.*, 398.

*without*, as in: I can't do without that lad. *ib.*, 160.

The subject of the government of verbs, adjectives and nouns will be treated in ample detail in a contemplated work, for which the present writer has for many years been collecting the necessary materials.

## THE INDEFINITE *IT* AS PART OF A PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

52. The indefinite *it* sometimes appears as a constituent of a prepositional adjunct; thus in:

So without more ado they fell to it, and at the first blow the Giant stroke Mr. Great-heart down upon one of his knees. *BUNYAN*, *Pilg. Prog.* (*FRANZ*, *E. S.*, XVII).

The Church of Upcote seems rather put to it for defenders. *Mrs. WARD*, *Rich. Meyn.*, II, Ch. XII, 244.

## THE ANTICIPATING PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT.

53. Anticipating prepositional objects with the personal pronoun *it* are unusual.

54. *a)* When the object governed by the verb or the adjective is a subordinate statement, the ordinary practice is to place it in immediate succession to the governing word, the preposition being, accordingly, dispensed with; thus in the following examples with:

*i. to agree*: Most cricketers would probably agree that this is desirable, whatever the weather. *Manch. Guard.*, 18/6, 1926, 441 *d*.

*to apprise*: The English government was easily apprised that something was in agitation among the outlaws. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 116.

*to inform*: He informed me that he was going to cut me off with a shilling. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 36.

*to rejoice*: He rejoiced that he should have earned the esteem of his sovereign. *Graph.*

*ii. afraid*: I am afraid that he will not succeed. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 405.

*agreed*: We are all agreed that we behaved most beautifully during the strike. *Manch. Guard.*, 11/6, 1926, 435 *c*.

*aware*: Are you aware that your friends are here? *O. E. D.*, 2.

*conscious*: Domini was conscious that ... there was at moments a barrier between them. *HICHENS*, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XXI, 135.



*ignorant*: It is in the nature of a Forsyte to be ignorant that he is a Forsyte. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. X, 233.

*offended*: That incalculable person might be offended that he had not brought the great news in person. Mrs. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, II, 85.

*vexed*: I was vexed that you didn't come. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 405, N.

*worthy*: Maxwell was worthy that she should do this thing. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. VII, 43 b.

For further examples see MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, page 250 and 251, where, however, the distinction between subordinate statements, subordinate questions, and substantive clauses is not insisted on.

Note α) Thus also in the case of the subordinate statement preceding the head-clause there is, as a rule, no anaphoric element in the latter.

That they are what they are do not blame me. DICK., *Christm. Car.*

That Clara Amedroz was a self-willed woman, he thought he was aware. TROL., *Belton Est.*, Ch. XVII, 225.

β) It will be observed that most of the verbs in the preceding examples, although requiring a preposition when followed by a (pro)noun, are more or less felt as transitives when followed by a subordinate statement, suggesting as they do a closely synonymous transitive verb. Compare *He informed me that he had lost his purse* with *He told me that he had lost his purse*.

Similarly most of the adjectives here referred to form a kind of group-verb with the copula *to be*, readily suggestive of a transitive verb. Thus *Are you aware that your friends are here?* is practically equivalent to *Do you know that your friends are here?*

b) Some verbs more or less regularly have an anticipating prepositional object with *it* before a subordinate statement. This is the case with:

*to answer*, as in: I'll answer for it, you'll see your nephew in all his glory. SHER., *School*, III, 1.

That town-wits, ... have always been rather a heartless class is true. But none of them, we will answer for it, ever said to a young lady to whom he was making love: [etc.]. MAC., *Rest.*, (578 a).

I can answer for it, that he was once very near hanged as a spy. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XIV, 273.

I'll answer for it, the next (sc. batch) shall be as good. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XI, 86.

Note. The anticipating word-group appears to be indispensable.

*to depend*, as in: Depend upon it they will carry on the war. STERNE, *Tristr. Shand.*, I, Ch. XII, 9 a.

Depend on it, Mr. Titmarsh, that Lady Drum is no more your cousin than she is the cousin of your friend, Mr. Hoskinson. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 54. If ever you hear of my marrying, depend on it, it won't be a romantic attachment on my side. *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 272.

You may depend on it that he will never again have to go begging for funds. Graph.

Note. The use of (*up*)on *it* appears to be practically regular. Its absence in the following example has an incongruous effect. She said that I might depend I should never have their consent to it. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, Ch. I, 5.

*to look*, as in: She would look to it that they had a roof over their heads. *Good Words*, May, 1892, 291/1 (O. E. D., 21, e).

Note. The construction without *to it* may be equally common; e.g.: *Good*

Cinna, take this paper, | And look you lay it in the prætor's chair. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3.

Look that you behave well to him. GODWIN, *Caleb Williams*, Ch. VII, 65.  
*to insist*, as in: i. I insist upon it that you read the two following chapters. STERNE, *Tristr. Shand.*, I, Ch. X, 6a.

ii. She insisted on it that she and Lady Drum were intimately related. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIX, 272.

Note *a*) It is in the second shade of meaning that (*up*)on it is most frequently dispensed with; e.g.: i. I insist that you shall sing no song in public which I have not previously heard. II. Mag.

The King insisted that a sacred profession should not be used as a screen for the protection of felony. FROUDE, *Short Stud.*, IV, i, iii, 33 (O.E.D., 4, b).

ii. Scotland Yard still insists that the man in the grey ulster who left for Paris by the midnight train on the ninth of November, was poor Basil. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. XIX, 271.

The Third International ... insisted that there would now arise a real demand for a workers' Government. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/5, 1926, III b.

*β*) Observe the regular absence of (*up*)on it in such a construction as: For four or five years Prince Windischgrätz, and a score of other members of aristocratic circles in Hungary, have been carefully planning the whole sale forgery of French banknotes, with a patriotic purpose, as they have continually insisted during the trial. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/5, 1926, 381 b.

*rely*, as in: Rely on't, he's at this moment at Calcutta. SHER., *School*, III, 3, (401).

Mr. Ward may rely upon it that, whether or not he will allow belief to appeal to understanding, unbelief will appeal to it. GLADST., *Glean.*, V, 144. (O.E.D., 5, b).

You may rely on it that King George will be as strictly constitutional as were his father and grandfather before him. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 7a.

Note. (*Up*)on it is, most probably, indispensable.

*to see*, as in: See to it that I have not again to complain to you about this matter. CON. DOYLE, *Ref.*, 95.

When you are an earl, see to it that you are a better one than I have been. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 189.

Note. Usage appears to be in favour of the construction without *to it*; thus in: See that everything is in readiness. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 192, N.

As for the child, he would see that it was cared for. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.* Ch. XIII, 105.

I will see that you are safe. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 42. (Compare: I will see you safe. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 42.)

*to stand*, as in: Now I'll stand to it, the pancakes were naught, and the mustard was good. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, 2, 58

He would stand to it, that it was full Four Miles. STEELE, *Tatler*, No. 171. (O.E.D., 76, j).

He stood to it that Mr. Carlyle had ordered the work done in another way. Mrs WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 257.

Note. *To it* is, no doubt, indispensable.

*to thank*, as in: I thank my fortune for it, | My ventures are not in one bottom trusted. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, 1, 41.

Note. The anticipating word-group is, presumably, often dispensed with.

c) Also in the combination illustrated by the following examples the anticipating prepositional object appears to be indispensable: You may take my word for it, he's sure to be a lawyer, WILK. COL., *Woman*, 429.

You may take my word for it that, when you strike it, it will become red again. *PAYN, Glow-worm Tales, II, B, 30.*

55. In numerous cases a subordinate statement is placed immediately after a preposition, but such a combination is mostly to be understood as an adverbial adjunct, the preposition *that* having the function of a conjunctive or, which is more common, the preposition alone assuming this function. The subject will receive adequate attention in Ch. XVII. Compare also Ch. XIII, 1, f; Ch. LX, 93. A single example must suffice in this place to illustrate the practice here referred to:

To Crosbie he had refused to give anything, and there was upon his conscience a shade of remorse in that he had so refused. *TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XXXVII, 76.*

In some cases the preposition may be apprehended as a constituent of a prepositional object; thus in:

Reuben Hornby, you stand indicted for that you did, on the ninth or tenth of March, feloniously steal a parcel of diamonds. *R. A. FREEMAN, The Red Thumb Mark, 175.*

The Gods are worried for that I still live. *MORRIS, Earthly Par., Son of Cræs., 153 a.*

56. Subordinate questions, inclusive of exclamatory sentences, which resemble them in structure, always dispense with the anticipating *if*. The verbs or adjectives with which they are connected sometimes preserve, sometimes drop the preposition with which they are ordinarily construed. It is difficult to ascertain by what principle the language is guided in this matter. The difficulty is all the greater for the ambiguity which attaches to many clauses opening with *what*, which may sometimes with equal justice be apprehended to be substantive clauses as subordinate questions (Ch. XV, 5). The former, as will be pointed out in 58, rarely, if ever, lose the preposition. For illustration see also Ch. XIV, 1.

According to JESPERSEN (E. S., XLVI, II, 331) the practice of placing a preposition before a subordinate question did not become generally current until the latter half of the 19th century.

a) Apparently the preposition is more or less regularly retained after:

*to depend*, as in: That depends on how you fix your standard of public men. *G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XLVI, 344.*

That entirely depends on how you sit to-day. *OSC. WILDE, Dor. Gray, Ch. II, 25.* (Observe that *to depend* requires (up)on it before a subordinate statement.)

Note. The preposition is, most probably, in regular use.

*to draw lots*, as in: The guests then draw lots as to who shall begin. *DOBSON, Eng. Lit., 37.*

Note. The use of the preposition is, presumably, rather unusual. See the example with *to cast lots* in the O. E. D. s.v. *lot*, 1.

*to enlarge*, as in: He enlarged on what a loss he would be to the magistrate's bench. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

Note. The preposition could not be dispensed with.

*to speculate*, as in: I speculated very much as to what sort of a person he would turn out to be. Mrs. CRAIK, *A Hero*.

Note. The ordinary preposition is (*up*)*on*, which in this connexion is driven out by *as to*.

*to study*, as in: He began to study diligently as to how he could best improve the means employed in carrying coal from the mine to the ships. Cassell's *Mod. Read.*

Note. Also in this example *as to* has driven out (*up*)*on*, the potential preposition after *to study* (O. E. D., 2).

*to talk*, as in: They began to talk of what a dreadful storm it had been the night before. DICK.

He talked of how people had injured him. JESP., *Growth*<sup>2</sup>, 83.

She talks about what a sweet little boy he used to be. JEAN WEBSTER, *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 82.

Note. The preposition is, no doubt, in regular use.

ii. *curious*, as in: She felt curious as to how he would take her remark. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XVI.

Note. *About*, the ordinary preposition after *curious*, has been driven out by *as to*. A common construction of *curious* in the above meaning is that illustrated in: Two or three neighbours ... were curious to know what he had seen abroad. HT. MARTINEAU, *Brooke Farm*, X, 116 (O. E. D., 5).

c) The preposition appears to be usually dropped, among other words, after:

i. *to advise*, as in: Advise if this be worth attempting. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 250.

*to beware*, as in: I told him ... to beware how he taxed the people. LYTON, *Rienzi*, V, 5 (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 443).

Beware, sir, what you do. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*.

*to care*, as in: I care not how soon he makes a mark of me. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XVIII.

I don't care who marries him. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 30.

I don't care what you say to me. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. XIX, 270.

Note. In the following example the clause introduced by *what* is, perhaps, best understood as a substantive clause: Go and give me in charge — do what you will — I care nothing for what becomes of me. HARDY, *Mayor*, Ch. XXXVIII.

ii. *careful*, as in: Be careful how you use me. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*.

*ignorant*, as in: I am ignorant whom I may have the honour to address. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 43.

*indifferent*, as in: I am indifferent who knows that I am a cadet of Scotland. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 43.

*uncertain*, as in: The survivors are restless and uncertain whether the war is actually at an end. STEAD, *Rev. of Rev.*

*wary*, as in: Be wary what you say or do. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VII, 71.

d) Usage is sometimes varied; thus after:

*to hesitate*, as in: i. Mrs. Lauderdale seemed to hesitate as to whether she should say any more. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. V, 83.

ii. She hesitated whether she should break in upon his affliction. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, 25.

She hesitated what to reply. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVI, 134.

He hesitated what to do. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, IV, Ch. XX, 130.



Note. Presumably the preposition is mostly dispensed with.

*to reflect*, as in: i. He began to reflect as to whether or no he should call upon her. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. IV, 35.

ii. I could not help reflecting how far it would be possible to extract from them the means of escape. GODWIN, Cal. Wil.

Note. In the first of the above examples *as to* has taken the place of (*up*)*on*, the ordinary preposition after *to reflect*.

*to think*, as in: i. \* Have you thought about when you'll show yourself to Mr. Gargery, and your sister and me? DICK., Great Expect., Ch. XVIII, 174.

\*\* Until Evangeline spoke to her mother, I had not thought of whom Mr. Perceval would take in to dinner. SARAH GRAND, Our manif. Nat., 58.

They were silent once more, thinking of how the darkness would come to them at Arba. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., II, iv, Ch. XVII, 63.

ii. I am sure I never thought why I cried. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 22 b.

She was thinking how her mother's desire could be fulfilled. MRS. GASK., North & South, Ch. XIV, 85.

We were thinking what we could talk about. id., Cranf., Ch. VIII, 153.

Note. There is not, apparently, any decided predilection for either construction.

*aware*, as in: i. One becomes aware of how deeply the blow has struck. ARTHUR SYMONS, Stud. in the Eliz. Dr., Ant. & Cleop.

ii. She was not aware how wide a place she filled in all his thoughts. MASON, The Truants, 125.

He walked from the hips... swaying very slightly, as if he liked to be aware how supple his body still was. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, i, Ch. VI, 99.

Note. The preposition is, presumably, mostly dispensed with.

(*un*)*conscious*, as in: i. She was more conscious than she had hitherto been of how others — the outside world — would be likely to regard her acquaintance with Androvsky. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, iii, Ch. XIII, 333.

ii. You are so perfectly unconscious how exacting you really are. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. VII, 28.

Note. The preposition is, presumably, mostly dispensed with.

b) Also when the subordinate question precedes the head-clause, usage may be divided. At the moment of writing the documentary evidence is, however, too scanty to venture on a pronouncement either one way or the other.

i. Where we went and what we said my memory is not very clear upon. JEROME, Variety Patter, 146.

ii. What Schiller's ultimate opinions on this point were, we are nowhere informed. CARL., Life of Schil., II, 74.

What their plans were he was entirely ignorant. TROLL. Macd., Ch. XXX, 569.

What that document might be she was as ignorant as the attorney's wife. id., Orl. Farm, I, Ch. V, 61.

57. In the subordinate question there may be a preposition governing the interrogative pronoun alone, which may be placed in back-position, or in immediate succession to the preposition governing the entire clause.

i. I tremble to think of what poor Emilia is destined to. SHELLEY, Letters, 887 (Jesp., E. S., XLVI, 2, 331).

That would depend on what they didn't like him for. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, 88 (ib.). Let us see a little more about what Jesus came on earth for. id., Ad. Bede Ch. II, 20.

ii. It is only a question of with whom I shall do so. ALLEN, *Woman who did*, 81 (JESP., I. c.).

58. a) Substantive clauses, to all appearance, never lose the prepositional when constituents of a prepositional object.

He soon repented of what he had done. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 251.

Cedric readily assented to what she proposed. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XVIII. She was thinking of what Will had no knowledge of. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288.

I have reflected many times on what occurred between us when we first discussed this subject. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*.

He was reminded of what he had well known before that [etc.]. HARDY, *Mayor*, Ch. XXVI.

She made elaborate plans of what they were to do and see. GALSW., *Free-lands*, Ch. XV, 129.

He let blood to whoever wished for that refreshment. WALT. BES., *The World went very well then*, Ch. I.

The following examples afford doubtful exceptions to the rule, it being uncertain whether the clauses introduced by *what* should be regarded as substantive clauses or subordinate questions (56).

Be wary what you say or do. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VII, 71.

She little thinks what stores of knowledge have been mastered by the wonderful Being, at whose place she thinks I, even I, weak aspirant, may arrive in time. DICK., *Cop*.

b) Thus also when the substantive clause is placed before the head-clause, as in:

What happened after that, it was Jack Ketch's business to see to. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, Ch. XI, 246.

What I have commenced I am prepared to go on with. OPPENHEIM, *People's Man*, Ch. XIII, 133 (KRUIS., *Handb.*<sup>4</sup>, § 2192).

59. a) Infinitive-clauses corresponding to subordinate statements are not announced in any way when representing the prepositional object of the verb, adjective, or noun of the head-clause. The typical preposition, if different from *to*, disappears, or gets merged into this preposition (Ch. XVIII, XIX).

i. Henry was driven to conclude a peace. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, 312.

ii. It (sc. the puff) delights to draw forth concealed merit. SHER., *Critic*, I, 1, 2, (460). (Compare: I always delight in overthrowing such kind of schemes. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 55.)

The Ministers were desirous to avail themselves of the services of Clive. MAC., *Clive*, (540 b). (Compare: The lessor was desirous of pulling the house down and building a new one. *Law Reports* (O. E. D.).

I was very much shocked to hear of this melancholy accident. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 34 a. (Compare: The man was shocked at having broken the window. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Hoim.*, *Blue Carb.*)

b) Such as correspond to subordinate questions appear to lose all trace of the typical preposition, so far as verbs or adjectives are concerned, but to preserve it after nouns.

i. She hesitated what to reply. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVI, 134.

Let's think seriously what to do. GALSW., *Free-lands*, Ch. XII, 99.

ii. Every one has his own ideas about how to spend an evening with combined profit and pleasure. ANSTEY, *Fallen Idol*, Ch. XV, 205.

60. Gerund-clauses, which in many cases vary with infinitive(-clauses) (Ch. XIX, 24 ff), are placed after the preposition without any anticipating pronoun.

He was heartily desirous of returning with the young man. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. XVII, 48.

She would be driven to supporting life upon such birds as she could catch. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XI, 110.

## OBJECTS GOVERNED BY TWO OR MORE VERBS.

61. A (pro)noun or clause may be the object of two or more verbs requiring different kinds of objects, or prepositional objects with different prepositions. It will be observed that in the former case the non-prepositional object mostly stands last (Ch. XLV, 24, c).

i. \* If your thoughts should assume so unhappy a bent, you will the more want some mild and affectionate spirit to watch over and console you. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

She would lean on his arm as though he had been the friend of her earliest years, listening to and trusting him in all things. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXV, 341.

They had assembled to take leave of, to see, perhaps, for the last time, their nearest and dearest. II. *Lond. News*.

\*\* Such a nature must comprehend you, accompany and testify of your greatness. BROWN., *Soul's Trag.*, II.

Did people admire, commiserate, approve of, or sympathise with her? GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, III, Ch. IX, 292.

ii. Men should look painfully for, and trust to arrive eventually at, what you call the true principle at bottom. BROWNING, *Soul's Trag.*, II.





## CHAPTER IV.

### ATTRIBUTIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Observations . . . . .	1— 2
Appositions . . . . .	3—55
Introductory . . . . .	4— 8
Apposition of the First kind . . . . .	9—12
Real Apposition . . . . .	9—10
Apparent Apposition . . . . .	11
Formation of the Genitive of word-groups containing an Apposition . . . . .	12
Apposition of the Second kind . . . . .	13—39
Preliminary Observations . . . . .	13—14
Apposition never or only exceptionally replaced by specializing <i>of</i> . . . . .	15—21
Apposition mostly replaced by specializing <i>of</i> . . . . .	22—26
Varied practice . . . . .	27—31
Other Variants of Apposition-constructions . . . . .	32—39
Apposition of the Third kind . . . . .	40—55
Preliminary Observations . . . . .	40
Apposition after <i>a many, a few, and a little</i> . . . . .	41
Apposition after <i>all</i> and <i>both</i> . . . . .	42
Apposition after Fractional Numbers . . . . .	43—44
Apposition after Multiplicatives . . . . .	45
Apposition after certain collective Nouns denoting number . . . . .	46—54
Apposition after names of measure not denoting number . . . . .	55
English Equivalents of such collocations as <i>iets goeds</i> . . . . .	56

## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

### 1. Attributive adnominal adjuncts are used:

a) to distinguish one person or thing, or one group of persons or things, from another of the same kind. In this case they are called restrictive, and may be: 1) classifying, as in *tall men, black swans, red ink, women's voices, such measures*; 2) individualizing, as in *my father's house, the books by the window, these children, our soldiers*.

b) to give some incidental information about a person or thing, or a group of persons or things. In this case they are called continuative. Such are the adjuncts in *Immortal Shakespeare, one boy, five men, several women*, and the second adjunct in *that troublesome boy*.

This differentiation will prove to be useful in discussing the use of the definite article, and that of the relative pronouns. Compare also DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, I, § 38; PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 97; JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 111f.

### 2. The words and word-groups used as attributive adnominal adjuncts in English are practically the same as those used for this purpose in the other West-European languages. They have been discussed in ample detail in the three last volumes of this grammar dealing with the parts of speech. The main feature by which English is distinguished from the other languages just mentioned in the use of attributive adnominal adjuncts, is its capability of using the gerund for this purpose, as in *boarding-school, sinking-fund*, etc. (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. VII; Ch. LVI, 15).

## APPPOSITIONS.

### 3. Among the words and word-groups used as attributive adnominal adjuncts that English has in common with the other West-European languages, it is especially those termed appositions that deserve detailed discussion in this chapter.

## INTRODUCTORY OBSERVATIONS.

### 4 By an apposition we may understand an attributive substantive, or substantival word or word-group, intended to indicate the same person, animal, or thing as its head-word and, consequently,

showing its relation to it by no inflection of the latter, nor by any preposition. Secondary features of an apposition are: 1) its being approximately equal in grammatical (not necessarily semantic) status to its head-word, 2) its standing in the same grammatical relation to the predicate as its head-word.

Most grammarians regrettably fail to give a neat definition of what they understand by apposition. It is, however, pretty certain that they mostly give a wider scope to the term than is done in the above definition.

Thus PAUL (Prinz.<sup>3</sup>, § 250) finds an apposition in any noun modifying another noun so long as it maintains some of its substantival character; e. g. in ἀνὴρ πολέτης, ῥήτωρ, ὁπλίτης etc., πενὴ δέσποινα; exercitus victor, tirones milites, bellator equus, bos arator; un dieu sauveur.

DEUTSCHBEIN, so far as may be inferred from his System der neuenglischen Syntax, § 93, 3, *b*, holds the same view. But in these combinations the component parts are not necessarily intended to indicate one and the same person or thing any more than is the case in such English word-groups as *the warrior bard*, *her kinsman lover*, commented on below (8). The second element in them cannot, therefore, be apprehended as an apposition in the sense assigned to the term in the above definition.

ONIONS (Advanced English Syntax, § 10, 2) among his examples of apposition includes the following sentence: *On yonder cliffs, a grisly band, I see them sit*, in which he regards *band* as an apposition to *them*. But a *grisly band* is better understood as a predicative adjunct, i. e. as a shortened form for *who are a grisly band*, as would become clearer if the ordinary word-order of prose composition had been observed: *On yonder cliffs I see them, (who are) a grisly band, sit*. Substituting the definite for the indefinite article alone would make the word-group identical in denotation with the pronoun, in other words would impart to it the nature of an apposition. For further comment see 10.

KRUISINGA, in his Handbook of Present day English<sup>1</sup>, § 1844, observes, "When a person or thing is denoted by two nouns, it is often difficult to say which is the head-word. We usually call the second an apposition of the first." From this it may be gathered that his test whereby to tell an apposition is practically the same as that given by the present writer above. But then he ought not to include among his examples *Edward VII, king of England*, in which the last word-group is not meant as another name for what is expressed by the first, but rather to give some secondary or incidental information about the person referred to, in like manner as an ordinary nominal predicate. The combination is, indeed, on a par with such an expression as *disciplina vitæ scipio*, in so far as both would be rendered more complete by the addition of the copula: *Edward VII, who was king of England, disciplina vitæ scipio est*. For further comment see 11.

The same grammarian, in § 807 of the above work, calls such word-

groups as *gentleman-boarder*, *statesman-bishop*, etc. appositional compounds, which appellation seems to defeat his definition of apposition as implied in his statement in § 1844. These word-groups are of the same nature as those mentioned by PAUL, and give rise to the same comment. The writer makes no relevant remarks on such combinations as *the word banana* (§ 1843), and *a dozen collars* (§ 1455), and we are, consequently, left in the dark as to whether he finds an apposition also in these word-groups.

A somewhat detailed discussion of the nature of an apposition is given by DEN HERTOOG in his *Nederlandsche Spraakkunst* I, § 40, g. Although the present writer must not be understood to endorse all the views expounded there, the following treatment of the subject is, in the main, based on this writer's observations.

5. Some forms of the apposition-construction have three important variants, viz.: one with the preposition *of*, a second with a genitive, and a third in which the two elements change places. Thus a river may be denoted in four different ways: *the river Jordan* (now the ordinary way), *the river of Jordan* (in older English), *Jordan's river* (only in poetry and the higher literary style), and *the Jordan river* (unusual in long-established names, but frequent in recent appellations). It must be distinctly understood that this fourfold variety of designation is possible in only a very limited number of cases. Mostly it is only one, or at most two constructions that are at all in current use. It is this variety of construction, as required or preferred in different connexions, that is of practical interest to the foreign student of English and will, therefore, form the main subject of the following discussions.
6. a) Apposition in its purest form is found in combinations in which a word or word-group is followed by another of the same denotation, i. e. one covering an equal assemblage of notions. One, mostly the last, is then meant as an elucidation of the other, in other words, intended to facilitate identification. Thus to a person not familiar with the expression *the Welsh Wizard* the addition of *the late Prime Minister of England*, or, better still, *Mr. Lloyd George*, would clear up all uncertainty as to who is meant by this designation.

The fact that an apposition of the nature here described mostly serves to assist in establishing identity accounts for the frequent use of identifying terms, such as *or*, *namely*, *to wit*, *that is*, *that is to say*, mostly placed before the apposition. In the printed and written language *that is* and *namely* are often represented by, respectively, the Latin i. e. (= *id est*), and viz. (= *videlicet*), which are, however, read as their English equivalents.

*To wit*, *namely*, and *that is* are occasionally found after the word which serves for explanation, the latter also, more frequently, in the body of an explanatory word-group, e. g.:



i. Why, then, should Copy be guilty of the unmanly weakness of kissing — vehemently kissing — a “big girl,” Miss Allardyce to wit? RUDY. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*.

ii. He confined his practice almost entirely to one class of work, the defence, namely, of culprits arraigned for heavy crimes. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XL, 479.

iii. She insisted upon our establishing a servant in livery — a boy, that is, of about sixteen. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 119.

Between Weimar and Paris he spent some portion of his earlier years, while his family — his mother, that is, and his stepfather — were living in Devonshire. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 7.

A modified application of *that is* is its use before or after a rectifying addition, as in:

My only object is to secure your happiness; — the happiness of both of us, that is. TROL., *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. XXV, 348.

In 16—17th century also *even* was sometimes used “to introduce an epexegetis.” O. E. D., s. v. *eren*, adv. 8. In Scriptural language this *even* is still common enough; e. g.:

One is master, even Christ, and all ye are brethren. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXV, 261.

b) Another form of apposition is found in a word-group in which the second denotes a specimen or variety of what is expressed by the first; e. g. *the word banana*, *the planet Mars*, *the man Moses*.

It is easy to see that an apposition of the second kind is distinguished from one of the first kind in that, unlike the latter, its head-word does not give complete sense. Thus while *the Welsh Wizard* is in itself a sufficient designation of the person meant, *the man in the man Moses* would give hardly any enlightenment as to who is referred to. It follows that there never is any occasion for the use of any of the identifying terms *that is*, *namely*, etc. after the head-word of an apposition of the second kind. As the whole combination may, however, require further designation, the call for such a term is, of course, frequent enough at the end.

A further difference between an apposition-construction of the first and one of the second kind consists in the fact that in many cases the latter varies with, or has to give place to, a construction with the preposition *of*, and sometimes, especially in poetry, is replaced by a genitive construction. Another variant of which many combinations are capable is that in which the two elements change places (32).

c) A third form of apposition is that in which the second element of a word-group denotes the thing or the things of which a quantity or a number, indicated by the first element, is taken, e. g.: *a little wine*, *a few shillings*, *a dozen collars*.

Also this apposition-construction has two rival constructions, one with the preposition *of* and one with a genitive. It stands to reason that, as the relation between head-word and apposition differs from that between head-word and apposition in the second apposition-construction, there is a corresponding difference between the respective



substitutes. Accordingly we may speak of specializing and partitive *of*, and specializing and partitive genitive respectively. Another, less appropriate, name of the specializing genitive is genitive of definition, used by MURRAY in O.E.D., s. v. *of*, 23. The partitive genitive was common enough in Old English, but has left no traces in Modern English.

7. In the case of appositions of the first and second kinds the word or word-group mentioned last is, indeed, felt as the modifying element, but its inferiority in grammatical status is so slight as to be almost inappreciable. In combinations containing an apposition of the third kind, on the other hand, it is the first element which distinctly appears as the modifying element, its grammatical rank being considerably inferior to that of the second. In fact, its grammatical relation to the latter is the same as that of attributive adnominal adjuncts generally (Ch. VIII, 94).

8. *a*) Judged by the above test (4), there is no apposition in combinations in which a noun in the common case expresses:

- 1) a quality denoted by: *α*) the name of the substance a thing is made of or is associated with, as in *an iron bedstead, a cotton frock, a wood pavement; Death relaxed his iron features* (LONGF., *The Norman Baron*, VII), *I saw the gold sunshine round your head* (THACK., *Henry Esmond*); *β*) the name of a person, animal or thing regarded as the embodiment of a quality, as in *a giant tree, an infant colony, a maiden speech; a monster meeting, a few halcyon weeks; a bubble company, a common-place observation, a gift horse; γ*) a proper name as in *a Gladstone bag, Pullman cars, Wellington boots; Brazil nuts, Ceylon tea, Turkey carpets.*

- 2) a relation, which is normally indicated by: *α*) a genitive of possession or its periphrastic equivalent with *of*, as in *the Transvaal Government, pioneer work, the Allied cause; β*) an adverbial adjunct, as in *a chance acquaintance, a surprise visit, a land war, the China trade.*

In the above combinations the modifying noun may be regarded as a kind of makeshift for an adjective, the language not having one to express the meaning intended. For detailed discussion see Ch. XXIII. Compare also Ch. XXIV, 52.

- b*) Nor can the term apposition be rightly applied to a noun which is the head-word of an adnominal noun that indicates some particular circumstance attaching to a person, animal or thing, as in *the statesman-warrior* (TEN.), *the hostage ladies* (MCCARTHY), *her kinsman lover* (TROL.), *the minstrel boy* (MOORE), *a slave woman* (LECKY), *the stranger lad* (Mrs. CRAIK), *the twin lads* (TROL.), *a widow lady* (THACK.); *a toy watch, prose fiction*, etc.

In these and similar word-groups the difference in grammatical status between the first and the second element is not very marked. In some the elements may even be transposed without materially altering the meaning. Thus there is little, if any, difference between *the Empress Queen* and *the Queen Empress*, between *a restaurant hotel* and *an hotel restaurant*.

In *the merchant princes of the City* (THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. IV, 140) the men referred to are not princes that are merchants, but rather merchants that are (like) princes.

The equality, or approach to equality as to grammatical status of the component parts of certain word-groups of the above description, does not however justify the second element being called an apposition, seeing that it is not intended to indicate the same person or thing as the first, which, as we have seen in § 4, is the main test of an apposition.

## APPOSITION OF THE FIRST KIND.

### REAL APPPOSITION.

9. a) In combinations with an apposition of the first kind one of (5) the elements is often a proper name, while the other, owing to its definitive adjuncts, is, as a rule, no less special in meaning. This explains why the two elements are often transposed, as is shown by a comparison of the two following groups of examples:

i. Havelock, the hero, is dead. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 267.

John Smith, the baker said so. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 267.

Cæsar, the Roman Emperor, invades Britain. LATHAM, *Eng. Gram.*, § 223.

On Whit Monday, the famous 23rd of May 1706, my young lord first came under the fire of the enemy. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XII, 253.

ii. He was not a man to be thwarted in his amours, any more than that stormy lover, Achilles. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 355.

About the same time there lived, as you know, the great printer, William Caxton. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, III, Ch. III, 63.

He entered into a fervent and glowing description of all the honours and advantages to be derived from his appointment at that seat of learning, Dotheboys Hall. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. IV, 22 a.

The Premiers, Mr. George and M. Poincaré, have had their meeting at Boulogne about the Genoa Conference. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 9, 161 b.

The two alternative practices are met with in:

Now Thetis, the good housewife, began to put on the pot, in order to regale the good man, Phoebus, after his daily labours were over. FIELD., *Jos. And.* I, Ch. VIII, 16.

b) Instances of both apposition and head-word being appellatives are, however, common enough. In this case both may be equally specialized by defining adjuncts, or the apposition may denote a thing thought of as a unicum. In the latter case the apposition is distinctly meant to be an explanation; e.g.:

i. Her garments appeared to be in constant danger of sliding off those sharp pegs, her shoulders. DICK., *Crick.* I, 12.

He, too, robbed the throne from the King, his father. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. II, 168.

Let it be said for the credit of womanhood that the royal widows, the relicts of the Nana's father by adoption, made many efforts to protect the captive English women. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

ii. You lack the season of all natures, sleep. SHAK., *Mac b.*, III, 4, 140.

I mean the record of crimes and miseries — history. SHELLEY (SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. III, 68).

Come into the garden, Maud, | For the black bat, night, has flown. TEN., *Maud*, I, xxii, I.

So great a famine was sure to be accompanied or followed by famine's blood-brother, typhus. MANCH. GUARD., VI, 5, 82 b.

c) An apposition may also stand by way of explanation with a noun which is preceded by the indefinite article, either as a weak *some* or a weak *a certain*, or by a numeral; e. g.:

i. \* I referred to a porter, (i. e.) a door-keeper.

You're sure and certain she's dead — not in a dwam, a faint? MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XXVIII, 172.

\*\* So I have come to you now, with an offer and proffer of marriage | Made by a good man and true, Miles Standish, the Captain of Plymouth! LONGF., *Courtship of Miles Standish*, III, 99.

ii. York had at least one more son, Richard, who appears as Earl of Cambridge in the play of Henry V. Note to SHAK.'s *Rich.* II, V, 2, 90, in *Clar. Press Ed.*

Note. There is, of course, no apposition in such a sentence as *I want a hero: an uncommon want* (BYRON. *Don Juan*, I, 1), which stands for *I want a hero, which is an uncommon want*, the word-group *an uncommon want* having no grammatical connexion with the predicate *want*.

# 10. Some special cases of the construction with an apposition of the first kind deserve further notice.

a) The proper name is often represented by an honorific title, such as *His Majesty*, *His Grace*, etc.; thus in:

They said that his Grace, the Captain-General, had had fighting enough. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XIV, 270.

Such an honorific title may coalesce with the following proper name into a kind of unit, as, for example, in *Mr. Lloyd George*, *Mrs. Lloyd George*, etc. In these and similar combinations there is hardly any notion of one noun standing in apposition to the other.

The title stands after the proper name in such a combination as *P. Jonson, Esquire*, in which it loses its status as head-word and assumes that of adjunct.

b) An apposition is often placed, by way of explanation, after a personal pronoun; thus in:

I agree with Miss Hale so far as to consider our people in the condition of children, while I deny that we, the masters, have anything to do with the making or keeping them so. MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XV, 94.

She had never perceived that he had cared for her opinions, as belonging to her, the individual. *ib.*, Ch. XXV, 155.

Brave weather this! We, doctors, don't like it, I can tell you. *ib.*, Ch. XXVII, 167.

We, you and I, we must not dream any more. HICHENS, *Gard. of Ai.*, II, vi, Ch. XXIX, 293.

Note. In such a sentence as the following, however, the adjunct placed after the personal pronoun, is not meant for identification and is not, accordingly, to be apprehended as an apposition:

We, persons practically all of the same class, found that even with words in common and ordinary everyday use there was no agreement among us. SHAW (*Manch. Guard.*, 24/6, 1927, 489a). (= who are persons practically all of the same class.)

c) An apposition sometimes appears in the shape of a subordinate clause; e. g.:

i. One touch of nature makes the whole world kin, | That all with one consent praise new-born gawds. SHAK., *Troil & Cres.*, III, 3, 176.

ii. I recollected one story there was in the village, how that on a certain night in the year ... all the dead people came out of the ground. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 7b.

iii. But one course was open — to cut his acquaintance. THACK., *Snoobs*, Ch. I, 14.

I am conscious ... that a duty devolves upon me, to omit no detail. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, II, E, 243.

d) Such an apposition may refer to an anticipating or anaphoric pronoun. (Ch. II, 11 Obs. IV); thus in:

i. Is this a dagger which I see before me? SHAK., *Macb.*, II, 1, 33.

What is it thou hast seen or heard? TEN., *Morte d'Arthur*, 150.

It is quite right that he should bear the expense. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2295. He is a lucky man, whoever gets it. *Tit-bits*.

ii. That I have ta'en away this old man's daughter, | It is most true. SHAK., *Oth.*, I, 3, 78. (This use of anaphoric *it* is unusual.)

But what pleasure she can have found in having Miss Burney about her, it is not easy to comprehend. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (722b). (*It* represents the infinitive with its object.)

Thus also when the clause is represented by an infinitive, or by a gerund with or without complements, as in:

i\*. It was absolutely necessary to strike some daring blow. MAC., *Clive*, (505 b).

It is no good to tell lies. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch XXIV, 224.

\*\* It is more blessed to give than to receive. Bible, *Acts*, XX, 35.

It is very easy to talk. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. IV, 15b.

ii\* It is no use mincing matters or making secrets. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 333b.

It is a bad thing — this beating the police. DISR., *Syb.*, V, Ch. I, 292.

It is no good hiding the truth. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 31.

It is a mere waste of money, answering these things. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVIII, 163.

It is quite worth while making a general study of the grammar and vocabulary of the language in which they (sc. the vowels) occur. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 53.

\*\* It is not his fault, being rich. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 167.

It is useless grieving. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 546.

It is such hard work climbing. *id.*, SHIRLEY, II, Ch. XVI, 324.

It is very 'ard parting. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XVII, 112.

Note a) The anticipating *it* to which the infinitive-clause is related



appositionally may be in another function than that of subject (Ch. III, 25 ff); thus in:

He might possibly have it in his power to serve me also. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. VIII, 45.

β) TENNYSON has *this* instead of *it* in:

This is a shameful thing for men to die. *Morte d'Arthur*, 78.

γ) The construction with a bare gerund, as in the four last examples given above, must not be confounded with that illustrated by the following examples, in which the adjective stands attributively before a gerund, and the preceding *it* is not an anticipating personal pronoun, but an indefinite pronoun (Ch. II, 11, Obs. VI):

It is ill dancing with a heavy heart. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 407.

It's easy talking when you are young. BESANT, *The World* went very well then, Ch. I, 7.

ε) 1) Also a noun with its adjuncts may similarly stand by way of apposition to a preceding (pro)noun (Ch. II, 43, a).

'Tis not a farthing matter, her death. SWIFT, *Journ. to Stella*, LXI.

They had all done so well for themselves, these Forsytes, that they were all what is called of a certain position. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, Ch. I, 20.

Note. The pronoun may be in another function than that of subject, as in:

Oh, that the earth would open and swallow them up, alive, the cannibals! BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 28.

2) Sometimes we find a demonstrative pronoun in the same function as the appositional noun (Ch. II, 43, a); thus in:

They are no ordinary houses, those. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI, 183.

It looks a nice warm exercise, that, doesn't it? *ib.*, Ch. XXX, 270.

Note a) Although serving the purpose of furthering identification, such an appositional pronoun often strikes us as more or less pleonastic. This is distinctly the case when it is identical with the pronoun it refers to, as in:

He was not going to be a snuffy schoolmaster, *he*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. I, 191. (The last *he* is added to secure the emphasis which could not very well be indicated by the first *he*.)

There is no real pleonasm in such a construction as *He was a wonderful man, that uncle of yours*, in which it is a noun with its adjuncts that stands by way of apposition to a preceding pronoun; nor can it be said that "the pronoun may also be made pleonastic by tagging on the equivalent noun," as SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2100) has it. Compare Ch. II, 43.

KRUISINGA (*Handbk.*<sup>1</sup>, § 1963), commenting on the construction here referred to, styles the noun the appended subject, on the strength of the similarity he finds between two such sentences as *It's past ten, I think*, in which *I think* may rightly be called an appended sentence, or clause, and *They've gone away, the demons*. But the difference is obvious: in the latter example *they* and *demons* stand for identical notions, while there is nothing in the way of identity in the former. A more appropriate name would be the repeated subject.

There is indubitable pleonasm in the case of a personal pronoun being placed in immediate succession to a noun-subject (Ch. II, 41). This practice is now partly vulgar or slipshod, partly a favourite device of literary men to impart a tinge of picturesqueness or quaintness to their style, poets often turning it to account to satisfy the laws of metre or rhythm. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2099.

i. And then Robin postman went one way, and the gardener, he went the other. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 40.

ii. The skipper, he stood beside the helm. LONGF., *Wreck of the Hesp.*, III.

Note. For rhythmical or metrical reasons this repeated subject is sometimes placed in back-position.

The smith, a mighty man is he. LONGF., *Vil. Blacks.*, I.

β) It may here, in passing, be observed that, in emotional colloquial language, not only the noun figuring as the repeated subject, but also the predicating verb is often repeated. In this case the sentence is, at least formally, complex, and apposition is naturally out of the question (Ch. II, 43, b); thus in:

It's puzzling work, talking is. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 5.

She was but a young woman when she died, my mother was. *ib.*, III, Ch. IX, 241.

In most cases this repetition is attended by inverted word-order; thus in:

He was very much attached to me, was Dick. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 33.

She was indeed a gushing thing, was the youngest Miss Pecksniff. *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 7 a.

He doesn't make mistakes, doesn't Squire Darneley. RICH. BAGOT, *Darneley Place*, I, Ch. II, 25.

Similarly a personal or demonstrative pronoun may stand in such a repeated sentence (Ch. II, 41, c, Note a); thus in:

I'm ready too, I am. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLVI, 423.

f) Demonstratives, and also such words as *all* and *both*, when used to gather up the members of a compound element of the sentence, may be understood as the head-word of the latter, which then have the character of appositions (Ch. II, 41, c, Note; Ch. XXVI, 21, b).

i. The knell, the shroud, the mattock and the grave; | The deep damp vault, the darkness, and the worm, | These are the bugbears of a winter's eve. YOUNG, *Night Thoughts*, V, 10.

ii. His face, his figure, his mode of speech, his habit of thought, all were masculine exceedingly. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 195, 306 a

iii. The House of Commons and the House of Lords, both passed the bill by large majorities.

3) There is also a kind of appositional relation between two definitive adjuncts modifying one and the same noun (Ch. XXXIII, 12, Obs. V), as in:

i. Trebonius doth desire you to o'er-read, | At your best leisure, this his humble suit. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 5

ii. So long as I was proceeding through this first and prettiest part of my

night walk, my mind remained passively open to the impressions produced by the view. WILK. COL., *The Woman in White*, I, Ch. IV, 25.

h) The relation of apposition is not confined to nouns and pronouns; we find it, indeed, wherever a word(-group) or clause is added to another by way of explanation, and is intended to express the same meaning, as is shown by the absence of *and*; thus in:

The estate was encumbered — burdened with debts.

He became more thrifty — more attentive to the expenses of life — than he had been. LYTON, *Paul Clif.* Ch. XXIV, 285.

I used to do as Jean Jacques did — lie down in my boat and let it glide wherever it would. G. ELIOT, *Lifted Veil*, Ch. I, (385)

I have a mind some of these days to serve him as he served Mademoiselle's hound — to put a bullet through his heart. BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. VIII, 70.

He was surely crying out upon God, denouncing God for the evils that had beset his nearly ended life. HICHENS, *Gard. of AI*, I, II, Ch. IX, 220.

i) Sometimes the head-word and the apposition are identical, the latter being then furnished with some explanatory comment; thus in:

Both these books, so different in the evidences of texture in the mind behind each of them, have one quality in common, a quality which makes the reading of them, as *Armistice Day* returns again, a poignant experience. *Westm. Gaz.*, 11/11, 1922, 16 b.

Here mention may be made: 1) of a verb being, so to speak, repeated in the shape of a cognate object, the latter then being furnished with some explanatory adjunct(s) (*JESP.*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 12, 32).

Kitty laughed — a laugh musical but malicious. MRS. WARD, *Mar. of Wil. Ashe*.

2) of an adjective being, in a manner, mentioned anew in the shape of a noun furnished with some explanatory adjunct(s) (*ib.*, 12, 33).

Her face was very pale — a greyish pallor. MRS. WARD, *Fenwick's Career*.

j) In conclusion we draw attention to the fact that in such a sentence as *I know that he has come* the original relation between *that* and *he has come* was that of apposition: *I know that (now this) he has come*. By incorporating *that* with *he has come* the pronoun was turned into a conjunction. For further discussion see Ch. LXI, 12, a.

#### APPARENT APPPOSITION.

11. When a noun, with or without adjuncts, standing without a link after or before another noun or a pronoun, does not serve the purpose of establishing identity, but rather that of giving some incidental information about what is expressed by its head-word, it is better apprehended as an undeveloped clause than an

apposition, in other words, rather as a predicative than an attributive adjunct (4).

a) This is distinctly the case when the modifying element of the combination is not furnished with a definitive adjunct and is, consequently, of a more general denotation than the element modified; thus in:

The young king himself, a trained theologian and proud of his theological knowledge, entered the lists against Luther. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § V, 321.

God have mercy on me, a sinner. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XXXIII, 247 b. And this was the end of William Salterne, merchant. *ib.*, Ch. XXVIII, 215 a. And he struck me, madman, over the face. TEN., *Maud.*, II, I, 1, 941.

Note. The adjunct often implies some adverbial relation; thus in:

The daughter of a hundred Earls, | You are not one to be desired. TEN., *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, I. (= Although you are a lady who can claim her descent from a hundred Earls etc.).

A healthy, merry child, she did not much care for dress or eating. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 37 (= As she was a healthy, merry child etc.)

An ardent Roman Catholic, she was bound to a family of rigid Presbyterians. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. III, 46 (= While she was an ardent Roman Catholic etc.).

b) The predicative function of the modifying element is less marked when it is preceded by a definitive adjunct, but may, nevertheless, be unmistakable; thus in:

It was decreed by fortune, my perpetual enemy, that so great a felicity should not fall to my share. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, Ch. VII, (202a). (i. e. which was my perpetual enemy.)

And the year | On the earth, her deathbed, in a shroud of leaves dead | Is lying. SHELLEY, *Autumn*, 5. (i. e. which is her deathbed.)

Expediency, the rule of practical man, is everything. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 533a. (i. e. which is the rule of practical man.)

c) Also in such a combination as *George V, King of England* the modifying element is best understood as a predicative adjunct, being, indeed, felt as short for *who is King of England*. The same explanation may even be extended to *George V, the present King of England*, although the presence of the defining adjuncts and the consequent identity of what is expressed by head-word and modifier might also lead to the conclusion that the latter is an apposition. Its grammatical character will, accordingly, depend upon whether it is intended as a communication of some incidental information, or as an identifying expedient. In the following examples the modifying element appears to answer the former intention rather than the latter:

Go to the damsel Priscilla, the loveliest maiden of Plymouth. LONGF., *Courtship of Miles Standish*, II, 62.

Colonel Spender, Sir James Craig's private secretary, left for London to-night. *Manch. Guard.*

Princess Mary, the only daughter of the King, was married in Westminster



Abbey on Tuesday to Viscount Lascelles, the eldest son of the Earl of Harewood, *ib.*

**Note.** It should be observed that when in the combinations mentioned under *b)* and *c)* the modifying element and the element modified change places, the word(-group) placed last fully assumes the status of an apposition; thus in *And the year on her deathbed, the earth, in a shroud of leaves dead is lying. Go to the loveliest maiden of Plymouth, the damsel Priscilla,*

#### FORMATION OF THE GENITIVE OF WORD-GROUPS CONTAINING AN APPPOSITION.

12. *a)* When a combination containing a noun in apposition to another is to be placed in the genitive, the inflectional ending is mostly attached to the last element alone; e. g.:

We ask not our cousin Louis's sword. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 355. The story ... is based on the actual facts of her sister, Mrs. Bishop's unhappy married life. BOOKMAN, No. 262, 164a. (In the light of the examples under *b)* the genitive *sister's* would appear to be more appropriate.)

James the butler's present was a fountain-pen. PUNCH, No. 3695, 326b.

*b)* But the two elements are not always felt to be so closely knit together as to preclude both of them taking the mark of the genitive; e. g.:

I have all my grandmother's, Lady Kew's property. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XLI, 419.

She had naturally begun by looking at him with her father's, the old Indian Mutiny veteran's eye. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. IV, 63. As she grew older, ... she had moved some way from her father's — the simple-minded soldier's-position. *ib.*

**Note.** This construction is on a par with that in which the genitive of a noun is in apposition to a possessive pronoun, as in:

It was his, Belton's, intention to destroy the entail. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXVII, 364.

There was something terrible in the idea that, but for his, James's, money, Dartie's name might have appeared in the Bankruptcy List. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, I, Ch. VI, 85.

*c)* There is no union when the noun modified is placed between the two elements. In this construction, which, on account of its incongruous effect, is mostly avoided, only the first element takes the mark of the genitive; thus in:

I am not yet of Percy's mind, the Hotspur of the North. SHAK., *Henry IV*, II, 4, 114.

He had now pitched his nets for Gripe's daughter, the rich scrivener. WYCH., *Love in a Wood*, I, 2, (24).

*d)* Far more frequently both elements of the combination are placed in the genitive when it is used substantively (i. e. with no head-word expressed or understood) and is composed of a proper name, or a word-group of like import, and a noun indicating the holder of an office or the follower of a trade, the

whole denoting a residence or establishment, and mostly preceded by a preposition denoting a relation of place, such as *at*, *in*, *into*, *over*, *to* (Ch. XXIV, 4, *b*, 3).

i. There was Sowerbery's, the undertaker's, just as it used to be. DICK, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 474.

"I live here." — "Live at Brass's, the attorney's!" cried Mr. Witherden in some surprise. *id.*, *Old. Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXXVIII, 141*b*.

He invited Pen to dine at his lodgings over Madame Fribsby's, the milliner's, in Clavering. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 38.

ii. At her aunt's — Mrs. Bentley's — she met many celebrities. D. MURRAY ROSE, *Introd. to Ann Radcliffe, The Myst. of Udolpho*, 3.

This practice varies with: 1) that of placing only the last element in the genitive, which may be as common, as in:

I will send Nanny to London on purpose, and she may have a bed at her cousin, the saddler's. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. I, 6.

I called at Parker, the publisher's. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref. 37.

Sometimes they whizzed past like the overhead balls for money in Cruikshank, the draper's. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7075, 8*b*.

2) that of affixing the mark of the genitive only to the first element, which appears to be rather unusual, as in:

He was taking it (*sc.* the punctured machine) to Flambeau's the repairers. WELLS, *The Wheels of Chance*, 58.

We called at Meredith's, the Tailor. *Athen.*, No. 4434, 437*a*.

All this was happening outside Rexton's, the hosier. *Punch*.

e) Also when the genitive is used absolutely (*i. e.* with its head-word understood, because it is found in an earlier part of the sentence), the ordinary practice is, presumably, to place both elements in the genitive, unless, indeed, the last is of some length; *e. g.*:

i. A small old spaniel — which had been Don José's, | His father's — stood howling on the brink. BYRON, *Don Juan*, II, LVIII.

ii. You must take care that your dwellings are cottages, and not villas, like my cousin's, the Duke of Luton. *Disr.*, *Loth.*, I, Ch. V, 26.

Convoys of treasure were passed over to our forces, and to our ally's, the King of Prussia. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch IV, 68.

There was a carriage and pair standing at the gate, which she recognised as Dr. Madeley's, the physician from Rotherby. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 60.

## APPOSITION OF THE SECOND KIND.

### PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

13. *a*) Apposition of the second kind is far less common in Present- (12) day English than in Contemporary Dutch, a construction in which the modifying element is furnished with the preposition *of* often taking its place. In the same function as such a word-group with *of*, literary English occasionally has a noun in the genitive, but this construction is now distinctly archaic and chiefly used in verse, where it is applied for metrical purposes (39).

b) The fact that the apposition denotes a specimen of what is expressed by its head-word postulates that it is a proper name or is used as a proper name. Thus in such combinations as *the preposition of, the year nineteen hundred*, the words *of* and *nineteen hundred* have all the characteristics of proper names, although this is not shown by their being written or printed with a capital initial.

c) As the apposition has a specializing function, the head-word is preceded by the definite article. When a genitive (or possessive pronoun), or a demonstrative pronoun takes the place of the definite article, the signification of the head-word is sometimes as special as that of the modifier, so that the latter assumes the character of an apposition of the first kind. Compare *the publisher Mr. N.* with *my friend's (or his, this) publisher, Mr. N.* In a combination of the latter description the first and the second element should, accordingly, be divided by a comma, a distinct pause being observed between them when read aloud; thus in: He remembered that the Duke of Wellington had ... expressed his esteem for that fine fellow, Poulter. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. IV, 154. Do you think this man, Horner, is innocent? CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm., Blue Carbuncle*.

Note. When, however, the appellative is the name of a (social or family) relation shared by more than one person, as, for example, in *my friend Jim* (as contrasted with *my friend Jack*), *my brother Charles* (as contrasted with *my brother Robert*), the use of the possessive pronoun (or genitive) does not affect the relation between appellative and proper name. In fact this relation is the same as that between the component parts of such a combination as *the river Thames*, i.e. the proper name singles out an individual from a class. In these combinations there is, consequently, the same absence of a pause after the appellative, and the same division of stress as in *the river Thames*.

The case is different when the second element is represented by a designation which is not a proper name, but has an equally special signification, as, for example, in *my friend, the Vicar of Wakefield*. In such a combination the second element would most naturally be understood to serve the purpose of identification, as revealed by the pause observed between appellative and proper name, and by their approximate equality in stress, so that it would be felt as an apposition of the first kind. In the printed language the difference in apposition is (or may be) shown by the absence or use of the comma respectively.

d) Specializing *of* is not always clearly to be distinguished from *of* as the substitute of the genitive of possession. Thus in such a word-group as *the position of guardian* the preposition *of* may be understood either way, its meaning depending upon whether a guardian is apprehended as a specimen, or as the custodian of a position. The uncertain meaning of *of* is reflected

in the hesitancy prevailing as to the use of the indefinite article in combinations of this description. As this subject has already been dealt with in considerable detail in Ch. XXXI, 43, it is here passed over in silence.

14. As to the use of specializing *of* the language is highly arbitrary and, in not a few cases, even irregular, insomuch that a detailed discussion involves a distinguishing of a large variety of combinations, and an enumeration of a great number of exceptions.

APPOSITION NEVER OR ONLY EXCEPTIONALLY REPLACED BY  
SPECIALIZING *OF*.

15. Apposition is practically regular, i. e. specializing *of* is almost regularly dispensed with, when the combination denotes:

a) *a person, or a deity*; e.g.: Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men which are upon the face of the earth. Bible, Numb., XII, 3.

Now, the rake Hesperus had called for his breeches. FIELD., J. o. s. A. n. d., I, Ch. VIII, 16.

The widow Blackacre, beyond comparison Wycherley's best comic character, is the Countess in Racine's *Plaideurs*. MAC., C. o. m. D. r. a. m., (578 b).

Nothing could make their hearts swerve from their allegiance to the descendants of the martyr Charles. THACK., V. i. r. g., Ch. I, 9.

To borrow a turn of phrase from the man Macaulay, "it is a case of *Eclipse is first, and the rest nowhere*." Westm. Gaz., 18/11, 1922, 9a.

Thus also when a number of persons is referred to, as in:

Those who take an interest in this tale will be glad to learn that the brothers Cheeryble live. DICK., N. i. c. h. N. i. c. k., Pref.

The enterprising publishers Messrs Rigby and Meeson. Westm. Gaz., No. 8438, 12 d.

b) *an animal*; e.g.: I had forgot that foul conspiracy | Of the beast Caliban and his confederates. SHAK., T. e. m. p., IV, I, 140.

Rip's sole adherent was his dog Wolf. WASH. I. r. v., S. k. e. t. c. h - B. k., V, 38.

It (sc. the vulture) went wheeling round and round the victim lion. DOUGLAS JERROLD, B. l. a. c. k - E. y ' d S. u. s. a. n, II, I, (31).

*Macedon is not worthy of thee*, is what Philip said to his son Alexander, after his achievement with the horse Bucephalos. COBH. BREW., D. i. c. t. o. f P. h. r. a. s. e & F. a. b. l. e, s. v. *Macedon*.

c) *a ship*; e.g.: Prosperously sailed | The ship, 'Good Fortune'. TEN., E. n. A. r. d., 524.

Another fifty a little more than paid for a cabin almost worthy of his lordship on the big ship *Baltic*. WILLIAMSON, L. o. r. d L. o. v. e. l. a. n. d., Ch. III, 18.

d) *a star or constellation*; e. g.: Arthur is for Arcturus, the chief star in the constellation Boötes, next to the Great Bear. STUART, N. o. t. e t. o S. c. o. t. t, L. a. y, I, XVII.

The planet Venus, when appearing as the morning star. WEBST. D. i. c. t. s. v. *Lucifer*.

Upon this planet Earth. WELLS, F. i. r. s. t a. n. d L. a. s. t T. h. i. n. g. s, I, § 3, 23.

e) *a weapon, machine, instrument*, etc.; e.g.: There drew he forth the brand Excalibur. TEN., M. o. r. t. e d' A. r. t. h. u. r, 52.

16. Obs. I. The appellative *person* is always connected with the following proper name by *of*, as the substitute of a possessive genitive



apparently because it has some of its original meaning (*a character sustained or assumed in a drama or the like or in actual life* (O. E. D.), clinging to it; thus in:

Here had we now our country's honour roof'd, | Were the graced person of our Banquo present. SHAK., *Mac b.*, III, 4, 41.

It was thought advisable that an English agent should be near the person of Eugene in Italy. MAC., *Ad.*, (744 b).

Thus also when a word-group follows which is as restricted in meaning as a proper name, as in:

Who will deny that these valuable gifts are largely represented in the person of the late Prime Minister. *Manch. Guard.*, VIII, 18, 342 c.

The possessive *of* is naturally indispensable when the word approaches in meaning to that of *body*, as in:

You have all heard, I suppose, of the horrid and barbarous murder, committed upon the person of the Archbishop of St. Andrews, SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. VIII, 86. (Compare: "But what was your chief duty?" — "To guard the King's person." *ib.*, Ch. IX, 98.)

II. There is no apposition in case the appellative assumes the nature of an adjective, as in *our darling Laura* (WILK. COL., *Woman in White*, I, Ch. VIII, 56), *the foreigner Moore* (CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XIV, 294). Here *darling* and *foreigner* are practically equivalent to the adjectives *dear* and *foreign* respectively. It will be observed that in such combinations the appellatives lose some of their stress, that the voice runs on without a break, and that the definitive modifier *our* in the above example, belongs to the whole word-group, rather than to the appellative alone.

III. Before the proper name of a person the appellative often loses the definite article. For the specification of the nouns which all but regularly reject it, are apt to lose it given certain conditions, or regularly retain it under all circumstances, the reader is referred to Ch. XXXI, 53—56, where the subject has been discussed in considerable detail. It has there already been observed, but may be repeated here, that the dropping of the article considerably detracts from the substantial character of the appellative, causing the relative positions of head-word and adjunct to be reversed. Thus in *the Lady Laura* the appellative is the head-word, the proper name the adjunct; while in *Lady Laura* the appellative is the adjunct and the proper name the head-word.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 90) rightly observes that "in *king Alfred* the adjunct-word is a pure assumptive — as much so as *good in the good king* — and has the usual position of an assumptive word in English, that is, before its head-word." See also Ch. XXXI, 53.

The shifting of grammatical status is aptly illustrated by the following quotation, in which the adjective *humble* and the noun *queen* are used in exactly parallel functions:

If he selected humble Esther, instead of Queen Vashti, she would be content with his lordship's choice. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 81.

The dropping of the article causes the appellative and the proper name to coalesce into a kind of unit when the former is a title; thus in *King Alfred*, *Queen Victoria*, *Lord Beaconsfield*, *Miss Brown*. When

the article is retained, the union is less complete, which may be responsible for the hesitation whether we should say *the Misses Brown* (perhaps the more correct form), or *the Miss Browns* (the more natural form). For further discussion see Ch. XXV, 17; and compare ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 36, 2; JESPERSEN, Phil. of Gram., 98.

IV. There is no apposition, in the sense in which the word is here understood, in combinations in which the head-word receives extra stress to bring out a contrast between two (or more) sides of a person's individuality, as in *I am speaking of the novelist Disraeli, not the statesman Disraeli*. In fact the component parts of the combination are in this case no longer meant as designations of one and the same person, the appellative standing rather for certain qualities collectively implied by the word. The same observation, of course, obtains when appellative and proper name are transposed, as in *I am speaking of Disraeli, the novelist, not Disraeli, the statesman*.

17. Apposition is also the regular construction in combinations denoting the class, genus, kind, order, sort, species, or variety of whatever we are speaking about.

An animal belonging to the class Insecta of Anthropoda. O.E.D., s.v. *insect*, 2. The species negro is so distinct from our own that the Ten Commandments have actually no reference to them. HUXLEY, *Darwiniana*, Ch. I, 2.

Note. *Of* has, of course, a partitive function in such sentences as: The class of readers to which he means to address his communications. COLERIDGE, *Friend*.

Sometimes I resigned myself to endeavouring to recall what sort of boy I used to be before I bit Mr. Murdstone. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36.

In the following example, however, *of* has a specializing force:

Quesada, the conqueror of New Granada, ... was only a degree better than commanders of the type of Ojeda, Cortes, Pizarro ... and the rest. ATHEN., No. 4451, 183 a.

18. The names of the parts of speech, and such words as *word*, *word-group*, *sentence*, *clause*, etc., *figure*, *letter*, *mark*, *sign*, etc., are, for the most part, regularly construed with the following noun in apposition. Thus *the preposition of*, *the noun town*, *the word worth*, *the word-group by the side of*, *the sentence He likes history*, *the letter a*, *the mark £*, *the sign*, etc. etc. The following illustration will be deemed sufficient:

There is not a word in the language that conveys so little endearment as the word "dear." LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. VIII, 29.

He made it (sc. the sword) flourish over his head, cutting the air through which it whistled in the form of the figure eight. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIV, 361.

It still bears on its colours the name of Plassey, and the proud motto "Primus in India." MAC., *Clive*, (518 b).

You know the proverb, Mr. Hale, "Set a beggar on horseback, and he'll ride to the devil." MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. X, 64.

19. Obs. I. The following quotation does not afford an exception, *figure* having the meaning of *shape*, and *of* indicating a notion of possession:

The draught cut the figure of eight between our poor little legs. Miss BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., HANDL., I, 69).

II. There are several words, similar in import to *sentence*, which may be construed with specializing *of*; thus:

*cry*; e.g.: It was a fine sunny morning when the thrilling cry of "Land!" was given from the mast-head. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, II, 15.

The cry of "Thomas Marlow" is repeated. GALSW., *The Silver Box*, III, (75).

The cry of wolf has gone up so often from the Balcan States that the most careful observers of affairs will be most cautious in expressing opinions about even the immediate future. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6041, 1 b.

*inquiry*; e.g.: His involuntary inquiry of "What's the matter?" occasioned another shout. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 170.

*maxim*; e.g.: My theory is a sort of parody on the maxim of "Get money, my son, honestly if you can; but get money." MRS. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XXX, 196.

*plaudits*; e.g.: He heard ... all the vaulted chamber | roar and ring | With the mock plaudits of "Long live the King!" LONGF., *Tales*, King Rob. of Sic., VI.

*proverb*; e.g.: I will enter into my history, as it may prove a warning to others, who will not remember the proverb of "Let well alone." MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*. (Compare: The music from two fiddles and a piano also swells into a band verifying the old adage: "In for a penny, in for a pound." *ib.*)

*saying*; e.g.: I can tell thee where that saying was born, of "I fear no colours." SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 9.

20. To the above we may add some miscellaneous combinations in which apposition does not, apparently, admit of being replaced by the construction with specializing *of*:

a) such as denote a *disease*; e.g.: Tubercles ... are most frequently observed in the lungs (in the disease consumption). ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.* s.v. *tubercle*.

b) such as denote a *mineral*; e.g.: Quicksilver, the metal mercury. O. E. D., s.v. *quicksilver*.

The precious stone beryl is unique among minerals. *Daily Mail*.

21. There is, perhaps, also a kind of apposition in such combinations (15) as *10000 infantry, cavalry, foot, horse, rank and file, regular troops, reserves, militia, yeomanry*, etc., in which the numeral may be assumed to be used substantively, i. e. as equivalent to *10000 men* (Ch. XLII, 3). If this view is accepted, the following noun may be regarded to indicate a variety of what is denoted by the numeral, and, consequently, to stand by way of apposition to the substantival numeral.

Twenty one rank and file were killed, and twenty four rank and file were wounded. *Graph*.

Are those 50.000 coming from the 98.000 Regular Troops, or are those 98.000 left after the 50.000 have been sent out? The next item is 12.000 Reserves. Have they been called out, or are they at home? Then there are 7.000 Yeomanry. There are 77.000 Militia, and these, I understand, cannot at present be embodied, because we have no barracks to put them into. ROSEBURY, *Speech*.

If England goes to war with Germany, she will be compelled to put into the field not less than 300.000 troops. *Ninet. Cent.*, No. 398, 675.

Similar combinations are found in:

i. She carried on her maiden trip 384 saloon, 240 second-class, and 800 steerage passengers, besides 450 crew. *Graph.*

She (sc. the Titanic) was carrying 2196 passengers and crew. *Times*, No. 1842, 301 *b*.

Let us take a constituency of 13.000 electors which corresponds roughly to the unit of 70.000 population. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7377, 4 *a*.

ii. The Turks have few cavalry. *Daily News*.

Note. *Foot* and *horse* are here used identical in meaning with respectively *infantry* and *cavalry*. In these combinations these nouns and the other singulars may also be apprehended to belong to that class of collective nouns which admit of being modified by a word (numeral, adjective, or noun) denoting number, of which *people* is a typical example (*Ch. XXV*, 36; *Ch. XXVI*, 8, *Obs.* I).

The O. E. D. takes *foot* and *horse* to stand for *foot-soldiers* and *horse-soldiers* respectively, but this interpretation leaves the construction illustrated in the above examples unexplained. For the rise of *foot* and *horse* in the sense of respectively *infantry* and *cavalry* see JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 3.74; and EILERT EK WALL, *Beibl. zur Anglia*, XXXV, xi, 323.

#### APPOSITION MOSTLY REPLACED BY SPECIALIZING OF.

22. Apposition is with great regularity replaced by the construction with specializing *of* in combinations denoting a family, firm house, line, or tribe; thus in:

i. She had the happiness of seeing ... her beloved John step into a close carriage of his own, a one-horse carriage, it is true, but with the arms of the family of Pendennis handsomely emblazoned on the panels. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 17.

As for her husband's family of Warrington, they were as naught in her eyes. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 36.

ii. Books published by the firm of Macmillan. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7241, 23. By arrangement with the celebrated Parisian publishing firm of M. H. Piazza. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 106, Ad.

iii. The haughty house of Douglas all but overbalanced its authority (sc. of the crown) on the Southern Border. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, *Pref.*, 3.

The great house of Rothschild. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5036, 4 *b*.

iv. (They have) gained much more recently the name of *Cameron*, i.e. *Wrynose*, from a blemish in the physiognomy of some heroic chief of the line of Lochiel. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, *Pref.*, 4.

v. It was freely admitted by the successive members of the tribe of Wirk, that it (sc. the forge) had 'no right' to be there. *HUTCHINSON*, *If Winter Comes*, I, Ch. III, 15.

Note. In combinations with *clan* specializing *of* appears to be mostly, if not regularly, dispensed with, the definite article also being, as a rule, omitted; e.g.:

i. This historian is of opinion that the Clan Quhele of Wyntoun were the *Camerons*. *SCOTT*, *Fair Maid*, *Pref.*, 4.



During the reign of David I of Scotland, a younger brother of the chief of the powerful clan Chatton espoused the clerical life. COBB. BREW., *Dict. of Phrase & Fable*, s.v. *Mac Pherson*.

ii. He frequently mentions the bitter feuds between Clan Chattan and Clan Kay. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Pref., 4.

When the whirlwind has stripp'd every leaf on the mountain, | The mores shall Clan-Alpine exult in her shade. *id.*, *Lady*, II, XIX, 14.

23. The *of*-construction is also the usual one when the combination (14) denotes:

a geographical area; e. g.: *the Kingdom of Belgium, the island of Sicily, the county of Durham*, etc.

a town, village, or hamlet; e. g.: *the city of Antwerp, the town of Folkestone, the village of Helstone*, etc.

Note. In the following quotation the absence of *of* represents very unfrequent practice:

To take Mark Sabre at the age thirty-four and at the place Penny Green needs first to look back a little from that point. HUTCHINSON. *If Winter Comes*, I, Ch. I, 8.

a building; e. g.: He was decidedly snubbed and put down, by his own lady, in his own castle of Grogzwig. DICK., *Nick*, Ch. V, 36 a.

Pendennis and his wife often blessed themselves that their house of Fair Oaks was nearly a mile out of Clavering. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 21.

Even the fabric of Westminster Abbey needs repairing after the ravages of time. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8509, 17 b

24. Obs. I. Apposition appears to be the rule in combinations denoting: an hotel (35, *b*, 1, *a*); e. g.: The great fire at the hotel Windsor, New York *Graph*.

He is staying in London at the hotel Metropole. *Times*.

All the Coalition notabilities, with the exception of Mr. Churchill, were at the hotel Cecil. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 8, 151 a.

a river; e. g.: *the river Thames*.

The waters that flowed from it (sc. Siloa's brook) were discharged into the brook Kidron. EDMONSTON, *Note to Milton's Par. Lost*, I, 11.

Note. Formerly the construction with specializing *of* seems to have been the ordinary one. It appears now only archaically; thus in:

They were all baptized in the river of Jordan. *Bible*, Mark, I, 5.

He had a tedious but easy water journey down the river of Rhine. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. X, 230.

And then, behold, beneath him was the long green garden of Egypt and the shining stream of Nile. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, iv, 70.

II. Both the definite article and specializing *of* are mostly dispensed with in combinations denoting:

a lake; e. g.: *Lake Lemman, Loch Katrine, Lough Foyle*.

Note. The article seems to be occasionally placed before *lake*; thus in:

Apollo recommended his votaries not to rake up a fever by stirring the Lake Camarina. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, X, Ch. I, 150.

a mountain, e. g.: *Mount Etna*.

Note. In Early Modern English it seems to have been more usual

to place the article before *mount*. In Late Modern English this practice is distinctly archaic (Ch. XXXI, 30, *d*, 4, Obs. IV).

"Where lies he?" — "About the mount Misenum." SHAK., *Ant. & Cleop.* II, 2, 164.

I am going to the mount Zion. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (160).

In other ways ... he (sc. Blake) was also a forerunner; striking into the light and air high up on the mount Parnassus new fountains of song, which were in the future to become rivers of fresh emotion, thought and imagination. STOPFORD BROOKE, *Stud. in Poetry*, Ch. I, 2.

This practice may still be the usual one when the appellative is *hill*, as in:

Marriage is not like the hill Olympus, wholly clear, without clouds. FULLER (E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married* Ch. I, II).

a cape; e. g.: *Cape Race*, *Cape Hatteras*.

Note. In combinations with *promontory*, both specializing *of* and the definite article seem to be required; thus in:

To the right projected the bold promontory of Anthony's Nose. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (125).

a county in Ireland or Scotland(?) The practice varies with that in which the combination stands with the article, but without specializing *of*.

i. Dr. Finn, of Killaloe, in county Clare, was as well known in those parts,— the confines, that is, of the counties Clare, Limerick, Tipperary, and Galway. — as was the bishop himself. TROL., *Phin. Finn*, I, Ch. I, 7.

Have you ever done any weasel-hunting in county Cork? *Westm. Gaz.* No. 8515, 18 *b*.

John Butler Yeats was born 82 years ago, the son of a clergyman in county Down. *Manch. Guard.* VI, 6, 117 *c*.

In addition there is considerable mineral wealth in county Edinburgh. *ib.*, VIII 14, 268 *a*.

ii. Giorvina ... could ride a horse, or play a sonata with any girl out of the County Cork. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II; Ch. VIII, 83.

They had set up their hope in the County Wicklow. MCCARTHY, *Hist.*, III, Ch. LXXI, 194.

There are some tidy farms in the county Armagh right enough. *Athen.*, No. 4621, 442 *a*.

a fort; e. g.: *Fort St. George*.

a port; e. g.: *Port Arthur*, *Port Elizabeth*.

III. In the following examples *of* is, perhaps, best understood as a substitute for a genitive of possession:

They say he is already in the forest of Arden. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, I, 106. It 'ud be like living in the garden of Eden. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XI, 160.

Left to myself in the earlier part of the day, I wandered, wistful and lonely, through the vast wilderness of London. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, V, Ch. IV, 127.

25. To the above we may add some nouns, regularly construed with specializing *of*, which do not answer to a general description, and which are, therefore, simply mentioned in alphabetical order: *article*, as in: As to his dealing in the mild article of milk, by-the-bye, there never was a greater anomaly. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXVII, 199 *b*.

*beverage*, as in: The wholesome beverage of cider, brought within cheap reach of the labouring classes. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. III, 44.

*coin*, as in: I had but a sixpenny-piece in the world, but one coin of sixpence. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XI, 159.

*crime*, as in: He had been arrested on suspicion of the crime of Arson. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. V, 34.

*game*, as in: This seemed to establish him in the opinion of all around, as a most excellent and undeniable judge of the whole art and mystery of the noble game of cricket. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VII, 61.

It is obvious that the wonderful game of chess was not the invention of any single mind. *Athen.*, No. 4494, 689 *a*.

*idea*, as in: In his dislike of the idea of an early election Mr. Clynes was probably reflecting the views of only a section of the party. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 6, 104 *a*.

*meal*, as in: She always had the meal of tea with the children. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. III, 34.

*sphere*, as in: Bards of Passion and of Mirth, | Ye have left your souls on earth! | Have ye souls in heaven too, | Double-lived in regions new? | — Yes, and those of heaven commune | With the spheres of sun and moon. KEATS, *To the Poets*, 6.

*subject*, as in: The record price paid for Prince Palatine has lent an interest to the subject of the value of racehorses. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3877, 222 *a*.

The Foreign Office has issued an official statement of the highest importance on the subject of our policy in Egypt. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 5, 82 *d*.

*system*, as in: This is a revival of the system of monopolies. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8149, 4 *a*.

26. Special mention should be made of those combinations with specializing *of* which are based on metaphor or simile, the second element serving rather for explanation than specialization. This is all the more necessary, because the exact function of *of* does not lie on the surface, and mistaking it means misunderstanding the sentence. A good example of what is meant here is afforded by:

Now is the winter of our discontent | Made glorious summer by this sun of York. SHAK., *Rich. III*, I, i, 1.

Such constructions are naturally very frequent in poetry and literary style in general, but are, of course, but rarely met with in colloquial style. The following instances, it is hoped, will be acceptable:

Two truths are told, | As happy prologues to the swelling act | Of the imperial theme. SHAK., *Macb.*, I, 3, 130.

His virtues | Will plead like angels, trumpet-tongued, against | The deep damnation of his taking-off. *ib.*, I, 7, 20.

Yet do I fear thy nature; | It is too full o' the milk of human kindness. *ib.*, I, 5, 18.

Then she said slowly, much terrified lest she should rouse the dormant lion of Uncle Tom's wrath [etc.]. GRANT ALLEN, *The Tents of Shem*, Ch. XIII.

Meanwhile ... the sore of Ireland remains unhealed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8149, 2 *b*.

#### VARIED PRACTICE.

27. Usage is divided between apposition and the *of*-construction in combinations denoting a literary or musical composition, the

latter construction appearing, however, to be the more usual one.  
i. I think there's much truth in that book, the "Pilgrim's Progress." SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. XXX, 333.

Of these the best-known is the still-acted comedy *Every Man in his Humour*. DEIGHTON, *Appendix to Macb.*, 184.

The lack of pupils ... enabled Johnson to write most of his tragedy *Irene*. JOHN BAILEY, *Dr. Johnson & his Circle*, Ch. III, 94.

He who is the ruler of the hour is to-morrow a mere beggar, like the fellow in the play *Kismet*. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Nov., 628.

ii. To these (studies) may be added a constant perusal of portions of the Old Testament — the Psalms, the Book of Job, the prophet Isaiah, and others, the sublime poetry of which filled him with supreme delight MRS. SHELLEY, *Note on the Revolt of Islam*.

How had Fanny discovered the novel of "Walter Lorraine," and that Pen was the author? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XII, 128.

Chanticleer. The Cock in the tale of Reynard the Fox. COBH. BREW., *Dict of Phrase and Table*, s.v. *chanticleer*.

It has already been noticed that the play of Henry VIII, nobly conceived by Shakespeare, was completed in a different spirit and manner, and with a different intention by Fletcher, SHAW., *Hist. of Eng. Lit.*, Ch. VII, 153.

Possibly the tragedy of Romeo and Juliet also belongs to this period. DEIGHTON, *Appendix to Shak. Mids.*, 156.

York had at least one more son, Richard, who appears as Earl of Cambridge in the play of Henry V. *Note to Shak's Rich.* II, V, 2, 90 in *Clar. Press. Ed.*

28. Usage is also divided in combinations containing such an appel- (14)  
lative as *appellation*, *designation*, *epithet*, *name*, *nickname*, *sobriquet*, *surname*, *style*, *title*, etc., the *of*-construction being, however, more usual than apposition.

Ample illustration has only come to hand so far as the noun *name* is concerned. The *of*-construction is, apparently regularly observed in the phrases *by* (or *of*) *the name of* + proper name. As to the other nouns mentioned above the available documentary evidence bearing on the subject, is very scanty, but it may be assumed that, although only one construction is here illustrated, prolonged reading would yield some instances of the alternative practice.

*appellation*: He acquired, from his converse among the dead, the popular appellation of Old Mortality. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. I, 17.

*designation*: So also we include adjectives, adjective-pronouns, adjective-numerals and participles under the common designation **adjective word**. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 103.

*epithet*: The donations of land with which the King endowed these wealthy fraternities procured him from the monkish historians the epithet of Saint SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. I, 49.

*name*: i. There was a gentleman here yesterday, ... a stout gentleman by the name of Topsyawyer. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 34 a.

By the greatest good luck a gentleman of the name of Dobbin stepped up to the box. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 58.

The inn-folks did not know his name of Warrington. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. II, 14  
Ralph suggested that the name of Mary might be considered a pretty name. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIV, 94.

You answer to the name of Algernon. WILDE, *Imp. of being Earn.*, I, (14)  
I don't much care about the name of Ernest. *ib.*, I, (34).



ii. The name Clanwehll appears so late as 1594. SCOTT, Pref. to Fair Maid, 5.

That kind of information which, in our schools, usurps the name History has a conventional value only. SPENC., Educ., Ch. I, 15 b.

There is no such preternatural charm in the name Cæsar, but that the name Brutus will have as great magical power in adjuration to call up a spirit from the dead. HUNTER, Note to Shak., Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 147.

The name Titania for the Queen of the Fairies appears to have been the invention of Shakespeare. W. A. WRIGHT, Pref. to Shak. Mids., 16.

There is very little music in the name Jack. OSC. WILDE, The Imp. of being Earn., I, (34).

The name Finsen was unknown to him. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 9 c.

The only interests likely to profit from the recent crisis are those which can be summed up in the name Stinnes. Manch. Guard. VI, 6, 103 b.

The child received the names Patrick Anthony William Beresford. Morning Post.

*nickname*: I suppose you got the nickname of Great Turk. CONGREVE, Love for Love, III, (244).

He had received the nickname of Brom Bones. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 354.

*sobriquet*: He began to win for himself the famous sobriquet of "Wake," the Watcher, whom no one ever took unawares. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. II, 24 a.

*style*: He was carrying on business under the style of N. N., Bury Street, London. Times.

*surname*: Nothing could be objected to his surname Littimer. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXI, 149 a.

*title*: i. He assumed the title of Robert the Third. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. I, 19.

The title of King was not revived. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 132.

I have no claim to the distinguished title of a journalist. DISR., Syb., III, Ch. IX, 199.

ii. The title Pendragon is said to have been taken by Uther in consequence of an appearance which he saw in the sky. G. E. MACAULAY, Note to Tenny., Guin., 395.

29. Obs. I. The apposition-construction sometimes seems preferable because the *of*-construction might raise an erroneous notion of possession; thus in:

When the other one heard the name Robinson, he was very much pleased. SWEET, Story of Two Englishmen.

II. By the side of *by* (or *of*) *the name of* we also find *by name*, which is placed either before or after the proper name; e. g.:

i. Here for some time had dwelt an old French refugee, by name Mr. Pastoreau. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. III, 18.

ii. Tom had two abettors in the shape of a couple of old boys, Noah and Benjamin by name. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. II, 23.

- 30 Varied practice is also observed in combinations containing the (14) name of a time-unit or a season.

a) Thus, when preceded by the specializing definite article, *year* is as regularly construed with apposition as *month* and *hour* are with specializing *of*.

i. She remembers Dr. Johnson on a visit to Dr. Taylor, at Ashbourn, some-

time between the end of the year 37, and the middle of the year 40. BOSWELL, JOHNSON. 16 b.

ii. \* On a fine Sunday evening, in the month of August, John Edmunds set foot in the village he had left with shame and disgrace seventeen years before. DICK, PICKW., Ch. VI, 52.

\*\* (To) hear the venerable towers of Putney toll the hour of six ... I hold (a) most cheerful and harmless (pleasure). THACK., LOV., Ch. III, 43.

A mile away the clock of Eckington Church tolled out the hour of six. TEMPLE THURSTON, ANT AG., Ch. I, 3.

Note Modification by the demonstrative *this* seems to entail the use of appositional *of*, not only after *month* and *hour*, but also after *year*.

i. I shall be here this day fortnight at precisely this hour of five-and-twenty minutes past seven. HARDY, JUDE, I, Ch. IV, 28.

ii. Without notable event, matrimonial or other, time went on to this present year of 1888, G. GISSING, The Old Women, Ch. II, 19.

b) Variable practice is also observed in the case of:

*age*, in the meaning of *length of existence*, Dutch *leeftijd*, the normal construction being that with *of*: i. Players proverbially live long, but few reach the great age of 98 years, at which Mr. James Doel has just died Westm. Gaz.

ii. To take Mr. Mark Sabre at the age thirty-four, and at the place Penny Green, needs first to look back a little from that point, but has him in good light for observation. HUTCHINSON, If Winter comes, I, Ch. I, 9.

The annual premium for a man aged 30 is about £ 27 for £ 1000 at death; and at age 40 about £ 46. Westm. Gaz., No. 8115, 24 b

Note. In the meaning of *era* the word requires *of*; thus in *the age of the Reformation*. This applies also to *era*, as in *the era of Maritime Discoveries*, and to *season*, as in *the season of Christmas*.

*date*, apposition being, apparently, the ordinary construction: i. His farewell letter to Woodfall bears date the nineteenth of January. 1773. MAC., WAR. HAST., (611 b).

Sabre's house was of grey stone, and it presented over the doorway the date 1667. HUTCHINSON, If Winter Comes, I, Ch. I, IV, 18.

The facsimile bears at the end the date 1599. ATHEN. No. 4455, 316 a.

ii. A three-halfpenny piece ... bearing the date of 1599. Penny Cyclop. VII, 330 c.

*feast*, usage may be equally divided: i. At that time the feast Lupercalia was celebrated. NORTH, PLUT. (Note to Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 4 in Macm. Clas.)

it. The feast of St. Partridge inaugurates the sportsman's calendar. Times.

31. Varied practice may also be observed in combinations containing a subordinate clause.

a) In the case of the clause being a subordinate statement specializing *of* is regularly dispensed with; (Ch. XIII, 1); thus in: The idea that I shall give my consent is ridiculous. MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, § 404.

b) With subordinate questions, on the other hand, apposition appears to be rather the exception (Ch. XIV, 1), e.g.:

i. If death ... had found me in my cell of darkness and bondage, many might have lost the sight how a Christian man can suffer in the good cause. SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. XXXVI, 357.

ii. The question of whether we should stimulate that India should spend in

this country the greater part of the loan of £ 65 000.000, which she is to raise for railways and irrigation purposes, was raised to-night. *Daily Mail*.

Another appendix brings the result of the present study to bear on the general question of how the hypotactic or subordinating construction develops from a more primitive parataxis. JACOB ZEITLIN (*Journ. of Eng. & Germ. Phil.*, Jan. 1927, 136).

Note. Quite common are instances in which subordinate questions are preceded by the prepositional word-group *as to* with practically the same force as specializing *of* (Ch. XVI, 1, e); e.g.:

The appearance of an article in "Punch", where the question arose as to whether or not Mr. Balfour could wear no beard, brought the matter to a head. *Westm. Gaz.*, 11 11, 22, 27*b*.

c) Undeveloped infinitive-clauses appear to require *of* when corresponding to subordinate questions. With such as answer to subordinate statements *of* is, naturally, impossible.

i. I have been a good deal worried to-day about the question of what luggage to take with me. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgrim*, 14.

Then boldly he discussed the problem of how to enforce a disarmament pact. *Westm. Gaz.*

ii. Young Johnson had the misfortune to be much afflicted with the scrofula or king's evil. Bosw., *Life of Johns*.

d) Undeveloped gerund-clauses are regularly construed with *of*; thus in:

She begged the favour of being shown to her room. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24*b*  
What's that noise of crying? GALSW., *The Silver Box*, II, (69).

Note. The word-group with specializing *of* is sometimes divided from its head-word by other elements of the sentence.

I shall therefore just glance at the very common impropriety, of which married ladies are guilty, of treating us as if we were their husbands, and vice versa. LAMB., *Es. of El.*, XXV.

#### OTHER VARIANTS OF APPPOSITION CONSTRUCTIONS

32. The constructions with apposition, or with specializing *of*, in both of (13) which the element with the narrower meaning stands last, vary largely with one in which this element stands first. Thus we meet with *the Brontë sisters* by the side of *the sisters Brontë*, and *London town* by the side of *the town of London*. It is easy to see that the two constructions have this in common that in them the proper name is the modifying element, but that they differ in that its relative inferiority in grammatical status is far less pronounced in the latter (*the sisters Brontë*) than in the former (*the Brontë sisters*). In such combinations as *the Brontë sisters* and *London town*, the proper names cannot, therefore, be understood as appositions.

It is of some interest to note the relative frequency of these rival constructions in some of the combinations mentioned in the preceding sections.

33. a) In the combinations mentioned in 15 transposition of the two (13) elements is very common, so far as certain names of persons are concerned. In the case of the plural transposition even appears to be the rule. As regards singular designations the altered arrangement mostly marks disrespect or undue familiarity.

i. Go into the bedroom and suggest full confession and an appeal to this Maisie girl, whoever she is. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. X, 130.

I suppose the Markrute man had got him in his power. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXII, 201.

I told him about Joyce and that Hardy fellow. MORLEY ROBERTS, *Time & Thomas Waring*, Ch. XI, 113.

Millicent Farey has cancelled her engagement with the Jessop fellow. JEROME. *Miss Hobbs*, I, (12).

Whatever possessed you to be at home to the Pierpont girl this morning? PINERO, *Mid-Channel*, II, (127).

ii. From this (sc. lesson) the Boyce girls learned plainly that Mrs. Dale, with Bell and Lily, were about to have a fall in the world. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXIX, 98. (With *the Boyce girls*, as used in this example, compare *the girl Boyces* in: With him entered Mr. and Mrs. Boyce from the parsonage, with Dick Boyce, the uncrowned gentleman, and the two girl Boyces, who were fourteen and fifteen years of age. *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 99. In this example *girl* distinctly denotes a quality, in like manner as the first element in such combinations as *child-wife*, *giant tree*, *infant colony*, etc. commented on in 8, a, 1.)

In which the Newcome brothers once more meet together in unity. THACK., *Newc.*, Ch. XXIV, 262.

The tall worn, dark-haired woman was a strong contrast to the Dodson sisters. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. III, 197.

He is cousin to the Loftus boys. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. II, 23.

She tried to find herself occupation in teaching the two younger Boucher children. Mrs. GASK., *North & South*, Ch. XLI, 270.

Note a) As in French, plural designations of firms lose the definite article; thus in *the failure of Baring brothers*.

β) The omission of the definite article before a singular, as in the following example, occurs only as a literary mannerism:

And ever, by the winter hearth, | Old tales I heard of woe or mirth, | ... Of patriot battles, won of old | by Wallace wight and Bruce the Bold. SCOTT, *Marm.*, III, *Introd.*, 197.

γ) Transposition in the case of *person*, as in the following example, appears to be extremely rare:

Mrs. Fyne avoided being drawn into making his acquaintance, and this suited the views of the governess person, very jealous of any outside influence CONRAD, *Chance*, I, Ch. III, 73.

b) Transposition is also common enough in combinations denoting a ship; thus in:

Over the little mantel-shelf was a picture of the Sarah Jane lugger. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 25 b.

On the 14th of October following the Rodney cutter arrived with the sad news in England. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXIV, 788.

There came to visit our Winchelsea magistrates Captain Pearson of the "Serapis" frigate, then in the Downs. *id.*, DEN. DUV., Ch. VIII, (287).



The Boston frigate took him to New York. STEPHEN GWYNN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. II, 29.

c) As to combinations denoting an animal or a constellation, no instances of transposition have come to hand.

34. Some collective nouns denoting persons often, or regularly stand after the proper name, some do not admit of this transposition.

a) *Family* often changes places with the proper name, thus in:

She had during some years disliked the Marlborough family. MAC., *Addison*, (757 a).

Then all the Cratchit family drew round the hearth. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 60.

Crofts had been so intimate with the Dale family that very many people had thought it probable that he would marry one of the girls. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXIX, 107.

The good-natured man felt sincere pity for the Tulliver family. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VII, 223.

b) *Government, ministry* and, most probably, other nouns denoting administrative boards, apparently, tolerate no other place; e. g.:

The Melbourne Ministry kept going from bad to worse. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 28.

It was precisely the same reply as that returned by the Asquith Government. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 6 104 b.

c) Also *line* admits of being placed after the proper name, but the other appellatives mentioned in 21, *clan, firm, and house*, seem to be averse to this arrangement.

The unfortunate Covenanters who suffered by the sword or by the executioner, during the reigns of the two last monarchs of the Stuart line. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. I, 16.

35. Among the group of combinations referred to in 23 and 24 there (13) are several which admit of transposition. Some of these retain, some throw off the definite article in the altered construction, some also exhibit variable practice. A detailed discussion of the innumerable cases in which the retention, or the omission of the article has to be considered has been attempted in Ch. XXXI, 30. Here it may be observed that the suppression of the article somewhat affects the grammatical nature of the appellative causing it to lose some of its substantival force and of its independence, so that the combination assumes more or less the character of a compound.

a) In not a few cases no other arrangement than that of definite article + proper name + appellative is used; thus in:

The Inch Cape rock (*Times*), the Lizard Peninsula (*ib.*), the Manacles Reef (*ib.*), the Khyber Pass (*Il. Lond. News*), the New Hebrides islands (*Westm. Gaz.*), the New Hebrides group (*ib.*)

The Globe theatre, the Blackfriars theatre.

This applies also to plural names of mountain-ranges; e. g.:

When a boy, he had once seen the devil upon the Harz mountains in Germany. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (112).

Up among the Vosges mountains in Lorraine ... there lies the village of Granpere. TROL., *The Golden Lion of Granpere*. Ch. I, 1.

b) In others the rival construction varies with that with an apposition or its alternative with *of*, the definite article being sometimes retained, sometimes dispensed with.

1) The article is retained before the names of: i. *hotels* (24, Obs. I); e. g.: The Budget Protest League held a dinner at the Ritz Hotel on Thursday to commemorate the close of its work. Westm. Gaz., No. 5179, 1b.

One of the most disastrous fires of recent years was that by which the Windsor hotel in Fifth Avenue was destroyed. Graph.

Note a) It should be observed that this construction appears to be far more common than the one with the proper name standing after the appellative. In the case of names of other buildings the latter is practically non-existent; thus regularly *the Bull Inn, the Town Arms Inn, the Fleet Prison, the Union Workhouse, the Globe theatre*. etc.

The lad and three others were discovered making a supper off a pork pie and two bottles of prime old port from the Red Cow public-house in Grey Friars Lane. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch., VI, 68.

β) Only the noun *castle* seems to admit of being placed before the proper name, as in: *Castle Richmond, Castle Loo*.

Then there was the Hon. George De Courcy, Lord De Courcy's brother, from Castle Courcy. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. VIII, 84.

ii. *ivers*; e. g.: One summormorning in the year 1756 ... the Young Rachel ... came up the Avon river on her happy return from her annual voyage to the Potomac. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 4.

It is the Severn river, though at this distance you cannot perceive it. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. II, 18.

And the fog rose out of the Oxus stream. MATTH. ARN., *Sohrab & Rustum*, 2.

Note. This arrangement is, however, distinctly unusual, but seems to be fixed in the denominations of certain newly-discovered rivers; thus in:

They propose to lighten their load by throwing their infants and infirm people into the Columbia river. Manch. Guard., VI, 8, 143d.

The Peace river flows nearly due east for a couple of hundred miles. Times.

2) The article is suppressed before the names of: i. *towns* or *cities*: e. g.; A trainband captain eke was he | Of famous London town. COWPER, *John Gilpin*, I.

Hamelin Town's in Brunswick. | By famous Hanover City. BROWNING, *The Pied Piper*, I.

I don't know that the Queen is the better, or her enemies the worse for me, since we parted last in Dublin City. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVIII, 213a

ii. *countries*; e. g.: Their fathers and mothers (have) risen | Out of some subterraneous prison | ... Long time ago in a mighty band | Out of Hamelin town in Brunswick land. BROWNING, *The Pied Piper*.

All who take part and nearly all who look on are Chinese coolies, Hokkiens who come from Fukien Province. Manch. Guard., 254, 1924, 334a.

Note. This construction is sometimes affected to impart a tinge of pleasing homeliness to the combination, but is, for the rest, rather quaint, especially so far as names of countries are concerned. Sometimes also similar constructions are used to advantage for the purpose

of bringing out a contrast with some other combination with the proper name, as in:

In the Second Division Nottingham Forest took an important step towards promotion. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 6, 120.

Notts County . . . did badly in losing at home to Port Vale. *ib.*

Cardiff City lifted themselves into the fifth place by winning an exciting game with Preston *ib.*

3) Usage varies as to the use of the article before the names of *hills*; e.g.:

i. Macbeth shall never vanquish'd be until | Great Birnam wood to high Dunsinane Hill | Shall come against him. *SHAK., Macb.*, IV, 1, 93.

However, he turned from South to West, | And to Koppelberg Hill his steps addressed. *BROWNING, The Pied Piper.*

ii. A monument was erected to his memory on the Colton Hill, Edinburgh. *G. MACLEAN HARPER, Wordsworth*, Ch. III, 58.

36. Obs. I. It should be remembered that in many combinations the relation between proper name and appellative does not correspond to that of apposition or specializing *of*, so much as to a vague notion of possession, or some indefinite adverbial relation; thus in: *the Nile Valley*, *the Congo Basin*, *the Bristol Channel*; *the Edgware Road* (i.e. the road leading to Edgware), *the South Kensington Museum* (i.e. the Museum established at South Kensington). Similarly in:

He rode by William the Conqueror's side on Hastings field. *THACK., Es m.*, II, Ch. 10, 233.

The ship was nearly 3,000 miles distant from London and just outside New York Harbour. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 10, 206c.

II. These combinations can be told from those which correspond to those with apposition or specializing *of* by the fact that, unlike the latter, they do not admit of the appellative being suppressed. Thus we often meet with *the Inch Cape* instead of *the Inch Cape Rock*, *the Lizard* instead of *the Lizard peninsula*. The bare proper names *the Thames*, *London*, *Brunswick*, etc. are far more common than, respectively, *the Thames river*, *London town*, *Brunswick land*, etc. If omission of the appellative is unusual or impossible, as in *Dunsinane Hill*, *the Khyber Pass*, *the Peace river*, etc., this is owing to the fact that the thing spoken about is little known, so that the natural association of proper name with the appellative is wanting. Naturally the context may suggest such an association and render the mention of the appellative unnecessary. Thus, for example, in such a sentence as *We dined at the Ritz*. Similarly in:

It was in the yard of one of these inns — of no less celebrated a one than the White Hart [etc.] *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. X, 79.

- (14) 37. As to the combinations mentioned in 30 it may be observed that only some admit of transposition. Thus we could say *the Christmas season* (or *festival*), *the Purim feast*.

All can be bettered, given that love of mankind which the Christmas season is specially fitted to arouse. *Westm. Gaz.*, 23/12, 1922, 2b.

Also *month* occasionally appears in transposed position; thus in: Anne was born in the June month of eighteen hundred and twenty-seven. *WILK. COL., The Woman in White*, III, Ch. VII, 400.

But examples of *year* and *date* being placed in the same position appear to be non-existent.

38. In conclusion mention is made of some miscellaneous cases in which the proper name regularly stands before the appellative. These are all the more remarkable, because in Dutch equivalents the order is reversed. Compare *the Crisp affair* (THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 16) with *de zaak Crisp*, *the Times newspaper* (THACK., A Little Dinner, Ch. III) with *de courant het Handelsblad*.

*affair*: Now that the Marconi affair has been disposed of is the time for a renewed attack on traditional Liberal lines. Westm. Gaz., No. 6244, 3*a*.  
*bill*: the Irish Constitution Bill. Westm. Gaz.

*newspaper*: I pinned up the haunch of venison in a copy of the John Bull newspaper. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 56.

*question*: The reparation question was not the only problem. Westm. Gaz., 16/12, 1922, 1*b*.

On the Rhine question the journal says [etc.]. Manch. Guard., VI, 6, 108*a*.  
*transaction*: Mr. Wapshot laid bare to me all the baseness of Mr. Smithers's conduct in the Brough transaction. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 182.

Note. In such combinations as *oak-tree*, *raspberry-bush* the component parts have coalesced into a compound.

39. In some combinations the genitive occasionally takes the place (16) of the common case. This usage is confined to the higher literary style, instances being mostly found in verse.

*a*) In the majority of cases the noun in the genitive of apposition or specializing, as this variety may be called, is a proper name, the word modified being a term of geography, such as *hill*, *isle*, *lake*, *land*, *plain*, *river*, *stream*. etc. The large number of the following examples is intended to bring out the considerable frequency of this often-forgotten construction.

Or if Sion hill | Delight thee more, and Siloa's brook, that flowed | Fast by the oracle of God; I thence | Invoke thy aid to my adventurous song. MILTON, Par. Lost, I, II. (With Siloa's brook compare Sion Hill, in which the poet, for some unknown reason, places the modifying noun in the common case.)  
 Or where Campania's plain forsaken lies, | A weary waste expanding to the skies. GOLDSMITH, Trav., 5.

In Britain's Isle, no matter where, | An ancient pile of buildings stands. GRAY, A long Story, I.

No want of timber then was felt or fear'd | In Albion's happy isle. COWPER, Task, I, 58

On Barnard's towers and Tees's stream | She (sc. the moon) changes as a guilty dream. SCOTT, Rokeby, I, 1.

Where the rude Trosach's defile | Opens on the Katrine's lake and isle. Id., Lady, VI, xix.

Day set on Norham's castled steep | And Tweed's fair river, broad and deep | And Cheviot's mountain lone. Id., Marm., I, 1.

Oh, I'm the chief of Ulva's isle, | And this Lord Ullin's daughter. CAMPB., Lord Ullin's Daught., II.



Each flag lay still, | So did the leaves on Cithæron's hill. BYRON, *Siege of Cor.*, XIX.

Ne barrier wall, ne river deep and wide, | Ne horrid crags, nor mountains dark and tall, | Rise like the rocks that part Hispania's land from Gaul. *id.*, *Childe Har.*, I, xxxii.

The azure calm of Mœri's Lake. MOORE, *Par. & the Peri*, 157.

In Edinburgh's grey town HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch VI, 89.

b) But also ordinary appellatives are found in a similar construction; thus in:

Macbeth does murder sleep, — the innocent sleep: ... | chief nourisher in life's feast. SHAK., *Macb.*, II, 2, 39.

For he attains that rival's fame | with treason's charge. SCOTT, *Marm.*, II, XXVIII, 5.

For not Mimosa's tender tree | Shrinks sooner from the touch than he. *ib.*, IV, *Introd.*, vii, 196.

Safe and free from magic power, | Blushing like the rose's flower | Opening to the day. *id.*, *Brid of Triermain*, III, xxxix, 15.

And indeed He seems to me | Scarce other than my king's ideal knight. TEN., *Id. of the King*, *Ded.* 6.

His horse was worth a kingdom's gift. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *The Proud King*, x.

Note α) It will be observed that in the examples of the first group the proper name may also be understood to denote a thing thought of as a person. If this is done, the genitive would, of course, differ in no way from an ordinary genitive of possession. A similar two-fold interpretation may be put upon the genitive in:

Far ran the naked moon across | The houseless ocean's heaving field, | Or flying shone, the silver boss | Of her own halo's dusky shield. TEN., *The Voyage*, IV

Also the genitives in the following examples admit of another interpretation, besides that of apposition or specializing:

Great and manifold were the blessings, ... which Almighty God ... bestowed upon us, the people of England, when first He sent Your Majesty's Royal Person to rule and reign over us. *Author. Vers.*, *Epistle Dedic.*

To the Queen's Most Excellent Majesty this historical dictionary of the English language is by her gracious permission dutifully dedicated by the University of Oxford. O. E. D.

'Twas after dread Pultowa's day. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, I.

Within a window'd niche of that high hall | Sate Brunswick's fated chieftain. *id.*, *Childe Har.*, III, xxiii.

He ... took his Bachelor's degree in 1852. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 24, 490 d.

β) In conclusion it may be observed that in Dutch the genitive of apposition is regularly used in combinations with a plural geographical proper name, as in *de Republiek der Vereenigde Staten van Amerika*, as compared with *de Republiek Frankrijk*, in which the apposition construction is used.

## APPOSITION OF THE THIRD KIND.

### PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

40. Apposition of the third kind corresponds to genitive inflection

in Old English, which placed nouns and pronouns in the genitive after a numeral and, in general, after words denoting a measure of some kind. Thus *twentig wintra* (= twenty winters), *eahta hund mīla* (= eight hundred miles), *jēower þūsēd wera* (= four thousand men), *fela wundra* (= many miracles), *hiera fif wæron dysige* (= five of them were foolish).

Comparing such a word-group as *twentig wintra* with its modern equivalent *twenty winters*, we find that the regimen of its component parts has been reversed. Whereas in the Old-English construction the numeral, which is felt as a substantive, is the head-word, this function is held by the following noun in the modern construction. In fact in the latter the numeral has completely assumed the character of an adnominal modifier.

But this is only partly the case when the word denoting the number is modified by an indefinite article, which preserves for it some of its original substantival character; thus in *a dozen collars*, and in a more marked degree in *a dozen of collars*, in which latter construction the ancient partitive genitive is represented by its analytical equivalent with *of*.

It has already been observed in 6, c, that in such a construction as *a dozen collars* the second noun may with some justice be said to stand by way of apposition to the first. Nor would it be easy to find a more apposite name within the ordinary grammatical nomenclature indicating the nature of the relation between the two nouns. It cannot, of course, be considered to be of any practical importance to argue about the various views which might be taken in analysing the word-group in question, or about the different grammatical denominations which might result from such analyses. The only things which, from a practical point of view, matter are: 1) how far does the first word preserve its substantival character? 2) how far does the construction with *of* vary with that without *of*? It is with these that we shall be exclusively concerned in the following discussions.

#### APPOSITION AFTER *MANY*, *FEW* AND *LITTLE*.

41. An apposition of the third kind is found after *many*, *few* and (6) *little* in such combinations as *a many children*, *a few houses*, *a little money*, i. e. when these words are preceded by the indefinite article and, accordingly, assume the character of collective nouns. About *many* it may be observed that, when it is used as a collective noun, it is mostly preceded by an adjective, especially *great* or *good*, the use of *a many* without any adjective being "now somewhat rare in literary use." O. E. D., s.v. *many*, B, 1. For comment on and illustration of *a few* and *a little* see

Ch. XL, 59 ff., and 70 ff. respectively. Some examples with *a many* + plural noun may be acceptable here.

They say he is already in the forest of Arden, and a many merry men with him. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, I, 106.

Oh, dear me! what a many — many years we have been acquainted. THACK., *Lovel the Wid.*, Ch. III, 49.

What a many stones! G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVI, 128.

I beg leave to tell you as I'd a right to expect a many things as I don't find. id., *Mill.*, Ch. XII, 112.

They have not shed a many tears, | Dear eyes, since first I knew them well. TEN., *Mil. Daught.*, XXIX.

You give me a many letters to post. ANSTEY, *A Fallen Idol*, Ch. V, 84.

#### APPOSITION AFTER *ALL* AND *BOTH*.

42. If in such combinations as *all* (or *both*) *the* (or *my brother's*, *my*, *these*, etc.) *children*, in which the noun is preceded by a definitive adjunct, *all* (or *both*) is considered as a substantive numeral, the noun may be understood to be related to it by way of apposition. If *all* (or *both*) were felt as an indefinite numeral, its place would be the same as that of an ordinary numeral, definite or indefinite, i. e. after the other modifier, as in *the* (or *my*, *these*, etc.) *two* (or *many*) *children*.

The above construction varies with one in which the noun is preceded by partitive *of*, this preposition being especially common when the noun is modified by a demonstrative pronoun; thus in:

All of these tribes had the same language. SWEET, *A. S. Read.*, *Introd.*, II. Both of these Jewish gent's were insured in our office to the full amount of their loss. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 127.

(Other histories have attempted) to unite both of these plans. LEWES, *Hist. Phil.*, *Pref.*, IX.

As will be shown in Ch. V, 16, *all* and *both*, as used in these combinations, are also more or less adverbial in function.

The *of*-construction is also common enough in the case of plural personal pronouns; it is distinctly the rule when the plural noun is preceded by the relative *which* or *whose*; e. g.:

i. All of us have said so at times. I have heard it from all of you. O. E. D., s. v. *all*, 6.

Fate is stronger than all of us. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. I, 157.

Both of us often talk to the lads. JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, I, 80 (O. E. D., s. v. *both*, 6).

ii. All of which letters Pendennis read gracefully. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 12. The ladies on the steps are Lady Edward Cecil and Lady Bentinck, both of whose husbands are in Mafeking and have been wounded. *Graph.*

#### APPOSITION AFTER FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

43. Also the noun standing after *half* and *quarter*, and other fractional (6) numbers, such as *third*, *fourth*, *tithe*, etc., may assume the character of an apposition through the absence of partitive *of*. The place

of the noun may be taken by a substantive clause. Here follow some examples of apposition after:

*half*. i. And then will I ... | Endow you with broad land and territory | Even to the half my realm beyond the seas. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 953.

The half my men are sick. *id.*, *The Revenge* I.

ii. One half the world does not know how the other half lives. *Punch*, No. 3710, 135.

It is impossible to muster one half the nominal strength of the Unionists of all shades. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 196, 341 *b*.

iii. You have not done the half what you boasted you would do. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XI, 87.

iv. With your advantages you might turn the heads of half the girls in town. *EDNA LYALL*, *Don.*, II 140.

Half the men were sick. *O. E. D.*, s.v. *half*, *a*, 1, *b*.

*other fractional numbers*. i. The new Pelman method of teaching Foreign Languages by Correspondence in about one third the usual time has met with immediate success. *Times*, No. 2305, 177 *a*.

ii. \* She had not ... a quarter the pleasures you have. *Mrs. OLIPHANT*, *Madonna Mary*, I, XIV, 184.

\*\* If the mark should fall to one-quarter its former value, the landowner or business-man will quadruple his prices and profits. *Fortnightly Rev.*, No. 664, 565.

iii. Our effects, sold at a fourth their value, will fetch 150 napoleons. *LYTTON*, *Night & Morn.*, 229.

iv. They would not give the House one tenth the trouble which is given by a certain clique. *KINGSLEY*, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 105.

v. It is a remarkable thing to me as a business man, that we should spend a million pounds a year on sanatoria, and hesitate to spend a twentieth this amount in order to see whether we cannot make that million pounds a year unnecessary. *Manch. Guard*, 4/12, 1925, II *c*.

For comparison we subjoin a few examples in which fractional numbers are followed by the *of*-construction, which, except for *half*, appears to be at least as frequent as the apposition-construction. See also Ch. XXXI, 59; and Ch. XLII, 14.

Half of the chaps who get into the Bankruptcy Court are called Algernon. *OSC. WILDE*, *Imp. of being Earn.*

The cost would be something like one fiftieth of the cost of our sanatoria treatment. *Manch. Guard.*, 17/6, 1927, 461 *d*.

It (*sc.* the *Vorwärts*) puts the average weekly ration per head of the German people at a quarter of a pound of meat, one eighth of a pound of butter. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7163, 2 *a*.

There is a rush from all sides into a service which can scarcely absorb more than a tithe of the candidates. *ib.*, 18/11, 1922, 7 *b*.

Partitive *of* appears to be regularly dispensed with after the so-called mixed numbers, consisting of an integer and a fractional number, unless, of course, the following noun is modified by a definitive adjunct; thus in:

This railway which will be four and a half miles long is intended to start from Bayswater. *Graph*.

The case centres round a child of five and three quarter years. *Truth*, No. 1801, 10 *b*.

He found that he wanted half thirty-one and three eighths inches from the corner. *JEROME*, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. III, 27.



When, however, the integer and *half* or *quarter* are divided by the name of the measure, *of* is, apparently, never absent; e. g.:

The firm employed more than two thousand hands; and its works . . . covered two acres and a quarter of land. RID. HAG., Mr. Mees. Will, Ch. I, 1.

44. Obs. I. When *half* is not preceded by any modifier, and not followed by partitive *of*, as in some of the above examples, its substantival character is dimmed, and it partakes of the grammatical function of adverbs. It is purely adverbial when it stands before a predicative noun, which in its turn often approximates to an adjective; thus in: He is half a monk, half a soldier. SCOTT. Ivanhoe, Ch. II, 18.

The child is half an idiot i' some things. G. ELIOT, Mill., I, Ch. II, 6.

The semi-adverbial *half* may also stand before a substantive clause as in:

Christmas was upon them before half she wanted to do was accomplished Mrs. ALEXANDER, For his Sake, II, Ch. II, 34.

Half they hear at public meetings is false. Westm. Gaz., No. 5088, 16 c.

II. *Half* is turned into a pure adjective in such compounds as a *half-sovereign*, a *half-hour*, a *half-bottle*, etc.; also in:

Brother Kemp would side with him, and draw the half part of the members after him. G. ELIOT, Fel. Holt, I, Ch. XIII, 225.

*Quarter* is similarly used as a pure adjective in:

The striking improvement in British architecture during the last quarter-century or so is due, in a great measure, to care for such things as door-knobs on the part of our architects. Westm. Gaz., 16 12, 1922, 12 b

#### APPOSITION AFTER MULTIPLICATIVES.

45. What has been observed about *half*, *quarter*, *third*, etc., applies, in the main, also to the multiplicatives *double*, *treble*, *quadruple*, etc., *twofold*, *threefold*, etc. Only the construction with partitive *of*, as opposed to that with apposition, appears to be distinctly uncommon. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 60; and Ch. XLII, 23 ff.

i. The silver rims will sell for double the money. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. XII, (305).

The railway was badly built and cost double what was estimated. Athen., No. 4447, 62 b.

Our sea-going steam tonnage is double that of the rest of the world. Times. The offenders are willing to pay treble the duty. Manch. Guard., 1/1 1926, 3 c.

I received quadruple the amount. WEBST., Dict.

He now restores twofold, and even fourfold the amount of tribute unjustly levied. Lit. World, 1891, 251 c.

ii. The loss has been tenfold of what was there stated. SOUTHEY, Pen. War., III, xxxviii, 219.

She enclosed double of what I had asked. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 13.

The value of silver was more than quadruple of what it is now. Macchiavelli, (32 b)

#### APPOSITION AFTER CERTAIN COLLECTIVE NOUNS DENOTING NUMBER

46. Another group of nouns which are often followed by an appo- (6)

sition of the third kind is formed by *dozen* and *score*. These two nouns have many features in common, but differ in that the latter, on the whole, maintains its substantival nature better than the former. Both preserve their substantival character fully and, consequently, never dispense with partitive *of*,

a) when, without any preceding modifier, they are used in the plural, as in:

He could sing scores of songs in half-a-dozen languages. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 230.

b) when the following noun is preceded by a definitive adjunct, i. e. the definite article, a demonstrative pronoun, a genitive (or possessive pronoun). In this case *dozen* and *score* may be understood to be used absolutely. Compare *a dozen of these collars* with *twelve of these collars*. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XXV, 29; Ch. XL, 180; Ch. XLII, 2, Obs. IX.

i. I can do half-a-dozen of these things easily in the morning. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 300.

I stood with the key in my hand, exchanging a few words of special farewell with some half-dozen of my scholars. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

ii. Many scores of Regulus's comrades had found their way back to Brussels. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 344.

Pen came home ... with half-a-score of the Clavering voters yelling after him the Blue song of the evening! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 36.

The man of average taste, who reads for his own pleasure and delight, will be familiar with the work of some few score, perhaps, of the authors whom Professor Elton describes and places. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8557, 10 b.

47. a) For the rest *dozen* occupies an intermediate position between (6) a collective noun and a numeral. It is like a collective noun in that it may be modified by all the ordinary noun-modifiers, but differs from it in so far as it often rejects partitive *of* with which an ordinary collective noun is regularly construed. This omission of partitive *of* causes it to resemble a numeral, and at the same time imparts to the following noun the character of an apposition. When an article or numeral precedes *dozen*, and no definitive adjunct stands before the name of the things counted, the construction with the following noun in apposition is more usual than that with partitive *of*, at least in present-day colloquial English.

i. \* Rawdon related a dozen amusing anecdotes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XXII, 232.

\*\* On making a roll-call of the glass, it was calculated that at least a dozen or so tumblers, four or five dozen wines ... were requisite. *id.*, *A Little Dinner*, Ch. III.

I caught fifteen dozen perch yesterday evening. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XVII, 218.

\*\*\* I wonder how many dozen times I read those two first volumes. TROL., *Autobiography*, I, 21.

had been sitting there all the afternoon and had caught literally nothing, H. POUSMA, *Id.*

except a few dozen dace and a score of jack. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XVII, 218. (Observe the use of partitive *of* after *score*.)

ii. \* She descried a dozen of horsemen threading their way up the glen. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. II, 58.

Cheery Old Tom Sarjent is surrounded at the "Haunt" by a dozen of kind boon companions. THACK., *New c.*, Ch. XXV, 280.

No man ever told one great truth, that I know, without the help of a good dozen of lies at least. BROWN., *Soul's Trag.*, II.

\*\* The cause of this much-injured and most oppressed client must prevail with the high-minded and intelligent dozen of men whom he now saw in that box before him. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 308.

Will that be sufficient to pay for the dozen of bad things which a fellow is always putting his foot into. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXXIV, 416.

\*\*\* I had almost three dozen of shirts. DEFOE, *Rob. Crus.*

The closet was furnished with a table, three chairs, and a book-case, containing a couple of dozen of law-books. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XV, 154.

b) While in the above connexions *dozen* maintains, in the main, its substantival character, it is indistinguishable from an ordinary numeral in such a sentence as:

Drive these dozen sheep into the barn-porch. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. II, 10.

Here *twelve* could be substituted for *dozen* with no further effect than that of marking greater precision. The change of noun into numeral, be it observed, involves a change of grammatical function; i. e. whereas in *a dozen sheep* we feel *dozen* to be the head-word and *sheep* the adjunct, the functions are reversed in *these dozen sheep*, in which *sheep* figures as the head-word and *dozen* as the adjunct.

Thus also when preceded by *some* in the meaning of *about* and not followed by partitive *of*, *dozen* cannot be distinguished from an ordinary numeral.

You could, for a need, study a speech of some dozen or sixteen lines? SHAK., *Hamlet*, II, 2, 576.

There are some dozen schools in London where clogs begin to be regarded as almost decent articles of clothing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6141, 7b.

c) *Half-a-dozen*, which is in frequent use to denote a comparatively small number, approximately six, can hardly be distinguished from an ordinary numeral, and is, accordingly, found without partitive *of* in the majority of cases.

i. He had not read half-a-dozen pages, when the expression of his countenance began to change. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 300 b.

Half-a-dozen men in swift succession propose for her hand. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 252 b.

ii. On a Sunday the household marched away in separate couples or groups to at least half-a-dozen of religious edifices. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. II, 19.

d) A *half-dozen*, on the other hand, although not, apparently, differing appreciably in meaning from *half-a-dozen*, is more distinctly felt as a collective noun, so that the construction with partitive *of* is distinctly more frequent.

i. He wrote a half-dozen lines. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 397.

I had dipt my gout in a half-dozen baths and spas. *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 968.  
Maria brings a few twopenny trinkets and a half-dozen guineas to Mr. Esmond.  
*id.*, Ch. LIV, 562.

ii. Indeed, who is there that walks London streets, but can point out a half-dozen of men living on who knows what. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 180.  
There is room for us and a half-dozen of ghosts in it (*sc.* the bed). *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 72.

Think of a house in your village, of a field hard by with a half-dozen of cows.  
*id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LII, 542.

We ought not to be mealy-mouthed in regard to a ruffian who has committed a half-dozen of assaults. *Times*.

When preceded by another modifier than the indefinite article, *half-dozen*, apparently, prefers the apposition-construction.

i. He had hardly uttered the word, when the whole half-dozen regiments levelled their muskets, as if they had but one common object. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 32.

The officers' house, or room, was of logs like the half-dozen others within the fort. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LII, 543.

Now in the half-dozen books which Mr. Blackwood has given us, this quality (*sc.* lucidity) is the master of all. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5448, 11*n*.

ii. Our half-dozen of fellow-guests crept shyly out of the way. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVII, 165.

48. a) Also *score* is partly a collective noun, partly a numeral. It (6) appears to be more distinctly felt as a noun than *dozen*, inasmuch as it is more frequently followed by partitive *of*, and in this construction is more frequently placed in the plural number, especially when preceded by an indefinite numeral.

i. \* Many an earl's son will be glad to be in his place a score years hence. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 7*b*.

My servant has seen them together a score times. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. VII, 36.

I do not think there are more than a score houses in the village. RILEY, *Windyridge*, Ch. I, 8.

\*\* That includes deaths, not merely in the hour of battle, but deaths from wounds, deaths from starvation, disease, violence, and all the concomitant horrors attendant upon his (*sc.* Napoleon's) progress through the first score years of the nineteenth century. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 411.

\*\*\* At the day appointed he turns me at three-score years and ten adrift upon the earth. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. IX, 97.

Across two score towns I saw the great metropolis itself. JOHN HALL, *Hel. Bab.*, 48.

They didn't show for five minutes, and they left two or three score men on the ground. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 14, 337.

\*\*\*\* Stage-coaches ... carry you from one end of the Kingdom to another in a few score hours. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 50.

Think you it will matter a few score years hence? *id.*, *Esme.*, II, Ch. XV, 290.  
All three laughed together, for it was true that between the ages of two and four Horace had said "puffer", or "puffers go on lines" several score times a day. W. L. GEORGE, *The Second Blooming*, Ch. I, § 3, 25.

ii. \* You've got me out of a score of scrapes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 124.



He succumbed in three days to a chill a sportsman must have resisted successfully a score of times. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

If measures, are not taken for its preservation, the African elephant will in a score of years become extinct. *Tit-bits*.

\* Shepherd's Inn was but a few score of yards off. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 309.

\*\*\* He had looked at the clock many scores of times. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXII, 226.

I have seen many scores of pair of eyes ogling that box as they performed before it. *ib.*, I, Ch. XIV, 141.

Posterity will read the melancholy story of this enduring people of 45,000,000 in their little island, being required to keep so many scores of thousands of troops in India, in Ireland, in Egypt, in Mesopotamia [etc.] *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8557, 2*b*.

*b*) Even when preceded by *some* in the meaning of *about*, *score* may assert its substantival nature and be construed with partitive *of*.

The face of Alison, puckered with some score of wrinkles, in addition to those with which it was furrowed when Morton left Scotland, now presented itself. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XXXIX, 396.

The circumstances recorded in this story took place some score of years ago. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 10.

He had lost some score of guineas after dinner. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 150.

Philip Henslowe's name, for example, is spelled by him and others some score of ways. CH. W. WALLACE, *Shakespeare's Signature* *West. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 5*a*.

Note. With *some score of years* compare *some scores of years*, in which *some* is an indefinite numeral, and the plural form is to advantage applied to obviate ambiguity; e. g.:

What signifies breaking some scores of solemn promises? SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (264).

*c*) Both *half-a-score* and *a half-score*, which are practically identical in meaning, both indicating a rather considerable number of indefinite magnitude, appear to prefer the *of*-construction to apposition.

i. \* There are half-a-score friends for thee then. WYCH., *Plain Deal*, I, 1.

\* The drawer contained the family library, composed of about half-a-score of well-thumbed volumes. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 261.

There seemed a gap as of half-a-score of years. THACK., *Barry Lynd.*, Ch. III, 50.

Mrs. Dale told herself half-a-score of times that morning that she could not be justified in keeping the letter from her daughter. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 252.

ii. \* She had been engaged to be married a half-score times in Ireland. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

\* The captain had met her in a half-score of walks. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 111.

She despatched a half-score of letters to Dublin after you. *id.*, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 64.

49. *a*) What has been said of *dozen* and *score* in some measure (6) applies also to *hundred* and *thousand*. We are, indeed, justified

in regarding the noun standing after either of them as a variety of apposition in such combinations as *a hundred* (or *a thousand*) *children*, *one hundred* (or *one thousand*) *children*, *two hundred* (or *two thousand*) *children*. But *hundred* and *thousand* are distinctly felt to partake more of the nature of numerals than *dozen* and *score*. This is shown by the fact that in the above combinations, they are never followed by partitive *of*. They have nothing to distinguish them from ordinary numerals when they are preceded by some specializing adjunct, as in *the* (or *these*, *my brother's*, *my*) *hundred* (or *thousand*) *books*. As in the case of *dozen* and *score* (46), a change of grammatical function implies a reversion of the relation of head-word and adjunct.

b) Partitive *of* is, of course, necessary, in like manner as in the case of ordinary numerals, when it is the following noun that is preceded by a specializing adjunct. Thus in *a hundred* (or *a thousand*) *of these* (or *my*, *my brother's*) *books*; compare *fifty of these books*. In these combinations *hundred* and *thousand* may be said to be used absolutely.

c) From a practical point of view it is useful to observe that the practice as to the use of partitive *of* after *hundred* and *thousand* varies when they are preceded by an indefinite numeral, usage, apparently, preferring the construction without *of*, except in the case of *some*, which might be apprehended in the sense of *about*.

i. Of many thousand fighting men went home but five hundred. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 7 a.

If we had kept to that policy, a good many thousand people, now dead, would be alive. FROUDE, *O.C.*, Ch. II, 41.

They dwelt in their cities for many a hundred years. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, iv, 84.

The housing schemes ... may ... produce a few thousand houses in the next six months. *West. Gaz.*

The storm-wave from the sea drowned several thousand people. *Graph.*

ii. In the neighbourhood a town, inhabited by many thousands of natives, had sprung up. MAC., *Clive*, (409 a).

On all the floors were piles of books to the amount of some thousands of volumes. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 310 b.

We have but a few hundreds of words with which to describe any human being at all. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

As there are some thousands of Bakers, and some hundreds of Henry Bakers in this city of ours, it is not easy to restore lost property to any one of them. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holmes*, *Blue Carb*

d) In indicating indefinite multiples of *ten thousand* and a *hundred thousand* the ordinary practice is to place both the first and the second member of the word-group in the plural, dividing them by partitive *of*, and placing the same preposition before the name of the things counted.

i. Tens of hundreds of ponies grubbed among the short grass that grew between. HALL CAINE, *Bondman*, I, Ch. V, 180.

If any specially clever fellow among your tens of thousands of readers can kindly assist me with a solution of my conundrums, I shall feel deeply obliged to him. *Punch*, 1889; 205 *b*.

ii. Many thousands are in want of common necessities, hundreds of thousands are in want of common comforts. *Dick.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 14.

To tens of thousands that are killed add hundreds of thousands that survive with feeble constitutions. *SPENC.*, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 23 *b*.

But we also meet with instances of *ten thousand* and a *hundred thousand* treated as an indivisible unit, not unfrequently when an indefinite numeral precedes, rarely when there is no preceding numeral. In this construction *thousand* takes the mark of the plural only when not followed by the name of the things counted.

i. \* The money and jewels, to the value of several hundred thousand pounds, were conveyed to Frankfort. *Stof.*, *Handl.*, I, 52.

The upper diagram shows Paris, the goal to attain which the Germans have sacrificed several hundred thousand lives. *Graph.*, No. 381, 2337.

\*\* The great Robert was not the man to call a sum of several hundred thousands a nothing. *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XI, 200.

ii. There, also we shall meet with thousands and ten thousands that have gone before us to that place. *BUNYAN*, *Pilg. Prog.*, I, 13.

So many hundred thousands sit in work-houses; and other hundred thousands have not yet got even work-houses. *CARLYLE*, *Past and Pres.*, Ch. I, 2.

e) In such a combination as *several hundred of the enemy's horses have been captured* (*Times*), *hundred* is, of course, used absolutely, in like manner as in *four hundred of the enemy's horses*.

f) *Half-hundred* seems to occur but rarely. In the only instance that it has come to hand it is followed by partitive *of*.

The captain had lighted upon her in a half-hundred of corridors and passages. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 111.

For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XXV, 29; Ch. XLII, 2, Obs. III, 6.

50. a) *Million* is more of a noun than either *hundred* or *thousand*. (6)

Accordingly it is often followed by partitive *of* when preceded by the indefinite article or a definite numeral, this even occasionally when the number is stated in figures instead of words. Naturally the construction with partitive *of* is the usual one in case it is preceded by an indefinite numeral. Multiples mostly take the plural form before partitive *of*; in the apposition-construction the singular form is retained.

i. \* In the Transvaal a million natives lived peaceably in the midst of them. *FROUDE*, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 46.

The war of a million cannon. *BORROW*, *Bible in Spain*, Ch. XV, 107.

\*\* Less than a million of tons are produced in a year. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 312.

Was a people not justified in rising against authority when all their laws had been trodden under foot "not once only, but a million of times?" *MOTLEY*, *Rise*, VI, Ch. IV, 835 *b*.

We have more than a million of unemployed people. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16, 22, 1922, 6 *b*.

ii. \* There are about fifteen hundred million human beings alive to-day. *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 7. T.

Over two million copies of the Author's work have been sold. *Lit. World*. Nineteen million people are directly menaced. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 6, 109 *a*.

\*\* There were only two millions of human beings in England, Scotland and Ireland taken together. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 278.

In 1875 more than a thousand millions of letters were delivered in the United Kingdom. *MCCARTHY*, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 16.

\*\*\* She saw the Royal Gardens blaze before her with a hundred million of lamps. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 102.

In 1908 forty-eight persons were killed and 1,721 injured, while 597 million of passengers were carried. Last year twenty-eight were killed and 1,662 injured, though the number of passengers was 819 millions. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6117, 2 *c*.

iii. \* Between 20,000,000 and 30,000,000 Russian peasants were going to suffer extreme hunger during this winter. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 5, 82 *b*.

The country mainly involved in the Russian famine is, in its normal condition, an excellent market. It had, last summer, some 83,000,000 inhabitants. *ib.* VI, 6, 102 *d* (Thus regularly in this paper).

\*\* It is stated that there are to-day in Great Britain 7,000,000 of unemployed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5054, 2 *b*.

An eminent statistician has computed that at any given moment there are 14,000,000 of people in work to 300,000 out of work. *ib.*, No. 5195, 2 *a*.

Note the varied practice in: The result was to increase the electorate from 135,000 to over a million voters with nearly two millions of votes. *Times*.

iv. \* These great waves in the Southern Ocean, for ever moving in the opposite direction to the tidal wave, may at least so far counteract it as to add a few million years to the period during which the earth will be habitable. *FROUDE*, *Oceana*, Ch. V, 75.

All London was gathered in Lady Marchpane's drawing-room; all London that is, which was worth knowing — a qualification which accounted for the absence of several million people who had never heard of Lady Marchpane. *Punch*, No. 3725, 426 *a*.

\*\* Difference in opinions has cost many millions of lives. *SWIFT*, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. V, (197 *b*).

Even intelligent Londoners talked of London as containing several millions of souls. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 278.

*b*) Multiples of *million* stand with *of* and have the plural form when no numeral precedes. Observe however, the practice in a connexion like that in the following example:

Value of total note issue on 1st of month in million gold roubles. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 18, 365 *c*.

*c*) When followed by a fractional number, *a half*, *a quarter*, etc., the *of*-construction is distinctly more frequent than the alternative.

i. It is estimated that the cost of working the Nicaragua Canal would be more than a million and a quarter dollars per annum greater than that of the Panama route. *Times*.

Ten millions and a half insured persons have become members of Approved Societies. *Punch*, No. 3709, 129 *a*.



ii. The capital still had a million and a half of inhabitants. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 278.

The number of letters included some five millions and a half of franked letters. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 16.

Enormous crowds, estimated at a million and a half of persons watched the long procession pass along the line of route. ROWE AND WEBB, Introd. to Ten. Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wei.

It (sc. the Soviet Government) was feeding 2¼ millions of people. Manch. Guard, VI, 6, 1096.

d) Usage may be equally divided as to the construction observed after *half a million*.

i. These things correspond to the infinitely complex personal needs of half a million people. BELLAMY, Looking Backward, Ch. XVII, 85.

Liverpool contains nearly half a million people. CHARLOTTE M. MASON.

ii. It was commonly believed that half a million of human beings was crowded into that labyrinth of lofty alleys. MAC., War. Hist., (627 a).

The meeting on Kennington Common, so far from being a gathering of half a million of men, was not a larger concourse than a temperance demonstration had often drawn together on the same spot. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. VIII, 90.

For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XXV, 29; Ch. XLII, 2, Obs. IV, 6.

51. *Billion* may be assumed to follow the lines of *million*, but the (6) documentary evidence procurable is, naturally, too scanty to draw any reliable conclusions from. Only this much seems to be pretty certain: the construction with partitive *of* is far more frequent than that without.

i. The annual rainfall has been estimated at over twenty-seven billion gallons. Rev. of Rev., No. 215, 503 a.

America has followed up her refusal to attend the Genoa Conference by preferring ... a demand for about one billion (1000.000.000) marks (£ 15.000.000) out of the German reparations payments. Manch. Guard, VI, 11, 217 c.

ii. The five hundred and seventy-five thousand billions of francs, which have been expended upon the fortifications, should have been laid out in a more peaceful manner. THACK., Hist., of the next French Rev., Ch. I.

Over three billions of herrings are taken out of the North-Sea every year. Suggestive Lessons, I, Ch. XXXIV, 117.

The entire nation was reputed to possess less than three billions of dollars in actual wealth. Rev. of Rev., No. 206, 195 b.

52. a) *Myriad* in the sense of either ten thousand, or a countless number, its ordinary meaning in Present-day English, is, apparently, regularly construed with partitive *of*.

i. One single myriad of talents of silver is worth 30.000.000 of French money. Translation of Rollin's Anc. Hist., II, III, (O. E. D.).

ii. \* A myriad of different universes. ROBERTSON, Sermon, Ser. III, X, 124 (O. E. D.).

\* Amidst the myriads of planets with which the universe is peopled. HELPS, Soc. Press. III, 50 (O. E. D.)

For all the haft twinkled with diamond sparks, | Myriads of topaz-lights and jacinth work | Of subtlest jewellery. TEN., Morte d'Arthur, 57.

b) *Myriad* is frequently enough met with without partitive *of*.

mostly before a plural but also before a singular noun, but, as it is in this construction kept in the singular form, it is then in no way to be distinguished from an ordinary adjective; e.g.:

i. Then of the crowd ye took no more account | Than of the myriad cricket of the mead. TEN., LANC. & EL., 106.

He could not see, the kindly human face, | Nor ever hear a kindly voice, but heard | The myriad shriek of wheeling ocean-fowl. id. EN. ARD., 579.

This land with its myriad offspring of flowers and flying folk. GALSW., FREEL. CH. XXIV, 219.

Compare: I stood and seem'd to hear, | As in a poplar grove, when a light wakes | A lisp of the innumerable leaf and dies. TEN., PRINC., V, 13.

ii. I went to the avenue of trees, where ... we had admired together the myriad combinations of shade and sunlight that dappled the ground at our feet. WILK. COLL., WOM. IN WHITE, I, CH. XV, 104.

Great logs of dry wood sent myriad sparks up the dark chimney-throat. G. ELIOT, SCENES, II, CH. IV, 101.

There was the trampling of myriad feet. OSC. WILDE, DOR. GRAY, CH. CH. XVIII, 259.

53. *Milliard* is construed either way, apparently more frequently (6) with partitive *of* than without.

i. The present cost of the cash payments for the whole period of four years would be about  $2\frac{1}{4}$  milliard gold marks. MANCH. GUARD., VI, 17, 341 a. In arriving at this hasty estimate French quarters whittle down the 30 milliard marks to 15 milliards, as being a more correct description of the real value of the German offer. *ib.*, VIII, 18, 344 b.

ii. One part is equal to the total of the inter-Allied debts, about sixty-five milliards of gold marks. MANCH. GUARD., VI, 11, 217 d.

The Budget for internal administration showed a surplus of six and a half milliards of marks. *ib.*, VI, 5, 87 a.

54. Nouns denoting a definite or indefinite number or quantity mostly discard partitive *of* when followed by *more* (Ch. XL, 100, Obs. I), and regularly when followed by the phrase *or so* (Ch. LXII, 4, c, Note  $\beta$ ).

i. \* Rosa says she must now give a couple more parties. THACK., A LITTLE DINNER, CH. VII.

There is a power more cattle there. JOS. JACOBS, HIDDEN AND DIDDEN. Or have you still a lot more thinking to do? MAUD DIVER, DESMOND'S DAUGHTER, I, CH. IV, 27.

Any Finance Minister ... who set the tide of inflation flowing again might be expected to come in for a good deal more unpopularity than he does at present. MANCH. GUARD., VI, 14, 274 c.

\*\* There were not above five score more of couples similarly straying. THACK., VAN FAIR, I, CH. VI, 55

Will the million and more of malcontents who gave Boulanger their support a fortnight ago, still continue to find the sinews of war for carrying on the struggle. LIT. WORLD, 1889, 224 b.

ii. A dozen or so years ago he may have been rather striking in the barber's-block style. DOR. GER., ETERN. WOM., CH. X.

There sat two dozen or so men. HAM. GIBBS, THE COMPL. OXF. MAN., CH. III, 18.

A dozen or so men attempted to turn it (sc. the car) over. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3860, 234.

A hundred or so women of all classes ... are cast ashore from shipwreck on a Pacific island paradise, and live there for twenty years or more. *Manch. Guard.*, 8/1, 1926, 34 *d*.

Note. Also in such a sentence as the following, in which *greater* is practically equivalent to *more*, partitive *of* is dispensed with.

The treaty is not a simple recapitulation of the obligations which Germany would have to accept in any case as a member of the League. It details them with a good deal greater precision. *Manch. Guard.*, 4/12, 1925, 442 *a*.

#### APPOSITION AFTER NAMES OF MEASURE NOT DENOTING NUMBER.

55. Apposition is rather the exception than the rule after names of (9) measure other than those expressing mere number, i.e. such as refer to distance (length, breadth, depth, height, space, etc.), time or duration, weight, worth or value, carrying capacity (of a ship). The numerous constructions in which these names of measures are found have been described in ample detail in Ch. XXIV, 22 *f*. We may, therefore, confine ourselves in this place to giving some few examples of apposition.

*degree*: Over 60 degrees frost (were) registered. *Manch. Guard.*, 1/2, 1924, 86 *a*.

*distance*: i. He kept the chair at two feet distance from the table. *Scott, Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. I, 23.

There is about six feet bare space around it (sc. the sundial). *EL. GLYN, Reflect. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. I, 82.

ii. He passed them (sc. these remonstrances) on to the editor with ... a cheerful admonition not to swerve by an inch breadth from the course he was then pursuing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5335, 4 *b*.

iii. It is a good mile walk from here to the Circo Romano. *Jos. Hocking, A Flame of Fire*.

iv. He built a house of three stories height. *Scott, Guy Mannering*, Ch. I.  
*weight*: She might as well have asked him to carry a ton weight on his back. *G. Eliot, Mill*, III, Ch. IX, 240.

They will be subjected to a process of intensive nutrition by which a stone weight can be put on in a fortnight. *Punch*, No. 3765, 206 *b*.

*worth or value*: i. He had never been at one shilling expense. *Smol., Rod. Rand.*, Ch. III, 19.

Thirty pounds and twenty-five guineas a year made fifty-six pounds five shillings English money. *Golds., Vic.*, Ch. XI, (298).

She is pretty well off. Four hundred-a-year jointure, ... and three thousand two hundred loose cash at the banker's. *Thack., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 58.

It is worth while to wait for the farthing change. *Jerome, Idle Thoughts*, I, 15.  
They could have got a thousand pounds damages a-piece from me for that, if we'd been married at the time. *Shaw, Getting Married*, (230).

ii. She has three thousand a year jointure. *Trol., Small House*, II, Ch. XLVIII, 217.

She had ... no more than eight pounds a year wages. *id., Ork. Farm*, II, Ch. IV, 45.

He had hardly twenty-five thousand a year income. *Motley, Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 199 *b*.

iii. I never saw two men do more with one-and-twopence worth of butter in my whole life than they did. *Jerome, Three Men*, Ch. IV, 45.

## ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS OF SUCH COLLOCATIONS AS IETS GOEDS.

56. In conclusion we draw attention to the various English equivalents (17) of such word-groups as *iets moois*, *veel moois*, etc., in which an indefinite pronoun or numeral is followed by an adjective converted into a noun and placed in the genitive. The following constructions are met with:

*a)* the indefinite pronoun or numeral followed by the ordinary substitute of the genitive, i. e. the converted adjective preceded by partitive *of*. This construction is now met with only in archaic, or literary language (Ch. XXIX, 26, *b*); thus in combinations with:

*all*; e. g.: You shall hear all I have learnt of extraordinary in other countries. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, I, 1.

All we see | Of sweet and fair shall yield to thee! SCOTT, *Lord of the Isles*, I, III, 7—8.

He taught his friend all that he knew of good, brave and gracious. SYMONDS, *Sir Phil. Sydney*, Ch. IV.

*ought*; e. g.: I would not ought of false. TEN., *Princ.*, V, 392.

*little*, *much*, etc.: Stones like those at Stonehenge have but little of new or marvellous for him who has seen the rocks beyond the Atlantic. MOORE, *Mem.*, VI, 337.

His eyes had more of gray and less of blue in them. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. II, 15.

Pilgrim ... became again ... the tender patient nurse who had mothered the lonely child so many years, and to whom she had stuck, as the saying goes, through so little of thick and so much of thin. BAESS, VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, I, Ch. XIV, 102.

*something*; e. g.: The other answers as if something of extraordinary had past betwixt us. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, IV, 4.

That fulness and luxuriance of life's life ... has in it something of divine. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VII, 51.

Its serenity (sc. the serenity of his countenance) had something almost of sublime. *ib.*, V, Ch. I, 196.

*what*; e. g.: What is there of ill in't? WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, 1.

What is there of good to be expected? JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLIX, 295.

O what to her shall be the end? | And what to me remains of good? TEN., *In Mem.*, VI, xi, 41.

*whatsoever*; e. g.: Our bond is not the bond of man and wife. | This good is in it, whatsoe'er of ill, | It can be broken easier. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1200.

Note. More usual, but also only literary, are the following constructions with *of*:

i. There was little of the beautiful in his face. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIV, 247.

ii. Your looks have more of business than of love. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, V, 5.

Let me not think that I discovered something of coldness in your first salutation. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2, (242).

He has, I know not what, | Of greatness in his looks. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, IV, 3.

When she thought only of herself, she would almost task herself to believe



that, after all, it did not much matter what of happiness or of unhappiness might befall her. TROLL., *Gold. Lion*, Ch. XVII 193.

b) a full adnominal clause containing the adjective in the uninflected form. This construction is possible in connexion with both indefinite pronouns and numerals. In the case of the latter, and also of *all*, it is the usual one.

i. There is much that is admirable in the Young China's party. *Times*, No. 1815, 823 a.

It (sc. the book) says much that is true or pleasant about many points of art and life. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 50, 323.

The past two centuries of Dutch history contain little that is great. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6111, 11 b.

Mr. Doughty has, in fact, little that is good to say of any Eastern nation. *ib.*, No. 8627, 14 a.

ii. Mr. Taine saw in Rochester only a lawless and wretched mountebank, a licentious drunkard, a participator in all that is low and vile, in nothing that is good. CLARE JERROLD, *The Beaux and Dandies*, Ch. III, 53.

She (sc. Mrs. Radcliffe) was of a highly romantic temperament, with an intense love for all that was grand and beautiful in nature. D. MURRAY ROSE, *Introd. to Ann. Radcl.*, *The Myst. of Udolpho*.

c) an undeveloped adnominal clause consisting of the uninflected form of the adjective (Ch. XXI, 2). This construction is the usual one in the case of compounds of *thing*, but is comparatively unfrequent in connexion with indefinite numerals, the interrogative *what*, and the compound *whatever*.

i. \* We are not inspired to attempt to say anything fresh concerning Jane Austen's novels. *Lit. World*.

Anything new? HOR. ANNESLEY VACHELL, *Jell's*, I, 2. (= any news?)

\*\* He loved England and everything English. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. II, 26.

\*\*\* Lord Byron, like Mr. Wordsworth, had nothing dramatic in his genius. MAC., *Moore's Life of Byron*, (161 a).

"What happened then?" I asked, however, at last. — "Oh," he said, "nothing extraordinary." JEROME, *Sketches*.

\*\*\* He gave me something I did not possess, something entirely new. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 15.

And none of us thought of something beyond. TEN., *Maud*, I, xix, v.

Note the curious construction in: There is something a little South African about the look of the town. *Manch. Guard.*, 22/10, 1926, 330 c.

ii. \* She caught little very remarkable. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. X, 85.

There was little grand that I could see this journey. FROUDE, *O c.*, Ch. XX, 330. There was little praiseworthy in the cricket apart from the bowling of Burrows and Wilson. *Daily Mail*.

There is very little new in the money market. *Graph*.

Even in military affairs there is little new under the sun. *Acad.*

\*\* (The Jewish race) had adopted a national character, in which there was much, to say the least, mean and unamiable. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch V, 41.

I had a belief she loved me even when she left me: that was an atom of sweet in much bitter. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 546.

In his manner there was nothing studied, much less awkward. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. VII.

Nor will there be much new to those who have followed the investigations to which I have alluded. *Acad.*

Thus also in: There must be a great deal wrong, Thady, when you'd curse that way before me. TROL., Mac d., Ch. XIII, 237.

iii. What better could I expect when I set up for a critic! LYTTON, My Novel, V, Ch. I, 291.

What new can he think of for me? ib., VI, Ch. XVIII, 411.

What better could a poor lady do? KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. VIII, 48a.

What worse can you say of English Ministers than that they should be led by a woman? Mrs. WARD, Tres., Ch. II, 8b.

What is there personal in this letter to make it self-important and presumptuous? R. ASHE KING, Ol. Golds., Ch. XXII, 254.

iv. She sees whatever fair and splendid | Lay betwixt his home and hers. TEN. Lord of Burl., VII.

d) a word-group in which an indefinite pronoun (or numeral), the indefinite article, or the interrogative *what* stands before the required adjective; the prop-word *thing(s)*; thus *iets nieuws* may correspond to *some* (or *any*) *new thing* (or *things*), or to *a new thing* (or *new things*); *niets nieuws* to *no new thing* (or *things*); *wat nieuws* to *what new thing* (or *things*). This construction has the advantage over that mentioned under c) in that it enables the speaker to draw the attention to a number of items. Another point to be observed is that in JESPERSEN'S terminology (Phil. of Gram., 24) *something* in *something good* is a "fixed formula", whereas *some + thing* in *some good thing* is a "free combination."

i. Can there any good thing come out of Nazareth? Bible, John, I, 66.

ii. O much I fear some ill unlucky thing. SHAK., Rom. & Jul., V, 3, 136.

iii. It is a common thing to have a foolish wife. SHAK., Oth., III, 3, 302.

iv. There is no new thing under the sun. Bible, Eccles., I, 9.

v. What new thing are you going to do? Daily Mail.

Note a) On the same plan are the constructions in:

Why, doth not every earthly thing | Cry shame upon her? SHAK., Much ado, IV, 1, 122.

She excels each mortal thing upon the dull earth dwelling. id., Two Gent., IV, 2, 51.

β) As a variant of such constructions as *some new thing*, or *something new*, we also find that exemplified in *a new something*, as in:

I thought ... of the washing-stand being rickety on its three legs, and having a discontented something about it. DICK., Cop., Ch IV, 22a.

A wonderful something was about to take place. THACK., Esm., II, Ch. XIV, 271.

The conversation of Addison ... was Terence and Catullus in one, heightened by an exquisite something which was neither Terence nor Catullus, but Addison alone. MAC., Addison, (751a).



## CHAPTER V.

---

### ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS.

---

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Observations . . . . .	1— 4
Some Adverbial Genitives and their Substitutes . . . . .	5-- 9
Some Adverbial Adjuncts that suggest the absence of a Preposition . . . . .	19—11
Adverbial Relations expressed by certain Phrases, Verbs or Adjectives . . . . .	12—14
Observations on the Grammatical Status of <i>all</i> , <i>both</i> , <i>half</i> and <i>double</i> . . . . .	15—16
Peculiar Application of certain Indefinite Pronouns or numerals, and of the superlatives <i>first</i> and <i>last</i> . . . . .	17—19
The Indefinite <i>it</i> in Adverbial Adjuncts . . . . .	20

---



## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adverbial adjuncts modify, in the main, the same elements of the sentence in English as they do in Dutch. Note, however, that in English they may also modify gerunds (Ch. XIX); thus in:

*Rising early* is a wholesome practice. MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 260, N.

*Playing with fire* is dangerous. ib., § 388.

Note. Improper is the use of a noun for a gerund in connection with an adverbial adjunct, as in: Mark actually held him to prevent his *interference foolishly*. DICK., CHUZZ., Ch. XXXV, 281 a.

2. Adverbial adjuncts are often used to modify an entire sentence rather than any particular element of it. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 364, ff. Thus in *He kindly offered me his assistance* ( *He offered me his assistance, which was very kind of him*), the adverb *kindly* refers to the whole sentence, while in *He spoke kindly to me* ( *He spoke in a kind voice to me*), the same adverb modifies only the predicate. Again in *He hadn't a large income*, the negative is a sentence-modifier; while the negative *no* in *He possessed no common talents*, modifies only the following adjective. The question whether an adverbial adjunct is a sentence-modifier or a word-modifier, is of considerable importance in fixing its place in a sentence, and will, therefore, be discussed more fully in the chapter dealing with word-order (Ch. VIII).

3. According to their meaning adverbial adjuncts may be divided into those of: *a*) place; *b*) time; *c*) causality, subdivided into those of 1) cause, 2) reason or ground, 3) instrumentality, 4) consequence or inference, 5) purpose, 6) condition or hypothesis, 7) concession; *d*) manner, subdivided into those of 1) quality, 2) attendant circumstances, 3) restriction or exception, 4) quantity, degree or proportion, 5) mood.

The above differentiation will prove to be useful in discussing the varieties of adverbial clauses (Ch. XVII, XVIII, XX, XX), and the meanings of the prepositions. In this connexion, however, it calls for no comment.

4. The words and word-groups used in English to form adverbial adjuncts, are very much the same as in Dutch. A comparison of the two languages, however, will bring out some interesting points which will be discussed in the following sections.

## SOME ADVERBIAL GENITIVES AND THEIR SUBSTITUTES.

5. Save for some adverbs, for which see Ch. LIX, 6—12, the genitive has practically disappeared from English as an adverbial formative. Traces of an adverbial genitive in word-groups are still found in:

*Go (or come) thy (or your) ways*, as in: Well, go thy ways, Sir William Honeywood. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

Now, go thy ways, for a right valiant and courageous blockhead. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 50.

Go your ways in God's name, sir. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXI, 234 b. Next day she went her ways as usual. HARDY, *Return*, VI, Ch. II, 485.

Note α) Already in SHAKESPEARE the uninflected form appears by the side of the genitive, the latter being, however, more common than the former. Compare the two following groups of quotations:

i. Go thy ways to a nunnery. *Hamlet*, III, I, 132. (See also *As you like it*, IV, I, 158.)

Come thy ways, Signior Fabian. *Twelfth Night*, II, 5, 1. See also *As you like it*, II, 3, 66; *ib.*, I, 2, 191; *Temp.*, II, 2, 76.)

ii. Go thy way, thou shalt not from this grave. *Mids.*, II, 1, 146.

Go thy way. *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 24.

β) In the Authorized Version the form *ways* appears to be used as a plural; thus in:

Go your ways: behold, I send you forth as lambs among wolves. *Luke*, X, 3.

Some of them went their ways. *John*, XI, 46.

Compare: Go thy way. *Matth.*, X, 52.

Also in the following example *ways* is, most probably, intended as a plural:

O, if I could live in a gay town as a lady should, and go my own ways, and do my own doings, I'd give the wrinkled half of my life. HARDY, *Return* I, Ch. X, 112.

γ) For the rest the uninflected *way* is now the ordinary form when the reference is to a single person; thus in:

The Disagreeable Man went his own solitary way. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. V, 19.

δ) According to WRIGHT (*Bible Word-Book*, s. v. *way*) "In Yorkshire *Go thy ways* and *Come your ways* are still common; the former is used to a troublesome person whom you want to get rid of, the latter to one whom you wish to come near."

*now-a-days*, also considered as a compound and written without hyphens; e. g.:

There are but few now-a-days who could show as blameless a life. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. I, 13.

Note. *Then-a-days*, formed after *now-a-days*, has not, as yet, obtained general currency.

Then-a-days, ah! then-a-days, | All the months were merry Mays. *Westm. Gaz.* (O. E. D.).

*early days*, which seems to occur but once in SHAKESPEARE, has H. POUTSMA, I, I.

at no time been particularly common. See also EARLE (Phil.<sup>5</sup> § 573), who observes "that it is now liable to be regarded as a plural."

'Tis but early days. SHAK., Troil., IV, 5, 12.

Alack-a-day, Sir! ... 'tis but early days with Pamela; and she does not hink of a husband. RICH., Pam., X, 17.

But it is early days for the Prime Minister to deal in hints of dissolution to the faithful Commons. Westm. Gaz., No. 8052, 1 b.

Note. *Early times*, a variant of the above, is distinctly unusual, at least in Standard English.

"Have you gathered any intelligence?" — "None that can be quite depended on as yet," he answered; "but it's early times as yet." DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LVII, 474.

6. For the rest the Dutch adverbial genitive in word-groups answers in English to: a) the uninflected form of the noun; b) a preposition + the uninflected form of the noun.
7. The uninflected form of the noun is found for the adverbial genitive in: a) iterative word-groups consisting of two or more names of an epoch, coupled by *and*. Thus: *des winters en des zomers* = *winter and summer*, *des morgens en des avonds* = *morning and evening*.

He wore the same dress winter and summer. MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 372.  
Night and noon and morning she brought the abominable drinks ordained by the doctor. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 267.

He was always thinking about it night and day. DU MAURIER, Trilby, II, 164.

Note. Occasionally the preposition *at* is placed before names of parts of a day in these word-groups; thus in:

He plies the duke at morning and at night. SHAK., Merch., III, 2, 274.

The rooks in the elms cawed sermons at morning and evening. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. II, 19.

Somehow, at night and at morning, at lessons and at play, I was always thinking about the little maid. id., Den. Duv., Ch. VIII, 29 c.

b) the expressions *barefoot*, *barehead* and *dry foot*, corresponding to the Dutch *barrevoets*, *blootshoofs*, and *droogvoets* respectively.

i. I would have run away, if I had had to walk barefoot through the snow. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 215.

Barefoot he wandered about the streets of Athens. LEWES, Hist. Philos., 131.

ii. He was obliged, barehead, to seek pardon from the injured party. Blackw. Mag., LXXVI, 424 (O. E. D.).

iii. They went over dry foot. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 372.

Note. According to the O. E. D. *barefoot* is now less common than *bare-footed*; *barehead* survives only as an archaism, *bare-headed* having superseded it; e. g.:

i. Bare-footed came the beggar-maid | Before the King Cophetua. TEN., Beg. Maid, 3.

ii. You shall see an Earl walk bare-headed to the Son of the meanest Artificer. STEELE, Tatler, No. 39 (O. E. D.).

8. A preposition + the uninflected form of the noun is found for the adverbial genitive in certain expressions of an iterative

aspect containing the name of an epoch. The prepositions met with in these expressions are:

*at*, which is found before the names of parts of the day, especially *night*, and the archaic or literary *eve* (or *even*), and *morn*; e.g.:

i. Owls go out prowling at night. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VII, 100.

ii. \* Winter oft at eve resumes the breeze, THOMSON, *Spring*, 19.

At eve a dry cicala sung. TEN., *Mariana in the South*, VIII.

\*\* And at even, when the sun did set, they brought unto him all that were diseased. Bible, Mark, I, 32.

Her tears fell with the dews at even. TEN., *Mariana*, II.

iii. I saw her at morn. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XVIII, 97 *b*.

I remember ... | The little house where the sun | Came peeping in at morn. THOM. HOOD, *I remember*, I.

She could not look on the sweet heaven, | Either at morn or eventide. TEN., *Mariana*, II.

Note. *At* is less common before *morning* and *evening*, except, perhaps when the words occur in combination (7, *a*, Note). No instances have turned up of *at afternoon*. The use of the definite article before the singular, and the use of the plural appear to be exceptional.

i. Many a time, | At evening ... would he stand alone, | Beneath the trees. WORDSW., *There was a boy*, 3.

He used to give us half an hour (sc. of sermons) at morning. and half an hour at evening. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. V, (240).

Visits to the grave of his wife, mostly at evening, or early morning. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XVII, 93 *b*.

He leads me forth at evening. TEN., *Maud*, II, IV, iv.

And like a guilty thing I creep | At earliest morning to the door. id., *In Mem.* VII, II.

He who is indeed of the brotherhood does not voyage in quest of the picturesque, but of certain jolly humours — of the hope and spirit with which the march begins at morning. STEV., *Walking Tours* (PEACOCK, *Sei. Eng. Es.*, 535).

ii. Then, as now, ... it was the delight of the Italians to assemble at the evening. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. VII, 52 *a*.

iii. And still at evenings on before his horse | The flickering fairy-circle wheel'd and broke. TEN., *Guin.*, 254.

*in*, which is found before the names of parts of a day, and before the names of seasons. The former occur in the plural as well as in the singular, and are mostly preceded by the definite article, not unfrequently by the indefinite article.

i. \* (He appeared) in the morning in wonderful shooting-jackets, ... and in the evening in gorgeous velvet waistcoats. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 184.

\*\* And, for the king, she haunts and watches him so narrowly in a morning, that she prevents even the chemists, who beset his chamber, to turn their mercury into his gold. DRYDEN, *Marriage à la Mode*, I, I (243).

I shall get a fine reputation by coming to see fellows in a morning. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2, (214).

The Countess always wore delicate colours in an evening. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. III, 28.

When he sat by the fire in an evening, after the other children were gone to bed, she would bring a stool [etc.]. ib., I, Ch. IX, 66.

Mama dislikes being disturbed in an evening. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 279.

He was a very sound sleeper, and generally had to be well shaken or cold-

pigged in a morning before they could rouse him. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 195.

ii. They walked in the summer evenings: they met in the early morn. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 89.

Letty was accustomed to stay with an aunt in Cavendish Square, an old lady who did not go out in the evenings. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. IV, 23*a*.

In the evenings you will sit and drink in all the learned talk between father and the learned Oxford pundit PHILIPS, *Mad. Leroux*, Ch. IX.

iii. In summer the heat of the sun is tempered by the fresh keen air of the mountain. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. IX, 129.

Note. No other preposition than *in* is found before compounds with *time*, as in:

Even the doctor had ceased to make his expeditions to it in the day-time. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (148).

(The feasts) were on a large scale, and lasted a good while, especially in the winter-time. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. III, 18.

*of*, which occurs before the names of parts of the day, and before the proper names of days. The nouns are placed either in the singular or the plural, in the former they are mostly preceded by the indefinite article, in the latter they are sometimes furnished with the definite article.

i. \* They would drop in there of a winter's afternoon. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (103).

I never drink wine of a morning. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 133.

I couldn't live in that room, alone, as you do sir. I should get so fidgety and worried of an evening sometimes, that I should be driven to come to the door. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXII, 274.

His hand don't shake of a morning. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53.

\*\* The squire always used to wind it (sc. the hall clock) up of a Thursday. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 30.

He considered ... that it was a correct thing to be seen at church of a Sunday. *ib.*, II, Ch. III, 32.

ii. Lady Rockminster sleeps very little of night. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 320.

iii. \* He drank pale-ale of mornings and beat the town of a night. *ib.*, I, Ch. XIX, 199. (Note the varied practice.)

Yonder ... was the terrace where, as a boy, he walked of summer evenings. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 307.

\*\* The park avenue and grounds were dotted now with town-folks of the summer evenings. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXI, 228.

They used to sit together of the summer evenings. *id.*, *Esm.*, I, Ch. X, 88.

(*upon*), which occurs chiefly before the proper names of days, mostly placed in the plural; less frequently before the names of parts of a day, preceded by the proper name of a day.

i. \* What do you do with yourself on Sundays? SWEET, *Prim. of Spoken Eng.*, 80.

\*\* He goes on Sunday to the church. LONGF., *Vil. Blacks.*, V. (The use of the article before *church* is, no doubt, due to metrical necessity.)

I generally go out of town on Sunday. SWEET, *Prim. of Spoken Eng.*, 80. People don't use their horses on Sunday. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VII, 119.

\*\*\* On the Sunday we have an allegory as lively and ingenious as Lucian's Auction of Lives; on the Tuesday an Eastern apologue, as richly coloured as the tales of Scherezade; on the Wednesday [etc.]. MAC., *Addison*, (760*a*).



On the Sabbath we abstain from labour. WEBST., Dict.

\*\*\* I promised that I would walk there on a Sunday. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 99.

ii. \* On the Sunday evening the Temple is commonly calm. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53.

\*\* He found Mrs. Malony scrubbing the stairs, as was her wont upon a Saturday evening. Miss BRAD., *Audl.*, II, Ch. XV, 307.

It does not make a bad holiday to get a quiet pony and ride about on a sunny afternoon of autumn. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 75.

9. Obs. I. As has already been observed in passing, the nouns in the above combinations are placed now in the plural, now in the singular. In the former case the definite article is only exceptionally met with, while in the latter we sometimes find the definite, sometimes the indefinite article, sometimes no article at all. This variety of expression may be accounted for by the fact that in these collocations the epoch is always spoken of in an indefinite or a generalizing way, for which the language has three formulæ, as seen in the three following sentences: *Lions are beasts of prey.* A (=weak any) *lion is a beast of prey.* *The* (generalizing *the*) *lion is a beast of prey.* Compare Ch. XXXI, 7 Note II.

II. The dropping of the definite article after *at*, and sometimes after *in*, before singular nouns is probably due to the preceding of the preposition. Compare Ch. XXXI, 15, *c*.

After the preposition *in* the definite article is in regular use before the names of parts of the day, it is mostly absent before the names of seasons. Compare Ch. XXXI, 15, *d*.

After *of* the construction with the indefinite article is the most common; not unfrequent is that with the noun in the plural without a preceding article. The placing of the article before the plural noun seems uncalled-for, while the use of a singular noun without either article is decidedly unusual. As to the collocations with *on*, it may be observed that the most common practice is to place the noun in the plural.

III. The various shades of meaning expressed by the prepositions are not always clearly distinguished. The vacillation is, presumably, in large measure due to the semantic vagueness which attaches to many of the commoner prepositions (Ch. LX, 106). The following examples are particularly instructive.

Of a Monday I drive the coach; of a Tuesday I drive the plough; on Wednesday I follow the hounds; a Thursday I dun the tenants; on Friday I go to market; on Saturday I draw warrants; and a Sunday I draw beer. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, III, 3, (398). (The bare indefinite article may stand for a worn-down *on* or *of*).

There are two parlours: the parlour in which we sit of an evening, my mother and I and Peggotty, and the best parlour where we sit on a Sunday. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 7*b*.

The feeble and filthy oil-lamps, with which the staircases of the Upper Temple are lighted of nights, were, of course, not illuminating the stairs by day. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 303.

IV. *Of* as used in the above collocations stands for an earlier *on*: the two prepositions having been largely mixed up, chiefly owing to a habit, once very common and still prevalent in vulgar language, of

abbreviating them to *o'*. This *o'* is frequent in SHAKESPEARE; e.g.: See! Anthony, that revels long o'nights, | Is notwithstanding up. JUL. CÆS., II, 2, 116 (Other examples in: Twelfth Night, II, 2, 116; Henry IV, B, II, 1, 83; ib., II, 4, 251; Cymb., II, 3, 13.)

Compare also: There sleeps Titania sometime of the night. MIDS., II, 1, 253.

In vulgar language *o'* may still be common enough; thus in:

She had lain awake o'nights. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 63.

*Of* appears to be further weakened to *a* in *a-nights*, which varies with *a-night*, for which see Ch. LIX, 7. For further discussion see especially STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 795.

According to MURRAY (in O.E.D., s.v. *of*, 52) this use of *of* is "now (common) only in the colloquial *of an evening, of a morning, of a Sunday afternoon, and the like.*" This may be so, but it should be observed that it is especially frequent in describing an irregularly observed habit or custom, a notion, which in Dutch is often indicated by *wel eens*.

V. In some dialects, especially in American English, we also find the names of parts of the day, and of the proper names of days, in what now appears as a plural without any preposition. This construction may be due to the disappearance of the extremely weak *o'* or *a* referred to in the preceding observation.

i. You don't have to get up mornings. MARK TWAIN, Tom Sawyer (SWAEN, Sel., II, 72).

They could not rightly be called beds, for they were not organised; they were kicked into a general pile mornings, and selections made from the mass at night, for service. id., Prince and the Pauper, Ch. II, 4.

We want you to tell us stories — papa always does nights. HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 25

ii. That man would as soon tell a lie Sundays as working-days. HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. VIII, 71.

VI. The names of parts of a day are also found in the genitive in Dutch in non-iterative connexions, i.e. in denoting one particular epoch. The English has in this case the prepositions *in* or *at*; i.e. almost regularly *in* before *morning, afternoon* and *evening*; *at* before *night* and the poetical *eve*; thus in:

He arrived at ten o'clock in the morning (in the evening, at night). We knocked off at three o'clock in the afternoon.

In the morning early I called out my whole family to help at saving an after-growth of hay. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. VI, (266).

As thro' the land at eve we went, | And pluck'd the ripen'd ears, | We fell out, my wife and I. TEN., Princ., II, 1.

*At evening* is sometimes used, especially in verse, instead of *in the evening*, possibly partly for metrical reasons, partly on the analogy of *at night*; thus in:

So the thought | Haunted and harass'd him, and drove him forth, | At evening when the dull November day | Was growing duller twilight, to the hill. TEN., En. Ard., 716.

VII. Also in *of necessity*, (compare *needs*), *of right*, *of set purpose* (*deltberation*, or *design*), *of one's own accord* (*choice, head, or free will*), *of force*, *of a certainty* (or *surety*), and the like *of* is the substitute of a genitive inflection. Compare Ch. LIX, 12, Obs. V. Special

mention may be made of the phrase *as of custom* which answers to the Dutch *ouder gewoonte*; thus in:

They walked up and down, *as of custom*. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. XI, 153.  
He began by thinking of Torpenhow's advice, but, *as of custom*, lost himself in the study of the faces flocking by. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 54.

### SOME ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS THAT SUGGEST THE ABSENCE OF A PREPOSITION.

10. An adverbial relation is sometimes expressed by the aid of a preposition in Dutch, where the English has none. Compare Ch. LIX, 107 ff. Of especial interest in this respect are certain adverbial expressions of:

a) *time*, notably: 1) *op een morgen, avond*, etc., the ordinary English equivalents of which are *one morning, one evening*, etc.; thus in: One day in private, the two young gentlemen had had a difference. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 42.

One fine morning, people were amazed to see little Lord Fauntleroy riding his pony with another companion than Wilkins. FRANCES H. BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 185.

One November morning ... Mrs. Hackit heard that her neighbour Mrs. Patten had an attack of her old complaint. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 45.

Note a) Occasionally we also find *on a day, on an evening*, etc.; thus in: But on a bitter morning, some time in December, I came upon a sight that well-nigh froze my heart within me. HALL CAINE, *Deemst*, Ch. XL, 293. Now it befell, upon an afternoon, that he was very busy at a map. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 12a.

β) Much rarer are the variants occurring in the following examples:

i. While the present century was in its teens, and on one sunshiny morning in June, there drove up to the great iron gate of Miss Pinkerton's academy for young ladies ... a large family coach [etc.]. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 1.

ii. Presently, of an early morning, all the party set forth for the country. *id.*, *Esm.*, I, Ch. III, 21.

iii. I proceeded, therefore, towards London in a fine morning. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XX, (362).

iv. Esmond came to this spot in one sunny evening of spring. THACK., *Esm.*, Ch. II, Ch. XIII, 268.

2) *sedert onheuglijke tijden* = *time out of mind*; e.g.:

They had sat for their own borough time out of mind. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VI, 71.

b) *manner*, notably: 1) such as contain two nouns connected by *en* in Dutch, by *and* in English; e.g.:

Bound hand and foot. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 372.

I warrant Old Crop, who has carried your honour, field and road, these ten years, will curse the hour when he was born. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, IV, 1 (256).

I was pitched neck and crop into the world. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 137. The French emperor will be upon us, horse and foot, before three weeks are over. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 255.

Next Lady-day you turn out bag and baggage. *READE*, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 9. (Compare: He had gone over with bag and baggage to the successful enemy. *DOR. GERARD*, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XVIII, 219).

When Newman departed, I went over, body and bones, to the Liberal reaction which followed. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 190.

I gave myself up, body and soul, to the great cause. SIMS, *My two Wives*, 18. It was cut off, root and branch. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XVII. She was always at it, hammer and tongs, just as hard as ever. BARRY PAIN, *Miss Slater*.

We have the customary classicisms dragged in, head and shoulder. *Academy*. He is known to be heart and soul devoted to the business of the State. *Il. Lond. News*.

2) such as contain two nouns, the last preceded by a preposition; e. g.:

They advanced sword in hand. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 372.

I would behold ye face to face. BYRON, *Manfr.*, I, 1.

He had but to turn his face another way, no matter where, and there would rise some new avenger front to front with him. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. LI, 398 a.

3) such as contain a noun modified by an adjective; e. g.:

The ship drove full sail. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 372.

The corn-shocks were standing, English fashion, red and yellow, out of the stubble. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. VIII, 111. (Compare Ch. LIX, 41; Ch. LX, 112, d).

11. The absence of a preposition sometimes converts an adverbial adjunct more or less into a non-prepositional object. Of some special interest are such constructions as:

a) *to walk the streets, to fly the country, to travel the continent, to range the woods*, etc., in which the noun appears as a virtual non-prepositional object, although passive conversion of the verbs is hardly possible (Ch. XLVI, 51; Ch. XLVII, i9, a); e. g.:

He now and then also informed me to whom the different seats belonged that lay in our view as we travelled the road. GOLDS., *Vic.* Ch. III, (250).

I must fly this kingdom instantly. SHER., *Riv.*, V, I, (270).

Why do spirits walk the earth; and why do they come to me? DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>7</sup>, I, 25.

He travels the Continent. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 331.

I know a man ... who was walking the hospitals here. *ib.*, 332.

He walks the London streets. *id.* Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVII, 180.

b) *to come (or go) a (long) journey, to go a (long) walk*, etc., in which the noun is dimly felt as a cognate object (Ch. XLVI, 54, Obs. II; Ch. LX, 114); e. g.:

At breakfast I announced to Diana and Mary that I was going a long journey. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 519.

He had left word that he was going a long walk. Mrs. CRAIK, *John. Hal.*, Ch. XV, 143.

Bernardine saw that she had come a long journey. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VII, 28.

Note. For *to go (or come) a journey* we mostly find *to go (or come) on a journey*. Similarly *to go (or come) a walk* is mostly replaced by *to go (or come) for a walk*.

c) *to stay (or stop) dinner*, etc., *to wait dinner*, etc., in which the noun is best understood as a shortened form for an adverbial adjunct or clause denoting a length of time (Ch. XLV, 23, c; Ch. XLVI, 54, Obs. II; Ch. LX, 114, c); e. g.:

He was prevailed upon to stay supper. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (249).

I'm going to stay tea. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 87.

No boy got on who didn't stay the Sacrament. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 321.

I never stop the Sacrament. *ib.*, 321.

You'll stop the Sacrament next time. *ib.*, 324.

ii. I don't want to keep Mrs. Levison waiting tea. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 12.

You have not waited dinner, I hope. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 144.

Shall we wait luncheon for your assistants? BIRMINGHAM, *The Advent of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. V, 119

Note α) According to SWEET (as observed in STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 758) it is more usual to say now *to stay* (or *stop*) *to supper*, etc. Instead of *to stay* (or *stop*) *to supper*, etc., we also find *to stay* (or *stop*) *for supper*, etc.; e. g.:

i. Stay to luncheon. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. IX, 170.

Will you stay to dinner, Stan? GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. II, 11.

ii. I don't think we'll mind stopping for lunch to-day. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 321.

β) Compare also the construction used in:

The lawyer stayed and dined with Major Pendennis. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

Miss Monro used to think he would have been glad to stay and lunch at their early dinner. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. IV, (432).

δ) *to take a person a ride*, etc., *to take a person a long way*, etc., in which the noun is felt as short for an adverbial adjunct with a preposition; e. g.:

He took him a ride over the common. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 34.

She took him an airing. *id.*, Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXV, 275.

They had a carriage, in which she and the favourite dog were taken an airing on alternate days. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 37.

I took John a new way. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 122.

## ADVERBIAL RELATIONS EXPRESSED BY CERTAIN PHRASES, VERBS OR ADJECTIVES.

12. In certain sentences or phrases the meaning of the individual words of which they are composed is felt so indistinctly that they express, as it were, but one adverbial idea. Thus *I dare say* is almost equivalent to *presumably* (Ch. I, 63); *I'll be bound* (or *I'll go bail*) to *undoubtedly*; *I'm sure* (or *to be sure*) to *assuredly*; *howbeit* to *however* (Ch. XI, 8); *may be* (or *may hap*) to *perhaps* (Ch. I, 20); *as a rule* to *generally* (Ch. XVII, 104, i); *as a matter of fact* to *however* (*ib.*); *as it is* (or *was*, or *as the matter is* (or *was*) to *in the present circumstances*; also to *however* (*ib.*). See also Ch. LIX, 104.

i. \* I dare say things will all, somehow or other, turn out for the best. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 149).

\*\* You are always busy, I'll be bound. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. XXXVIII, 330. You war (vulgar for *were*) with the Carrick harriers, last Monday, I'll go bail. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. VI, 69.



\*\*\* The Master of Ravenswood cannot, I am sure, object to your presence. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Cn. XXXIII.

There is not any disposition, to be sure, to scrutinize too narrowly the sufficiency of the pleas put forward in mitigation of the judgment. TIMES.

\*\*\*\* There were those among them who said he was the house-steward, only he dined with the family. Howbeit he knew how to make himself respected. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 232.

\*\*\*\*\* "They have always helped you Amyas." — "Maybe." KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. III, 23 b.

ii. \* Englishmen, as a rule, have broad backs and somewhat tough hides. Graph.

\*\* Mr. Herbert Spencer thought that the public would receive the impression that my father's reading of his proofs had extended to all his works. As a matter of fact, that reading was restricted to Mr. Spencer's biological writings. HUXL., *Life and Let.*, Pref.

\*\*\* My grief is sufficient as it is. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. I, 155.

I may be too late as it is. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. L.

Mr. Long might have laid the offence before the Head Master. As it was, he dealt with it himself. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VII, 97.

In the ordinary way I should have done the best I could, and I might have got through with luck. As it was, I either gave no answers at all, or said whatever would annoy her most. BARRY PAIN, *Miss Slater*.

Your challenge would soon be answered, ... were your antagonist near you. As the matter is, disturb not the peaceful hall with vaunts of the issue of a conflict, which you well know cannot take place. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. V, 46.

Note a) *As a matter of fact* and *as it is* are sometimes accompanied by other adversative conjunctives; thus in:

She opened the book at the part Jeannie had asked for and read aloud, keeping her voice as steady as she could. As a matter of fact, however, the scene itself was as powerful as it was pathetic. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 32. It is of course quite possible that, if Keats had not been, something or somebody would have done his work instead of him. But, as it is, it is to Keats that we must trace Tennyson, Rossetti, Mr. Swinburne, Mr. Morris. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 90.

β) *Maybe* is sometimes followed by *that*; thus in:

There would be an upper house-maid and an under house-maid, and perhaps a lady's-maid, and maybe that these ladies had been abroad with the family. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. I, 4. (Compare also: It may be that she does not know what people say of her. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LV, 299).

13. The idea which is expressed by an adverbial adjunct in Dutch is sometimes denoted by either a verb or an adjective in English.

a) Among the verbs that may be said to express an adverbial notion (Ch. XLV, 26) the following are of particular interest:

*may (might)*, often rendered by *misschien* in Dutch (Ch. I, 20); thus in: *You may have to use your revolver presently.*

*to happen*, or *to chance*, corresponding to the Dutch: 1) *toevallig* (Ch. II, 32), as in *I happened (or chanced) to be within hearing*; 2) *soms*, in questions, as in *Do you happen to know the exact date of this man's birth?*

Note. The use of *perhaps* in questions as a rendering of the Dutch

*s o m s* seems to be unusual. See, however, Ch. I, 21, *d*). The following example contains an instance:

Did you eat anything, perhaps, that disagreed with you? G. F. BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. III, 29.

More common are the renderings of *s o m s* found in:

Do you, by chance, remember our talk about animals? WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XVI, Ch. I, 461.

By the bye, Mr. Giles, have you, by any chance, heard anything lately of my child? DISR., *L o t h.*, I, Ch. VI, 33.

*to like*, corresponding to the Dutch *graag* or *gaarne*, as in *I like to take a walk before breakfast*.

Note. A literary equivalent of the Dutch *graag* or *gaarne* is *fain*, chiefly used in connexion with *would*, as in:

A page I would fain not look back on. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

Mr. Morgan had things which he would fain keep from public eyes. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 343.

*b*) The most remarkable adjectives that may serve as renderings of Dutch adverbs are:

*mere*, corresponding to *slechts* (*nog maar* or *alleen*), as in:

Her mere appearance is a relief. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XL, 348.

Blanche is a mere child, far too young even to think of such things yet. BUCH., *Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 14.

*very*, corresponding to *zelfs*, *juist* or *vlak*, as in:

i. The very furniture of the chimney was of massy silver. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 5.

ii. The very smile was taken as evidence to the contrary. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX.

iii. She passed under his very nose. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIX, 200.

Note. Also *just* may be a common equivalent of *juist*; thus in: Dick was just the man I wanted. STEV. (GÜNTH., *Man.*, § 358).

Those were just the three days that the fish would not feed at all. PAUL CHESWICH, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

*particular*, corresponding to *juist* in another shade of meaning, as in:

You singled out that particular bird. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 106.

Why on earth ... should Fontenoy have chosen this particular hour and this particular night to *débiter* these very stale things? MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 15*a*.

Note. Also *just* is sometimes available to render this meaning; thus in:

Supposing she had chanced to pick up any other book, but just "Vanity Fair." DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. IV.

Of particular interest are such renderings of *juist* as *of all men*, *places*, *things*, etc., often followed by *in the world* or a phrase of like import; e. g.:

He smiled rather bitterly as he thought that he of all men in the world should be the person upon whom the care of this marriage had fallen. THACK., *Van. Fair.*, I, Ch. XX, 205.

The New Testament was of all books in the world the most unfamiliar to me. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXVII, 97.

She of all bright creatures in the world knew the secret of my happiness. *ib.*, II, Ch. XLII, 283.

Sometimes the combination is practically equivalent to *exceedingly*; thus in:

I nauseate it (sc. marriage) of all things. WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, 1.

Rather frequent is the use of *other* or *else* sometimes together with *particular(ly)* in these phrases, as in:

i. Of all other affections it is the most importune. BACON, *Ess.*, *Envy*.

Of all men else I have avoided thee. SHAK., *Macb.*, V, 8, 4.

This is a time of all others when Want is keenly felt and Abundance rejoices. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 10.

ii. I rejoice to say, that the young man, whom of all others, I particularly abhor, has left Bath. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXVII, 208.

Dear, dear! to think that I should be late on this particular morning, of all others! DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. XX, 126.

It is highly probable that the rise of these phrases is due to the blending of two others, such an expression as *of all other men* being the result of the coalescing of *above all other men* and *of all men*. For fuller discussion and illustration of this remarkable idiom see Ch. XXX, 47; Ch. XL, 11, Obs. IV; and compare STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 26; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 409.

*absolute*, corresponding to *bepaald*, as in:

My wife even regarded it as an absolute promise. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVI, (328).

A woman with fair opportunities, and without an absolute hump, may marry whom she likes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

Note. Approximately the same meaning is conveyed by *positive(ly)*, as in:

Fenella Stanley seems in her later life to have set up as a positive seeress. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 34.

My mother seemed positively to hate her. *ib.*, II, Ch. III, 56.

*sheer*, corresponding to *louter*, as in:

I could not stand for sheer exhaustion. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XLII, 274.

My reason told me that everything of the kind was sheer nonsense. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. VI, 83.

By sheer force of character he won his way to one of the highest positions in the Boer army. Graph.

To place the police in the forefront, in order to overawe the public, was a piece of sheer stupidity. Times.

*Occasional* or *stray*, corresponding to *nu en dan*; as in:

i. It was a great delight to him that Sarah did not object to William's occasional presence in their Sunday interviews. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 7.

ii. She had given him little bits of stray confidence about herself. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VII, 29.

*instant* or *immediate*, corresponding to *onmiddellijk*, as in:

She took her brother into instant favour. THACK., *Essm.*, II, Ch. X, 238.

He must either submit to immediate surrender, or prepare for an immediate assault. MAC., *Hist.*, IV, 596 (O. E. D., 4, b).

*exclusive*, corresponding to *uitsluitend*, as in:

-Mr. Weller contorted his features from behind the wheel-barrow for the

exclusive amusement of the boy with the leggings. DICK., PICKW., Ch. XIX, 165.

14. Also when an action is expressed by a word-group containing a verb and a noun, or when a state is expressed by a word-group containing a preposition and a noun, we often find the particulars of this action or state denoted by an adjective in English, where the Dutch has an adverb. This will be seen by translating the following examples:

i. He determined to take no further part in state affairs. LAMB, *Tales, Lear*, 146.

I shall keep a constant eye on the Spencers. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 378.  
George came and took a tender leave of her the next morning. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

She felt quite sure that he had offended some of the examiners, who had taken a mean revenge on him. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 216.

He made an early marriage. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 27.

He bade a warm farewell to Torpenhow at the station. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. III, 30.

I am going to bid a long farewell to England. MRS. ALEXANDER, *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. VI, 74.

I made a belated attempt to earn my young friend's good opinion. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. IX.

ii. He was not in his perfect mind. LAMB, *Tales, Lear*, 161.

It was all he could do to keep the shop in decent repair. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

The door panels were in a normal state of smash. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 239.

For further discussion and illustration of the way in which certain verbs and adjectives, and also other parts of speech and even phrases, may be made to express adverbial notions, see especially Ch. LIX, 93 ff, where the reader is also referred to other parts of this grammar in which this highly interesting subject has met with detailed treatment.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE GRAMMATICAL STATUS OF *ALL, BOTH, HALF AND DOUBLE.*

15. Conversely there are some instances in which an adverbial word in English answers to an adnominal word in Dutch, or is, at least, usually translated by such a word. This is the case:
- a) with collocations in which *all, half, double (treble, etc.)* stand before either an article or an adnominal (pro)noun, when the Dutch equivalents of these have this order reversed. Thus of *all the day, all that day, all a summer's day* (TEN., *Princ. Prol.*, I, 1); *half the sum, half a bottle; double the sum*; the usual equivalents are severally: *de heele dag, die heele dag, een heele zomerdag; de halve som, een halve flesch; de dubbele som.*
- b) with collocations in which *all* stands before a prepositional

word-group; thus *The sun travels all over the sky* = *De zon reist over de heele hemel* (or *d'e heele hemel over*).

He was a twinkling-eyed, pimple-faced man, with his hair standing upright all over his head. DICK., *Coop.*, Ch. V, 34 *a*.

*c*) with *quite* in such a collocation as: *quite a lady* = *een heele dame*.

You are quite a woman, little Fan! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 24.

16. Obs. I. The Dutch words *heel*, *half* and *dubbel* in the collocations mentioned under *a*) bear shifting before the adnominal word. When this is done, they, too, are adverbial in nature, as is shown by their throwing off the final *e*. *All* is often interchangeable with *whole*; thus *all the day* = *the whole day*; *with all my heart* = *with my whole heart*.

For that the child thanked me with her whole heart. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 271. (Compare with this: "She ask my pardon, poor woman!" cried Charles; "I ask hers with all my heart." MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 12.) I admire you with my whole soul. BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. IX, 86.

II. When *all* or *both* stands before a plural noun modified by the definite article, or an adnominal (pro)noun, as in *All (or both) the (my, these, or my brother's) children sat at the table*, it may be considered as a substantival pronoun or numeral, to which the following noun-group is related as a kind of apposition. Apposition may be regarded as a substitute for genitive inflection and, accordingly, varies with an *of*-construction (Ch. IV, 42).

III. But *all* and *both* in combinations like the above also partake more or less of the nature of adverbial adjuncts, of a variety, that is, which are called by SWEET (*N. E. G.*, § 367) word-sentence-modifying adverbs, because, although modifying the sentence as a whole, they attach to one element in particular. The semi-adverbial nature appears from the fact: 1) that they hardly differ, as to their grammatical function, from such an indubitable adverbial modifier as *only*, 2) that they admit of being shifted to the body, or even the end of the sentence, when the element they modify is the subject. Compare *All (or both) his children have come* with *Only his children have come*, and with *His children have all (or both) come*. *All* is placed in end-position in: His stories have "grip" and *dénouement*, they are good stories all. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/12, 1922, 12 *a*.

A twofold grammatical function is also discernible in: 1) *all*, when connected with *this*, *that* or *it*, as in: *All this (or that) is quite true. I saw it all. This (that or it) is all quite wrong* (Ch. VIII, 144); 2) *both*, when joined to two nouns connected by *and*, as in: *Both John and Charles sat at the table* = *John and Charles sat both at the table* (Ch. X, 22); 3) *all* and *both* when joined to a personal or relative pronoun, as in: *They (or who) both (or all) were in the garden* = *They (or who) were both (or all) in the garden* (Ch. VIII, 144); 4) *each* and the word-groups *all of us*, *both of us*, *every one of us*, *each of us*, etc., when modifying a plural or a compound subject, as in: *We had each (all of us, both of us, every one of us, or each of us) received a shilling* =



*We had received a shilling each (all of us, both of us, every one of us, or each of us (Ch. VIII, 144).*

IV. In conclusion it may be observed that *all* (or *both*) + possessive pronoun may stand for the genitive of a word-group consisting of *all* (or *both*) + personal pronoun. See also Ch. XXIV, 44, Obs. V; Ch. XXXIII, 9; and compare JESP., Prog., § 226; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 324.

Tell her, 'tis all our ways. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2.

Both their husbands were safe. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 349.

You will end by making both their lives miserable. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. X.

V. *Half* is a noun when followed by partitive *of*, as in:

He deposited half of his funds in the hands of his friends.

Half of you will be dead this time next year. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. XI, 155.

The (in)definite article is not even regularly dropped before *half*. Thus THACKERAY writes:

I have asked about men in my company, and found that a half of them under the flags were driven thither on account of a woman. HENRY ESM., III, Ch. V, 361.

The suppression of *of* together with that of the (in)definite article makes *half* adverbial. The view of considering *half* as an adjective, except in such collocations as *a half-bottle*, *the half-year*, etc., is dispelled by analysing such sentences as:

Fox ... beat half the lawyers in the House at their own weapons, MAC., *Clive*, (511 a).

With your advantages you might turn the heads of half the girls in town. EDNA LYALL, *Don*, I, 140

Thus also *half* is best regarded as an adverb in such sentences as: Assertion goes for proof half over the world. DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. I, 6 a. I wandered hither and thither restlessly half over London. HUXLEY, *Life & Let.*, Ch. V, 98.

Alexander and Cæsar fought for their own ends, but in doing so, they put a belt of civilisation half round the earth. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 62.

*Full* modifies *half* adverbially in *Full half-an-hour elapsed before the old man stirred* (DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 19 a); it modifies adnominally the compound *half-hour* in *There Amyas sat a full half-hour* (KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. V, 42 b).

VI. Also *double* is a noun in the comparatively unusual case that it is followed by partitive *of*, as in:

The average error of the first is double of that of the second. DE MORGAN, *Es.* (O. E. D., 3).

As in the case of *half*, it becomes adverbial through the suppression of *of* and the definite article, as in:

His army might easily have been increased to double the number. MAC., *Hist.*, I, 592 (O. E. D., 3).

Our sea-going steam tonnage is double that of the rest of the world. *Times*.

VII. The meaning of the adverb *quite* in such a collocation as *quite a lady* is also occasionally expressed by the adjective *whole*; thus in:

A row of fishing-smacks, heeled on the their sides upon the beach, their masts down — a whole street of boats they made — appeared to be in for a long rest. DOR. GER., ETERN. WOM., Ch. XXIII.

IX. For further discussion of the varied grammatical functions of *all* see Ch. XL, 11; of *both* see Ch. XL, 33; of *half* see Ch. XXXI, 59; of *double* see Ch. XLII, 24. For discussion of the position of *all* and *both* in the sentence see Ch. VIII, 144 and 145.

## PECULIAR APPLICATION OF CERTAIN INDEFINITE PRONOUNS OR NUMERALS AND OF THE SUPERLATIVES *FIRST AND LAST.*

17. To denote how far the qualities expressed by a noun-predicate are to be found in a person or thing, English often uses a word denoting quantity (indefinite numeral, pronoun, or noun), followed by the preposition *of*, where the Dutch would have either an adjective or an adverbial adjunct of degree. Thus: *I am not much of a musician* = Ik ben niet een groot musicus. *He is something of a humourist* = Hij is eenigermate een humorist.

i. She was, withal, a little of a coquette. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 350. It is not much of a pleasure to you, but it is a great pleasure to me. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. IX, 38.

And if he was a woman-hater, would that be much of a wonder? DOR. GERARD. ETERNAL WOM., Ch. XVIII.

By disposition, perhaps, he was more of the politician than the lawyer. Westm. Gaz., No. 4919, 2*b*.

I'm enough of a doctor to tell whether a man is drunk or sober. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VII, 133.

ii. He had a profound contempt for Summers-Howson whom he considered, not altogether without reason, to be something of a fraud. BARRY PAIN, Culm. Point.

I am somewhat of a fowl-fancier. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holmes, Blue Carbuncle.

iii. I was inclined to look upon you as a bit of deliberate interloper. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. VIII.

18. Similarly the repetition or frequency of the action of seeing is sometimes expressed by an indefinite numeral or pronoun, where the Dutch has an adverbial adjunct; e. g.:

I saw no more of Uriah Heep until the day when Agnes left town. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXVI, 191*a*.

Have you seen anything of Miss H. lately? Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 144.

He saw very little of her. EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 138.

He saw little enough of his stepson. *ib.*, I, 220.

I saw a good deal of him in London. W. E. NORRIS, An Eclipse, Sc. I.

19. Also the substantival superlatives *first* and *last* followed by the preposition *of*, sometimes replace adverbial adjuncts standing with *to see*; e. g.:

That's the first I ever saw of B. J. DU MAURIER, *The Martin*, Ch. I.

This was the last they saw of Svengali. *id.*, *Trilby*, II, 176.

It's the last I am to see of you? HALL CAINE, *Christian*, I, 194.

Few came to see the last of one who had left none to mourn him. *ib.*, II, 298.

Francesca was just in time to see the last of the planet. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. X, 86.

After we had seen the last of them, Jim said with a sigh, "What a splendid fellow he is!" NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. I, 9.

## THE INDEFINITE *IT* IN ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS.

20. The indefinite pronoun *it* is also found occasionally as part of an adverbial adjunct; thus in *We are in for it. He was hard put to it for an answer. To make a clean breast of it.* Similarly in:

There was nothing for it but to get the supper over as quickly as possible. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 333 *b.*

The crest-fallen women had nothing for it but to obey. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIV, 144.

I'm always putting my foot in it. *id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 125.

Foes! foes! Ride for it, fair ladies — gentlemen, do your duty to protect them. *Story of the Abbot*, 50.

Note *a*) In some connexions the adverbial adjunct appears as a redundant addition without any meaning; thus in:

They have a blessed time on't, who marry for love. VANBRUGH, *Conf.*, II, 1, 422 (FRANZ, E. S., XVIII).

One of the Miss Flamboroughs was likely to have a very good match of it. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (331).

Between the doctor and the housekeeper it may easily be supposed that Dolf had a busy life of it. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (108).

*β*) *To have a good time*, and its variations, with or without *it*, is by some writers regarded as an Americanism. See especially STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 907, and 1045, where many instances of either expression are given; also the *O. E. D.*, s. v. *time*, 6; and *good*, 10, *d.*

*γ*) The first *it* is anticipating in such a sentence as:

You must take my word for it that when you strike it (sc. the letter D branded between the shoulders), it becomes red again. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, B, 30.



## CHAPTER VI.

### PREDICATIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

#### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Observations . . . . .	1— 5
Pred. Adn. Adj. denoting an Attribute of an Object at the time of an Action . . . . . , .	6—12
Pred. Adn. Adj. denoting an Attribute in which an Object is perceived or discovered to be . . . . .	13—14
Pred. Adn. Adj. denoting an Attribute in which an Object is judged, declared, shown, or known to be . . . . .	15—16
Pred. Adn. Adj. denoting an Attribute into which an Object is brought through an Action . . . . .	17—20
Pred. Adn. Adj. denoting an Attribute in which an Object is wished to be . . . . .	21



## GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. Predicative adnominal adjuncts are adjuncts denoting an attribute of an object (a person or a thing): *a*) in which it is found at the time of an action, as in:

He got off the bench very nervous. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 42.

- b*) in which it is perceived or discovered to be, as in:

I hope to see you well. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 34.

He had returned to Birmingham to find his lady-love flown. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXII, 238.

- c*) in which it is thought, declared, known, or shown to be, as in:

i. He believed the man insane. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 397.

ii. They acknowledged their aims impracticable. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 266.

iii. He knew them flatt'ers of the festal hour. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, IX.

iv. His very looks show him innocent. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XLI, 133.

- d*) into which it is brought, as in:

They appointed him their colonel by unanimous election. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, II, 182.

Deep in yon cave Honorius long did dwell, | In hope to merit Heaven by making earth a Hell. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, xx.

- e*) in which it is wished to be, as in:

She wish'd me happy. TEN., *Mil. Daught.*, XVIII.

The adjuncts in the four last functions form a group apart:

1) because they invariably refer to the object in an active sentence, as distinct from those in the first function which in an active sentence mostly belong to the subject; 2) because they are felt as an indispensable complement to the preceding verb, which, for that reason is by some grammarians called a verb of incomplete predication (Ch. XLV, 13—14). This indispensability may account for the fact that the adjunct is sometimes placed in immediate succession to the verb, especially when the latter has little semantic significance of its own (Ch. VIII, 161); thus in:

He was not long in making known his business. TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. XXVI, 470.

Kate made good her escape. *id.*, *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXV, 301.

Esmond wished to cut short the good Father's theology. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 263.

With a word he tamed the Daunian bear, which was laying waste the country. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, 40.

A chance phrase that he had heard at the theatre ... had set loose a train of horrible thoughts. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. V, 89.

2. Predicative adnominal adjuncts may be said to constitute a secondary or complementary predicate in a sentence. Thus in the first example what is predicated of the subject is not only the action of getting off the bench, but also the state of nervousness. In the following example the writer even wishes the adjunct to express a predication by itself, as is shown by his dividing it from the rest of the sentence by the comma:

She was looking at these children as a mother looks at her children who are fatherless ... He stopped, watching. HICHENS, *Gard. of All.*, II, vi, Ch. XXVIII, 278.

In the case of the last four functions this secondary predicate often has the status of an undeveloped clause, i. e. is part of an accusative + infinitive or participle. For discussion of predicative adnominal adjuncts that have the value of undeveloped clauses see Ch. XVIII, Ch. XX and Ch. XXI.

3. The term predicative adnominal adjunct, although not current in grammatical nomenclature, seems a suitable name for the adjuncts here referred to. As the above examples show, they denote particulars of (a) person(s), animal(s), or thing(s) indicated by some noun or pronoun; they are not connected with their head-word simply by juxtaposition, as is normally the case with attributive adnominal adjuncts, but by means of the predicate. In this latter respect they are like the nominal part of the predicate, from which they differ mainly in that the verb bringing about the connexion is not a mere copula, or a verb that through the fading of its meaning has more or less sunk to the status of a copula, but is used in its full meaning. Compare Ch. I, 2, a, Note a).

The grammatical similarity between nominal part of the predicate and predicative adnominal adjunct becomes clear from a comparison of two such sentences as *He became king* and *He was chosen king* both of which express a passing into another state.

Sometimes it is even difficult to decide whether a given element of the sentence should be styled the former or the latter. Thus it is not easy to return a categorical answer to the question how far *to lie*, *to sit*, and *to stand* have faded from their original import in such sentences as:

Mr. Gradgrind lay very ill. DICK., *Hard Times*, II, Ch. IX, 87 b.

Both sat quite still, quite silent for some time. MRS. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. XVI, (582).

He stood mute with rage and wonder. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 76.

If they are felt to suggest a distinct posture of the human body, the nominals should be apprehended as predicative adnominal adjuncts; if, on the other hand, the position of the human body is only dimly thought of, they may be understood as nominal part of the predicate. Also in such a sentence as *The moon shines bright* (GOLDS., *Vic.*,

Ch. IX) the grammatical status of the complement of *to shine* will depend upon the semantic force which is ascribed to the verb. In this and similar sentences the fixing of the grammatical function of the complement of the verb offers an additional difficulty, inasmuch as it raises the problem whether it does not express the manner of the action, and should not be placed in the adverbial from *brightly*. Similarly we may be in doubt whether *to abide* as used in the following example should be apprehended as a full verb or as a copula of the second kind. and whether, consequently, the complement, *a quest*, is to be understood as a predicative adnominal adjunct, or as nominal part of the predicate. Compare the examples with *bide* in Ch. I, 8.

I will cheerfully abide for some few hours the guest of so courteous a host. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, III, Ch. II, 132.

Also the getting into a state may be expressed by verbs that are intermediate between copulas and full verbs, with the result that also in connexion with such verbs the complement admits of a twofold grammatical interpretation; thus in:

As the son grew a young man, he turned out riotous. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXII, 214.

As for Herbert, I'm afraid he'll turn out a prig. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. II, 23.

Face and neck flushed crimson. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XVIII, 159*b*.

Most of the fires within the wide horizon were also dwindling weak. HARDY, *Return*, Ch. II, 32.

He concluded that there must have been some quarrel between the two men, in which Ussher had fallen the victim. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XXI, 387.

In the following example *to blush* is even used in precisely the same connexion as the preceding *to turn*, which is generally considered an indubitable copula:

She again turned pale and then blushed scarlet. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. III, 57.

4. Predicative adnominal adjuncts are called *prädikative Attribute* by PAUL (*Prinz.*, § 97). Certain varieties are denominated *complemental nominative* or *objective* by MURRAY (O. E. D. s. v. *as*, 11, *c*), *object-complement* by SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 267), *objective complements* by NESFIELD (*Hist. Eng. and Deriv.*, § 190), *free adjuncts* by KRUISINGA (*Handbk.*, § 1894), *predicate adjective* or *noun* by ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 34), *predicative adjunct* by SUNDEN (*Predicational Categories in English*, Essay I, 68), *quasi-predicatives* by JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, Ch. XVII). For a detailed discussion of the distinction between attributive and predicative adnominal adjuncts, and of the varied forms of adnominal adjuncts generally, see especially JESPERSEN, *De To Hovedarter af Grammatiske Forbindelser*; and *id.*, *Phil. of Gram.*, 122 ff.
5. The words or word-groups that are used as predicative adnominal (2) adjuncts are mostly adjectives (or adjectival participles), or nouns, as in all the above examples. They may also be:

a) adverbs, or adverbial word-groups, denoting a state, as in:

Having knocked the people up. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLII, 330.

He laughed the idea down. *ib.*, Ch. XL, 314 a.

Could Miss Richland have set him at liberty? *Good-nat. Man*, IV.

The walls were painted in green. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. IV, 32  
(Compare: It was painted red. RID. HAG., *Sol. Mines*, 249.)

He won't set the Thames on fire. *Prov.*

b) infinitives or participles, or undeveloped clauses with an infinitive or participle; thus often in the four last functions; e. g. in:

i. I felt the air fan my cheek. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 249.

ii. We don't want the women meddling. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. V, 34 a.

I shall catch it for keeping you talking. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. I, 7.

iii. He saw the deed done. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 249.

## PRED. ADN. ADJ. DENOTING AN ATTRIBUTE OF AN OBJECT AT THE TIME OF AN ACTION.

6. Predicative adnominal adjuncts of this kind mostly refer to the (4) subject, as in all the preceding pertinent examples. They may, however, also refer:

a) to the non-prepositional object, as in:

Mr. Crabfield did his duty by Lucius Mason, and sent him home at seventeen a handsome, well-mannered lad. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, I, Ch. II, 26.

Home they brought their warrior dead. TEN., *Princ.*, VI, I.

We got it a dead bargain. THACK., *Cox's Diary*, May (237).

Schiller had many friends in Dresden, who loved him as a man, while they admired him as a writer. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, II, 120. (With *to admire* as used in this example compare that illustrated in 16.)

Oh, that the earth would open and swallow them up alive, the cannibals. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. III, 28. (Observe that *cannibals* stands by way of apposition to *them*.)

They are eating us up alive. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 70.

I left that lad alone with his mother. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXX, 355.  
(Observe that *to leave* expresses a qualified causing.)

I shall bear you in mind, and you yourself will leave no stone unturned. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. X, 85.

Note. Naturally the reference is to the subject when the verb is thrown into the passive voice, as in:

I visited the ancient Keep of the Castle, where James the First of Scotland ... was for many years of his youth detained a prisoner of state. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, X, 83.

The successor of St. Peter was carried away captive by the unbelievers. MAC., *Popes*, (562 a).

He was brought a child from India. TROL., *Thackeray* Ch. I, 4.

The cattle station was to be sold a bargain. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, XVII, Ch. I, 451.

Owing to the absence of all morphological case-distinctions in nouns and adjectives in Modern English, there may be some uncertainty as to the element in the sentence, subject or object, to which the adjunct belongs; thus in:



Do you think then that I did not love you as a child? WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, IX, Ch. II, 273.

Cases of ambiguity are, however, exceedingly rare, the context mostly containing sufficient indications of the way in which the utterance has to be understood.

*b)* to the (pro)noun in a prepositional object, as in :

The good Father said that he was proud of him, and fond of him, as his pupil and friend. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XIII, 263.

I knew from something that had once fallen from her as a child on the sands that [etc.]. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. VII, 89.

To him (sc. Millet) ... we must look as the fountain-head of all peasant painting. TURNER, *Masterpieces in Colour*, Millet, 12.

*c)* a genitive or possessive pronoun, as in :

My fame's all about the country for the most faithful fortune-teller that ever told a lie. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, I, I, (255).

I shall always be glad to promote your welfare as Mrs. Dockwrath, if possible. TROL., *Orl. Farm.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

Llyn Cobllynau ... was my favourite place as a child. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XIV, Ch. VI, 406.

7. Predicative adnominal adjuncts of the first kind naturally often (3)

partake largely of the grammatical character of adverbs of attendant circumstances. It is, indeed, often difficult to decide whether the adjunct is meant to describe particulars of the subject or of the predicate, and it is not surprising, therefore, that there should be frequent hesitation as to the choice between forms with or without the suffix *ly* in the case of words that have two forms according to their twofold function. A comparison of the two following groups of examples brings out this hesitation :

*i.* They went along singing. He lived happy ever afterwards. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 391.

He sat silent. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 78.

She lay quite quiet where she was. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XXII, 414.

"Bless my soul, sir, Bloundell-Bloundell!" cried Pen, laughing: "why, sir, he's the most popular man of the University." THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

We will live happy ever after. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXI, 218.

Amyas followed wondering. KINGSLEY, *Westw. H!* Ch. XIV, 120 *b*.

His denunciations fulminated unceasing. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 220, 346 *a*.

*ii.* He suffered patiently. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 373.

Amelia heard the claret-bell ringing as she sat nervously upstairs. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 381.

Pen laughingly said, he by no means wished to be let off just debts he owed. *ib.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 195.

I got up on the outside of the omnibus, and sate there very contentedly between a Jew-pedlar ... and a gentleman's servant. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVII, 173.

The Disagreeable Man sat quietly by her side. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. X, 42.

The man stood silently beside her. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, II, Ch. VII, 135.

Under the archway the Arabs were sitting silently, as if immersed in profound reveries. *ib.*, I, II, Ch. IX, 217.



Is anybody allowed to choose to live always quite happily without duties? *ib.* II, iv, Ch. XIX, 89.

Sometimes we even find the two forms in one and the same connexion; thus in:

People moved about ceaselessly and restless. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340.  
He looked at me very composedly; not angry, as I feared. MRS. OLIPHANT, *Neighbours on the Green*, *The Scientific Gentleman*, Ch. VI

It must not, however, be supposed that in all cases both forms would be admissible. In Ch. LIX, 22 ff an attempt has been made to delimit the spheres of the forms with and without *ly*. The student eager for information, will at least find there some hints as to the preference to be given to either form. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. I, 5; and compare the observations made on the subject by GRONDHOUD in *Taalstudie*, VIII.

8. Besides attendant circumstances these adjuncts will often be found to imply some other adverbial relation. This relation is naturally of a vague description, there being no word to express its nature. In not a few cases, therefore, a given sentence may bear more than one interpretation. Thus a vague relation of either time or condition may be discerned in:

Betrothed, he will be safe from a thousand snares. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIII, 91.

In the following examples the implied secondary relation appears to be more or less pronounced: i. e. it may with some justice be apprehended to be one of:

time in: i. As a boy he had been too idle, as a man he soon became too busy for literary pursuits. MAC., *Clive*, (500*a*)

She (sc. G. Eliot) began it (sc. Romola), she said, as a young woman, and finished it as an old woman. LESLIE STEPHEN, *George Eliot*, Ch. IX, 125.  
As a child and a boy young Tennyson was remarked both for acquisition and performance. ANDREW LANG, *Tennyson*, Ch. I, 4.

ii. Let dull Octavia | Survive and mourn him dead. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, V, 1 (105).

The old white-haired man who had baptized her as a baby and confirmed her as a girl, was sitting with them at the supper-table EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nobs.*, Ch. VIII, 72.

Actæon. A huntsman who having surprised Diana bathing, was turned by her into a stag and torn by his own dogs. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

He had bought the horse for a hundred roubles as a colt. STEAD'S *Annual* of 1906, 6*a*.

NOTE. It will be observed that substitution of *when* for the predicating *as* (9), which is used in many of the above examples, would hardly involve a material change of meaning. This appears from a comparison with:

To me you owe everything — your life when an infant — your support while a child SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XX, 89.

I play'd with the girl when a child. TEN., *Maud*, I, I, XVII.

b) cause in: i. Jos went to Court, ... as a loyal subject of his Sovereign.

THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXV, 277. (approximately: because he was a loyal subject.)

Do not be angry with me if I venture, as a friend, to ask you not to be too sociable. TROL., Castle Richmond, Ch. II, 22.

He was good-natured, and, as the only son of a rich man, was generally well provided with money. *ib.*, Ch. V, 70.

ii. The country respected him as one of her first soldiers. MAC, Clive, (510*a*). (approximately: because she considered him as one of her first soldiers.)

She received the attentions of her admirers as a matter of course. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. IX, 36. (approximately: because she regarded the attentions as due to her as a matter of course.)

I will report you to the police as a thief SAVAGE, My Offic. Wife, 215, (approximately: because I have found you to be a thief.)

c) condition in: As a father I would do anything to prevent such a marriage as that. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. II, 20. (approximately: if I were a father etc.)

d) purpose in: I treasured it as a keepsake. DICK., Cop., Ch V, 33*b*. (approximately: to serve as a keepsake.)

We ought to give her some trifle as a present. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXX, 344.

e) quality in: She might have done as an artist's model for a Judith, but I doubt whether any man, looking well into her face, could think that she would do well as a wife. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XXIX, 349.

On the 29th of July 1835, Charlotte went as teacher to Miss W.'s, Emily accompanied her as a pupil. Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 101.

I came to tell you, as her cousin and the executor of her father's will, that she is about to become my wife. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 189.

I did not save you intentionally, so I am not posing as a philanthropist. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. XX, 110.

Neither as Queen of Denmark, nor as a Princess of Hesse-Cassel, could she, indeed, be expected to entertain very cordial feelings towards Russia. *Times*. As a painter, purely and simply, Millet will never occupy a very high position in the world of art. TURNER, Masterpieces in colour, Millet, 20. His election in 1853 came more as a matter of course. T. LEMAN HARE, Masterpieces in Colour, Millais, 36.

He didn't strike me as a gentleman. GALSW., Silv. Spoon, I, Ch. VIII, 54.

Note. It will, perhaps, be observed that the predicative adjuncts in the last group of examples bear a rather close resemblance to incomplete clauses of quality that consist of a (pro)noun, whether or no furnished with some attributive adjunct, such as *Although a German, he spoke English like (or as) an Englishman* (For a comparison of *like* and *as* in this example see Ch. XVII, 102, *e*). A little reflection will, however, bring out an essential difference. Whereas in sentences of this type two persons or things (or groups of persons or things) are compared relative to an action or state, there is no comparison in the examples cited above, in which *as* approximates to *in the capacity (or quality) of, in the way of*. Compare the following example in which *in the quality of* is used in practically the same function as *as*.

He ... used to wear a jacket and trousers so ludicrously tight, that the elder boys could not forbear using him in the quality of a butt or "cockshy." THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 32.

In Dutch, which in both constructions uses a *als*, the difference appears from the absence or use of the indefinite article before the noun in question. Compare *Hij woont op kamers als student* (English: *He lives in furnished apartments as an undergraduate*) with *Hij woont op kamers als een student* (English: *He lives in furnished apartments like an undergraduate*). For further discussion and illustration see Ch. XVII, 102 ff; and especially Ch. LX, 22 f.

9. The conjunction *as*, placed in many cases before the noun in the (5) construction illustrated in the preceding section, may be said to be a mere conjunctive, no precise meaning being expressed by it. To distinguish it from the *as* used to introduce a variety of adverbial clauses it may be called the *predicating conjunction*.

The use of the predicating *as* coincides, in the main, with that of the (6) corresponding *als* in Dutch. Thus in most of the connexions illustrated in the above examples where the English has *as*, the Dutch would have *als*. In not a few combinations, however, the predicating conjunction is more or less usually dispensed with in English where the Dutch idiom would require it. It is, naturally, impossible to determine with any positiveness how far the absence of *as* is the rule or the exception. We must, therefore, confine ourselves to mentioning some verbs that have been found without it, at variance with the practice that would be observed in Dutch, and abstain from much comment. The construction without *as* has been found after:

*to act*, as in: She acted hostess at the ducal parties. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. VII, 71. (The absence of *as* appears to be exceptional. Thus it is used, presumably in accordance with ordinary usage, in: It was this little child who commonly acted as mistress of the ceremonies to introduce him to Mrs. Osborne. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 392).

*to be born*, as in: You know if you had been born a Papist, mother, a Papist you would have remained to the end of your days. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. II, 325.

*to bend*, as in: I know not that I ever bent to you a suppliant. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 159. (The absence of *as* is, probably, exceptional.)

*to come*, as in: When sorrows come, they come not single spies, | But in battalions. SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 5, 77.

He expected to come back a priest at least. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. V, 41.

*to commence*, as in: What do you think of commencing author like me? GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XX, (363).

In the thirty-second year of his life, he commenced a writer for the stage. JOHNSON, *Lives*, *Dryden*, 245.

This promising lad commenced usurer on a limited scale at school. DICK., *Nick*, Ch. I, 2b.

*to die*, as in: He died a prisoner in their hands. MAC., *Popes*, (562a). Wicked providence! To live a rogue, and die a beggar, leaving his daughter to the charity of strangers. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, Ch. XI.

*to dwell*, as in: Rather will Ellen Douglas dwell | A votaress in Maronnan's cell. SCOTT, *Lady*, II, xiii

*to go*; as in: He would go down to his grave a maimed and feeble man. Mrs. CORBET—SEYMOUR, *Romantic Tales*, 17 (ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 17).

*to grow up*, as in: Lord Warwick grew up a rake. MAC., Addison, (770 b).

*to leave*, as in: Voltaire left France a poet and returned a sage. MANCH. GUARD., 19/11, 1926, 403 a.

*to live*, as in: He comes home now ... to the lonely chambers, where he lives a godless old recluse. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. XXIX, 310.

He had lived a lonely man until she had been sent to him. G. ELIOT, SIL. MARN., Ch. XVI, 126.

She was familiar with Miss Brabazon from having formerly lived servant in the college. MRS. WOOD, ORV. COL. Ch. VI, 90.

*to move*, as in: She moved no sovereign, but a lady. CH. BRONTË, VILLETTE, Ch. XX, 268. (The absence of *as* appears to be exceptional.)

*to part*, as in: They parted apparently the best of friends. LYTTON, RIENZI, II, Ch. V, 106.

He and Dobbin parted very good friends. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. XX, 211. Note. When a secondary notion of time is implied, *as* appears to be common enough; thus we find it in: I had never seen her nor heard from her since we parted as children. WATTS DUNTON, AYLWIN, II, Ch. II, 54.

*to reign*, as in: If it had not been for Lady Gertrude, she might still reign queen over her husband's heart. AGN. & EQ. CASTLE, DIAM. CUT PASTE, II, Ch. VIII, 207. (The absence of *as* is, presumably, rather the exception than the rule; thus it is used in: In those days Lily reigned as a queen at the Small House. TROL., SMALL HOUSE, II, Ch. XLIV, 162).

*to return*, as in: He scarce knew which way to bend his course, being unwilling to return home to his father a disgraced and banished man. LAMB., TALES, TWO GENT., 107.

He returned a very different person from the poor slighted boy who had been sent out ten years before. MAC., CLIVE, (510 a).

*to rise*, as in: Who rises from prayer a better man, his prayer is answered. MER., RICH. FEV., Ch. XII, 75.

But she, that rose the tallest of them all | And fairest, laid his head upon her lap. TEN., PAS. OF ARTH., 375.

*rove*, as in: Rather through realms beyond the sea, | ... An outcast pilgrim will she rove, | Than wed the man she cannot love. SCOTT, LADY, II, xiii.

*to serve*, as in: What if the head, the eye, or ear repin'd | To serve mere engines to the ruling mind. POPE, ES. ON MAN, I, 262.

He served with me second lieutenant in the "Meleager." THACK., DEN. DUV., Ch. I, (181). (Also, presumably, more frequently, with *as*, as in: It (sc. the nose) would serve as a speaking trumpet. LYTTON, CAXT., II, Ch. III, 44. This served him as a place of prayer. KINGSLEY, WESTW. HOL, Ch. XXV, 187 a.)

*to sit*, as in: Mr. Osborne sitting bodkin opposite between Captain Dobbin and Amelia. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. VI, 53.

When he heard the second and more dreadful part of the story, his jaw dropped and he sat for some time the picture of an idiot. TROL., MACD., Ch. XXI, 383.

Note. In *to sit* (*ride*, *travel*, etc.) *bodkin* and similar phrases *bodkin* may be apprehended as a noun that has been converted into an adverb. Compare Ch. LIX, 52.

*to stand*, as in: I should have thought ... that the lady herself might have stood interpreter. SCOTT, ROB. ROY, 10 (MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 35).

He ... showed them ... how that battle was to be fought, and stood there before them their fellow-soldier and the captain of their band. HUGHES, TOM BROWN, 49 (ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 17).

She stood in their midst a woman of spotless virtue. PHILIPS, One never knows, II, 224 (ib.).

Note. Observe that *to stand*, as used in the above examples, is



considerably weakened in meaning, and approaches to a copula (Ch. I, 5, *b*).

10. As also appears to be regularly absent before such word-groups as *man and boy*, *man or boy*, irrespective of the verb in the predicate; thus in:

I have drove a coach, man and boy, these two thousand years. GOLDSM., *The Bee* (R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsm., Ch. IX, 109).

He had lived in Stratford, man and boy, for eighty years. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 260.

Boy or man, I never loved any other woman. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. V, (249).

11. Obs. I. In all the examples of the two preceding sections the adjunct belongs to the subject. When it refers to the object, *as* is apparently rarely dispensed with. The following is a doubtful instance *prisoner* being, perhaps, felt as an adjective (compare *captive*), as may be inferred from the absence of the indefinite article: See, however, the two first examples in 6, *a*, Note.

The party that returned carried off your servant prisoner. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXVIII, 86 *b*.

As appears, however, to be regularly absent before the predicative noun that stands after *to leave*, *as* in:

You will find whom I left my heir. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Offic.*, II, 2, (268).

Pedantry was so deeply fixed in his nature that the hustings, the Treasury, the Exchequer, the House of Commons, the House of Lords, left him the same dreaming schoolboy that they found him. MAC., *Es.*, *Hist. of the Rev.*, (311 *a*). (Compare also: Three years later she died and Bartin was left an orphan and penniless. DU MAURIER, *The Martin*, Ch. I)

II. Although *as* can hardly be said to convey any distinct meaning (9), its omission may modify the meaning of the sentence. Thus the secondary adverbial meaning (8) is absent when *as* is suppressed in:

i. That habit I had of speaking out everything that was on my mind brought me, as a child, into innumerable scrapes. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. V, 242.

ii. I envied the storm-worn people who had fallen at his feet and blessed him as their preserver. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXV, 308.

III. *As* approaches to *as it were as* in:

So thrice-fair lady, stand I, even so; | As doubtful whether what I see be true. SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 2, 148.

The lad revered my lord as a father. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. VIII, 75.

IV. *As* does not stand before a predicative adnominal adjunct, but in an incomplete clause of cause, in:

Sex, as the strongest force in human nature, has the undoubted right of both expression and protection. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 252.

In this sentence the omission of *as* would convert the word-group concerned into an apposition.

V. In passing it may here be observed that the adjunct with the predicating *as* may also refer to the predicate alone; thus in:

Kundry, a woman who mocked at Jesus Christ, and who, as a punishment, was turned into a witch. *Graph.*, No. 2305, 200 *b*.

12. In some connexions we often find *for* as a variant of *as*. In (9) this function *for*, indeed, forms a kind of adverbial adjunct with



the following nominal, but its semantic value is weak enough, so that it hardly serves any further purpose than that of linking the predicate with the nominal. On the strength of its function being in this application similar to that of *as*, it may be called *predicating for*.

a) A dim notion of purpose may be discerned in the *for*-complement in :

Did not I tell it you for a secret? CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 3, (241).  
I don't know anybody I should so much like for a brother. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LIV, 287.

He almost hailed it as a special providence ... that Arthur should have singled out Martin of all fellows for a friend. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 243.  
Willy had given his fiancée such a beautiful ring for a Christmas present! MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 49. (Compare the example with *to give* in 16.)

He will be sold for a slave. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 68*b*.

He reached the brook over which a narrow plank was laid to serve for a bridge. Robin Hood (GÜNTHER, *Handb.*) (Compare the examples *s. v. serve* in 9; also the following, in which *instead of* takes the place of *for*: They have a kind of hard flints, which, by grinding against other stones, they form into instruments that serve instead of wedges, axes, and hammers. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, 208*a*.)

b) Some faint notion of causality is perceptible in certain combinations with *for* denoting contempt, or occasionally praise (Ch. LIX, 84, *e*), as in :

i. If thou lovest the prize, thou shalt be ... scourged out of the lists ... for a wordy and insolent braggart. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XIII, 135. (Compare: The Provost of the lists shall expel thee from the presence as a faint-hearted craven ib., Ch. XIII, 135. In both examples the underlying notion is: *because thou art regarded as ...*)

When I refuse any danger or suffering by which the general good may be promoted, then brand me for a coward. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, I, Ch. XII, 135.  
Curse you for a smooth-faced scoundrel! THACK., *Sam. Tilm.*, Ch. XII, 156.  
And to Oxford he shall go this autumn, or else to Exeter gaol, for a strong rogue and a masterless man. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. II, 4*a*.

He cursed himself for a fool. HAM GIBBS, *Compl. Oxf. Man*, Ch. I, 6.  
George anathematized Mrs. G. for a lazy old woman. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XI, 130.

The Matron laughingly scolded him for the coolest new boy in the house. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 86.

ii. When he was only a boy, the sailors' wives and daughters in the street would call after him for a pretty lad. WALT., BESANT, *The World went very well then*, I, 67.

Note. A similar notion of causality can also be traced in the combinations illustrated by the following examples, in which *for* stands before a participle or adjective:

I oft have wish'd I'd gone to India with him, | Though you, desponding, gave him o'er for lost. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity* I, 1. (i.e. because you thought him lost.)

We gave you up for dead. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. X, 89. (Compare *to give*, and *to give out* in 16.)

c) But it is difficult to find any notion, whether final or causal, in the *for*-combinations in:

i. After some consideration, it was decided that he had left the gentleman above for dead. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XI, 49 b.

They were waylaid and beaten, and left by the roadside almost for dead. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XV, 163.

They left him for dead on the ground. HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy, Ch. X, 4, 260.

ii. What d'ye think of me for a friend? WYCH., Plain Deal., I, 1.

He asked me what I thought of that for a tooth. DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 45 a.

What do you think of that for a kite? *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 101 b.

iii. What is he for a fool that betroths himself to unquietness? SHAK., Much ado, I, 3, 50. (This construction is now obsolete.)

iv. I fancy I hear you sing in mournful numbers, "Would I had a puny shed, | — In which to hide my punish head, | — That I might not be punished | — For every little pun I shed." How's that for high? JUDY. (This phrase and its variants *How's that for steep?* *How's that for right* (Dutch Hoe vin je 'em?) are distinctly colloquial or vulgar. See STOF., Stud., A, § 24 f)

### PRED. ADN. ADJ. DENOTING AN ATTRIBUTE IN WHICH AN OBJECT IS OBSERVED OR DISCOVERED.

13. As has already been observed in 2, the predicative adnominal adjunct after verbs of perceiving or discovering mostly appears in the form of an undeveloped clause with an infinitive or a participle, present or past. It may, however, also be an adjective or noun, as in the following examples:

i. I hope to see you well. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 34.

He could not be got to say that he had seen him dead. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. V, 77.

She felt it (sc. the baby) sound and whole from head to foot. TEN., Princ., VI, 194. (Compare *to feel* in 16.)

Not thrice your branching limes have blown | Since I beheld young Laurence dead. *id.*, Lady Clara Vere de Vere, IV.

Paul sat on brambles until he had seen the house definitely rid of his son's presence. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. I, 6.

ii. One more compassionate than the rest, seeing us strangers, advised me to go into an alehouse and dry myself. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIII, 80.

He had set his heart on seeing his son a clergyman. MAC., Addison, (738 a).

Note. As will be shown in Ch. XVIII, 32, the verbs of discovering may be construed with an accusative + infinitive containing the copula to *be*; thus in:

When the figure got nearer, I perceived it to be a woman. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. III, 62.

This *to be* can be readily supplied after *to find* in:

The pressure on my nose was extremely painful, though I never thought of that till afterwards, when I found it very tender. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 31 b.

He had returned to Birmingham to find his lady-love flown. RID HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXII, 238. (Compare *to find* in 16.)

Thus also after *to learn* in the following examples, in which this verb expresses a notion which comes very near to that indicated by *to find*:

I might have learn'd their choice unwise, | Who rate the dower above the soul, | And Lucy's diamonds o'er her eyes. SCOTT, *Brid. of Triermain*, I, vi.  
A happy lover who has come | To look on her that loves him well, | Who 'lights and rings the gateway bell, | And learns her gone and far from home. TEN., *In Mem.*, VIII, 1.

This construction with *to learn* appears to be unusual, none being registered in the *O. E. D.*

14. The verb *to have* sometimes expresses a notion which bears some resemblance to that conveyed by *to see* or some other verb denoting a perceiving. Thus if we substitute *to find* or *to see* for *to have* in *We often had the traveller or stranger visit us to taste our gooseberry wine* (GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I), the meaning of the sentence is not considerably changed. Conversely *to see* could be replaced by *to have* in *Francis in the moment of triumph saw himself confronted by a new rival* (GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § 5, 322) without much semantic change being the consequence.

Again *to have* has some peculiar grammatical features in common with the verbs of perceiving; i. e.: 1) like the latter, it has a bare past participle instead of a passive infinitive in the construction accusative + infinitive. Compare *I had the tree cut down* with *I saw the tree cut down*; 2) the construction with *to be* in the accusative + infinitive is equally unusual with *to have* as it is with the verbs of perceiving; 3) the construction with a predicative adnominal adjunct is comparatively as rare after *to have* as it is after the verbs of perceiving. These facts seem to afford sufficient justification for discussing *to have* in this place so far as it admits of the last-mentioned construction. The other features of the verb mentioned above will be done full justice to in Ch. XVIII.

a) Only a few instances have come to hand of *to have* as used in the above meaning taking a predicative adnominal adjunct in the shape of a nominal.

I would have you a great lady. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, 57.  
I've been an idiot, but would have thee wiser. G. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, I, 1.

They would have me gentleman. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 108.

I cannot have my son ill. MRS CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. XXXII, 350.

b) Also so far as other meanings are concerned, only occasional instances have turned up.

i. I'd have you to know that I'm a man what has a brother a constable. LYTON, *Eug. Aram*, Ch. II, 13 (approximately: *to possess*.)

ii. Little I dreamed when I had him in my arms a baby that [etc] MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXI, 253. (approximately: *to hold*.)

iii. I had them a dead bargain, or I should not have bought them. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (304). (approximately: *to get*).

c) Alternative constructions with *as* or *for* appear to be more common than that without either of these words; e. g.:

i. We had as an enemy a past master in the tactics of mounted infantry. *Times*.

ii. He was an old smoke-dried Highlander, wearing a venerable grey beard, and having for his sole garment a tartan frock. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXIV, 76 b. You will have Miss Sharp one day for your relation. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 141.

He is a lucky beggar to have you for his teacher EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XIX, 170.

You've got a fool for your friend MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVIII, 220.

Note. The use of *to* for this *for* is now obsolete or archaic; thus in:

I know that we shall have him well to friend. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, I, 143.

Will thou have this man to thy wedded husband? *Book of Com. Pray.*

He hath a pretty young man to his son. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, I, (152).

The counsellor had two sweet girls to his daughters. GOLDS. (W. ASHE KING, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. III, 42).

The man who gets her will have a jewel to a wife. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 117.

Miss Smith had 70 l. per annum to her fortune id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 87.

Thus also *to* is now archaic in such sentences as:

i. What I can redress, | As I shall find the time to friend, I will. SHAK., *Mac b.*, IV, 3, 10.

ii. Charles had taken to wife Catharine, Princess of Portugal MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. II, 187.

iii. Give me thy daughter Guinevere to wife. TEN., *Coming of Arth.*, 97. Creon, King of Thebes, gave him (sc. Heracles), in gratitude, his daughter Megara to wife. NETTLESHIP & SANDYS, *Dict. of Clas. Ant.*, s.v. *Heracles*, 280 b.

## PRED. ADN. ADJ. DENOTING AN ATTRIBUTE IN WHICH AN OBJECT IS JUDGED, DECLARED, SHOWN, OR KNOWN TO BE.

15. The verbs referred to under 1, c) form a large rather heterogeneous group, grammatically characterized by the fact that the accusative with infinitive with which the majority may be currently construed, mostly contains the copula *to be* (Ch. XVIII, 34). The copula varies in many cases with predicating *as*, and in a few with the preposition *for*, both of which are of little or no semantic significance (9, 12). Want of space precludes the possibility of commenting at large on the different shades of meaning that may be involved in the use of these connectives with the respective verbs.

From the above it follows that we may have a fourfold variety of construction, viz.: 1) one without a connective, 2) one with predicating *as*, 3) one with the preposition *for*, 4) one with the copula *to be*. We may, indeed, add a fifth, i.e. one with a subordinate state-



ment, which in many cases is the usual one in ordinary English. This last construction will meet with ample discussion in another place (Ch. XVIII, 31, c; 34, Obs. I), and is, therefore, taken for granted or passed over in silence.

For various reasons, which it would be useless to explore, the current constructions are, at least so far as the available evidence goes, practically limited to three, two, or even one, with the majority of the verbs. With only a few it has been found possible to pronounce on the relative frequency of the constructions in actual use. The O. E. D. is not only deficient in mentioning or illustrating the possible constructions of a given verb, but often fails to give any hint about their relative frequency where more than one is mentioned. Other sources of information about this thoroughly practical subject are unknown to the present writer.

As to the use of *as* it should be observed that it is found not only before nouns, but also before adjectives (9); also that it is used to the exclusion of the other connectives when the predicative nominal precedes the object, as in:

Lord Methuen describes as dastardly the conduct of the enemy in firing on ambulance wagons. *Times*.

Neither *as*, nor *for* can take the place of *to be* when the time-sphere of the primary predication differs from that of the secondary or complementary, as in:

One might guess Mr. George to have been a trooper once upon a time. *Dick., Bleak House*, Ch. XXI, 181.

This shows Miss Burney to have been aware that she was a native of a free country. *MAC., Mad. d'Arblay*, (722 a).

Nor can either *as* or *for* replace *to be* in back-position, as in:

The Scotch Lowlands were not, in the eleventh century, the poor and barbarous country which some have reported them to be. *KINGSLEY, Herew.*, Ch. II, 20 a.

These dire results, as Lord Rosebery would make them out to be, have practically come to pass already. *Times*.

16. Although all the verbs to be mentioned below denote some (14—1 activity of the intellectual faculties, there is a great variety in their additional meanings or emotional colourings. This applies especially to the verbs that indicate the forming or the uttering of a judgment. In the following exposition an attempt is made at subdividing all the verbs that will be illustrated below into groups according to these connotations, differences of diction, although for that matter, often distinct enough, being left out of consideration.

A practically unmodified judging is conveyed by *to account*, *to apprehend*, *to believe*, *to conceive*, *to consider*, *to count*, *to deem*, *to doom*, *to esteem*, *to fancy*, *to feel*, *to find*, *to hold*, *to imagine*, *to judge*, *to look upon*, *to make*, *to presume*, *to reckon*, *to regard*, *to take*, *to take up*, *to think*.

A distinctly modified judging is expressed by *to conclude*, *to conjecture*, *to construe*, *to guess*, *to idealize*, *to rely on*, *to suppose*, *to suspect*.



A declaring but slightly tinged with other notions is indicated by *to certify, to declare, to designate, to determine, to express* (oneself), *to give, to imply, to observe, to profess* (oneself), *to pronounce, to put down, to report, to set down, to state, to write down*.

Verbs expressing a declaring with a variety of connotations may be grouped thus: *to announce; to acknowledge, to recognize; to acknowledge, to admit, to allow, to confess, to grant, to own* (oneself); *to call, to christen, to name; to deny; to describe, to label, designate; to ensure; to guarantee, to vouch, to warrant; to justify; to maintain; to make out, to paint, to represent, to speak; to proclaim; to rank, to rate, to stamp, to vote*.

A separate subdivision is formed by those which describe a declaring prompted by various emotions, chiefly approbation or disapprobation, such as *acclaim, to admire, to blame, to boast, to brand, to censure, to curse, to denounce, to deride, to extol, to greet, to hail, to hold up, to like, to prize, to stigmatize, to value, to vaunt, to worship*.

A notion of showing variously tinged is expressed by *to approve, to argue, to attest, to bespeak, to betoken, to betray, denote, to disclose, to feign* (oneself), *to indicate, to manifest, to prove, to reveal, to show*. The verb *to know* has hardly any synonym, beyond, to a certain extent, *to remember*, which at least indicates a kindred activity of the mental faculties.

In the following illustrations the construction without any connective, and those with different connectives (*as, for, to be*) are presented apart. When no example is given of any of the possible alternative constructions, it must not, of course, in all cases be concluded that they are non-existent or rare. Compare also Ch. LX, 84; and MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 28

*to acclaim*: i. The twelve most high Gods judging with one mouth | Acclaimed her victress. SWINBURNE, *Erechtheus*, 462 (O. E. D., 2, b).

ii. He was acclaimed as the master whom all surviving literary art was only qualified to serve as page-boy. SIDNEY LEE. (Times).

Sir Wilfrid Laurier, whom Mr. Carnegie acclaimed last month as one of the five greatest men in the world. Rev. of Rev., No. 197, 456 a.

Note. No alternative construction with *for* or *to be*.

*to account*: i. Those of the higher rank with some malignity accounted him already a degraded brother. SCOTT, *Guy Man.*, Ch. II.

The other man was generally accounted bad. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II. Ch. III, 120.

ii. (These pictures) are to be accounted as masterly performances. T. LEMAN HARE, *Masterpieces in Colour*, Millais, 37.

Note. The constructions with *as* and *for* are pronounced obsolete by the O. E. D., 6, b.

*acknowledge*: i\* They acknowledged their aims impracticable. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 266.

\*\* The nation everywhere acknowledged him master. MOTLEY, *Rise*, V. Ch. IV, 718 b.

She knew me, and acknowledged me her heir. TEN., *Queen Mary*, V. 5, (651 a).

ii. By the English exiles he was joyfully welcomed and unanimously acknowledged as their head. But there was another class of emigrants who were not disposed to recognize his supremacy. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 106.

He would sooner die than acknowledge her as his wife. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XII, 94.

Stephen was recognized as king, and in turn acknowledged Henry as his heir. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § VII, 104.

iii. Do you acknowledge her for your lawful wife? TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XL, 694.

iv. \* The king promised to acknowledge himself to be the author of the enterprise. ROBERTSON, *Hist. of Scotl.*, II, 11 (MätzN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 28).

\*\* We praise thee, O God: we acknowledge thee to be the Lord. *Book of Com. Pray.*

Note. In the meaning of *to admit* the verb has not been found construed with either *as* or *for*; in that of *to recognize* it admits of the fourfold construction, *for* being, presumably, least in favour. In the following example *to acknowledge* admits of either interpretation: That acknowledges this country subject to the king of England. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, II, Ch. I, 164.

*to admire*: Louisa had become what many men would admire as a fine, lively girl Mrs. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, V, 337. (Compare the example with *to admire* in 6, a.)

Note. There appear to be no alternative constructions.

*to admit*: This is a task he admits to be difficult. *Times*.

Note. No instances of any alternative construction have come to hand.

*to allow*: They'll not allow our friend ... to be handsome, SHER., *School*, II, 2, (249). (O. E. D., 6).

Note. No instances of any alternative construction have come to hand.

*to announce*: i. This little work was announced as in preparation some years ago. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Pref.

ii. Gold buckles in his shoes, etc. ... announced him to be a domestic of trust and importance. SCOTT, *Highl. Wid.*, I, 118 (O. E. D., 4).

Note. The above appear to be the only current constructions.

*to apprehend*: i. They apprehended it a great courtesy done unto them. FULLER, *Holy War*, IV, ix, 193 (O. E. D., 9).

ii. He asked the surgeon if he apprehended him to be in any danger. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. XIII, 32.

Note. No instance of the construction with *as* has turned up. The construction with *for* is, of course, impossible.

*to approve*: 'Tis an old lesson; | Time approves it true. BYRON, *Child of Har.*, II, xxxv.

He was only twenty-five years old when he approved himself ripe for military command. MAC., *Clive*, (540 a).

Note. The construction with either *as* or *for* appears to be impossible. Of that with *to be*, which seems natural enough, no instance has come to hand.

*to argue*: i. Your conversation with Mr. Vizard argues you a gentleman. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, II, 2, (63).

Not to know me argues yourselves unknown. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, IV, 830.

ii. Which seem to argue it to be ancient. MAUNDRELL, *Journ. Jerus.*, App. 8 (O. E. D., 3).

Note. The construction with *to be* seems to be the usual one. That with either *as* or *for* appears to be impossible.

*to assume*: Miss Pole had assumed it to be the most desirable arrangement. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XVI, 305.

He was by no means such a fool as Jim had hastily assumed him to be. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim.*, Ch. VIII, 56.

Note. Apparently the only construction in current use.

*to attest*: He attested this to be the same which had been taken from him. FIELD., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. XV, 39.

Note. Apparently the only construction in current use.

*to avow*: i. No soul shall dare | Avow himself imperial where we've the rule. COLERIDGE, Death of Wal., III, 7, (635).

ii. He frankly avowed himself to be Wilfrid of Ivanhoe. SCOTT, Ivanhoe Ch. XXVIII, 281.

Note. There are, apparently, no other constructions.

*to believe*: i. He believed the man insane. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 397.

ii. Every one believed the man to be innocent. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 68*a*.

Note. The other constructions are impossible.

*to bespeak*: The deep inscription bespoke it a memorial of the most powerful age of Rome. LYTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. I, 74.

Her rich dress and profusion of ornament bespoke her a most desirable addition to a limited income. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 14.

Note. The construction with *to be* may be a possible variant, but no instance has come to hand. The other constructions are impossible.

*to betoken*: The man glanced at the parish clerk, whose air of consciousness and importance plainly betokened him to be the person referred to. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 6*b*.

Note. The construction without *to be* may be as common, but no instance has been found. The other constructions are impossible.

*to betray*: His features and bearing betrayed him, in a moment, to be a Frenchman. MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 214.

Note. The construction without *to be* may be a possible variant. But no instance has come to hand. The other constructions are impossible.

*to blame*: They began to blame that as rigour and severity which they before called justice. FIELD., Tom Jones, II, Ch. VI, 26*a*.

Note. Apparently the only possible construction.

*to boast*: i. The daylight ... streamed in a mellow and purple hue over all that the art of that day boasted most precious, or regal luxury held most dear. LYTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 154.

ii. He boasted himself to be possessed of a bull of matchless merit. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. X, 44*a*.

Note. There are, presumably, no alternative constructions with *as* or *for*.

*to brand*: i. He hates me too; | So brands me in the stare of Christendom | A heretic. TEN., Queen Mary, V, 2, (640*b*).

ii. He deserved to be branded as the pest of society. SHER., School, IV, 3, (413).

This act he brands as "dissimulation" on the part of Peter in Antioch. HUXL., Lect. & Ess., 105*b*.

Note. The construction with *as* appears to be the ordinary one. For the construction with *for* see 12, *b*.

*to call*: She called the man a liar. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 397.

Owen Fitzgerald had called him a prig. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. V, 69. He's called Madman, you know. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 234.

They call me names. MRS. WARD, Tres., Ch. I, 6*a*.

They call M. de Witt any vile name that occurs to them. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. VII, 234.

Note. The above appears to be the only possible construction.

*to censure*: These introductory chapters have been a good deal censured as tedious and unnecessary. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. V, 35*a*, N.

Note. Apparently the only possible construction.

*to certify*: i. At the end of three weeks' drenching with sleeping-draughts (she) was certified insane. *Westm. Gaz.*, 25/11, 1922, 18*b*.

ii. The magistrate confidently reversed the previous medical opinion, and certified the man as not insane. *Law Times* (O. E. D., 2).

iii. The proper officers, comparing every article with its voucher, certified them to be right. *FRANKLIN, Autobiog.* I, (222) (O. E. D. 2).

Note. The constructions appear to be used indifferently.

*to christen*: The boy was ... christened George, in honour of his then reigning majesty. *BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. I, 6.

They christened him Beauty, me they nicknamed the Beast. *RID. HAG.*, *She*, Ch. II, 20.

Note. Apparently the only possible construction.

*to conceive*: i. From their appearance, a pagan might have conceived them a detachment of the celebrated Belides, just come from their baleing penance. *SCOTT, Wav.*, Ch. XV, 55*a*. (*baleing* may be a spelling variant of *bailing*.)

ii. He that hopes to be conceived as a wit in female assemblies. *JOHNSON, Rambler*, No. 141 (O. E. D., II, *b*).

America stands to-day where Dickens conceived it as standing in his time. *Manch. Guard.*, 28 10, 1927, 321*c*.

iii. I could almost conceive you to be some good angel. *FIELD., Tom Jones*, IX, Ch. II, 167*a*.

Note. The construction with *to be* seems to be the ordinary one.

*to conclude*: i. Every one concluded him guilty. *FIELD., Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XV, 38.

He must either conclude me a fool or half mad. *FANNY BURNEY, Evelina*, XI, 23.

I conclude the King a beast. *TEN., Queen Mary*, IV, 3, (634*a*.)

ii. He concluded her to be a witch. *FIELD., Jos. Andr.*, IV, Ch. XIV, 247.

Note. The construction with *to be* is, apparently, less common than that without *to be*. The other constructions are non-existent.

*to confess*: i. Also this Wyatt did confess the Princess Cognisant thereof and party thereunto. *TEN., Queen Mary*, II, 4, (603*b*).

ii. A great scholar all confess you to be already. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 11.

Our brother confesses this to be a tyranny. *KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!*, Ch. IV, 29*a*.

Note. The construction with *to be* is, presumably, the ordinary one; that with either *as* or *for* is non-existent.

*to conjecture*: My friend conjectures this to have been the founder of that sect of laughing philosophers since called Merry Andrews. *FIELD., Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. II, 3.

Note. No instance of any alternative construction has come to hand.

*to consider*: i. I consider him wise, a philosopher. *WEBST., Dict.*

That he would consider himself beaten after one defeat, Mrs. Crawley never allowed herself to suppose. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

Gall considered it a gratuitous interference. *Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col*, Ch. V, 77.

ii. It is certain, however, that in storms in these highlands strange things have been seen, which are considered as connected with the old story of the ship *WASH. Rev.*, *The Storm-Ship* (*STOR. HANDL.* I, 88).

Fungay considered the whole establishment, master and boys, as his natural enemies. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. VI, 436.

iii. The old-established hotel was considered to be the best provided in England. *JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales*, I, F, 105.

**Note.** The above constructions appear to be used indifferently, the one with *to be* being, apparently, the least frequent. Observe also that in: He was obliged to consider himself as being at feud with the family. *TROL.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. V, 66.

I fear that our lover will henceforth be considered by such a one (sc. a strong-minded reader) as being but a weak, wishy-washy man. *id.*, *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. VII, 69.

*to construe.* i. Any thing that can be construed an obscure or scurrilous insinuation. Lett. from *Mist's Wkly. Jnl.*, II, 55 (O. E. D., 4, c).

ii. He construed the tidings as favourable to himself. *TROL.*, *Small House*, II, Ch. XLVI, 185.

**Note.** Besides the two above constructions, which appear to be equally common, there may be one with *to be*, of which, however, no instance has come to hand.

*to count:* i. Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise. *Prov.* Mother, tho' ye count me still the child [etc.]. *TEN.*, *Gar. & Lyn.*, 34.

ii. (He set himself) openly in opposition to the opinion of practically all the men who were then counted as the leaders of his profession. *T. LEMAN HARE*, *Masterpieces in Colour*, *Millais*, 21.

The world counted her as a heretic. *EDNA LYALL*, *We Two*, I, 77.

iii. My maids count me for a stranger. *Bible*, *Job*, XIX, 15.

And be he dead, I count you for a fool. *TEN.*, *Ger. & En.*, 548.

What you do now will be counted to you for great treasure. *TROL.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. VI, 77.

**Note.** The three constructions appear to be used indifferently, that with *for* is, however, archaic. Compare *account*. The construction with *to be* seems to be non-existent.

*to curse:* He cursed himself as a madman. *HICHENS*, *Gard. of Al.*, II, vi, Ch. XXVIII, 276.

**Note.** There seem to be no alternative constructions. See, however, 12, *b*. *to declare:* i. He declared himself a member of the Church of Rome. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, II, 115 (O. E. D., 5, *b*).

He declares himself not guilty. *TROL.*, *Mac d.*, Ch. XXXIX, 533.

ii. I thought there would be time to declare the little weaver's son for the true heir. *THACK.*, *Esm.*, III, Ch. II, 318.

iii. Every one declared him to be innocent. *ONIONS*, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68 *a*. She was without that enthusiasm for the great and good, which . . . I should have declared to be the highest element of character. *G. ELIOT*, *The Lifted Veil*, Ch. I, (403).

**Note.** The construction with *to be* seems to be the most usual. That with *for* is, no doubt, uncommon. The construction with *as* appears to be non-existent.

*to deem:* i. Harold deemed it time to repress these inroads. *MISS YONGE*, *Cameos*, XXXII, 277 (O. E. D., 6, *b*).

ii. The Norwegian deemed Mr. Horner as a man beneath contempt. *EDNA LYALL*, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXIV, 217.

**Note.** The construction with *as* strikes one as unusual. According to the O. E. D. that with *for* was formerly common. No doubt the construction with *to be* is also possible, but no instance has come to hand.

*to denote:* His dress denoted him an inmate of the work-house. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 53.

**Note.** The above construction, no doubt, varies with that with *to be*, but of the latter no instance is available at the time of writing.

*to denounce:* i. Better so than have his own conscience denouncing him sneak. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. III, 16.



ii. A safer plan was to denounce him as a public enemy. DIXON, Windsor, II, vii, 76 (O. E. D., 4).

The charge of one shilling per load on timber could scarcely be denounced as protective. Times.

Note. The construction with *as* appears to be the usual one. Of that with either *for* or *to be* no documentary evidence has turned up, although both may be in occasional use.

*to deny*: She constantly denied his conspiracy to be at all known to her. HUME, Hist. of England, (MätzN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 28).

Note. This is the only instance in which the verb has been found in this construction. Of the alternative constructions it may be said that they are non-existent or rare.

*to describe*: i. How many murderers, felons, and robbers, described as poor, harmless, innocent, foolish boys, brought into trouble by a love of frolic! TROL., Mac d., Ch. XXIX, 532.

ii. Glanville describes a fine to be an accommodation of a ... suit. CRUISE, Digest<sup>2</sup>, V, 71 (O. E. D., 2, b).

Note. The constructions illustrated above may be of equal frequency. The two others are, no doubt, very rare, if they exist at all.

*to deride*: He listened to words which the outer world would have called bosh — and have derided as girlish. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XXXIV, 582.

Note. Presumably the only construction in current use.

*to designate*: i. I wonder at his designating Milton our greatest poet. M. ARNOLD, Guide Eng. Lit., Mixed Es., 194 (O. E. D., 3, b).

ii. These transactions even now would hardly be designated as corrupt. MAC., War. Hist., (638 b).

The Queen would designate him as the heir to her throne. THACK., Esm., III, Ch. XI, 424.

Note. The construction with *as* appears to be the usual one. The two constructions not illustrated are not, apparently, un-English.

*to determine*: (The picture) had been found in a lumber-room ... by the squire, who at once determined it to be the armour of the family hero. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXIII, 221.

Note. The above construction is labelled as obsolete by the O. E. D. (10). The probability is that the others are non-existent.

*to disclose*: It is difficult for a man to believe in the advantage of a truth which will disclose him to have been a liar. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. III, (543).

Note. The construction without *to be* may be a possible variant. The others are impossible.

*to doom*: What! is the Douglas fall'n so far, | His daughter's hand is doom'd the spoil | Of such dishonoured broil! SCOTT, Lady, II, xxxiv, 26

Note. The above construction is, no doubt, an unusual one, the above being the only instance that has come to hand. The other constructions, too, if they exist at all, are undoubtedly rare.

*to ensure*: I'll ensure her sound. FARQUHAR, Const. Couple, I, 1, (52).

Note. This function of the verb is not registered in the O. E. D., and is, no doubt, very rare. The construction with either *as* or *to be* for that used in the above example, would appear to be possible, but neither has been found illustrated.

*to esteem*: i. Prince John hath ... set forward in all haste towards York with the nobles, knights, and churchmen of his party, after collecting such sums as they could wring ... from those who are esteemed the wealthy of the land. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XXVIII, 278.

We esteemed him a beast of the worst kind. RUDY. KIPL., Plain Tales, His Wedded Wife, 157.

ii. I shall esteem it as a favour, my lord, if Colonel Esmond will give away the bride. THACK., *Esm.*, III, Ch. V, 353.

Note. No suitable example with *to be* has been found, but this construction is, probably, common enough. This and that with *as* are, presumably, less common than that without a connecting word. According to the O. E. D. (5), the construction with *for* is rare.

*to express oneself*: He expressed himself as unable to understand why the Safeguarding of Industries Act had aroused so much feeling. *Westm. Gaz.*, 30.12, 1922, 3a

Note. As seems to be indispensable in this combination, which, for the rest appears to be unusual. Any alternative construction, if existing at all, would be equally uncommon. Observe, however, that *as* is often followed by *being*, as in: Hitherto she had expressed herself as being very angry with her daughter's lover. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. IV, 57.

The countess expressed herself as very grateful for young Fitzgerald's care. *ib.*, Ch. II, 14,

*to extol*: This is he whom Sir Peter extols as a man of the most benevolent way of thinking. SHER., *School*, V, 1, (421).

This turned the discourse on the Baron, whom Fergus highly extolled as a gentleman and soldier. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXVIII, 74a.

Note. There appear to be no alternative constructions.

*to fancy*: i. He fancies her ... the only woman of truth and sincerity in the world. WYCH., *Plain Deal*, I, (392).

When I saw Brian, whom I fancied dead, standing before me safe and well, I felt ready to drop myself. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XV, 107.

ii. We must fancy our American traveller to be a handsome young fellow. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 7.

Note. The above constructions appear to be used indifferently. *As* or *for* are not, apparently, used in this combination.

*to feel*: i. Deronda felt it time to take his leave. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 301.

Once that celebration would have been felt a distinct revival of ancient enmities. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 91, 459b.

ii. The proposed legislation was felt to be inexpedient. O. E. D., 15, b.

Note. The construction with *to be* may be more common than that without. There are no alternative constructions. Compare *to feel* in 13.

*to feign oneself*: i. Satan made David feign himself mad. DEFOE, *Hist. Devil*, I, XI, 164 (O. E. D., 9).

ii. And yet (he) lay still and feigned himself as dead. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 587.

iii. Feign thyself to be a mourner. Bible, Sam. B, XIV, 2

Note. In this combination, which appears to be an unusual one, the three constructions illustrated above appear to be used indifferently.

*to find*: Miss Mackenzie was quite puzzled to say which of these masterpieces she preferred; she found them alike so pretty. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 273.

And yet of such fastidious taste, | He never found the best too good. LONGF., *Tales Ways. Inn*, *Prol.*

Does he find her handsome? LYTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. VII, 78a.

Forgive my grief for one removed, | Thy creature, whom I found so fair. TEN., *In Mem.*, *Prol.*, X.

Do you find her pretty? DOR. GERARD, *Exotic Martha*, Ch. XII, 158.

The very passages that he had once found beautiful ... became charged with the vilest imaginations. TEMPLE THURST., *City*, II, Ch. I, 204.

How do you find the church? SHAW, *Widowers' Houses*, I, (15).

Note. The use of *to find* as a verb of judging may be unusual, but in face

of the numerous examples presented above, in which the verb can hardly be apprehended otherwise, it cannot be pronounced un-English. Compare *to find* in 13, which, as a verb of discovering, is often construed with an accusative + infinitive with *to be*, a construction that is, apparently, never found after *to find* as a verb of judging. In the following example the verb is best understood as a verb of declaring: Do you think ... they'll not find it murder? TROL., Macd., Ch. XXIV, 437.

*to give*: i. A later message from the Carpathia, which rescued the saved, gives the number of survivors as 705. Times, No. 1842, 301 *b*.

The number of those who perished was given as nearly 900. Manch. Guard., 28 10, 1927, 321 *d*.

ii. We gave ourselves for lost men, and prepared for death. BACON, New Atlantis, (269).

The parents after a long search for him, gave him for drowned. ADDISON, Spect., No. 130.

ii. I don't wonder at people giving him to me for a lover. SHER., School, I, 1, (365).

Note. In this meaning of *to state* or *to mention*, the verb appears to admit of no other construction than that with *as* or *for*. Compare *to give up* (or *over*), illustrated in 12, *b*.

*to give out*: i. Some gave themselves out as "poor scholars". M. J. GUEST, Lect. Hist. Eng., xxxvii, 374. (O. E. D., s. v. *give out*, *a*).

ii. He gives himself out for an infallible judge on all these points. HAZL., On the Ignorance of the Learned (Sel. Eng. Es., 233).

Scandal had not been so far wrong as usual in giving her out for an arrant miser. ASC. R. HOPE, Old Pot.

iii. He had given himself out to be such. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXV, 262. A strange personage lately landed from England, has been giving himself out to be the son of the unfortunate Louis XVI. id., Hist. of the next French Revol., Ch. I, (134).

Note. The three constructions illustrated above appear to be used indifferently.

*to grant*: i. The gods grant them true! SHAK., Cor. II, I, 156,

I grant him brave. SCOTT, Lady II, xiv.

I grant him true to friendly band. *ib*.

ii. I understand your present feelings against the existing state of things, which I grant to be a little hard in your case. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXIX, 337.

Note. The construction with *to be* is most probably the usual one in prose; that without a connecting word seems to be chiefly used in verse.

*to greet*: "Tall sunflower, | Where got you your disk of yellow?" | "From the golden sun that laughed as I leapt, | To greet him king without fellow!" ANONYMOUS, Flower Fancies, II (Rainbow, II, 22).

Note. Of this combination, no doubt a highly unusual one, no further instance has come to hand. It is not registered in the O. E. D.

*to guess*: i. For by thy state | And presence I might guess thee chief of those | After the King, who eat in Arthur's halls. TEN., Lanc. & El., 182.

One would have guessed him some ten years younger. Mrs. WARD, Tres., I, Ch. I, 1 *a*.

ii. You would have guessed him at once for a German. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 129.

iii. She gave a kind welcome to the stranger, whom she guessed at once to be the cousin Frank they had been expecting for some days. Story of Rob Roy, 4.

Note. According to the O. E. D. (5, *c*) the construction without a connecting word is now obsolete. The two others illustrated above may be equally common. As is not, apparently, used in this combination.

*to hail*: i. Beside thee I was hailed the Republican Lord of Rome. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 167.

Oh, great Eliza! oh, world-famous crew! | Which shall I hail more blest, your queen or you? KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 15*b*.

ii. Pen got a prodigious reputation in the University and was hailed as a sort of Crichton. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 189.

iii. These and all men hail him for their king. TEN., *Com. of Arth*, 385. Note. The use of either *as* or *for* in this combination is, apparently, unusual, no instances being given by the O. E. D. In the meaning of *to proclaim*, Dutch *uitroepen* *tot*, the verb is, to all appearance, never used with a connective; thus in: They hailed him king. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 18*a*.

*to hold*: i. My good mother holds me still a child. TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 15. (Further instances in: *id.*, *Locksley Hall*, 49; *Locksley Hall*, Sixty years after, 22; *In Mem.*, V, 1.)

ii. He was held by the Oxbridge tradesmen as quite a young buck. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

He held the lives of other men as cheap as his own. MAC., *Hist.*, XII, III, 185 (O. E. D., 12, *d*).

And if along with these should come | The man I held as half-divine. TEN., *In Mem.*; XIV, III.

I hold myself as engaged to Lady Clara. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XXI, 371.

iii. O do not hold it for a crime | In the bold hero of my rhyme, | For Stoic look | And meet rebuke, | He lack'd the heart or time. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trier*., III, xxxii.

And he to whom she told her sins, or what | Her all but utter whiteness held for sin, . . . ! Spake often with her of the Holy Grail. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 84.

iv. He held water to be the beginning of things. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, 29. Every man instinctively holds every woman to be a true woman until she reveals herself as the contrary. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXI.

Note. The constructions with *as*, *for* and *to be* are described as archaic by the O. E. D. (12, *d*). Altogether the use of *to hold* in this combination is unusual in ordinary English.

*to hold up*: The other ladies in the house were holding him up as a pattern to their husbands. W. W. JACOBS, *Light Freights* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, II, 7). Note. This is, most probably, the only current construction.

*to idealize*: The Colonist finds that the Mother Country is not all he idealized her to be. *Lit. World*.

Note. Apparently an unusual construction, of which there are no variants.

*to imagine*: i. My Jenkinson was an old college acquaintance, whom I was idiot enough to imagine a respectable man. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 9. If a plover whistled, I imagined it a man. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXVIII, 396.

ii. I had not imagined such inquiries to be necessary on your side. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 314.

Note. The two constructions are, apparently, of equal frequency. *As* or *for* are, to all appearance, never used in this combination.

*to imply*: The Archbishop implied this to be the Church's doctrine. *Times*. Note. Most probably the only possible construction in this combination.

*to indicate*: This indicated him to be the host of the tavern. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. I, 39*a*.

Note. There is, apparently, no alternative construction.

*to judge*: i. You judged me a fitting comrade. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XL, 259.

- ii. I judged him to be a bachelor. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XXI, 203.  
 I judged her to be of submissive temper. G. ELIOT, *Broth.*, Jac., II, (517).  
 I judged him to be about sixty years of age. GISSING, *Christopherson*.  
 Note. The construction with *to be* would probably be preferred in most cases. As or *for* cannot be used in this combination.  
*to justify*: I ... could ... justify you traitors. SHAK., *Temp.*, V, I, 138.  
 Note. This construction, no doubt a rare one, has no alternatives.  
*to know*: i. \* Had I before known this young man his son, | I should have given him tears unto entreaties. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, 2, 249.  
 I know you proud to bear your name. TEN., *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, II.  
 I know thee brave. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræus*, XXXIII.  
 \*\* I know him a prince in a thousand. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. IX, 111.  
 ii. \* The timbers ... are not what is technically known as blue. *Co-operative News* (O.E.D., 5, d).  
 I know that as a fact. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXII, 551.  
 \*\* At the kitchen door he met a little girl whom he knew well as belonging to The Cleeve. *id.*, *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. VIII, 101.  
 iii. \* I did not know him for a scoundrel. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XXVII, 324.  
 You know me for a gentleman. DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. I, 5a.  
 I know thee for my king. TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 129.  
 All men knew him for a brave and well-tried knight. JER., *Idle Thoughts*, XIV, 240.  
 He knew himself for a fool. GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. X, 72.  
 He knew these men for conspirators against the Government. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. VI, 232.  
 She knew him for a man of naturally deep reserve. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XX, 115.  
 \*\* Men and citizens, know this man for the most bitter of the Nazarenes. LYTON, *Pomp.*, IV, Ch. VI, 106 b. (Observe that *know* is an imperative.)  
 Outside the baker's they had smelt the goose and known it for their own. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 56.  
 I knew it for the bay of Pagasai. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, II, 111.  
 St. Croix knew her for the Marquise de Pomponne. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. X, 112.  
 iv. Everyone knew him to be innocent. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68 a.  
 I know him to be honest. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 194.  
 I know it to be all true. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. III, 30.  
 Note. All the four constructions are in common use. It is worth observing that in all of them, that with *to be*, perhaps, excepted, *to know*, primarily a durative verb, may have an ingressive aspect imparted to it by the context. Thus in the above examples marked with \*\*. Compare also Ch. LI, 10, where a good many instances of this change of aspect are given.  
 With *to know as a fact* as illustrated above compare the strictly synonymous *to know for a fact*, *to know for a certainty* and *to know certainly*, the last combination being, apparently, unusual. Illustration is found in:  
 i. We know for a fact that those districts in which the Danes had settled are precisely those in which English grammar became simplified most rapidly. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 32.  
 ii. But know ye for certain, that if ye put me to death, ye shall surely bring innocent blood upon yourselves. Bible, *Jeremiah*, XXVI, 15.  
 iii. Know for a certainty that the Lord your God will no more drive out any of these nations from before you. Bible, *Joshua*, XXIII, 13.



iv. What employment he followed when he left school we cannot certainly know. W. RALEIGH, *Shakespeare*, Ch. II, 41.

(Compare also: All that can certainly be said at the moment is that the Bratianu régime is widely and not undeservedly unpopular. *Manch. Guard.* 6/6, 1922, 441 *b*).

*to label*: i. We are labelled "Foggy London", as Paris is styled "Gay Paris". *Westm. Gaz.*, 6/6, 1925, 160 *a*.

Hardy has been labelled a "pessimist". *ib.*, 163 *a*.

ii. He despatches the bad to Tartarus, labelled either as curable or incurable. JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, II, 293 (O. E. D.).

It would be most unjust to label Byron ... as a rhetorician only. M. ARNOLD in *Macm. Mag.*, XLIII, 376 (O. E. D.).

Note. Besides the above constructions that with *to be* may occur as an occasional variant, but no instances have come to hand.

*to like*: I told him how I liked Sunday the best day of the week. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. I, (185).

Note. Apparently an unusual construction: no instances are registered in the O. E. D. Nor has any variant been found.

*to look upon*: i. I looked upon this as a master-piece, both for argument and style. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (243).

The French lawyer ... at last assured the poor broken-hearted clergyman that he might look upon it as proved. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. V, 77.

Millais himself looked upon it as the best thing he had done. T. LEMAN HARE, *Masterpieces in Colour*, Millais, 41.

ii. This Morning ... I set up an Equipage which I look upon to be the gayest in the Town. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 191 (O. E. D., 24, *c*).

Note. Only the construction with *as* appears to be in current use.

*to maintain*: Of all the delicacies in the whole *mundus edibilis* I will maintain it (*sc.* roast pig) to be the most delicate. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, Roast Pig, (257).

Thales, in searching for the origin of things, was led ... to maintain Water to be that origin. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, 36.

Note. There appear to be no alternative constructions.

*to make*: Some argue that they are Picts, and some make them Northmen. TAIT'S *Mag.*, XVI, 279/2 (O. E. D., 51, *a*).

Note. Of this, most probably, a rare construction, there are, naturally, no variants.

*to make out*: i. You want to make her out a wicked woman. She is not. OSC. WILDE, *Lady Wind. Fan*, II, (105).

Don't make me out a tyrant. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, II, 108.

ii. He pointed to the washing-stand, which I had made out to be like Mrs. Gumidge. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23 *b*.

You are making her out to be an ogress. TROL., *Phin. Finn*, I, Ch. II, 33.

Note. The above constructions appear to be used indifferently. Neither *as nor for* seem to be used in this combination.

*to manifest*: i. It is thus in the Life of a Man of Sense, a short Life is sufficient to manifest himself a Man of Honour and Virtue. STEELE, *Spect.*, No. 153 (O. E. D., 1, *c*).

ii. I can manifest it to be otherwise. Sir T. BROWNE, *Rel. Med.*, I, § 22 (O. E. D., 1, *c*).

Note. There appear to be no variants of the above constructions, which, for that matter, are uncommon enough.

*to name*: i. The province was named Normandy from the Northmen. KEIGHTLEY, *Hist. Eng.*, I, 52 (O. E. D., 1, *c*).

ii. She nodded continually to her friends and named them for this great person or that. PEMBERTON, *Doct. Xavier*, Ch. VI, 28 *b*.

**Note.** The construction with *for* is a curious one, and, undoubtedly, very rare. There are, naturally, no further variants. In the meaning of *to appoint*, the verb is, apparently, regularly used without a connective; thus in: Three days after her accession the Earl was named Captain-General of the English forces, at home and abroad. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, § IX, 708.

*to observe*: Bacon observes the pike to be the longest-lived of any fresh-water fish. IS. WALTON.

**Note.** This construction of *to observe* in the meaning of *to declare* is now obsolete. See ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68, *a*.

*to own*: i. I must own myself no advocate for hats. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVI, 55.

Now were it not a sin, I could find in my heart to thank Heaven, that thou hast been surprised at last into owning thyself a woman. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XIX, 208

ii. He owned himself to be the Earl of Argyle. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 129.

**Note.** The construction without *to be* strikes one as unusual. *As* or *for* is, apparently, never used in this combination.

*to paint*: You are not at all the poor creature you paint yourself. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 9*a*.

Her strong imagination began to paint her hovering like a sea-bird upon white wings. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. VII, 67.

**Note.** There are, apparently, no alternative constructions.

*to praise*: When the pheasants came, which the Major praised as the very finest birds he ever saw, her Ladyship said they came from Logwood. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 176.

**Note.** The combination does not, apparently, admit of any alternative construction.

*to presume*: i. At any time beyond the first seven years they might fairly presume him dead. E. H. EAST, *Reports*, VI, 32 (O. E. D., 4).

ii. The man presumed the stone to be ancient. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XI, 99. I should not object to the drawbacks ... presuming them to be of some use. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. IV, 67.

**Note.** The construction with *to be* is, no doubt, the usual one. There are, naturally, no variants with either *as* or *for*.

*to prize*: They ... prize that which should be as higher than what is. HARDY, *Tess*, *Pref.*, 8.

**Note.** Of this, no doubt, unusual construction, the only one that has come to hand, there are probably no variants.

*to proclaim*: i. Her resemblance to the fair youth proclaimed her at once his mother. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 17*a*.

You must proclaim Elizabeth your heir TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, 2, (638 *b*). (This) to my ready-witted acquaintances proclaimed me a military man. LEVER, *Jack Hinton*, Ch. II, 13.

ii. Winifred's story proclaimed her aunt to be a worthy member of a flunkey society like this of ours. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. III, 58.

**Note.** The construction without *to be* occurs far more frequently than that with *to be*. *As* is not, apparently, used in this combination, any more than *for*. Compare 19.

*to profess oneself*: i. He professes himself ready for his trial. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XXIX, 533.

ii. Pope professed himself to be the pupil of Dryden. BAIN, *Eng. Comp.*, 45. **Note.** The two constructions appear to be used indifferently. Naturally *as* or *for* cannot be used in this combination.

*to pronounce*: i. The apples were pronounced excellent. The child was pronounced out of danger. O. E. D., 3.

Pen was pronounced a tremendous fellow. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 188.  
 ii. The gentlemen pronounced him to be a fine figure of a man. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 14.

Note. The construction without *to be* appears to be the usual one. There is no occasion for the use of either *as* or *for*.

*to prove*: i. The time had come when he was to prove himself a man of genius. MAC., Addison, (754*a*).

Your language proves you still the child. TEN., *Princ.*, II, 44.

ii. Few have proved themselves to be worthy of the honour. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68*a*.

The two constructions are, most probably, used indifferently. There is no construction with *as* or *for*.

*put down*: i. Clara put this down as a pretext for gaining time. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. V.

Those who advocate it (sc. spelling reform) are at once put down as cranks. RIPPMMANN, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 18.

ii. I should have put you down for eighteen or nineteen at least. MARRYAT, *Childr. New Forest*, Ch. XVIII.

People used to put him down for a County Councillor or an Archdeacon at the very least. JEROME, *Lease of the Cross Keys*, 20*b*.

Note. In most connexions the two constructions are, most probably, used indifferently. Alternative constructions there are, apparently, none.

*to rank*: i. In ranking theories of physics first in the order of knowledge. JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, III, 525 (O. E. D., 3).

ii. The present writer deliberately ranks him as the greatest and most delectable poet of the eighteenth century. SAINTSBURY, *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. I, 13.

Note. In most connexions the two constructions would, most probably, be used indifferently. Compare also the construction with the intransitive verb, as in: A principle ... | That with a world, not often over-nice, | Ranks as a virtue, and is yet a vice. COWPER, *Tirocinium*, 465

*to rate*: i. Consider well: my memory good is rated. B. TAYLOR, *Faust*, I, iv, 69 (O. E. D., 4).

ii. In due time you will pass your examination, and be rated as a midshipman. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. VIII, 293.

It cannot be but some gross error lies | In this report, this answer of a king, | Whom all men rate as kind and hospitable. TEN., *Princ.*, I, 70.

Note. The construction with *as* is, no doubt, the most usual. There is, presumably, no alternative construction with either *for* or *to be*.

*to reckon*: i. She was reckoned one of the handsomest women of her day. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 197*b*.

William II of Germany is reckoned the most active sovereign in Europe. *Graph.*

ii. Quite a fourth of the soil is reckoned as unproductive. YEATS, *Nat. Hist. Comm.*, 108 (O. E. D., 5, *b*).

iii. I reckon for nothing the researches of a Coyer. GIBBON, *Misc. Wks.*, IV, 354 (O. E. D., 5, *b*).

iv. Here ... we reckon the women to be among the prettiest in France. L. RITCHIE, *Wand. by Loire*, 117 (O. E. D., 5, *b*).

Note. The constructions with *as*, *for*, and *to be* appear to be unusual.

*to recognize*: i. \* He was recognized king after his uncle's death.

\*\* Stephen was recognized as king, and in turn acknowledged Henry as his heir. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § VII, 104

He (Canning) recognized the revolted colonies of Spain in South America and Mexico as independent states. *ib.*, *Epilogue*, 838.

Even strangers did not hesitate to recognize him as a budding genius.

T. LEMAN HARE, *Masterpieces in Colour*, Millais, 17.

ii. He beheld a Highlander ... whom, from the weapon which he shouldered, he recognized for his friend with the battle-axe. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVIII, 62*a*. The dogs, too, not one of which he recognized for an old acquaintance, barked at him as he passed. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 43.

Note. In the meaning of *to acknowledge* (by special notice, approval or sanction), Dutch *erkennen*, the construction with *and* that without *as* may be used indifferently; in the meaning of *to know again*, Dutch *herkennen*, the construction with *for* appears to be the ordinary one.

*to regard*: i. It is in this situation that those epics are found, which have been generally regarded the standards of poetry. SCOTT, *Brid. of Triermain*, Pref.

ii. It had not occurred to her that he could regard her daughter as other than a child. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. IV, 58.

I regarded my uncle as a terrible tyrant. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 65, 65.

(This) he regarded as in every way a sound example of his powers. T. LEMAN HARE, *Masterpieces in Colour*, Millais, 48.

Note. The construction with *as* appears to be more usual than that without *as*. Compare O. E. D., 6; and *The King's English*, 324. Instances of the construction with *to be*, appear to be rare, none having come to hand. Compare also: i. She regarded herself in the light of a murderess. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. IV, 39.

ii. She had still regarded Clara as being in all things a child. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. IV, 50.

*to rely on*: When Father John came in, they all crowded round him, to learn what really might be relied on as the truth of the case. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XXI, 388.

Note. The verb in this meaning, *to consider confidently*, probably admits of no other construction than that with *as*.

*to remember*: i. I remember him a little boy. DISR. LOTH., I, Ch. I, 7. ii. I remember her as a slim young woman. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 29.

I remember them (sc. the drawings) as hanging up framed and glazed in the study of the Rectory. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. I, 2.

Note. Neither construction is registered in the O. E. D., although both appear to be quite usual. In most connexions they may be used indifferently.

*to report*: Every one reported him to be innocent. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68*a*.

Note. Alternative constructions seem to be non-existent. No instances have turned up.

*to represent*: i. A tradition has represented his wife as an arrogant and imperious woman. MAC., *Addison*, (771*b*).

ii. He represented Rizio's credit with the Queen to be the chief and only obstacle to his success in that demand. ROBERTSON, *Hist. of Scotl.*, II, 10 (*MätzN.*, *Eng. Gram.*, III, 28).

Note. The construction with *as* appears to be the usual one. Observe also that in: The father has been represented as not being exactly prepossessing. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. VI, 89.

The commanders of the opposing armies are represented as leaving their work. *Lit. World*.

*to reveal*: i. In due course Fulvia was revealed to the world a great singer. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Panther's Cub*, I, Ch. V, 63.

ii. An exhaustive research into his life and works have revealed him as one of the greatest masters in his own sphere of any time. TURNER, *Masterpieces in Colour*, Millet, 12.

Every man instinctively holds every woman to be a true woman until she reveals herself as the contrary. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXI.

**Note.** Neither construction is registered in the O. E. D. They may, however be quite common, as is probably also that with *to be*, although no instances are available at the time of writing.

*to set down*: i. You had best set him down a Jesuit. SCOTT, *Aunt Marg. Mirror*, ii (O. E. D., 143, h (a)).

ii. It is very possible that Mr. Bacon would have set the two gentlemen down as impostors. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 75.

Those who cling to the truth and support the right cause, are set down as mad. DICK, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLVIII, 185 a.

tii. He would set her down at once for an impertinent... busybody. F. BARRETT, *Under Str. Mask*, I, iv, 68 (O. E. D., 143, h (a)).

**Note.** The construction without a connecting word appears to be unusual. *As* and *for* may be used indifferently, especially before a noun. There is, apparently, no construction with *to be*. Observe the varied practice in: I set the one down as an old soldier; the other for a gentleman accustomed to move in good society. A. HOPE, *Pris. of Zenda*, Ch. III, 16.

*to show*: i. Her sister joined her with a cheerful look, which showed her better satisfied with their visitors than Elizabeth. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIV, 332

The gaslight showed her the possessor of bright brown eyes. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, I, 232.

ii. Few have showed themselves to be worthy of the honour. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68 a.

These works showed him to be a man of taste, sense and learning. MAC., *Addison*, (754 a).

These notes show him to have been, in his own domain, an accomplished scholar. *ib.*, (735 a).

**Note.** The above constructions appear to be used indifferently. There is no construction with *as*, any more than one with *for*. The object, perhaps together with *to be*, is absent in: The faded palm-branch in his hand | Show'd pilgrim from the Holy Land. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, xxvii, 18

*to speak*: i. You must think yourself more charming than I speak you. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (237).

Report speaks him dead. HOR. WALP., *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. III, 107.

Report speaks you a bonny monk. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. V, 47.

A sudden noise below seemed to speak the whole house in confusion. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVIII, 159.

For a poor plough-lad to volunteer not to do so (sc. to drag in his accomplice) speaks him anything but a coward. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 44.

ii. His acquaintance with the English language... plainly spoke him to be an Englishman. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XXII, 250.

**Note.** According to the O. E. D. (29) the application of *to speak* in this function is now archaic. The construction with *to be* occurs less frequently than that without *to be*. *True* is an adverb in: To speak him true, | Ye know right well, how meek soe'er he seem, | No keemer hunter after glory breathes. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 153.

*to stamp*: There was that about his style and appearance which stamped him as a man of *ton*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 313.

**Note.** There appear to be no alternative constructions. The O. E. D., (8 a) registers none.

*to state*: We stated the law of the progress of science to be this. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, 29.

He had stated something to be impossible. TYNDALL (in SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. II, 65 b).



Note. The O. E. D., (8, *b*) gives no instance of any of the alternative constructions: they seem to be non-existent.

*to stigmatize*: How many offences had it (sc. that piece of red moreen) heard stigmatized by his lordship as the most heinous that had ever been brought before him in his judicial capacity! TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. XXIX, 532.

We stigmatize the indians, also, as cowardly and treacherous. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVII, 284.

Note. The verb probably admits of the same alternative construction as *to brand*, of which it is a strict synonym.

*to suppose*: i. You would have me believe that my noble lord is jealous? Suppose it true, I know a cure for jealousy. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. VI, 72.

She could not be supposed altogether ignorant of her title to such homage. *id.*, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXVIII, 276.

Supposing them sculptors, will not the same rule hold? RUSKIN, *Pol. Econ.* Art. I, § 32 (O. E. D., 7, *c*).

ii. Supposing a certain woman to be one of the fools. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. III, 60.

Note. Both constructions appear to be in current use. Neither *as* nor *for* could be used in this combination.

*to suspect*: i. At thirty man suspects himself a fool; | Knows it at forty, and reforms his plan. YOUNG, *Night Thoughts*, I, 418 (O. E. D. 2, *b*).

ii. Then you, belike, suspect these noblemen | As guilty of Duke Humphrey's timeless death. SHAK., *Henry VI*, B, III, 2, 186.

iii. If I had suspected him for a man, I would have seized him. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, IV, Ch. XIV, 247.

iv. I do suspect this trash | To be a party in this injury. SHAK., *Oth.*, V, I, 85.

Note. All the above constructions are pronounced now rare or obs. by the O. E. D. (2, *b*). That with *to be* seems to be the most common.

*to take*: i. I took her question as a rebuke. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, Ch. II, 17.

There could be no doubt that at the time Lady Mason's testimony was taken as worthy of all credit. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XVIII, 230.

ii. I took all Abednego's tales for gospel. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 85. I suppose you take all old Drum's stories for true. *ib.*

iii. I took him to be one who had been shipwrecked like myself. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68*a*.

I took him to be nearer sixty than fifty. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39. The mother took her absolutely to be a child, when in fact she was a child no longer. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. II, 20.

Note. All these constructions appear to be quite usual. That without any connective is, apparently, non-existent.

*to take up*: (They) seemed to take up themselves as the leaders of the enemy. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XVI, 174.

Note. In the same meaning as *to take*, but rare, perhaps Scotch. See O. E. D., 90, *g*.

*to think*: i. I think her the most confounded little flirt in London. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 32.

People think you a good woman, but you are bad, hard-hearted. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 38.

ii. Few have thought themselves to be worthy of the honour. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68*a*.

Note. According to the O. E. D., mostly without the infinitive. Compare also ELLINGER (*Verm. Beitr.*, 21) who shows that KRÜGER's statement (*Schwierigkeiten*, III, 527) that *to be* is necessary before a noun, is not founded on fact. The constructions with either *as* or *for* are naturally impossible.

*to value*: i. Caligula valued himself a notable dancer. FRANKLIN, *Ess., Works* II, 286 (O. E. D., 3, b).

ii. I value this delicious home-feeling as one of the choicest gifts a parent could bestow. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 196.

Note. The first construction is pronounced obsolete by the O. E. D. (3, b). The second seems to be common enough. Those with *for* or *to be* are naturally impossible.

*to vaunt*: i. Thou vauntest thyself a philosopher? SCOTT, *Black Dwarf*, Ch. XVI (O. E. D. 3, b).

ii. They vaunted him as the Duke's equal in military skill. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XV, 288.

Note. Neither construction appears to be common. The first is pronounced obsolete by the O. E. D. (3, b).

*to vote*: i. Lady Agnes voted the two Messieurs Pendennis most agreeable men. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 176.

ii. The old ways are much decried, and the last invention is voted to be altogether Divine. PATRICK, *Parab. Pilgr.*, XX (O. E. D., 9.)

Note. The above constructions may be equally frequent. Those with *as* or *for* are, probably, non-existent.

*to vouch*: i. I can vouch some of the stories true. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. III, 51.

ii. The girl ... had vouched the man Waugh as having been present. *Times*, 29/1, 1903, 13/4 (O. E. D., 5, c).

Note. Both constructions illustrated above appear to be rare. This is, apparently, also the case with the alternative constructions with *for* or *to be* of which no examples have turned up.

*to warrant*: i. Warrant him quiet, sir; a hinfant in arms might drive him. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 40.

ii. I'll warrant him as dead as a herring. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IV, 21.

Note. Of the above constructions the first may be more usual than the second. There is, probably, a construction with *to be*, but no instance is available at the time of writing.

*to worship*: Behold, for these have sworn | To wage my wars, and worship me their King. TEN., *Com. of Arth.*, 507.

Note. Of this, no doubt, unusual combination no variants have come to hand. It would, however, appear that the construction with *as* and, perhaps, that with *for* would not be felt as solecisms.

*to write down*: I am quite content to be written down an ass. BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. II, 12.

Many people might be inclined to write him down a conservative. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8121, 16 b.

He must be written down one of the finest of all bowlers. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 24, 504 d

Note. No variants of the above construction have come to hand, and they may be rare or non-existent.

## PRED. ADN. ADJ. DENOTING AN ATTRIBUTE INTO WHICH AN OBJECT IS BROUGHT THROUGH AN ACTION.

17. Predicative adnominal adjuncts that are referred to under 1, d) may stand after innumerable verbs, almost any physical action being capable of being used as a means or way to bring about a certain state. Most verbs when followed by a predicative

adjunct of this description preserve their full meaning; thus those in *He dyed the cloth red, He painted the house white, He struck the man dead*. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 397 (Foot-note). For further illustration see 19. Some verbs, however, in certain combinations, become faded in meaning. Thus we can trace a greater or less loss of semantic significance in:

*to bring*, as in: He'll think we brought 'em acquainted. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (235).

*to create*, as in: He was created Duke of Brandon and Baron of Dutton in England. THACK., *Esm.*, III, Ch IV, 347.

King George ... expressed a wish to create his brother-in-law a Royal Highness. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/107, 1927, 330 a.

*to do*, as in: You do me proud. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 107.

Note. A colloquial expression; see the O. E. D. (s.v. *proud*, 10, b) for further illustration. There appear to be no other instances of *to do* with a nominal. The O. E. D. registers none under *do*, 22.

*to dub*, as in: The king dubbed his son a knight. WEBST., *Dict.*

Note. The use of *as* in this combination, as in the following example, seems uncalled-for and rare: Dick ... was pleased to dub Esmond as Ancient Pistol. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. X, 238.

*to lay*, as in: The shock laid my mother prostrate for months.

*to render*, as in: He flattered himself ... that Brady's evidence would render that event certain. TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. XXVIII, 521.

He had a genuine desire to render happy those placed near or under him. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/11, 1927, 330 a.

*to make*, as in: i. He made the man angry. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 397, Footnote

What makes the colonel so out of humour. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, 1, (51).

It was agreed that Hastings should make the lady his wife. MAC., *War. Hist.* (601 b).

Put down passions that make earth Hell! TEN., *Maud.*, I, x, III.

The story makes entirely credible the American chapters in "Martin Chuzzlewit", *Manch. Guard.*, 28/10, 1927, 321 c.

ii. He made him a lord of his bedchamber. THACK., *Esm.*, III, Ch. IV, 346. (= *to appoint*).

Note. For illustration of this application of *to make* see also O. E. D., 48 and 49. It is also worth observing that, instead of a substantive-complement of the verb, we sometimes find a complement with the preposition *into*, as in: This made them into millionaires. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. VIII, 109

*to seal*, as in: Maud's dark father and mine | Had ... | Sealed her mine from her first sweet breath. TEN., *Maud.*, I, XIX, IV.

*to season*, as in: And who in want a hollow friend doth try | Directly seasons him his enemy. SHAK., *Ham l.*, III, 2, 221.

*to set*, as in: I resolved to see Richard when I grew strong, and try to set him right. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXV, 303

John's eyes flashed, but a look from mine seemed to set him right again. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch I, 20.

They set the teeth on edge. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 239

Note. Thus also in such combinations as *to set at defiance*, *to set at liberty*, *to set at naught*, *to set at rest*, etc.

*to take*, as in: He took the man prisoner. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 397. Blanche, with her pretty, artless ways, had taken captive the young keeper's heart. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. IV, 41.

18. Obs. I. It is of some interest to observe that the combinations *to make mad*, *to drive mad* and *to send mad* are used practically indifferently, owing to this very fact that the original meaning of these verbs is hardly thought of. This is shown by:

i. Much learning doth make thee mad. Bible, Acts, XXVI, 24.

ii. The horrid inactivity of the day, joined to the weight that was on his mind, nearly drove him mad. TROL., *Mac d.* Ch. XXIII, 419

iii. It would have killed me, or sent me mad. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XII, Ch. I, 332.

II. Originally intransitive verbs may be made transitive by being furnished with a predicative adjunct; thus those in:

i. He talked himself hoarse. The child screamed itself red in the face.

ii. They laughed the idea down. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XL, 314 a

The boy had almost talked his mother over. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch VII, 80.

19. Some verbs more or less frequently appear with *as*, *for*, or *to be*, connecting the adjunct with the preceding object, or in a passive sentence with the subject. In the majority of cases *as* distinctly suggests such a phrase as *in the capacity of* or *in the way of*; both *for* and *to be* imply a notion of purpose. The following quotations are intended to show which constructions may be used in connexion with the respective verbs. From the absence of examples that would illustrate alternative constructions, it must not, of course, be concluded that such are non-existent, or even uncommon. It is of some interest to the Dutch student to add that in many cases no connective word is used where the Dutch could not dispense with either *als* or *tot*. One or more than one of the above constructions have been found in connexion with:

*to accept*, e. g.: France would not accept her for a bride. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, 2.

Note. The constructions with *as* or *to be* are, no doubt, as common as the above, but no instances have come to hand.

*to adopt*, e. g.: i. Adopt him son or Cousin at the least. POPE, *Hor.* Ep., I, vi, 108 (O. E. D., I.)

ii. A sister of the young fellow who would have adopted you as his son was the person who took charge of you. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XIII, 265.

Note. The construction with *as* is, undoubtedly, the usual one.

*to appoint*, e. g.: i. They appointed him their colonel by unanimous election. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, III, 182

They ... appointed him a Member of Council at Madras. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (600 b).

She was appointed in 1902 teacher of English to the daughter of the Emperor William. *Athen*, No. 4532, 243 a.

ii. The Queen has been pleased to appoint General Sir Hugh Henry Cough to be Keeper of the Jewels in the Tower of London. *Times*.

Note. Except for official announcements, in which *to be* appears to be very common, the construction without any connective is, apparently, the usual one.

*to breed*, e. g.: i. The young man has been bred a scholar. GOLDS., *She stoops*, I, (170).

Dupleix ... had not been bred a soldier. MAC., *Clive*, (509 a).



ii. You, who are bred as a scholar, can say it in elegant language. LONGF., *Mil. Stand*, II.

iii. He was to be bred up for an English priest. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. III, 28.

iv. We were bred to be slaves always. *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 87.

Note. The four constructions may be equally frequent, but *to bring up* is now the more usual word (O. E. D., 10, *b*): It is hoped to bring him up to be a naval officer like his father. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3853, 230 *c*.

*to choose*, e.g.: i. Boy as he was, he was chosen king. GREEN.

ii. In May, 1853, he was unanimously chosen as professor of natural philosophy in the Royal Institution. TYNDALL, *Biogr. Sketch*.

Shelley's rooms (were) generally chosen as the scene of their symposia. SYMONDS, *Shelley*, Ch. II, 26.

It seemed by no means improbable he would be chosen as the new Pope. *Rev. of Rev.*

iii. I do fear, the people | Choose Cæsar for their king. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 79.

The blunder of Lewis in choosing Germany, instead of Holland, for his point of attack was all but atoned for by the brilliant successes with which he opened the war. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch IX, § VIII, 684.

How very poor a creature was he whom he had chosen for his bosom friend! TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LI, 245.

iv. I expect the young gentleman I have chosen to be your husband from town this very day. GOLDS., *She stoops*, I, (169).

Upon a daughter's refusing to marry the . . . man her father had chosen to be her husband, the father was empowered by this law to cause her to be put to death. LAMB., *Tales, Mids.*, 26.

Note. *For*, *as*, or *to be* would appear to be indispensable when the noun in the adjunct is preceded by a possessive pronoun or genitive.

*to elect*; e.g.: i. He had been elected by acclamation a member of several fashionable clubs. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 94.

ii. Mr. Hoare was elected as treasurer of the society. *Il. Lond. News*. Oldham honoured itself by electing Dame Sarah Lees as its Mayor. *Manch. Guard.*, 7/10, 1927, 263 *d*.

iii. They elected for their king Don Ferdinand de Valor. WATSON, *Philip*, II, 159 (O. E. D., 3).

Note. As in the case of *to choose*, any of the link-words *as*, *for*, or *to be* is indispensable when the noun in the adjunct is preceded by a possessive pronoun or genitive.

*to engage*; e.g.: Rebecca was now engaged as governess. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 67.

Note. There may be an alternative construction with *to be*, but no instance has come to hand.

*to enroll*; e.g.: i. He proceeded to enroll him a member of the Great Protestant Association of England. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXVIII, 147 *b*. They are enabled to enroll themselves members of the University without being members of a college. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XVI, 291.

ii. They were enrolled as guards to the Caliph. NEWMAN, *Hist. Sk.*, I, 1, ii. 77 (O. E. D., 3).

Note. The above constructions are, presumably, equally frequent. There are, apparently, no alternative constructions with *for* or *to be*.

*to enter*; e.g.: i. He was entered a member of the Upper Temple. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 301.

ii. He therefore entered himself as a clerk to a solicitor. E. PEACOCK, *Ralf Skirl.*, I, 6 (O. E. D., 23, *c*).



Note. These two constructions seem to be used indifferently. Apparently there are no others.

*to install*; e.g.: Guy, a little gentleman from his cradle, installed himself her admiring knight attendant everywhere. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XXIII, 232.

ii. Pat was now regularly installed as the attorney's man on the property. TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. XXVIII, 522.

Having got rid of his namesake ... Hasdrubal installed himself as commander-in-chief. BOSW. SMITH, *Carthage*, 397.

Note. The above constructions appear to be of equal currency. There are no alternative constructions with *as* or *for*.

*to nominate*; e.g.: i. To honour him the more, (he) nominated him the General of his armie against the Persians. KNOLLES, *Hist. Turkes*, 976 (O. E. D. 4).

ii. Shrewsbury was nominated as Lord Treasurer by the Council. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, § IX, 720.

iii. We want to nominate you for Mayor. GALSW., *A Family Man*, I, 1, (18).

iv. The list of persons nominated by the Spanish Government to be members of the new National Assembly ... was published on Tuesday. *Manch. Guard.*, 7/10, 1927, 261 e.

Note. The constructions with *to be*, or without a connective are, presumably, more common than those with either *as* or *for*.

*to proclaim*; e.g.: i. (They) loudly and universally proclaimed Cicero the first Consul. MIDDLETON, *Cicero*, I, II, 145 (O. E. D., 2, a).

ii. He spoke confidently of having been proclaimed as Prince of Wales. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. XI, 424.

Note. The construction without *as* is, probably, the ordinary one. That with *for* or *to be* seems to be rare or non-existent. Compare 16.

*to promote*; e.g.: i. He was promoted Lieutenant on 1 March 1893. *Morning Leader*.

ii. He was promoted to be a lieutenant. *Graph*.

Note. The above constructions may be equally common. There are, apparently, no constructions with either *as* or *for*.

*to propose*; e.g.: I am going to propose you for Provost to the people. BROWNING, *Soul's Trag.*, II.

I propose the head boy ... for chief. *Routledge's Ev. Boy's Ann.*, 1871, Feb., 107 (O. E. D., 3, c).

Note. The construction with *as* is, most probably, a not uncommon alternative, but no suitable example has come to hand.

*to raise*; e.g.: (He) was now raised to be a high chief. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIII, 346.

But her he had raised to be his equal. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 3.

Note. There are, naturally, no alternative constructions.

*to set up*; e.g.: i. They set up as their leader a pious man. YORK POWELL, *Life of Ch. Gordon*.

ii. When a person was set up to be Sheriff that would not serve. BURNETT, *Own Time*, I, 480. O. E. D. 154, j, (c).

Note. Possibly there is a third construction with *for*. Compare the constructions with the intransitive *to set up* in 20, Obs. III.

b) The following verbs have not been found construed with *as*, *for*, or *to be*, which, of course, is not meant to imply that such constructions are non-existent, or even unfrequent.

*to baptize*; e.g.: He had been baptized a Catholic. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XIX, 91.

*to anoint*; e.g.: The Lord anointed thee king over Israel. Bible, Sam., A, XV, 17.

*to constitute*; e.g.: The Norman recruits had been formed into a company of the Line, of which Gavrolles was constituted captain. BUCH., That Wint. Night, Ch. III, 26.

It is a little difficult to understand the position of those who constituted themselves the champions of that officer. Times.

In such a contingency she (sc. Germany) virtually constitutes America the eventual arbiter of the war. The Nation, XX, No. 14, 485 a.

*to crown*; e.g.: For Arthur, long before they crown'd him King, | ... Had found a glen, gray boulder, and black tarn. TEN., Lanc. & El., 34.

*to naturalize*; e.g.: He was naturalized a Dutchman. II. Lond. News, No. 3896, 1055 b.

*to salute*; e.g.: (He) so gained the soldiers' hearts, | That, in a few days, he was saluted king. DRYDEN, Mar. à la Mode, I, 1, (246).

*to train (up)*; e.g.: They train the lads up eavesdroppers and favour-curriers. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol, Ch. II, 13 b.

*to woo*; e.g.: So sweet it seems with thee to walk, | And once again to woo thee mine. TEN., Mil. Daught., IV.

20. Obs. I. To the above we may add such verbs as do not indicate a bringing into a state but the maintaining of a state; thus:

*to hold*, as in: Hold the reins tight. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 397.

*to keep*, as in: I wish I were | Some mighty poetess, I would shame you then, | That love to keep us children! TEN., Princ., Prol., 133.

I shall catch it for keeping you talking. G. MOORE, Esth. Wat., Ch. I, 7.

II. So far as the bringing into a state is distinctly felt as a change of state, either of the prepositions *to* or *into* is placed in the adjunct. Such preposition-groups are not, however, to be regarded as (predicative) adnominal adjuncts, but rather as adverbial adjuncts or prepositional objects.

i. Turning the night to day, and day to night. THOMSON, Castle of Indolence, I, LXII.

The summer's dawn reflected hue | To purple changed Loch Katrine's blue. SCOTT, Lady, III, II. (Compare: He changed London, from being as unhealthy as Naples, or even Calcutta, to be one of the safest places of abode in the world. JOHN DENNIS, Good Words for 1884).

He beat me then, as if he would have beaten me to death. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 29 b.

The very telling will turn my hair to grey. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 11 a.

ii. Philip had enlarged the original modest building into a villa of some pretensions. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 33.

It will often get her into trouble. EDNA LYALL, We Two, I, 46.

Foker put his own carriage into requisition. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. II, 24.

Their aims were never put into practice ib., II, Ch. XXIV, 266.

It will, perhaps, be asked why *at* or *in*, instead of *to* or *into* are used in such combinations as *to set at liberty*, *to set at rest*, *to set at ease*, *to set in a fury*, *to put in a frenzy*, etc., although they distinctly imply a change of state. The reason is, no doubt, that the preposition-groups used in these expressions are felt as units, *at liberty*, *at rest*, *at ease*, *in a fury*, *in a frenzy* being practically equivalent to, respectively, *free*, *quiet* (or *still*), *easy*, *furiously*, *frenzied*. It is only natural that, as we say *to set free*, we also say *to set at liberty*; and *to set in a fury* is in harmony with *to make furious*.

In passing it may be observed that the use of *in* in *to put in prison*, *to fall in love*, and a great many similar combinations, may be due to the same consideration, assisted by the fact that in older English *in* was freely used in connexions where Present-day English requires *into*. Such an action, so lost two years before, would have set all England in a fury. THACK., *Esm.*, III, Ch. V, 357.

Don't put me in a frenzy. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

In some combinations, however, the preposition varies in accordance with the nature of the verb; thus we find *to bring* or *drive to bay*, and *to turn to bay* by the side of *to be* or *stand at bay*, and *to have* or *hold at bay*; *to put to the hazard* by the side of *to be at hazard*; *to put to a trot* by the side of *to ride at a trot*.

i. He came back, determined to put everything to the hazard. MAC., *Clive*, (518 a).

ii. Their worldly interests were at hazard. TRENCH, *Mirac.*, XXI, 334 (O. E. D., 5, b).

i. He put his horse to a brisk trot. *Story of Old Mortality*.

ii. He went away at a trot into the woods. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. V, 49.

The language has both *to set at work* and *to set to work*. In the former *work* is a verbal noun, in the latter, the more usual combination, *work* is an infinitive.

Five hundred carpenters and engineers were immediately set at work to prepare the greatest engine they had. SWIFT, *Gul.*, I, Ch. I, (117 b).

III. It may be argued with some justice that an adjunct of place standing in connexion with a transitive verb may be regarded as a predicative adnominal adjunct, in like manner as such an adjunct standing with a copula may be apprehended as a nominal part of the predicate (Ch. I, 4, b). Compare *He put the book on the table* with *The book is on the table*.

IV. In this connexion mention may also be made of some primarily transitive verbs that have become intransitive through absorbing a reflexive pronoun (Ch. XLVIII, 8); thus:

*to enlist*, as in: The Bengalee scarcely ever enlists as a soldier. MAC., *Clive*, (512 a).

*to pass*, as in: i. He spoke English sufficiently well to think that he could pass as an Englishman. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, ix, Ch. II, 78. (Compare: The son of an innkeeper passed himself on the yeomanry of Sussex as their beloved Monmouth. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 197.)

ii. Why does young master pass only for ensign? SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1.

*to set up*, as in: i. He set up as an Army coach. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, E, 219.

Fenella Stanley seems in her later life to have set up as a positive seeress. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 34.

ii. She from her great age sets up for an authority among her companions. DEIGHTON, *Note to Shak.*, *Mids.*, II, I, 51.

I don't set up for a Joseph. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 454.

What better could I expect when I set up for a critic! *id.*, *My Novel*, V Ch. I, 291.

iii. I don't set up to be a lady-killer. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. Ch. XIII, 131. But what are we to say of a man who sets up to be a guide to the people

on new ground, having never troubled to examine the reports of those who had been over the ground long before him. *Spectator*.

*Note.* In the following example the omission of the reflexive pronoun causes the verb to assume a passive meaning (Ch. XLVIII, 10, *b*).

He graduated Master of Arts with First Class Honours in mental philosophy. *Athen.*, No. 4481, 254 *b*.

## PRED. ADN. ADJ. DENOTING AN ATTRIBUTE IN WHICH AN OBJECT IS WISHED TO BE.

### 21. In connexion with a verb of wishing the predicative adnominal adjunct may be:

*a*) an adjective, as in: It was my wife you wanted dead just now. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

That work was one of the two or three works which we wished longer. *MAC.*, *Pilg. Prog.* (134 *a*).

*b*) a preposition-group that has the value of an adjective, as in: Why do you wish her off the hooks? *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 238.

She wished the voyage at an end. *MARIE CORELLI*, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXXIX, 239.

*c*) an adverb or a preposition-group denoting a place, as in: He often wished himself away. *MAR. CRAWF.*, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 10.

She wished herself well out of the room. *DOR. GER.*, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. VIII.

I began to wish myself well out of the affair. *E. W. HORNUNG*, *No Hero*, Ch. VII.

*Note especially:* They heartily wish one another at the devil. *SWIFT*, *Tale of a Tub*, § XI, (89 *b*).

He wished the converted Jews at Jericho. *THACK.*, *New c.*, I, Ch. II, 18.

## CHAPTER VII.

### KINDS OF SENTENCES.

1. According to the relation between what is expressed by the subject and the predication, sentences may be divided into:  
a) declarative sentences, i. e. those by means of which we make a statement; e. g.: *John is a clever boy*; b) interrogative sentences, i. e. those by means of which we express our desire for enlightenment; e. g.: *Is John a clever boy? Who is a clever boy? What did he say? Where and when was he born?* c) imperative sentences, i. e. those by means of which we express a command (or request), or an exhortation; e. g.: *Be quiet! Take more pains!*

2. Some varieties of declarative sentences deserve special mention:  
a) exclamatory sentences, i. e. those by means of which we give utterance to intellectual or psychical excitement; e. g.: *How bright the moon shines to-night! How well he rides! What a dreadful deed he has committed!* (Ch. VIII, 20).

Exclamatory sentences often have the same word-order as interrogative sentences. In this case they may also be called rhetorical or oratorical questions (3, d). They often contain the negative *not* without being negative in meaning.

i. When I am in the army, won't I hate the French? THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 360. (practically equivalent to: ... I will hate the French implacably.)

Wouldn't we have dancing upstairs, eh, Miss Louey? TROL., Macd., Ch. XV, 262.

ii. What an inestimable favour has not the young man slighted! What a chance of promotion had he not thrown away! THACK., Virg., Ch. LXI, 629. (practically equivalent to: The young man has slighted an inestimable favour. He has thrown away an excellent chance of promotion.)

How many times had she not sat there? GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XV, 133. How many inventions, popularly attributed to Americans, have not proceeded from English brains? Times, Lit. Sup., 29/4, 1926, 318 a.

Note a) This rhetorical *not* may, naturally, also be met with in corresponding subordinate questions; e. g.:

Goodness knows where that mayn't lead! GALSW., Freeland's, VI, 41.

β) This use of *not* is not, apparently, so common as that of the corres-



ponding niet in Dutch. Thus the Dutch equivalents of the following sentences would probably have niet, or might, at least, have it:

How often ... have I scampered up this avenue on returning home on school-vacations! How often have I played under these trees when a boy! WASH. IRV., *Sketch Bk.*, XXI, 195.

Oh, what an easy, quiet mind ... must that man have — how devoid of care and fear must he be, to be able to sit there motionless all the livelong day, and not feel it dreary, long, endless, insupportable, as he did! TROL., *Mac d.*, Ch. XXII, 420.

;) But *not* is not meaningless in such a sentence as *What will a man not do when frantic with love?* (THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. X, 240), which is equivalent to *What things are there* (or *There are no things*) *that a man will not do when frantic with love*. Similarly the use of *not* is natural enough in:

What pleasures ... do they not deserve to possess! GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. IX, (285).

To what a fortuitous occurrence do we not owe every pleasure and convenience of our lives! *ib.*, Ch. XXXI, (466).

What great man has not been called upon to face evil fortune? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 259.

What have they not written about? JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, B, 23.

The absence of *not* is hardly justifiable in:

God! what would I forfeit to have the days of my childhood restored! DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 38 (i. e. There is nothing that I would not forfeit to have the days of my childhood restored.)

b) optative sentences, i. e. such as express a hope or a wish; e. g.: *God save the Queen! Long live the King!*

Note a) Optative sentences have the predicate in the subjunctive, but now only in certain set expressions, like the above examples. In the majority of cases the modal auxiliary *may*, itself a subjunctive, is joined to the infinitive of the main verb; thus in:

May every blessing wait on my Beverley! SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.

β) In idle wishes the predicate is placed in the preterite or pluperfect conditional; thus in:

Ah! were she a little less giddy than she is! DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XVIII, 157 b. O, had he lived! TEN., *The Brook*, 9.

The above form of idle wishes is now confined to the higher literary style. For the way in which they are expressed in ordinary language see Ch. XLIX, 10 and 18.

c) hortative sentences, i. e. such as express an exhortation, an advice, an appeal, or a command addressed: 1) to the *you* included in *we*, as in:

Praise we the Virgin all divine, | Who hath rescued thee from thy distress! COL., *Christ.*, I, 139.

Part we in friendship from your land! SCOTT, *Marm.*, VI, XIII.

2) to the person(s) spoken to, but only dimly thought of by the speaker, the subject being another word than either *you* or *we*; thus in:

So be it! Be it so! Suffice it to say! Be it known! Be it understood!

Come, fill each man his glass! CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 1, (206).

Praise be where praise is due! THACK, *Den. Du v.*, Ch. VII, (269).

Ah! thanks be to heaven, though the hands tremble a little now, they write the words still! *ib.*, Ch. VIII, (289).

3) to (a) person(s) other than the person spoken to, as in:

The literary works that have fascinated mankind. abound in strokes of invention: witness Homer, Shakespeare, etc. BAIN, *Rhet.*, 63.

Note α) Hortative sentences have the predicate in the subjunctive, or place the imperative *let* before the infinitive of the verb which conveys the main meaning of the predicate. Except for certain set phrases, such as *So be it!* etc., *Be it known!*, etc. (given above), the latter practice is the ordinary one.

β) Hortative and optative sentences cannot always be strictly distinguished. Some sentences may be included among either, and, accordingly, admit of being paraphrased with either *may* or *let*. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 506.

Perish the baubles! GOLDS., *She stoops*, II.

I am here, with a pretty clear conscience, heaven be praised. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. VIII (296).

For further discussion of optative and hortative sentences see Ch. XLIX, 6—12.

3. a) Interrogative sentences are of two kinds: 1) such as open with a finite verb; e.g.: *Is the moon full to-night? Has he bought apples or pears?*; 2) such as open with an interrogative word (whether pronoun or adverb); e.g.: *Who is he? What is his name? How many men were injured? When did he live? Where was he born?*

Note α) Adverbial adjuncts, indeed, are not seldom found preceding either the finite verb or the interrogative word, but they are then, in a manner, detached from the rest of the sentence; thus in:

Meantime, what had become of poor Ann? DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch II, 33. By the way, would it bore you to tell me where you got the other one (sc. goose) from? CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *The Blue Carbuncle*. Now, where did you get them from? *ib.*

β) Grammarians have not, so far, come to an agreement as to suitable names by which the two kinds of interrogative sentences can designated. SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 503) distinguishes them as general and special questions; KRUISINGA (*Handb.*, § 2213) as disjunctive and pronominal questions. In PAUL PRINZ,<sup>3</sup> § 94, footnote the following names, proposed by different linguists, are mentioned: Bestätigungsfragen and Verdeutlichungsfragen, Bestätigungsfragen and Bestimmungsfragen, Satzfragen and Wortfragen. JESPERSEN (*in Philos. of Gram.*, 303) mentions the following pairs: *yes* or *no* (or categorical) questions and pronominal questions, sentence-questions and word-questions, totality questions and detail (or partial) questions, entscheidungsfragen and ergänzungs-(or tatsachen)fragen, bestätigungsfragen and

bestimmungsfragen. He himself uses the terms *nexus-questions* and *x-questions*, which suitable as they may be, will, it may be feared, be a long time in being generally adopted.

b) Interrogative sentences of the first kind are mostly general, i. e. they inquire whether the relation between subject and predicate is affirmative or negative. They are accordingly answered by either *yes* or *no*, or a word of like import, often followed by a shortened sentence. Thus the possible answers to the questions mentioned under a, 1) would be *Yes* (*it is*). *Yes* (*he has*). *No* (*it is not*). *No* (*he has not*). *Of course* (*it is*). *Certainly* (*he has*)

Interrogative sentences of the second kind are *special*, i. e. they inquire about a special person, thing, quality, action, or relation. They are not answered by *yes* or *no*, but by some word descriptive of the person, thing, quality, action, or relation that is inquired about. Thus *Who is he?* might be answered by *Our doctor*; the answer to *Where does he live?* might be *In the country*.

Also alternative questions, i. e. such as contain elements connected by the strong alternative conjunction *or*, though opening with a finite verb, are special questions. Indeed, the number of possible answers to them is limited to the words or word-groups connected by *or*, that is, in the majority of cases, to two.

But alternative questions with weak *or*, e. g. *Is he an Oxford or Cambridge man?* are general. Such are also alternate questions with strong *or* of the following type: *Are you ready, or are you not?* uttered with a falling tone.

c) "General interrogative sentences are uttered with a rising tone, instead of the falling tone which characterizes not only declarative and exclamatory sentences, but also special interrogative sentences. When a special interrogative sentence is uttered with a rising tone, it implies that the speaker wishes for the repetition of an answer; thus *What is his name?* (with a rising tone) means *Tell me his name again.*"

Alternative questions with strong *or*, such as *Is he an Oxford or a Cambridge man?* "are uttered with a falling tone, being, like the other class of special questions, equivalent to a command = *I know he is one or the other; tell me which he is.*" But alternative questions with weak *or*, such as *Is he an Oxford or Cambridge man?* "are uttered with a rising tone." SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 503.

d) Interrogative sentences of either the first or the second kind are sometimes tantamount to emphatic statements; thus:

Does a tiger lie in wait for a rat, or shall an elephant charge a tortoise?  
ANSTEY, *Fal. Id.*, *ProL*, 21.

Who is the man that has dared to authorize and associate to our arms the tomahawk and scalping-knife of the savage? CHATHAM (BAIN, Eng. Comp., 36). Such interrogative sentences are called rhetorical or oratorical questions. As opposed to these, ordinary interrogative sentences may be called pure questions.

e) Questions may also be asked in sentences that have the form of declarative sentences. In this case the desire of enlightenment becomes apparent from the rising tone alone; thus in: *you will soon be ready?*

f) In the subordinate construction questions opening with either *if* or *whether* correspond to interrogative sentences of the first kind, questions opening with either interrogative pronouns or interrogative adverbs to interrogative sentences of the second kind; e. g.: *I asked him if (or whether) he was ill. I asked him what he had done, and how he felt.*

4. Imperative sentences are distinguished by having a solitary verb in the imperative mood. As commands (or requests), or exhortations can only be addressed to the person(s) spoken to, the subject is mostly dispensed with in them. When the subject is expressed, this is now mostly done for the sake of indicating that what is expressed by the predicate is intended for the person(s) spoken to in particular. The pronoun is then placed either before or after the verb; e. g.:

i. You let that dog alone! Never you mind! SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1876, b.

ii. Barnaby, take you that other candle, and go before! DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XII, 50.

Vex not thou the poet's mind | With thy shallow wit! TEN., The Poet's Mind, I.

Note. When the subject is placed after the predicate, imperative sentences have the same form as hortative sentences with an inflexional subjunctive which they also approximate closely in import. For further discussion and illustration of imperative sentences see also Ch. XLIX, 55—61.





# CHAPTER VIII.

## ORDER OF WORDS.

### ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Principles . . . . .	1—4
Place of the Subject and the Finite Verb of the Predicate . . . . .	5—24
Inversion in Ordinary Declarative Sentences . . . . .	6—19
Inversion due to Front-position of an Adverbial Adjunct or Clause . . . . .	7—10
Inversion due to Front-position of the Object . . . . .	11—14
Inversion due to Front-position of the Nominal Part of the Predicate . . . . .	15—16
Inversion due to Front-position of an Attributive Adno- minal Adjunct . . . . .	17
Inversion due to Front-position of a Predicative Adno- minal Adjunct . . . . .	18
Inversion practised for Stylistic Effect . . . . .	19
Inversion in Exclamatory Sentences . . . . .	20
Inversion in Optative and Hortative Sentences . . . . .	21
Inversion in Interrogative Sentences . . . . .	22—23
Inversion in Imperative Sentences with the Subject expressed . . . . .	24
Elements of the Sentence that may stand between the Sub- ject and the Predicate . . . . .	25—28
The Arrangement of the Component Parts of a Complex Predicate . . . . .	29—31
Elements of the Sentence that may stand between the Component Parts of a Complex Predicate . . . . .	30—31
Place of the Nominal Part of the Predicate . . . . .	32
Place of Objects . . . . .	33—42

Which object is placed first? . . . . .	41— 42
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts . . . . .	43— 74
Place of Adverbial Word-modifiers . . . . .	44— 54
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts of Degree . . . . .	45— 51
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts of Quality . . . . .	52— 54
Place of Adverbial Sentence-modifiers . . . . .	55— 74
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts of Time . . . . .	56— 64
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts of Attendant Circumstances . . . . .	65— 68
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts of Mood . . . . .	69— 72
Adverbial Adjuncts variously placed according to their Meaning . . . . .	73
Final Observations . . . . .	74
Place of Objects with Verbals . . . . .	75— 76
Place of Adverbial Adjuncts with Verbals . . . . .	77— 85
Place of Prepositions . . . . .	86— 93
Place of Attributive Adnominal Adjuncts . . . . .	94—158
Place of Attributive Nouns . . . . .	95— 96
Place of Attributive Adjectives . . . . .	97—116
Place of Attributive Participles . . . . .	117—139
Place of Attributive Infinitives . . . . .	140
Place of Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	141
Place of Emphatic Pronouns . . . . .	142
Place of Numerals . . . . .	143—145
Place of Attributive Word-groups and Clauses . . . . .	146—149
Arrangement of two or more Attributive Adjuncts . . . . .	150—158
Place of Predicative Adnominal Adjuncts . . . . .	159—161

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

1. In arranging the elements of a sentence, as they appear in print, the language is guided by the following principles: *a)* the weightiest elements are placed either at the end or at the beginning of the sentence; *b)* modifying words are put as close as possible to the words they modify; *c)* words that are used to connect one sentence or clause to another mostly have front-position. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1762.
2. *a)* The best way of throwing any element of the sentence into particular relief is to give it end-position. Compare DEUTSCHBEIN, System, § 13, 1; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1766. The first words of a sentence, like the cautionary word of a command, put the listener on the alert. As the discourse proceeds, he is kept in suspense, so that his mind is prepared to receive that part of the communication on which his attention should chiefly be centred. Thus in *Within a window'd niche of that high hall Sate Brunswick's fated chieftain* (BYRON, Ch. Har., III, XXIII) it is evidently the poet's object to engage most of our attention for the ill-starred Prussian general, and for this our minds are prepared by the mention of some comparatively unimportant details, which he wishes to have done with before he proceeds to mention the real subject of the communication. Compare also:  
At length in the year 1710, the causes which had restrained her from showing her aversion to the Low Church party ceased to operate. MAC. Addison, (757 *b*).  
One day, towards the middle of July 1568, a band of pilgrims, some of them in Flemish attire, went through the streets of Segovia. MOTLEY, Rise, III, Ch. V, 437 *b*.  
*b)* Another way of giving prominence to whatever is uppermost in our minds is to mention it the first thing in the sentence. Compare PAUL, Prinz., § 198; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1765. It is but natural that by bursting, as it were, an idea on the mind of the hearer, his attention to it is often secured quite as effectually as by keeping him in suspense for it till we get to the end of what we intend to say. Front-position is regularly resorted to in interrogative sentences of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3), and in exclamatory sentences (Ch. VII, 2, *a*). It is also the regular place of certain adverbial adjuncts of mood, such as *Yes, No, Of course, Certainly*, etc., in answering questions.

Further instances of front-position making for emphasis are afforded by the following types of sentences:

i. My mother said, ... "This poor Clarisse is fatigued, and will go to bed." And to bed accordingly the stranger went. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. III, (209). He hadn't given six clicks, before puff! up went the whole in a great blaze, away went the pestle and mortar across the study, and back we tumbled into the passage. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

ii. This feeling who has not experienced? LYTTON, *Pom p.*, I, Ch. V, 23 b.

iii. And as for going, go you shall, if we have to call in the police to make you. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XI, 128.

iv. Coming as he was to the end of his publishing career, it was pleasant to think of many successes, and an endless number of literary and artistic friendships. *Manch. Guard.*, 8/10, 1926, 296 d.

Note. Sometimes emphatic back-position and front-position are practised alternately; thus in:

Truly, though I adore a love-marriage in theory, practically I think you are mad. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 194.

c) Besides these natural devices to engage the hearer's or reader's attention for what is considered most worthy of his interest, there is the artificial expedient of placing the word-group *It is* or *It was* before the most prominent element of the sentence, as in: *It is I who am to blame. It was your brothers who came to the rescue* (Ch. II, 12, a).

Note. Of a similar description is the practice, also chiefly met with in literary language, of placing before the element to be thrown into relief certain prepositions or group-prepositions, such as *for*, *as for*, *as to*, *as regards*, *as respects* (Ch. LX, 39—40); thus in:

For health, I have so far got on very fairly. MRS. GASK., *Ch. Brontë*, 336. As for me, I was a little puzzled. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. III, 18.

As to that matter, I don't believe one half of it myself. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, Postscript.

As regards the cricket, the Englishmen have no reason to be dissatisfied with their performance. *Times*, 1897, 713 d.

The preposition *in* has practically the same function in:

In person, he was a plain, dry man, with short grizzled hair, and thick grizzled eyebrows. Of beard, he had very little, carrying the smallest possible gray whiskers, which hardly fell below the points of his ears. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. I, 5.

d) From the above exposition it follows that elements which denote the least important ideas, are best placed in the body of the sentence, i. e. between other elements which, though naturally placed in juxtaposition, bear separating by comparatively irrelevant details: 1) between subject and predicate (26), as in:

England at the present moment is directing a very critical eye upon Delagoa Bay. *Times*.

Lord Roberts on Friday visited Windsor Castle. *ib.*

2) between the verb and its objects (33, ff), as in:

He imparts without reserve secrets of the highest moment. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 322.

He reviewed rapidly the progress of events from his seventeenth year up to that day. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 56 *b*.

3) between the members of a complex predicate (30), as in :

She has this morning taken a walk in a different direction. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. X, 109

With some allowance for his habits and opinions (he) would have long since forgotten his independence. FROUDE, *Os.*, Ch. III, 45.

3. a) The second general principle, that modifying words are placed as close as possible to the elements they modify, is almost intuitively observed in the case of attributive adnominal adjuncts. When several modifiers belong to one and the same noun, they are arranged according to the degree of intimacy with which they are connected with it. Thus we say *a conceited young man*, rather than *a young conceited man*, because *young* is more intimately connected with *man* than *conceited*; in fact, *young* and *man* form a kind of sense-unit, which may also be expressed by the simple noun *youth*. Similarly *a tall black man*, *a wise old* (or *grey*) *man* are, respectively, more common than *a black tall man*, and *old* (or *grey*) *wise man*, *black man* being practically equivalent to *negro*, and *old* (or *grey*) *man* to *greybeard*. Observe the place of *little* in *a little old man*, as compared with that in *a pretty little maid*; also in :

She shall go off to-morrow, the little artful creature. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 30.

In many cases, however, the arrangement of the adjectives modifying one and the same noun may be a matter of mere chance; thus in :

She could not bring herself to the belief that the little, humble, grateful, gentle governess would dare to look up to such a magnificent personage as the Collector of Boggley Wollah. *ib*.

For further illustration see especially SWAEN (in *E. S.*, XLV, II, 310). Compare also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1789.

Adjectives are more closely connected with nouns than other adnominal modifiers (numerals, articles, pronouns) and, consequently, stand after the latter, as in *many good books*, *the (this) good book* (111 ff). Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1789.

Also modifiers marking the degree of what is expressed by adjectives and adverbs have, so to speak, a fixed place, i.e. immediately before the word they modify; e.g.: *a very good book*. *He walks very quickly* (46).

b) On the other hand there is much variety in the arranging of verb-qualifiers, adverbial adjuncts and objects, because of the difficulty to decide on the relative degrees of intimacy with which they are connected with their head-words. As a general rule objects belong more intimately to the verb than adverbial adjuncts; consequently they mostly take precedence of the latter. Thus



we say much rather *I saw your brother in the garden* than *I saw in the garden your brother* (33). Compare also Ch. XLV, 24, c.

For rules relative to the arrangement of two non-prepositional objects see below 42 ff; also Ch. III, 38 ff.

Prepositional objects are, as a rule, less closely connected with the verb they belong to than non-prepositional, and are, accordingly, normally placed after the latter; thus in *They charged the man with falsehood*.

Also when the predicate is attended by two or more adverbial adjuncts, it is often easy to tell why one arrangement is preferred to another. Thus in *Come up at once!* the adverb *up* forms a more essential part of the predicate than *at once*, and is, accordingly, placed before the latter. Also in *We went to school together* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1842), and in *We expect him home again to-morrow* (ib., § 1844) the arrangement could hardly be altered.

When no one adverbial adjunct can be said to be more intimately connected with the verb than another, the arrangement depends largely upon their relative weight. Compare *I met him last night at a party at Mrs. Carter's*, where the adjunct of time precedes the adjunct of place, with *I met him there last night*, where this arrangement is reversed. Compare also *Domini went to bed early* (HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, i, Ch. IV, 64) with *Domini went early to bed*.

In not a few cases, however, the arrangement appears to be arbitrary. Thus in the following examples the order of the adjuncts of time and place might be reversed (74):

Such were the circumstances under which Clive sailed for the third and last time to India. Mac., Clive, (529 b).

The same sort of thing might be the result of living for an equal space of time in one of these dreadful streets. GORDON HOLMES, The Harvest of Sin, 19.

4. It is but natural that words which serve as connecting links between two sentences or clauses should be placed where the second sentence, or the clause commences. Accordingly front-position is mostly given to relative pronouns and to word-groups with relative pronouns, as in *The books which I received were dirty. The ladies on the steps are Lady Edward Cecil and Lady Bentinck, both of whose husbands are in Mafeking and have been wounded* (Graph). For detailed discussion of the position of relative pronouns see Ch. XXXIX, 34—39. Compare also 148 of the present chapter.

Also pure conjunctions regularly have front-position, if we except the case of *as* and *though* being placed in immediate

succession to the principal word of the clause, as in *Rich as he is, he does not give much to the poor. Ill though he was, he insisted on being removed to his own residence.*

Note. In verse conjunctions are sometimes found in the body of the clause; thus in:

In poets as true genius is but rare, | True taste as seldom is the critic's share.  
POPE, *Es. on Crit.* I, 14.

And the stars are red to see, | Shrill when pipes the sad Siroc. SCOTT,  
*Brid. of Trierm.*, III, xxi.

Doubt you whether, | This she felt as, looking at me, | Mine and her souls  
rushed together? BROWNING, *Cristina*, VI (= ... as she felt this).

The predicating *as* (Ch. VI, 9) is occasionally found at the end of the clause; e. g.:

At once child, and elder girl, and the little woman I had been so happy as,  
I was not only oppressed by cares and difficulties adapted to each station,  
but by the great perplexity of endlessly trying to reconcile them. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. XXXV, 300.

For further illustration see Ch. LX, page 738, Note.

Conjunctive adverbs (Ch. IX, 10; Ch. LXI, 9), although often placed in front, are not unfrequently put in the body, or at the end of the sentence (67); e. g.: *It is very cold to-day; therefore I shall not go out. — I shall not, therefore, go out. — I shall not go out, therefore.*

If a pure conjunction and a conjunctive adverb occur together, the former mostly takes precedence of the latter; e. g.:

I am myself indifferent honest; but yet I could accuse me of such things that  
it were better my mother had not borne me. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 1, 124.

But some conjunctions, such as *if* and *as*, bear being placed after the conjunctive adverb. Thus *On the other hand, if* [etc.] = *If, on the other hand,* [etc.]. *However, as* [etc.] = *As, however,* [etc.]. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1859.

Note. Also other words or word-groups that refer to a preceding part of the discourse are mostly placed at the beginning of the sentence. This is seen in *The next day we went to Rome.* (Compare: *We are going out of town to-morrow.*) *Here he stopped in his speech.* (Compare: *I should like to live here*). See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1854; PAUL, *Prinz.*<sup>3</sup>, § 101, 198.

## PLACE OF THE SUBJECT AND THE FINITE VERB OF THE PREDICATE.

5. The subject is placed either before or after the finite verb of the predicate. The placing of the subject before the finite verb of the predicate may be called the declarative arrangement, the other the interrogative arrangement. The latter is mostly called inverted word-order or inversion,

as opposed to the regular word-order, which is used in the majority of sentences and clauses.

### INVERSION IN ORDINARY DECLARATIVE SENTENCES.

6. In the majority of declarative sentences and subordinate clauses the subject is placed before the finite verb of the predicate. Contrary to Dutch practice, this arrangement is commonly observed also in such sentences as open with an adverbial adjunct (or clause), or an object (or objective clause). Thus: *Gisteren zag ik uw broer* = *Yesterday I saw your brother*. *Haar muziek beoefende zij onophoudelijk* = *Her music she practised incessantly* (THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 14). As will be shown in the following sections, inversion is, in certain cases, more or less common.

### INVERSION DUE TO FRONT-POSITION OF AN ADVERBIAL ADJUNCT OR CLAUSE.

7. a) Inversion is the rule in sentences that open with a negative adverbial adjunct or conjunction, or with an adverbial adjunct consisting of, or containing an adverb which, though not negative in form, is felt as a negative, such as *alone*, *but*, *only*; *little* (*less*, *least*), *few*; *hardly*, *scarce(ly)*; *rarely*, *seldom*, *unfrequently*. This is shown by the following examples:
- i. \* Not often were the whole of the boys assembled in the hall, as on this afternoon. *Mrs. Wood*, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 38.  
Not in the memory of man has anything like this happened. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5335, 8c.  
\*\* In no individual perhaps was the moral sense ever more completely developed than in Shelley; in no being was the perception of right and wrong more acute. *THOMAS JEFFERSON HOGG* (in *SYMONDS, Shelley*, Ch. II, 31).  
No longer was there any thought of honour in his dealing toward her. *MAX PEMBERTON, I crown thee King*, Ch. IX, 117.  
Nowhere have these complaints been louder, and in no case, we are bound to say, have they been more just, than in the case of the China trade. *Times*.  
\*\*\* Never before and never again, while Tom was at school, did the doctor strike a boy in lesson. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VIII, 155.  
Never once did the castaways see the sun during their imprisonment. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 3b.
- ii. This was his fear, nor was the apprehension groundless. *BAIN, H. E. Gr.*, 316.  
*Warrington* blushed hugely, but did not speak. Neither did *Miss Bell* speak. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XVII, 186.  
The girl has no fortune; no more had *Mrs. Sedley*. *id., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.
- iii. \* From Plato alone do writers draw their opinions of the Sophists as a class. *LEWES, Hist. Philos.*, 113.  
But once did *Esther* identify *Doctor Xavier*. *MAX PEMBERTON, Doct. Xavier*, Ch. VIII, 39a.

Only once in those long years did my father return home. CON. DOYLE, *Rod n. Stone*, I, Ch. I, 17.

Only at sunset did I leave the house. GISSING, *Christopher son*.

On one occasion only did I ever feel any glow of excitement there. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, H, 109.

\*\* Little kenned the lamp-lighter that he had any company but Christmas. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 64.

Even less is Heathmoor a town. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. III, 54.

The more she thought, the less clear did her path become. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 41.

Least of all was she prepared to find that knight bearing the hateful crest of Meeson. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 37.

In few past seasons has this firm published so many books which seem likely to achieve popularity above the average. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6459, 3 b.

\*\*\* Hardly ever has a vote of censure, moved by the leader of the Opposition in person, attracted so little interest either inside the House or out-of-doors. *Times*.

Scarcely had Charles risen from his bed, when his attendants perceived that his utterance was indistinct. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 4.

\*\*\*\* Rarely did the weekly papers come out without some paragraph about me. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XIII, Ch. III, 369.

Rarely does a man love with his whole soul, as a woman does. Mrs. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, I, 316.

Seldom had small boys more need of a friend. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VIII, 165.

Seldom, if ever, has a friendly nation been so grossly insulted in a foreign Parliament, and never, within our memory, has the insult met with such a mild rebuke from the representative of a friendly Power. *Times*.

Note. Observe that *only* has no negating force, and, consequently, does not cause inversion in such sentences as:

i. Only too consciously he had descended to a lower level. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XX, 280.

ii. "Is anything the matter with my Madeline?" — "No, papa; only I have got a headache." TROL., *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. III, 29.

b) Front-position of any of the above adverbial adjuncts or conjunctions also seems, as a rule, to occasion the placing of weak *there* (10) after the (finite verb of the) predicate. This has been done in:

i. \* In no other land, perhaps, is there found so commonly the love at first sight, which in France is a jest, and in England a doubt. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VII, 50.

\*\* Never was there a greater mistake. F. W. D., *Editor's Note to Swinburne's Charles Dickens*, 15.

\*\*\* In neither of these extreme cases is there that victory of which the poet thinks even in the first shock of loss. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on Ten. In Mem.*, 40.

ii. Only once during dinner was there any conversation that included the young gentlemen. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 106.

c) Similarly subordinate clauses mostly have inversion under the same conditions; thus in:

i. \* I can conscientiously declare that in no case have I accepted a passage at second-hand without having previously verified it by the original, whenever that was possible. LEWES, *Hist. Phil.*, Pref., 12.

I suppose that never before in his life had he known a charming person display such extraordinary taste. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. II, 16.

\*\* The truth is that rarely in the history of our political life has an Opposition been in such sore straits, or so gravelled for lack of controversial matter. *Daily Telegraph*.

\*\*\* I suppose that never since the world began did there live quite so poor a judge of character as my dear mother. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. I, 11. ii. His mouth was near the young man's ear — so near that not only could not McGoverly overhear his words, but of the whole party round the fire only Brady and Byrne, besides Thady himself, could catch what he said. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XIII, 227.

In the very night which followed old Sir Ensor's funeral, such a storm of snow began, as never have I heard nor read of. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XLI, 257.

d) The rule followed in the above examples is not, however, so rigidly observed as we usually find it stated. Here follows a goodly array of examples in which, for no apparent reason, the declarative word-order is observed notwithstanding the opening negative or negative-implying adverbial adjuncts.

On the face of it it seems rather inexplicable that negative openings of a sentence should have a force that is lacking in affirmative openings. Why should an introductory *never*, for example, cause inversion, while an introductory *always* has no such effect?

i. \* Not till too late I discovered that he was most violently attached to the contrary opinion. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (243).

Not for the first time the Chancellor of the Exchequer has been a little too clever, and has, consequently, overshot the mark. *Sat. Rev.* (in *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5394, 16c).

\*\* No sooner he comes into the cathedral, but a train of whispers runs buzzing round the congregation. FARQUHAR, *Beaux' Strat.*, II, 2, (378).

No sooner he's provided for than he turns you on. CONRAD, *Chance*, I, Ch. I, 12. (Polish English.)

\*\*\* Never any young adventurer's misfortunes, I believe, began sooner or continued longer. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 6.

Never a serener saint had trod the ways of men. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. I, 8.

Never her sweet voice had sounded so exquisitely tender to him. They spoke of the war. Never, but in their letters, had he been able thus to give his feelings and receive them. HUTCHINSON, *If Wint. comes*, III, Ch. VII, iv, 214. (Note the varied practice.)

ii. \* Only yesterday he liked to be with Theo and Hester. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVII, 279

Only once he gave half an hour to foreign affairs. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5167, 7b.

\*\* Some greater endeavour might, perhaps, have been made to rescue him from evil ways. Very little such endeavour was made at all. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. II, 12.

Little we thought he should ever own it. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. XXVI, 276.

But little we cared. *ib.*, Ch. XXIX, 307.

Little I dreamt to what a darker cage I was to be translated! KINGSLEY, *All. Locke*, Ch. II, 20.

Little I dreamed, when I had him in my arms a baby, that I should be some



day marrying him out of my own house. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXI, 258.

\*\*\* Seldom he smiles. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 205.

Seldom in after life Pendennis heard the solemn church-music. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 35.

Seldom an evening passed but the bachelor came in. DICK., Old Cur. Shop., Ch. LV, 202 a.

Seldom a week passed without the recital of some further discovery. Westm. Gaz., No. 1707, 7 a.

Very rarely they swim in the water like ducks SHACKLETON, The Heart of the Antarctic, Append., I, 349.

iii. I well believe, that ne'er before | Your foot has trod Loch Katrine's shore. SCOTT, Lady, I, xxiii.

iv. It seems to me as if only in the desert there is freedom for the body, and only in truth there is freedom for the soul. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, III, Ch. XI, 270.

e) It is not surprising that the declarative word-order is observed when, notwithstanding the presence of a negating word, the sentence is not apprehended to be negative; thus: 1) when a combination with a negating word is equivalent to an affirmative, as in:

Not long ago, he did like to walk with her. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXVII, 279 (= approximately: a short time ago.)

Not many weeks afterward we went to live at Longfield. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXIII, 230 (= approximately: soon after).

2) When there is an adverb which neutralizes the negative, as in: Then, and not till then, the two men recognized each other. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. XXXVII, 291.

Not once, but twice this performance took place. MCCARTHY, Short Hist. Ch. XIII, 190.

This is especially the case when a negative-implying adverb is in its turn negated by *not*, as in:

i. Not unfrequently the Germans have been blamed for an unprofitable diligence. CARL., Sart. Res., I, Ch. I, 3.

Not unfrequently such cases are never heard of. NINET. Cent. and After No. 397, 536.

Not infrequently he would come and sit brooding on the grassy hillock just above the churchyard. GALSW., Freeland, X, 85.

ii. Not seldom the process of mutual education has been to all appearance interrupted by the outbreak of hostilities. Times.

Note. The combination *not only* when placed in front-position, however, normally causes inversion, exceptions being, apparently, rather common; e. g.:

i. Not only did Roundhead leave, but Highmore went away. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. X, 127.

Not only is the woman incomplete in herself, but, correspondingly, the man also cannot attain his full perfection until he has found his complement. WALLACE, Introd. to Ten. Princ., 50.

Not only had she lost the one being she loved in all the world, but she had lost him by a fatality so dire and dreadful that [etc.]. BUCHANAN, Wint. Night, Ch. XIII, 103.

ii. Not only Waverley's property was restored, but his purse ... had been all along suffered to remain in his possession. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XXXVII, 105 b.

It was clear to see that his triumph consisted in this, — that not only he had but one Protestant in the parish, but that that Protestant should have learned so little from his religion. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XXXVII, 639. Not only in England and America, but in every colony and dependency, there has been a large demand for the book *Rev. of Rev.*

3) When *never*, felt as a strong *not*, may also be understood to modify the subject (Ch. XXXI, 68, a, Note IV); thus in :

I promised that never a week should pass that I did not visit them. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

Never a day passed, but that cruel words were spoken between them. Graph. Compare: Never a saint took pity on | My soul in agony. COL., *Anc Mar.*, IV, III.

f) Negatives used as conjunctive adverbs (Ch. XI, 9) have little or no negating import, and do not, accordingly, cause inversion when placed in front-position. This applies especially to *nevertheless* and *only*, which are synonymous with *however* (or *yet*, etc.), or the conjunction *but* respectively.

Nevertheless I was annoyed with him for what he said. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. VII.

He treated his own daughter just as he did the little Suttons, with neither more nor less regard than he had ever shown to them. Only he always called her Ginevra. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, B, 70.

Also *not the less* and *none the less*, as a rule, fail to occasion inversion, but, although strictly synonymous with *nevertheless*, they seem to be suggestive of some negation, as appears from their occasionally causing inversion.

i. There is more in a week of life than in a lively weekly. None the less I'll slate him. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. IV, 54.

It was but a nibble (sc. of free speech) ... None the less, it was found extremely hot in the mouth by a governing body who [etc.]. *Manch. Guard.*, 22/10, 1926, 322d.

ii. Not the less did he make up his mind that having loved her once, it behoved him, as a true man, to love her on to the end. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. IV, 40.

It would not be well to induce one so young to an arrangement of which in after and more mature years he would so probably disapprove. But not the less did Fitzgerald ... determine that on the next day he would know something of his fate. *id.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. II, 31.

It would be difficult to carry the marble head with the other few things she proposed to take, but none the less was the necessity imperative. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XX, 171.

g) *No more*, when opening a sentence that is corroborative of a preceding statement, is, naturally, incompatible with inversion (8, f).

"Clavering thinks he ain't fit for Parliament," said the Major. — "No more he is." THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVII, 299.

I said just now that I didn't want to speak of it, and no more I do. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. XIII.

8. a) Inversion is frequent in sentences opening with an adverbial adjunct or clause, but containing no object, when the subject is

a more weighty word than the predicate (2, a). Compare *Thus died Noah* with *Thus Noah died*.

In my father's house are many mansions. BIBLE, John, XIV, 2.

Soon after began the busy and important part of Swift's life. BAIN, Comp., 296

In the year 1748 died one of the most powerful of the new masters of India.

MAC., Clive, (504 a).

While the government of the Tudors was in its highest vigour, took place an event which has coloured the destinies of all Christian nations. id., Hist., I, Ch I, 44,

At last came the Degree Examinations. THACK, Pend., I, Ch. XIX, 203.

As they debated the story, came a loud knock at the door. id., Van. Fair, I, XXIII, 239.

From one window issue the notes of a piano. ib., I, Ch. XXII, 229.

So thought many of them. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Pref

b) Thus also in the case of a nominal predicate or a complex predicate, which may be passive. It is worth observing in this place that passiveness bears some analogy to intransitiveness (Ch. XXXIV, 15; Ch. XLIII, 16—19).

With that tenderness was mingled, in the soul of Lewis, a not ignoble vanity. MAC., Hist., III, Ch. X, 390.

Then was committed that great crime, memorable for its singular atrocity, memorable for the tremendous retribution by which it was followed MAC., Clive, (513 b).

c) Inversion is hardly avoidable when the subject is qualified by an adnominal clause of some length, as in:

Here hung those lips that I have kissed I know not how oft. SHAK., HamI., V, I, 208

Dear is bought the honey that is licked off the thorn. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch., I, 13 b.

Here at least was a man who knew his own mind. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 197 b.

d) On the other hand it is but natural that inversion is not often met with when the subject is a mere pronoun, unless it has strong stress. The following quotations afford instances:

Wherever she went, there went he. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 70.

That grave-yard in St. Mary's Lane now covered all who loved me. So thought I. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXII, 215.

See also the examples under i).

e) Also subordinate clauses frequently exhibit inversion in the circumstances described above under a); thus those in:

Ruppin, where lies the greater part of the regiment. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1813.

She had to pass our door, where stood Mrs. Todd and the baby. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 109.

The hand in which were placed at that moment the destinies of a mighty empire. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 198 b.

Even adverbial adjuncts in the head-clause may occasion inversion in the subordinate clause; thus in:

It was only at a distance that were seen scattered and squalid houses that bordered the river. LYTTON, Rienzi.

f) The fact that inversion is dependent on which is the more weighty element of the sentence, the subject or the predicate, is clearly brought out by comparing certain sentences introduced by *so* (or *that*) and *no more*, some of which have inverted word-order as regularly as others have not. Compare *He is writing a letter, and so is his sister* with *I thought you were in London — So I was yesterday*; and *He did not write a letter, no more did his sister with I thought you didn't care for this game — No more I do*. For further discussion and illustration of these constructions see also above, 7, g; and Ch. X, 21; Ch. XXXII, 32—35.

i. \* "I have had a letter from William this morning," said Mary. — "And so have not I," said Clara. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXX, 398.

"I think I would have named a later age than twenty-five." — "So would not I." id., Dr. Thorne, Ch. X, 147.

\*\* You do not play to win. No more do I. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVIII, 315.

She daren't say a word to Miss Amory. No more dare none of us. id., Pend., II, Ch. XXIII, 256.

ii. \* I'll say my father and mother want you to go and see them for a whole day, and so they do. SWEET, Old Chapel.

"He's rather a naughty child sometimes." — "Yes, — that he is." HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. XIII, 110.

I'll steal time to arrange you so that Edgar shall look quite a doll beside you: and that he does. EM. BRONTË. Wuth. Heights, Ch. VII, 30 b.

\*\* "If Mr. Pendennis had been alive, this scandal would never have happened." — "No more it would." THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 152.

Note α) It should be observed that the regular word-order is preserved in the first kind of sentences if the sameness of circumstances does not concern what is indicated by the subject, as in:

"It gave me quite a turn — his face," said Tall, breathing. — "And so it did me," said Samway. HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. LIII, 439.

β) Inversion in a corroborative sentence is very rare. In fact the following example, which is also characterized by the exceptional use of *neither* instead of *no more* (Ch. X, 21, Obs. II), is the only one that has come to hand.

"I left my box and walked on — they said it was not far." — "Neither is it, ... but I fancy you are not used to walking." M. E. FRANCIS, The Manor Farm, Ch. I.

g) Thus also the word-order is inverted in adverbial clauses opening with *as* that correspond to principal sentences with *so* as described under f); e. g.:

He was impeached for peculation, as were a great number of other honest gentlemen of those days. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VII, 67.

He was not handsome, as was his cousin Owen. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. V, 68.

Womanliness has its degrees, as have most other things of this world. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. IV.

He had written good poetry, as also had Huxley. Times.



Compare with these examples the following, which is of a different tenor and, accordingly, exhibits no inversion:

Old Pendennis had no special labours or bills to encounter on the morrow, as he had no affection at home to soothe him. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXX, 332.

*h)* Usage is divided in sentences opening with the first *so* in which a pronoun-subject is modified by *all* or *both*, but inversion appears to be the rule. Compare Ch. XXXII, 35, *Obs.* V, 2.

i. I confess | That thou hast suffer'd much: so have we both. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, III, I, (318 *b*).

"You should practise as well as preach, Mr. Arabin!" — "Undoubtedly I should. So should we all." TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XXX, 261.

ii. He likes to have his own way very well ... But so we all do. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXIII, 183.

When first he entered the corps, she was ready enough to admire him; but so we all were. *ib.*, Ch. XLVII, 278.

I thank you cordially, and so we do all. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. VI, 321.

*i)* Of some special interest is the, apparently, rather common placing of a pronoun-subject after a verb of incomplete predication in adverbial clauses of degree that open with *than* or *as*, as in:

i. (He lay down) the law as to barley and oxen among men who knew usually more about barley and oxen than did he. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. I, 3.

She had her own voice, and the pulses of her heart better under command than had he. *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 98.

No one could be harder upon him in that matter than was he himself. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 209.

I suppose two persons could never have taken their repose with more singular feelings than did we upon that bank of earth. SNAITH, *The Wayfarers*, Ch. IV, 42.

ii. She was a Hotspur as thoroughly as was he. TROL., *Harry Hotspur*, 205 (*WESTERN, On Sentence-Rhythm etc.*, 12).

She is controller of her own actions as completely as are you and I. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8597, 22 *b*.

I rather feel Georgina is of the same opinion as am I. TEMPLE THURSTON, *The Open Window*, II, 12.

*j)* In sentences or clauses opening with an adverbial adjunct or clause, the subject, whether noun or pronoun, is not unfrequently found after the finite verb of a complex predicate; thus in:

We have been very happy here. But if Bell should leave you — "Then should I go also." TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XXVII, 321.

The more carefully it (sc. Addison's character) is examined, the more will it appear sound in the noble parts. MAC., *Addison*, (733 *a*).

Yet was the spirit of the haughty daughter of the Cæsars unbroken. *id.*, *Fred.*, (668 *b*).

To them will nothing be trivial. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 189.

In vain have I sung and laboured; in vain I went down to the dead. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, III, 129. (Observe the varied practice.)

Daily are men induced to aid in carrying out inventions which a mere tyro in science could show to be futile. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 22 *b*.

So had Nanno come to London. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, III, Ch. IV, 141.



Many a summer evening have Boy Jim and I lain upon the grass, watching all these grand folk. CON. DOYLE, *Rod n. Stone*, I, Ch. I, 22.

In such surroundings was an extraordinary man born. ARN. BENNETT, *The Card*, Ch. I, 1.

k) The word-order in the following examples, presumably common enough in older English, is now only occasionally met with, except, perhaps, in the language of the illiterate.

Mrs. FRAIL. What have you to do to watch me! 'slife, I'll do what I please.

Mrs. FORE. You will? Mrs. FRAIL. Yes, marry will I. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (231).

"He speaks the truth," said a second voice firmly. "Ay, that doth he," said a third. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. III, 22.

"Has morning come already?" asked Nicholas, sitting up in bed. — "Ah! that has it," replied Squeers. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. VIII, 43 b.

"Then Mr. Rochester was at home when the fire broke out?" — "Yes, indeed, was he." CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 527.

Certainly three times a week do I have to put up with his company. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambros.*, I, Ch. II, 26.

With the above examples compare the following in which the declarative word-order, the normal one, has been observed:

The more careful our study of the familiar sounds of our own language, the easier it will be for us to acquire unfamiliar ones. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, §5.

9. a) Inversion is less frequent in sentences opening with an adverbial adjunct or clause in which the verb is accompanied by an object. Nor is it dependent on the relative weight of the subject and the predicate.

Most humbly do I take my leave. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 3, 83.

With very different impressions did the unfortunate lover regard the tidings. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIII, 348.

With inconceivable satisfaction did the new landowner settle himself in his comfortable homestead. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. II, 33.

In vain did the enemy himself invest in a pea-shooter. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. III, 239.

b) But the regular word-order would have been quite as appropriate in the above examples, as will become evident by comparing them with the following:

Thus, in two words, Philip removed the unpopular minister for ever. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 207 b.

In vain the various actors tried to win the favour of the great stage sultan. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIII, 139.

In vain he attended the Cathedral service on Sunday afternoons. Mrs. ALEXANDER, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. II, 23.

In vain he had striven to conquer it (sc. his instinctive horror of Androvsky). HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, IV, Ch. XVI, 38.

c) In verse the choice is naturally determined by the requirements of metre, as appears from the alternative use of the inverted and regular word-order in:

Once again do I behold these steep and lofty cliffs. WORDSW., *Tint. Ab.*, 5.  
Once again I see | These hedge-rows. *ib.*, 14.

10. a) In sentences in which inversion is caused by the *at-position*

of an adverbial adjunct or clause; the predicate is often preceded by weak *there*, especially when it denotes an existing, an appearing, or a happening, the subject being mostly preceded by the indefinite article in the meaning of a weak *some* (Ch. XXXI, 7, *b*), or a word denoting a definite or indefinite number, or represented by a plural without any modifier. Compare the examples in 8, *a*.

As I was sitting at breakfast this morning, there comes a knock at my door. DICK., *Ch. u. z.*, Ch. XXXIX, 307 *a*.

In the committee there was much hesitation. MAC., *Clive*, (516 *b*).

On the second day there came a letter from his tutor. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XX, 211.

Then there shot through Philip's mind the recollection of the money he had seized. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 120.

In the afternoon there occurred an incident. MRS. CRAIK., *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 144.

Under these checked shawls there beat one of the warmest hearts that ever animated mortal clay. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 78.

Among a gay throng of people ... there filed slowly past a procession of white-robed monks. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. I, 9.

Similarly when the predicate is formed by a verb in the passive voice, as in:

For them there had been provided every kind of in-doors pleasure. RUSKIN, *Ses. & Lil.*

There shall be escaped the incapacities and the slow annihilation which unwise habits entail. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 16 *b*.

Nor should there be omitted a sketch of the daily lives of the people. *ib.*, Ch. I, 29 *a*.

Also predicates that have an object are sometimes preceded by weak *there*, when both stand before the subject; thus in:

Among the rest there overtook us a little elderly lady. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XVI, 153.

*b*) Weak *there* is indispensable in sentences or clauses with inverted word-order in which no other word beyond a potential conjunction precedes the predicate, as in:

i. There needs no ghost, my lord, come from the grave | To tell us this. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 5, 125.

There came on such a thunderstorm as only happens on Vauxhall nights. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

If there requires further evidence of the rude, undeveloped character of our education, we have it in the fact that the comparative worths of different kinds of knowledge have been as yet scarcely discussed. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 11 *b*.

ii. There may be added a few examples where the infinitive as subject follows the predicate. BAIN, *Comp.*, 299.

There had been taken to the Marshalsea Prison ... a debtor with whom this narrative has some concern. DICK., *Little Dor.*, Ch. VI, 29 *b*.

*c*) Weak *there* may be found after the finite verb of the predicate in questions, and in declarative sentences opening with a negative word(-group) (7, *b*); e. g.:

Breathes there the man, with soul so dead, | Who never to himself hath said, |  
This is my own, my native land! SCOTT, Lay, VI, 1.

Where lives there such a woman now? TEN., Princ., Prol., 126.

d) Weak *there* may even be found together with *here*, strong *there*, and *where*; thus in:

i. Here there was a man who offered to show us over the ruins.

ii. There was a man there who had a withered hand. Bible, Mark III, 1.  
There was there another arm-chair. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXV, 337.  
I have told Cutler to put your supper in the school-room. There is a fire there. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. I, 18.

iii. Where there's a will, there's a way. PROV.

e) Weak *there* may also stand before an infinitive-clause, as in:  
I do not wish there to be any quarrel. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. XXVII, 350.

f) The construction with weak *there* in an adnominal clause as in the following example appears to be an unusual one:

The Labour party leaders have ... shown an evident determination to frame a practicable immediate policy, which there would be some chance of carrying at the polls. Manch. Guard., 7/10, 1927, 261 a.

#### INVERSION DUE TO FRONT-POSITION OF THE OBJECT.

11. a) As in the case of negating adverbial adjuncts (7), (13, b) negative (13, b) objects normally cause inversion when placed in front-position; e.g.:

i. Not a single word did Peggotty speak. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 31 b.

I looked in all directions, ... but no house could I make out. ib., Ch. III, 15 a.

No word more spake Toots that night. id., Dom b., Ch. XII, 108.

Not a word had she spoken. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, I, Ch. II, 9.

Not a hint, however, did she drop about sending me to school. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 26.

Not a word did he say of Richard's return. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXIV, 308.

Nothing would the poor little heart reply. ib., Ch. XXXIV, 308.

Never a boat had I on board. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. XXVIII, 212 b.

Never a single just or generous word have we heard from one of the heirs of his inheritance. STEAD (in Rev. of Rev.).

ii. Very little attention did I pay to her. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XV, Ch. VII, 436.

b) Instances of the alternative practice appear to be very rare.  
Nothing I have, and nothing I need, save to serve noble kings and earls. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. III, 25 b.

Never a word he said. STEVENSON, Kidnapped, 181.

12. Inversion is frequent in appended and parenthetical clauses (11) accompanying quotations. See especially HERMANN CONRAD, Die eingeschobenen Sätze im heutigen Englisch (Herrig, Archiv, CVII, CVIII). In the Latest English we find the following practice:

a) Inversion is observed with great regularity when the subject is a noun, or an indefinite pronoun, and when the predicate consists of a verb in a simple tense and is not accompanied by any enlargement. Exceptions are most frequent with verbs which

express more than a mere saying, such as *to mutter, to retort, to rejoin, to whisper, to suggest, to correct*, etc. Thus: "*I don't like to make a speech,*" said my brother, was my brother's reply, stammered my brother. (Occasionally: *my brother stammered.*)

i. "Patience, lass," replied the old woman. WALT. BESANT, Dor. Forst., Ch. I, 4.

"It is filled with water," continued Judith. *ib.*, Ch. I, 7.

ii. "I think that will do," Figs said, as his opponent dropped ... on the green. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 46.

"Certainly," the baronet replied. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XVII, 115.

"There's virtue somewhere, I see, Thompson!" Sir Austin murmured. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, 118.

b) Inversion is the rule when the clause also contains an adverbial adjunct. Exceptions are most frequent with the verbs mentioned in a). Thus: "*I don't like to make a speech,*" said my father humbly, said my father in a humble voice, muttered my father softly, muttered my father under his breath. (Sometimes: *my father muttered softly, my father muttered under his breath.*)

i. "Berghen avoids the persecution of heretics," wrote the Cardinal again, a month later. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 200 a.

Well hit, by Jove!" says little Osborne with the air of a connoisseur. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 45.

"I should be happy to (sc. to congratulate you), if I could," sedately replied the hero. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXV, 316.

ii. "Emmeline Clementina Matilda Laura, Countess Blandish," Richard continued in a low tone. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XIV, 95.

"But that," Mr. Thompson added immediately. ... that is. ... a tolerably good character wine!" *ib.*, Ch. XVII, 118.

c) Inversion is less frequent, but nevertheless more common than the regular word-order, when the sentence also contains a prepositional object. Instances with the regular word-order occur most frequently with the verbs mentioned under a). Thus: "*I don't like to make a speech,*" said my father to his neighbour. (Not unfrequently: *my father said to his neighbour.*)

i. \* "I say," whispered Mr. Winkle to Wardle, as the man let down the steps, "they don't suppose we're going to kill game enough to fill those bags, do they?" DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 162.

"Hold out your other hand, sir," roars Cuff to his little school-fellow. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 44.

"He always does so," whispered Mr. Tidd to me. *id.*, Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 109.

"Help me on to that low horse," said Wakem to Luke. G. ELIOT, Mill, V, Ch. VII, 338.

"Courage, my darling!" wrote the Chevalier to his daughter. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. III, 26.

\*\* "The aeroplane," said to me the German Foreign Minister ..., "is the great unknown X of the future." Rev. of Rev., No. 208, 427 a (an unusual arrangement.)

ii. "He's priming himself," Osborne whispered to Dobbin. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 51.



d) Inversion is unusual when, although the subject is a noun or an indefinite pronoun, the predicate is formed by a kind of group-verb (Ch. XLVI, 55), such as *to put in*, *to call out*, etc.; is complex Ch. I, 15); or is accompanied by a non-prepositional object. Thus: "*I don't like to make a speech*," *my father put in*, *my father would say*, *my father assured him* (Occasionally: *put in my father*, etc.).

i. \* "To tell fortunes," Judith went on, "one must either be a witch or a gipsy." WALT. BESANT, *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. I, 6.

"She looks like angels in her night-gown!" Molly wound up. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XX, 131.

\*\* "Oh! you women, you make such a fuss over everything," Uncle Podger would reply. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 27.

\*\*\* "This," my father answered me, "is the real state of affairs." STOF., *Handl.*, III, 12.

ii. \* "Some villain has betrayed us," cried out my lady. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. VI, 50.

"It's dreadfully slippery," put in Mrs. Lascelles. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. VII.

\*\* "I can never understand," would sometimes observe Zenobia's husband to his brilliant spouse. DISR., *Endymion*, I, Ch. III, 18.

"O Emerald, I didn't mean it," had stammered the girl. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. XI, 227.

e) Inversion is rare when the subject is a personal pronoun. Thus "*I don't like to make a speech*," *he said* (Rarely: *said he*).

i. "Berghen will give us no aid," he wrote, "despite of all the letters we send him." MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 200 a.

"You'd best give in," he said to Dobbin. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. v, 45.

ii. "Let us go, Judith," said I, frightened by all this shouting. WALT. BESANT, *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. I, 6.

13. Obs. I. In earlier English inversion was the rule also when the (12) subject was a personal pronoun. Thus in the *Vicar of Wakefield* the personal pronoun has been found by CONRAD to stand before the predicate in only four instances. Inversion has become less and less frequent since the days in which that work was written. We append a few instances from writers who flourished a few generations ago.

"Never father," cried they all. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 101. (Compare 8, h.) "Well, Uriah," said I, bolting it out with some difficulty. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXV, 189 a.

"What could have made my aunt return and be so angry?" said I to Mary. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 109.

"Tis useless to escape them," whispered I to John. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 123.

"Come now, little man," said she to me. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. III, 71.

II. The archaic *quoth* (= *said*) always precedes the subject, even when the entire quotation follows (Ch. LVIII, 18); e. g.:

i. "I don't understand thee," quoth the abbot. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 17 a.

ii. Quoth I: "But have you no prisons at all now?" MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. VII, 47.



III. In vulgar language inversion occurs also in front-clauses accompanying a quotation; thus:

Says he, "What do you want?" SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1812.

This practice is sometimes imitated in literary English; thus in:

Why, one evening, at Mrs. Ponto's assembly, the conversation happened to turn on the breeding of Nova Scotia sheep in this country. Says a young lady in company, I have known instances of it. SHER., School, I, I, (371).

Had said my aunt: "There she goes, moping again!" JEROME, Paul Kever, I, Ch. I, 14 b.

Observed my aunt, who continued steadily to eat bread and butter: "Just like 'em all." ib., 17 a.

Says Mr. Lee in introducing his pamphlet: (follows a long quotation). Lit. World.

IV. The principles mentioned in 12 apply also to parenthetic or appended clauses accompanying statements that are not meant as quotations, as in:

M. Briand has yielded and Rakowsky will, says our Paris correspondent, shortly be withdrawn. Manch. Guard., 7.10, 1927, 261 b.

The action of the Government, declared Mr. Dillon in his powerful speech on Wednesday, was calculated to play into the hands of the Sinn Feiners. Westm. Gaz., No. 7637, 3 a.

14. a) When the object is not negative, and is not represented by (13) a quotation or a statement, front-position does not now occasion inversion in ordinary language. In the older language it may have been the rule; but in Late Modern English it appears to be common only in literary language with an intentional archaistic tinge (39); e. g.:

Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. Bible, John, XV, 13.

The tongue can no man tame; it is an unruly evil. Bible, James, III, 8.

Ten thousand falsehoods has this gentleman told me. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI, (468).

More than three months of precious time had that martyr of a Major given up to his nephew. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

A pretty paradise did we build for ourselves. id., Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 95.

Her grief at her bereavement knew none. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. VI, 84.

The dogs will follow me; and as they come out, shoot as many as you can; the rest will I brain, as they come round the tree. READE, Cloister, Ch. XX, 82.

There is something awful and uncanny about the brilliant blindness of the enlightened. Telescopes have they, and they see not: telephones have they, and they hear not. CHESTERTON (in Il. Lond. News, No. 3932, 310 b).

b) With the above compare the following examples, in which the regular word-order is preserved according to the present normal practice:

i. Bars and bolts we have none. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1863.

Her also ... she warmly loved and greatly revered. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. V, 82.

But his grandson he had refused to see until to-morrow. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LII, 402 b.

Justice I will have. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. I, 15 *a*.

ii. Of cowardice he had never been accused. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1871.

Of the translation we need only say that it is such as might be expected. MAC., *Popes*, (541 *b*).

Of Herbert she stood somewhat more in awe. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. V, 82.

#### INVERSION DUE TO FRONT-POSITION OF THE NOMINAL PART OF THE PREDICATE.

15. *a*) Inversion is practically regular in sentences with the copula (14) *to be* when it has no further function than that of linking the nominal part of the predicate with the subject, whether a noun or a pronoun; thus in:

i. Blessed are the poor in spirit. Sweet is the breath of vernal showers. BAIN, *Comp.*, 298.

Such were the circumstances under which Clive sailed for the third and last time to India. MAC., *Clive*, (529 *b*).

Less known, save to students, is her husband. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. I, 9 *a*.

ii. Of a noble race was he. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1871.

She had evidently quite forgotten us, so happy was she with Mrs. Tod's bonny boy. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 110.

Sad, indeed, is it to see how men occupy themselves with trivialities. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 35 *a*.

The Witch of Endor we called her, such an ugly, shrivelled-up, crabbed old bundle of rags was she. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

*b*) This seems to be the ordinary word-order also when the predicate contains another copula, or a verb weakened into a copula; e. g.:

Sick and sorry felt poor William. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 87.

Such knaves and ruffians do men in war become! *id.*, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 70.

*c*) Also in such sentences as the following, which bear some resemblance to those mentioned under *a*), inversion seems to be the rule:

i. To such straits was I reduced. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1871.

Still more was she grieved for the unhappiness which her sister's refusal must have given him. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XL, 221.

ii. Death itself is not so painful as is this sudden horror. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1813.

*d*) Except for subordinate questions (22), and certain adverbial clauses (16), we do not often find front-position of the nominal part of the predicate in subordinate clauses. The determinative *such*, however, is frequently placed at the beginning of a clause; when this is done, inversion is invariably observed, thus in *I told him that such was the case*.

16. When, however, the copula is connotative of emphatic affirmation, inversion is the exception. Thus the regular word-order is observed: *a*) in sentences opening with *so*, or *no more*, used

to corroborate the contents of a preceding sentence (8, f), as in: *You must be tired after your long walk. So I am. — You can't be tired after such a short walk. No more I am.*

b) in sentences that are followed by, or are suggestive of others in adversative relation to them; thus in:

Victorious, indeed, they were, but at what cost. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1868.

Strict my master was, though just to every one. STOF., HANDL., III.

c) in concessive clauses with a pronoun-subject, as in:

Rich as he is, one would scarcely envy him. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, 108.

Big as he is, I know a still bigger man. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1870.

However it be, it seems to me, 'Tis only noble to be good. TEN., Lady Clara Vere de Vere, VII.

Orphan though she was, she would have found some one to protect her. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXX, 244 a.

Note. In concessive clauses with a noun-subject, on the other hand, inversion seems to be the rule, except when the nominal part of the predicate is preceded by the intensive *however*, and also when the predicate is made complex by *may* (or *might*); e. g.:

i. Whatever be our fate, let us not add guilt to our misfortunes. GOLDS., Good-nat. Man, V.

Few as were his years, he had learned much in them. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hall, Ch. XIV, 136.

Necessary and eternal as are its truths, all Science concerns all mankind for all time. SPENCER., Educ., Ch. I, 40 a.

ii. However thinly inhabited the country was, there was a regular mail-coach traffic between the principal towns. STOF., HANDL., III, § 87, 4.

iii. He shewed that the follies of the stage and court had never been accounted too sacred for ridicule, how great soever the persons might be that patronised them. ADDISON, Spect., No. 34.

Whatsoever his former conduct may have been, his circumstances should exempt him from censure now. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. VI, (267).

d) in adverbial clauses of proportion opening with the adverb *the* (Ch. XVII, 142), and also in their correlative head-clauses, when the subject is a pronoun; e. g.:

It is evident that the more exact his practical knowledge of the organic positions is, the more easy it will be for him to find out the right position and to fix it when found. SWEET, Prim. of Phon., § 5.

They held that the more gratifications they denied themselves, the more virtuous they were. SPENCER, Educ., Ch. II, 41 a.

Note a) In the head-clause inversion is not uncommon when the subject is a noun; thus in:

The fuller a thing is, the more obvious is the void. JAMES PAYN, Glow Worm Tales, II, J, 135.

β) Also when the copula in the head-clause is another than *to be*, inversion appears to be quite common; e. g.:

The longer his expatriation, the greater does this hallucination become. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 94.

Her destiny brings with it that the higher she stands poetically and religiously, the more useful does she become in ordinary every-day life. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XXI.

The more their capital grew, the more determined did Parliament become not to interfere. *Times*.

e) in the colloquialism *Right you are!*

#### INVERSION DUE TO FRONT-POSITION OF AN ATTRIBUTIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCT.

17. The only attributive adnominal adjuncts which, when placed in (16) front-position, may cause the subject to be placed after the predicate appear to be such as contain partitive *of*. Instances of inversion are afforded by:

Of many thousand fighting men went home but five hundred. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 7 a.

Of no one of these qualities is there so much as a trace. *Literature*.

But inversion is by no means the rule, as appears from the following examples:

Of fuel they had plenty. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1863.

Of the stonework nothing now remains. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 7 b.

Of Hereward's doings for the next few months nought is known. *ib.*, Ch. II, 19 b.

#### INVERSION DUE TO FRONT-POSITION OF A PREDICATIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCT.

18. a) Inversion is not frequently caused by predicative adnominal (17) adjuncts of the first group (Ch. VI, 1). Instances are found in:

All bloodless lay the untrodden snow. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 317.

Naked came I out of my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither. BIBLE, *Job*, I, 21.

But it would be against generally accepted usage to make subject and predicate exchange places in:

Enclosed you will find a letter. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1870.

b) More usual is inversion when the sentence opens with a predicative adnominal adjunct of the second group.

i. So selfish does our life make us. ROORDA, *Dutch and Eng. Compared*, I, § 66.

So useful and pleasant had my sister made herself there. *ib.*

ii. The Witch of Endor we called her. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

c) Inversion is never observed in adverbial clauses in which *as* or *though* is placed after the principal word of the sentence (16, c).

Black as he has been painted, he is far worse in reality. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1870.

#### INVERSION PRACTISED FOR STYLISTIC EFFECT.

19. In conclusion mention must be made of the occasional placing (18) of the predicate at the head of the sentence in verse, and

occasionally in literary prose, for the sake of imparting a colouring of vividness to the style. Instances are afforded by:

Yelled on the view the opening pack. SCOTT, *Lady, I, iii, 1*.

A hundred dogs bay'd deep and strong. | Clatter'd a hundred steeds along. *ib.*, I, iii, 6.

Muttered the distant thunder dread. *id.*, *Bridal of Trierm.*, III, v.

Fell like a cannon-shot, | Burst like a thunderbolt, | Crash'd like a hurricane, |

... Brave Inniskillens and Greys. TEN., *Charge of the Heavy Brig.*, III.

Another switch clicked. Came the sound of the turning of a key. *Westm. Gaz.*, 1925, 13/6, 180 *b*.

## INVERSION IN EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

20. a) Contrary to Dutch usage, inversion is not the rule in exclamatory sentences. Thus *Welk een sterk man is hij!* or *Wat is hij een sterk man!* *What a strong man he is!* Similarly there is no inversion in:

What a licking I shall get when it's over! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 45.

What a head-ache that mixed punch has given me! *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 134.

How young both looked! MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 126.

- b) Also when occurring subordinately, exclamations as a rule, have the regular word-order, thus in:

It was in vain that the fond mother urged how constant Arthur's occupations and studies were. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 214

- c) Inverted word-order is, however, common enough in a variety of exclamatory sentences that correspond to interrogative sentences of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3): 1) such as have a nominal predicate and open with *how* modifying an adjective, which is mostly placed in immediate succession to the latter, but may also have back-position; thus in:

i. \* How weary, stale, flat and unprofitable, | Seem to me all the uses of this world! SHAK., *Ham.*, I, 2, 134.

How persuasive are his words! how charming will poverty be with him! SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.

How surprised will the pretty prude be at seeing herself in a family of men! SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXI, 322.

\*\* Oh, how dull art thou! LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

How grateful should those be who dwell in peace at home! BUCHANAN, *Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 19.

What a poor fool was I! EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXXIV, 301,

ii. But if such was her expectation, how was she disappointed, when Mrs. Wilkins produced the little infant! FIELD., *Tom. Jones*, I, Ch. IV, 4.

- 2) Such as have a verbal predicate and open with *how* or *what* modifying the object or a modifier of the object; e. g.:

i. How many old recollections, and how many dormant sympathies, does Christmas time awaken! DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 245.

ii. Ah! my soul, what a life will we then live! SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.

What a merry time had they! HAWTHORNE, *The Snow-Image* (Sel. Short Stor., I, 80).



What solemn, chords does it now strike upon my heart! DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. III, 36.

3) Such as have a verbal predicate and open with *how* modifying an adverb or the main verb of the predicate; e. g.:

i. How despicably have I acted! JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXVI, 206.

ii. How would we wish that Heaven had left us still! BAIN, H. E. Gr., 316.

d) Exclamatory sentences corresponding to interrogative sentences of the first kind always have inverted word-order (Ch. VII, a).

"Oh wouldn't it be fun!" said Humphrey. Miss MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood*, Ch. XI (KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 2055).

"Know it!" — said Scrooge. "Was I apprenticed here!" DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, (ib.).

## INVERSION IN OPTATIVE AND HORTATIVE SENTENCES.

21. a) Inversion is regularly observed in optative sentences with (20) *may*; thus in:

May you be happy! SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 300.

Ah! mayest thou ever be what thou art! BAIN, H. E. Gr., 316.

May every blessing wait on my Beverley! SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3.

b) In optative sentences without *may* we find inversion only when they contain no object; thus in:

So be it! Perish India! SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1806.

Long live the King! SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 1, 3.

Suffice it to say. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 70.

Compare: God save the Queen! God bless you! God forbid! (The object is understood.)

c) Inversion is regularly observed in: 1) hortative sentences in which an exhortation, appeal, etc. is addressed to the *you* included in *we*, as in:

Sit we down, | And let us hear Bernardo speak of this! SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 1, 34.

Part we in friendship from your land! SCOTT, *Marm.*, VI, XIII.

2) conditional and concessive clauses that have the form of optative or hortative sentences; e. g.:

i. Were Richard mine, his power were mine. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1806.

What would you have of us? | Human life? | Were it our nearest, | Were it our dearest, | (Answer, O answer) | We give you his life. TEN., *Victim*, I.

ii. Home is home, be it ever so homely! PROV.

## INVERSION IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

22. a) We regularly find inversion: 1) in interrogative sentences of (21) the first kind (Ch. VII, 3), as in *Is the moon full to night? Shall you be ready by eight o'clock?*

Note. Thus also in questions repeated from a preceding speaker (KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 1923, 2053), as in:

"What do I think of Lucy Roberts?" she said, repeating her son's words in a tone of evident dismay. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXIV, 326.

2) in interrogative sentences of the second kind in which the subject is not an interrogative word, nor preceded by an interrogative word, as in *Where does he live? When was he born? To whom did you give the apple?*

b) Questions of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3) have the declarative word-order if the subject is an interrogative word, or is preceded by an interrogative word, as in *Who gave you that book? Which boy caused so much trouble? How many people went to church?*

c) Conditional clauses that have the form of interrogative sentences always have inversion (Ch. I, 67, d; Ch. XVII, 78); thus: God remains, | Even did men forsake you. BROWN., Soul's Trag., I.

23. a) Subordinate questions, whether answering to questions of the (22) first or the second kind, mostly have the declarative word-order; thus in: *I don't know if I can come. I don't know where he lives.* Similarly in:

There rushed towards Stenai ... some thirty thousand National Guards, to inquire what the matter was. CARL., French Rev., II, II, Ch. IV, 70.

I can't tell what his motive was. THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. V, 44.

She did not know how far Woodview was from the station. G. MOORE, Esth. Wat., Ch. I, 4.

He began to ask me very shrewdly what my business was. STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (196).

b) Sometimes we find inversion in subordinate questions with an interrogative word as the nominal part of the predicate, and a noun-subject, thus in:

My sister asked me what was the matter, and why I was so pale. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.

I don't know what is a blizzard. PUNCH.

Naturally this arrangement is frequent when the subject is of some length or is furnished with lengthy modifiers; thus in:

I asked him plainly what sort of a man was Mr. Balfour of the Shaws. STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (196).

c) In other kinds of subordinate questions inversion is distinctly unusual; thus in:

I think you asked me what did the letter mean? DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXIV, 296. (perhaps meant as a direct question).

I asked my mother which of my cousins he was, and what did she mean by calling him a hero. MRS. CRAIK, A Hero, 4.

d) Queries of the second kind on which an opinion is asked in an appended question, have the subject placed before the predicate, when the latter question is placed parenthetically in the body of the former. Thus *How much do you owe, do you think?* becomes *How much do you think you owe?* The change of

word-order is due to the fact that the latter part of the main question has been converted into a subordinate statement, which might be preceded by *that*, the interrogative word being shifted to the secondary question.

How much do you think you know? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 194.

What do you think she did? *id.*, Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 174.

Whatever do you think Pot has done with his cake? ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*. Compare: How much was the reward did you say? POE (*JESP.*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 242).

It's sport to you, but what is it to the poor, think you. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XII, 131.

### INVERSION IN IMPERATIVE SENTENCES WITH THE SUBJECT EXPRESSED.

24. a) Inversion is regularly observed in imperative sentences with (23) the subject expressed in which *to do* is used (Ch. I, 67, c).

Do not you do that! SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 506.

Well, do you go, at any rate first ... Do you go down, and tell him this, quite coolly, remember —. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. VI, 97.

He must want a secretary. He would be shy at an offer of one from me. Do you hint it, if you get a chance. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. III, 62.

b) Usage is divided when *to do* is absent. In the higher literary style the weak-stressed pronoun is placed after the imperative; in ordinary language, however, the tendency is to put the usually strong-stressed pronoun before the imperative.

i. \* Look thou to that. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 316.

Go and do thou likewise. Bible, Luke, X, 37.

Vex not thou the poet's mind | With thy shallow wit. TEN., *The Poet's Mind*, I.

\*\* Barnaby, take you that other candle, and go before. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XII, 50 a.

I think I'd better get out and give her (sc. the boat) a bit of a tow. Take you hold of the tiller. BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. VII, 70.

ii. You let that dog alone! SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1806.

You take my advice: give him a pint of ale before you start! JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

Never you dare to darken my doorstep again! DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 60.

c) Inversion is regular in the now vulgar *hark'ee! look'ee!* (Ch. XXXII, 10, e), and in the colloquial *mind you! mark you! look you!*

i. "Why, look'ee, sister", said Western, "I do believe you have as much (sc. knowledge of the world) as any woman. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, VI, Ch. II, 87 b.

ii. But, look you, Cassius, | The angry spot doth glow on Cæsar's brow. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 182.

But there's such a thing as security, look you. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 106.

Mark you, in my opinion, though it is bad to be misunderstood, it is also bad to misunderstand. BALFOUR (*Speech*).

## ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE THAT MAY STAND BETWEEN THE SUBJECT AND THE PREDICATE.

25. Adnominal adjuncts or clauses modifying the subject, naturally, (24) take precedence of the predicate; thus in:

Very soon after the promulgation of this celebrated act, the new bride of Philip, Anne of Austria, passed through the Netherlands, on her way to Madrid. MOTLEY, *Rise*, III, Ch. V, 437 *a*.

The broad, clear river Neva, so beautiful in summer, covered with the shipping of all nations, and dotted with gay pleasure-boats, is then a sheet of ice, and becomes the fashionable drive, the most crowded part of the whole city. STOFF, *Handl.*, I, 51.

26. Also adverbial adjuncts or clauses, even when of great length (25) and very numerous, are often placed between the subject and the predicate (2, *d*); e. g.:

Montigny, accordingly, in a letter enclosed in a loaf of bread — the last, as he hoped, which he should break in prison — was instructed to execute his plan and join his confederates at Hernani. MOTLEY, *Rise*, III, Ch. V, 438 *a*.

In short, the Cardinal, little by little, during the last year of his residence in the Netherlands, was enabled to spread a canvas before his sovereign's eyes, in which certain prominent figures were represented as driving a whole nation, against its own will, into manifest revolt. *ib.*, II, Ch. IV, 200 *b*.

He at the same time, and with equal propriety, pointed out that there are no terms negotiable as between Government and Government. *Times*.

27. Save for liturgical language and verse, objects are now rarely (26) found to stand between subject and predicate. Compare BAIN, *Comp.*, 300; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1820.

Though yet of Hamlet our dear brother's death | The memory be green, and that it us befitted | To bear our hearts in grief [etc.]. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 2.

With this Ring I thee wed, with my body I thee worship, and with all my worldly goods I thee endow. *Book of Com. Pray.*

I, N., take thee, N., to my wedded wife ... till death us do part. *ib.*

For, if you force employ, by heaven I swear [etc.]. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, IV, 5, (310).

Now fades the glimmering landscape on the sight, | And all the air a solemn stillness holds. GRAY, *Elegy*, II.

God the traitor's hope confound! TEN., *Hands all round*, 10.

A fair tale might I tell to you | Of Sigard who the dragon slew. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *The Fostering of Aslaugh*, 334 *a*.

Note *a*) The older practice has been preserved in certain proverbs, such as:

Who dainties love shall beggars prove. Handsome is that handsome does.

*β*) Also the placing of the prepositional object before its head-word, as in the following examples, is now rare:

O'erjoy'd was he to find | That though on pleasure she was bent, | She had a frugal mind, COWPER, *John Gilpin*, 31.

And then the lady, on hospitable cares intent, left them again to themselves. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, I, Ch. VII, 97.

28. *a*) Unharmonious is the placing of clauses or long word-groups (27) between a pronoun-subject and the predicate. Thus it is more



euphonious to say *I was told that, as soon as her task should be finished, she would come to him* than *I was told that she, as soon etc.*; or again *I am afraid that, as a foreigner, I should overpraise my country* than *I am afraid that I, as a foreigner* etc. The reason is that, through being separated from the finite verb, the pronoun would obtain unnatural stress.

In the following examples the arrangement is in accordance with this principle:

Arthur Pendennis's schoolfellows as the Grey Friars School state that, as a boy, he was in no ways remarkable either as a dunce or as a scholar. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 25.

"Figs" was the fellow whom he despised most, and with whom, though always abusing him, and sneering at him, he scarcely ever condescended to hold personal communication. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 42.

Also when the subject is a noun, this arrangement would mostly be preferable.

The day of parting arrived and, followed by those whom his example had inspired, the Chevalier left his home. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 26.

b) Disregard of the principle, which imparts to the pronoun what SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 1895 and § 2128) calls break-stress, is, however, common enough. Thus we have it in:

i. They both had rich brown hair, which they, like their mother, wore simply parted over the forehead. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. III, 24.

I have never named Mr. Hayter, the rector, because I, as a well-to-do and happy young woman, never came in contact with him. Mrs. GASK, *Cranf.*, Ch. IX, 176.

A survey of English nouns would indeed be deficient which should omit that curl, stunt, slang element to which we, as a nation, are so remarkably prone. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 374.

Humanity is not averse from showing the Creator how things should have been done. We are quite kind and tolerant about it, realizing that since we, with our experience, were not present at the Creation, it was quite natural that a few practical details should have been overlooked. TRUTH, No. 1802, 83 a.

ii. Lady Ritchie has, as a daughter of Thackeray, a boundless claim upon our regard. BOOKMAN, No. 246, 283.

c) Also the placing of a pronoun-subject before the finite verb separated from the rest of the predicate by a lengthy word-group, may have a more or less jarring effect; thus in:

It's Fate's doing ... that I am driven to say here what I had as a schoolboy sworn should be said whenever we should meet again. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 69.

## THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE COMPONENT PARTS OF A COMPLEX PREDICATE.

29. When the predicate consists of more verbs than one, these are (28) arranged thus:



	<i>a.</i>	<i>b.</i>	<i>c.</i>	<i>d.</i>
two verbs:	finite verb,	participle,		
		or		
		infinitive.		
three verbs:	finite verb,	infinitive,	participle.	
four verbs:	finite verb,	infinitive,	participle,	participle.
I have seen the show. I shall (may, will, etc.) see the show.				
I might (should, etc.) have seen the show.				
The show might (should, etc.) have been visited.				
This arrangement is seldom departed from in Modern English, even in verse. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1828) quotes:				
A strong tyrant who invaded has our country. SPENSER.				

### ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE THAT MAY STAND BETWEEN THE COMPONENT PARTS OF A COMPLEX PREDICATE.

30. *a)* In sentences with inverted word-order the subject is normally (29) placed after the finite verb of the predicate; thus in:

High sparks of honour in thee have I found. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1814.

Never, not even under the tyranny of Laud, had the condition of the Puritans been so deplorable. MACAULAY.

But when the subject is accompanied by lengthy or numerous modifiers, this arrangement would be inconvenient, and the whole predicate is, accordingly, placed before it; thus in:

At the head of the preponderating party in the India House had long stood a powerful, able, and ambitious director of the name of Sullivan. MAC., Clive, (527 *a*).

Dear is bought the honey that is licked off the thorn. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 13 *b*.

And so is fulfilled the story how the sheep-dog went out to be married. *ib.*, Ch. I, 14 *b*.

*b)* The subject regularly stands between the verbal and the finite verb in sentences in which the former is placed in front-position, as in:

i. For die I shall! SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1828.

Yield he would not till he was killed outright. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 14 *a*.

Tell him that fight I must, and tell him that shrive me he must, and that quickly. *ib.*, Ch. III, 28 *a*.

ii. Outlawed I shall be before the week is out. *ib.*, Ch. I, 13 *a*.

31. Adverbial adjuncts are often placed between the members of (30) a complex predicate, especially when they are considered as less important than the other elements of the sentence (2). If the predicate is composed of more than two verbs, we find such adverbial adjuncts mostly after the finite verb, sometimes before the last verb. For details see below.

- i. The country is by foreign invaders called Wallachia. EARLE, *Phil.*<sup>5</sup>, § 7.  
 ii. The revolt of Granada had at last, after a two years' struggle, been subdued. MOTLEY, *Rise*, III, Ch. VI, 457 a.  
 I should never have thought of that. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1846.  
 iii. The map of Asia has been carefully revised according to the latest information. *Times*.  
 The offer had been gratefully accepted. *ib.*

Sometimes these adverbial adjuncts are very lengthy and numerous.

He had, at the age when the mind and body are in their highest perfection, and when the first effervescence of boyish passions had subsided, been recalled from his wanderings to wear a crown. STOFF, *Handl.*, III, D, § 1.

### PLACE OF THE NOMINAL PART OF THE PREDICATE.

32. a) As a rule we find the nominal part of the predicate in immediate succession to the copula; thus in *It is hot here. In after years he became a rich man.* For further examples see Ch. I.  
 b) Frequently, however, the order is reversed; i. e. the nominal is often placed in front-position for emphasis. See the examples in 15 and in 20, c. In imperative sentences this arrangement is uncommon; thus in:

Neither a borrower nor a lender be! SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 3, 75.

c) Adverbial sentence-modifiers are not seldom found between the copula and the nominal, especially when they are of minor importance; e. g.:

The Jesuits were at the time in very bad odour in France. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 223.

Laura saw with alarm that the dear friend became every year more languid. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXI, 221.

He proved, however, unworthy of his practical partner. MRS. ALEXANDER, *For Her Sake*, I, Ch. III, 42.

### PLACE OF OBJECTS.

33. The ordinary place of objects, save for the case when they have front-position (11—14, 39), is immediately after the verb or adjective to which they belong. Practically this comes to the general rule that the placing of adverbial adjuncts between the predicate and the object is avoided as much as possible (3, b). This has been done in:

We met your brother yesterday. Did you meet my brother yesterday? We talked to your brother a few minutes ago.

We in England don't much like the swarming and rapidly increasing Jewish element among us. *Times*.

Ever judge of men by their professions. BROWNING, *The Soul's Tragic*, II.

34. a) When an adverbial adjunct is placed between the verb and its object, this is mostly done owing to its being subservient to

the other elements of the sentence, especially the object itself (2, *a*). Compare *He heard again the noise on the stairs* with *He heard the noise on the stairs again*, and *He again heard the noise on the stairs*, and *Again he heard the noise on the stairs*; and observe the relatively weak stress of *again* in the first example. Prepositional objects, as a rule, bear separation better than non-prepositional, being mostly less closely connected with the verb than the latter. It is not difficult to account for the separation in the following examples:

i. He had, however, unfortunately at all times, a craving for wine. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 32.

What, if Owen Fitzgerald should take from him everything! TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXV 437.

He received from his hearers a great deal of applause. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 57

The Russians had made of Sebastopol another Moscow. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 159.

We are still ready to consider favourably any reasonable proposal. *Times*.

ii. He belonged now to the world everlasting. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. XIV, 134.

We had talked again and again of this old chapel. SWEET, *Old Chapel*. They joined for twelve years with the colours. *Times*.

For illustration see also below 49.

*b*) Separation is practically unavoidable when the object is accompanied by lengthy modifiers, is a subordinate clause, or is made up of two or more elements, as in:

i. The English functionaries at Calcutta had already received from home strict orders not to accept presents from native princes. MAC., *Clive*, (529 *b*).

He carried out with vigour Lord William Bentinck's Act for the suppression of the Sutte. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 175. (= the immolation of a Hindu widow on the funeral pile with her husband's body).

ii. Both he and the Marquis say openly that it is not right to shed blood for matters of faith. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 200 *a*.

iii. I canvassed carefully every border bed and detached flowering plant. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 45.

35. *a*) It stands to reason that such adverbs as *about*, *back*, *by*, *down*, *in*, *off*, *on*, *out*, *over*, *through*, *up*, etc., which often form a kind of unit with the preceding verb (Ch. XLVI, 55), are usually placed before the object when the latter is a noun or one of the longer pronouns, such as *each other*, *one another*, *something*, *somebody*, etc. This is shown by the following examples, alphabetically arranged, with group-verbs containing:

*about*, as in: The change threatened to bring about an improvement in the position of woman. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 7.

*back*, as in: This current which baffled and beat back this fleet. O. E. D., I. To keep back dispatches. *ib.*, 10.

She put back the boy with the same chilling and stern severity of aspect and manner which had so often before repressed him. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 157.

Take back the gifts, or I shall pray you to take back your boy. *ib.*, iv, Ch. I, 156. *down*, as in: What would break down an ordinary man at half his age, only serves to brighten him up. *Punch*.

Why did you make that elaborate and utterly ineffective attempt to cough down the cousin? *H. J. BYRON, Our Boys*, I, 12.

Take down your pant! *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 9.

I wrote down my name for them all. *Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 54.

*in*, as in: Bring in some more coals! *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 1843.

I saw him carrying in the unlucky Jack. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal.*, Ch. X, 103.

To give in one's adhesion to a cause or party. *WEBST., Dict.*, s.v. *adherence*.

The head of the monastery ... has the power ... to allow the monks to walk and speak with each other beyond the white walls that hem in the garden of the monastery. *HICHENS, Gard. of Al.*, II, v, Ch. XXVI, 218.

The boy was putting in the horse. *CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm.*, I, 260.

*off*, as in: The celebrated Mr. Pecksniff carried off the premium. *DICK., Ch. uz.*, Ch. XXXV, 279 *b*.

"And how", asked Mr. Pecksniff, drawing off his gloves [etc.]? *ib.*, Ch. III, 18 *a*.

They've not left off work yet. *HARDY, Tess.*, I, Ch. II, 17.

I'll put off this business till to-morrow. *TROL., Castle Richm.*, Ch. XIX, 325.

This set off his other attractions. *DICK., Ch. uz.*, Ch. XX, 173 *a*.

She shook off her temporary sadness. *HARDY, Tess.*, I, Ch. III, 19.

*on*, as in: She began to tie on a clean apron. *Mrs. GASK., Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 256.

*out*, as in: He brought out his flute in three pieces. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. V, 38 *a*.

I called out her name. *THACK., Den. Duv.*, Ch. VIII, (292).

Oliver and Nature fought out the point between them. *DICK., Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 20.

Pen held out his hand, and Smirke wrung it silently. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 167.

I looked out several of my dresses this morning. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 309.

They sought out a cheap tavern. *DICK., Ch. uz.*, Ch. XXXV, 278 *b*.

They sent out messengers to see to the carriage. *id.*, Ch. XLII, 330 *a*.

Mother and I in our pew, and Captain Pearson in the Rector's, were the only people who sat out the sermon. *THACK., Den. Duv.*, Ch. VIII, (287).

The baby stretched out its little arms to come to her. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal.*, Ch. X, 109.

He took out his watch. *id.*, *A Hero*, 12.

*over*, as in: Bell suggested to him that some ladies had incomes of their own, and that he might in that way get over the difficulty. *TROL., Small House*, I, Ch. XX, 232.

The physicians had given over the patient. *WEBST., Dict.*

His decision to hold over his reply is stated to be due to the fact that he has received many like communications from different parts of the country. *Manch. Guard.*, 8/10, 1926, 281 *c*.

We knocked over the forms. *SWEET, Old Chapel*.

(She entreated him) to look over her want of 'cleverness.' *GALSW., Freeland's*, Ch. XXV, 225.

Dobbin after reading over the letter [etc.]. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 257.

Captain Shaw took over the command. *Graph*.

You'll talk over the governor, won't you? *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXV, 377.

As he thought over the matter in bed, he made up his mind that he would accept Lady De Courcy's invitation. *TROL., Small House*, I, Ch. XII, 131.

I must think over the matter fully before I can decide what I had better say to Bell about it. *ib.*, I, Ch. XIX, 226.



He could have thrown over the De Courcys without a struggle. *ib.*, I, Ch. XII, 131.  
They asked me for the loan of a little cash to tide over present difficulties.

MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. VI, 73.

Mrs. Dale, when she was left alone, began to turn over the question in her mind. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XIX, 228.

I turned over page after page. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 340.

*round*, as in: The Arabs handed round fruit. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, III, Ch. X, 260.

*through*, as in: He sees through all my manoeuvres. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 183.

*to*, as in: They must put to more strength. Bible, *Eccles.*, X, 10.

Can Honour set to a leg? SHAK., *Henry IV, A*, V, 1, 133.

Agatha with this injunction, bounced out of the room, slamming to the door so as to make Miss Judith start from her seat. MAR., *Children of the New For.*, Ch. II, 15.

*up*, as in: Some of the Caribs even ate up each other. WALT. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XV, 41.

He is supposed to fit up a ten horse-power steam-engine. Graph.

Holding up his finger. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 8*b*.

He muffles up his face. SHER, *Riv.*, V, 3.

Having packed up her luggage. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XVI, 131.

When he had put up his horse. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. V, 37*b*.

He reined up his horse. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11*b*.

I only stirred up the fire. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 144.

Take up that basket! HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. I, 7.

The noise woke up our reverend preceptor. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

*b*) When the above arrangement is departed from, this is mostly owing to a shifting of the main interest in the speaker's thoughts, i. e. when the notion expressed by the adverb is more prominent in his mind than that of the preceding object, the former is mentioned after the latter, in accordance with the principle laid down in 2, *a*. Naturally this is usual only when the object and the adverb represent two notions that admit of being thought of separately. This is possible in many cases that the adverb has its full local meaning. Thus it is easy to see the difference between *I have brought back your umbrella* and *I have brought your umbrella back*, or between *He quietly turned over the paper* and *He quietly turned the paper over*, or to account for the different placing of the adverb in the following examples:

i. He had on a kind of short cloak. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (118),

Clara had on thin shoes. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. VI, 38.

ii. She had already her spectacles on. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 108.

Or for the different arrangements occurring alternately in:

Mr. Round had declared once or twice that, if Mr. Mason encouraged Dockwraith to interfere, he, Round, would throw the matter up. But professional men cannot very well throw up their business, and Round went on, although Dockwraith did interfere, and although Mr. Mason did encourage him. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XIII, 161.

Nor is it difficult to account for the arrangement in the following examples, in which the notion expressed by the adverb is, contrasted with that indicated by another adverb; thus that of:



*back* in: Try to force this bolt back. O. E. D., 2.

*by* in: Without another look Malloring passed the three by, and walked back to the house. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXVII, 253.

*in* and *out* in: This lunatic, in letting Scrooge's nephew out, had let two other people in. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 9.

*off* in: He pulled his dog off. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

*up* in: We had hardly time to put the forms up again. SWEET, *Old Chapel*. Do you mind putting your window up? PUNCH.

But also when the local meaning of the adverb is faded or unrecognizable, it is often placed after the object owing to its relative importance in the speaker's thoughts; thus in the following examples with:

*down*, as in: He laughed the idea down. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XL, 314 a.

A celebrated journalist being asked by Lord Brougham how he proceeded when he wanted to write a man down, replied that no man could write a man down, except himself. LIT. WORLD

*out*, as in: She was not crying her eyes out. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. XIII, 438.

They heard Mrs Lupin out. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 334 a.

Mr. Toots found Paul out after a time. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 107.

They had had their laugh out. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, I, 17.

I spoke my heart out. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. V, (251).

She wanted to think something out. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, III, Ch. XIII, 322.

The foundations of these three lives Frances Trollope had with her own hands dug and laid; it was fitting that she should rest out her days beneath their shelter. SADLEIR, *Trol.*, VI, I, 88.

*over*, as in: Publicity rendered it impossible to look the freak over. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 194.

Twice a year (he) would go to London and pay the moneys over. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. V, (243). (Dutch = om het geld af te dragen.)

You mean to say ... that you are going to throw that young girl over? TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. III, 35.

No one would throw Nedda over. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XV, 127.

*round*, as in: The boy has actually talked the woman round. THACK., *Pend.*, I Ch. VII, 83.

*through*, as in: To carry a project through. WEBST., *Dict.*

*to*, as in: He banged the door to. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 25.

Before I had time to add a further protest, he pulled the door to, and I heard him lock me in from the outside. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. III, (203).

*up*, as in: Having knocked the people up. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLII, 330.

Note a) The requirements of the metre may be responsible for the varied arrangement in:

"Take the fool away" — "Do you not hear, fellows? Take away the lady." SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 42—43.

Pull off, pull off the brooch of gold | And fling the diamond necklace by. TEN., *Lady Clare*, X.

β) Sometimes the arrangement appears to be a matter of mere chance. Thus it would be difficult to account for the varied ordering of object and adverb in the following pair of examples:

i. You will live out your life like a man. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 125.

ii. The Disagreeable Man went back to the mountains to live his life out there. *ib.*, II, Ch. V, 128. (Perhaps *out* belongs to *there*.)

γ) Occasionally also the placing of the adverb after the object, or vice versa, seems to go against the evident purport of the sentence; thus, perhaps, in:

i. Had she not so brought her child up, and put her forth into the world? TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XVI, 277.

She was heavy laden ... and did not know where to lay her burden down. id., *Orl. Farm.*, II, Ch. XXV, 335.

For your sake I would lay my life down. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. VIII, 71.

"Go upstairs old man. Kirsteen's anxious." — "Tod sat down and took his boots off." GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXX, 280.

ii. The boy had almost talked over his mother. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 80.

δ) In the following example the arrangement adopted is, apparently, due to that in the preceding and following part of the sentence, where the object is a pronoun:

She took the girl's brother by the hand ever so long, and then she threw him over. And she'll throw the girl over, too, and send her back to the place she came from. And then she'll throw you over. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXXV, 271.

ε) Occasionally a material semantic difference can be discerned between the two arrangements; thus between *Take back the gifts* (= Dutch *Neem de giften terug*) and *Take the gifts back* (= Dutch *Breng de giften terug*).

### 36. In not a few cases the arrangement is practically fixed.

a) The placing of the adverb after the object would seem to be impracticable: 1) when the combination has the object in common with another verb, whether or no attended by an adverb, as in:

She could not believe that it was her duty to throw over and abandon a woman whom she loved. TROL., *Belton Estate*, Ch. XVIII, 237.

2) when the verb is attended by an indirect object placed before the adverb, as in:

She held me out a box. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, X, Ch. IV, 300.

From every town we stop at, he sends her off a present. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. VII, 137.

Sir Pylcher himself poured me out a glass. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVII, 119.

She doles me out small confidences. WILLIAMSON, *Set in Silver*, I, Ch. V, 67.

Note. A *to*-adjunct may either divide the adverb from the object, or be placed in end-position, verb and adverb being placed in succession; e. g.:

i. He flung over to the latter his parent's letter. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 257.

I shall pay over to you the sum of fifteen hundred pounds, as soon as the will has been proved. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. X, 118.

He held out to her the bag. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, III, Ch. XI, 283.

ii. He gave the letter back to her. TROL., *Orl. Farm.*, III, Ch. XXV, 323.

3) in a good many combinations, including not a few illustrated in 35, a. Special mention may here be made of certain combinations with:

*off*, as in: I threw off six hundred copies. BURNS, Let. to Dr. Moore, 55.  
*on*, as in: At length the magistrate put on a serious countenance. SWEET, Old Chapel.

If medical officers, who are employed to devote their whole time to public health, took on private practices, the temptation to expand the private at the expense of the public work would be very strong. Manch. Guard., 24/6, 1927, 483 *b*.

*out*, as in: "Stop!" exclaimed the Count, bringing out his tablets once more. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XV, 134.

The delay in bringing out the second part (sc. of this grammar) is due to a variety of causes. SWEET, N. E. Gr., II, Pref.

They teach them to ... throw out their chests. WELLS, Britl., I, Ch. II, § 10, 64.

*over*, as in: I thought you were tired last night when I saw that you had altogether given over dancing. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. III, 37.

*up*, as in: That Brown major had a trick of bringing up unpleasant topics. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 94.

I brushed up my recollections of the map of England. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. X, 104.

At length I plucked up spirit to go nearer him. Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero, 7.

They will have to rub up their English. Rev. of Rev., No. 196, 340 *b*.

I told him I had thrown up my berth at the Bank. STOF., Handl., I, 85.

*b*) Conversely the placing of an adverb before the object would not seldom be at variance with idiom: 1) It appears to be practically impossible when the adverb is attended by an intensive or some other modifier, placed either before or after it, as in:

He had ... stated his intention of making such a journey with the view of "freshening the old gentleman up a bit". TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XV, 256.  
 The horses threw the carriage crashing over. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLII, 328 *a*.  
 I read the will right through. BESANT, Bell of St. Paul's, II 37.  
 You cannot carry a clock about with you. GÜNTH., Leerboek.

2) It is distinctly objectionable when it might give rise to the former being apprehended as a preposition. This applies especially to the written or printed language; in the spoken language a preposition can, in most cases, be easily told from a uniform adverb by its weaker stress. It may be for the above reason that back-position is given to:

*in*, in: He smuggled wine in. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 41.

*over*, in: "It's old Lady Lufton's doings," said Mr. Roberts, trying to laugh the matter over. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XXI, 225.

In this way they talked the matter over very comfortably. *id.*, Orl. Farm III, Ch. I, 6.

In that dismal, wakeful night, after reading the letter, I had thought her character and story over. THACK., Lovel, Ch. VI, (115).

He seemed to be thinking the matter over. SWEET, Old Chapel. (Compare, however, the examples in 35, *a*.)

*through*, in: There is no case at all for rushing changes through before Parliament has had time to consider them. Manch. Guard., 5/3, 1926, 182 *b*.

Note. With some combinations of a similar nature, however, the arrangement adverb — object appears to be the usual one; thus *to pass*

*by; to pass over*, according to the O. E. D., s.v. *pass* 61, c; and 67, e, where the following examples are given:

That Eadward might rightly pass by an incompetent minor. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, III, xiii, 278.

He does not think it would be right to pass over his son. W. E. NORRIS, *Misadventure*, VIII.

In passing it may be observed that the present writer does not endorse the view held in the "Dictionary" that "the construction can be analysed as that of an intransitive verb with a preposition and its object." Compare, however, Ch. XLVI, 56, Obs. IV; Ch. LX, 124.

3) The alternative arrangement would be impracticable in the case of the following examples with:

*about*, as in: If Mrs. Smiley thinks that I'm going to change my pants, or put myself about for her. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, XV, 187.

*over*, as in: Don't you know how to throw a man over? THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 128.

Was it needful ... that she should throw her friend over? TROL., *Belton Estate*, Cn. XVIII, 227.

He had got his fencing over. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. III.

*through*, as in: I read the letter through again. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. I, 15.

The subject treated in this and the preceding sections has been discussed in ample detail, and furnished with a wealth of illustration, by W. A. VAN DONGEN, Sr. in *Neophilologus*, IV, iv, 322–353.

37. a) When the object is a personal or demonstrative pronoun, the indefinite *one*, and also, in the majority of cases when it is a reflexive pronoun, the above adverbs are normally placed after it; thus in:

i. I would rather wait him out, and starve him out than fight him out. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 270.

Try to find him out, boys; hunt him up; run him down; surely a stray word, or a chance look may guide you to him. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 64.

ii. We must make this up to you. LYTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. I, 40.

Talk that out with the girl. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. X, 131.

iii. I know the ways of wives: they set one on to abuse their husbands. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVII, 133.

My visit to three different types of institution recently bears this out. *Manch. Guard.*, 24/6, 1927, 490 a.

iv. A man who has written himself down. WEBST., *Dict.*

When he had quite wept himself out. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 255.

The English were at once to take themselves off out of Afghanistan. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 51.

b) Also this arrangement is in accordance with the principle mentioned in 2, a: the above pronouns being normally weak-stressed. When they are strong-stressed, especially when they are contrasted with another (pro)noun-object, they are placed after the object like an ordinary noun-object, as in:

"The lady bade take away the fool; therefore, I say again, take her away." — "Sir, I bade them take away you." SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 60.

Up from my cabin, | My sea-gown scarf'd about me, in the dark | Groped I  
to find out them. *id.*, *Hamlet*, V, 2, 14.

If you want to ease your mind by blowing up somebody, come out into the  
court and blow up me. *DICK.*, *Pickwick*, Ch. XX, 176.

"He's a very good young man, and always lives with his mother." — "It shall  
be my business to find out that." *TROL.*, *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. XXV, 347.  
I think I drew out you before you drew out me. *HARDY*, *Return*, I, Ch. VI, 75.

**Note.** In the following example *over* is not an adverb, but a prepo-  
sition:

Peregrine again got up, and standing with his back to the fire, thought over  
it all again. *TROL.*, *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. IX, 119. (*thought it all over again*  
would express a more intense mental activity.)

38. Also many adverbial words and word-groups which form with (36)  
the verb a kind of unit, sometimes divide the verb from its  
object, when the latter is a noun accompanied by lengthy  
modifiers (161); e. g.:

That gentleman put into execution his projected foreign tour. *THACK.*, *Pend.*,  
II, Ch. XXIV, 257.

They had at heart the young illustrious exile's cause. *id.*, *Esmond*, III, Ch.  
VII, 377.

But we that have but span-long lives must ever bear in mind our limited time  
for acquisition. *SPENC.*, *Education*, Ch. I, 12 b.

You go back to a fuller life, to put to account those talents which no one  
realizes more than I do. *BEATR. HAR.*, *Ships*, I, Ch. XX, 108.

Some profit may yet be plucked out of the Hungarian horse episode, if we  
take to heart the lesson of our dearly-bought experience. *Times*.

We desire to place on record our emphatic and indignant protest against these  
baseless slanders. *Times*.

39. The object often has front-position when it denotes the person(s) (37)  
or thing(s) thought of before all the other concepts mentioned  
in the sentence (14); thus in:

i. Silver and gold have I none. Me he restored unto mine office, and him  
he hanged. *BAIN*, *Compass*, 300.

Hundreds of pounds had he given Ned Strong. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch.  
XXIII, 251.

ii. To the brave peasants of the West he owed it to show that they had not  
poured forth their blood for a leader unworthy of their attachment. *MAC.*,  
*History*, II, Ch. V, 186.

Of the translation we need only say that it is such as might be expected. *id.*,  
*Popes*, (541 b).

With many of your strictures I concur. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 400.  
To birds and animals I was always a friend. *HICHENS*, *Garden of Adonis*, II, v,  
Ch. XXVI, 223.

Thus naturally often in exclamatory (20) and interrogative sentences  
(22), as in:

O Faulkland, how many tears have you cost me! *SHER.*, *Riv.*, V, I.  
Which house did he sell?

**Note** the ironical *much* (+ noun) (Ch. XL, 93, Obs. IV) in:

Much good will a dead daub do us! *LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IX, 55.

Much you know of east winds! *DICK.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXX, 262.



Much good may it do you! Much good it has ever done you! *id.*, *Christm. Car.*, I, 7.

40. Obs. I. In a sentence containing a quotation the latter mostly represents the most important part of the speaker's communication. Hence it is often placed in front-position (12); thus in:

"I hope Mr. Hoskins will stay as long as he pleases," said my wife with spirit. *THACK., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 109.

Quotations are, however, not seldom split up into two parts, one, not always the more important, preceding the head-clause, the other following it; thus in:

"Berghen will give us no aid," he wrote, "despite of all the letters we send him." *MOTLEY, Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 200 *a.*

"Well," says I, smiling, "she may part with as much Rosolio as she likes for me. I cede all my right." *THACK., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 105.

II. Also statements that are not meant as quotations are not seldom divided into two by a parenthetic clause; thus in:

There is a skeleton, they say, in every house. *KINGSLEY, Herew.*, Ch. I, 9 *a.*  
Mr. Rakovsky, the Soviet Ambassador, it is now certain, will leave Paris. *Manch. Guard.*, 7/10, 1927, 204 *d.*

The Court, it is understood, will go into mourning for three months. *ib.*, 28/10, 1927, 336 *a.*

41. The object has also front-position when it serves as a link connecting a sentence with a preceding sentence or clause (4).

His passions and prejudices had led him into great error. That error he determined to recant. *BAIN, H. E. Gr.*, 317.

The proudest royal houses are but of yesterday, when compared with the line of the Supreme Pontiffs. That line we trace back in an unbroken series, from the Pope who crowned Napoleon ... to the Pope who crowned Pepin. *MAC., Popes*, (542 *a.*)

With relative pronouns that are objects front-position is regular; thus in:

He was not a little pleased with the compliments which the governess paid him on his proficiency. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 94.

## WHICH OBJECT IS PLACED FIRST.

42. When a verb is accompanied by two objects, the object denoting a person is, as a rule, placed before the object denoting a thing. This arrangement follows from the fact that the person-object mostly has the weaker stress (2, *a*).

i. He handed him a paper. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 412.

I don't envy Sir Charles Mirabel his father-in-law. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXX, 322.

ii. The King of England offered to declare himself a Roman Catholic, and to join with France against Holland. *MAC., Hist.*, I, Ch. II, 203.

He condoled with the new emperor Rodolph on his father's death. *KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol.*, Ch II, 11 *b.*

This arrangement is never departed from when the thing-object is a clause, or when the thing-object has a preposition and the person-object has none.

i. You impress upon your waiter that you have ten minutes for dinner. DICK., *Household Words*.

He had been hurt by England's refusal to join with him in sustaining Poland against Russia. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIX, 259.

ii. He informed his brother-in-law of his departure. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 54.

I have charged each patient with three attendances. PUNCH.

43. The thing-object, however, is normally placed first: *a*) when it (41) is a (pro)noun, and less attention is claimed for it than for the person-object, as in: *He gave the apple to James (or to me), not to John.*

*b*) when both objects are personal pronouns, as in:

You tell it me often enough. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 223.

Lord Colchicum gave it to me. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 299.

For my own part I never had any ancestors. But I do not grudge them to you. GRAPH.

Such deviations from this arrangement as are illustrated by the following examples appear to be rare:

What, you take it ill I refuse your money? rather than that should be, give us it. WYCH., *Love in a Wood*, III, 2, (60).

Do not deny me them. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. IX, 94.

When, however, the person-object is a personal pronoun and the thing-object a demonstrative pronoun, the regular word-order is mostly observed, unless the former has to be thrown into relief; *e. g.*:

i. They have promised me this. RUDY. KIPL., *Jungle-Book*, 37.

You can't tell them that. JACOBS, *Light Freights*, *Hard Labour*.

ii. He wrote that to me. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 366.

*c*) when the person-object has another preposition than *to*, and the thing-object has none, as in:

He inflicted no punishment on the murderers. MAC., *Clive*, (514*a*).

Costigan pressed refreshment upon his guest. THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. XI, 115.

He has extorted money from him. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 355.

Ask no questions of our people. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 10.

France declares war on England. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § 3, 805.

Deviations from this rule are mostly due to the thing-object being emphasized, or being accompanied by lengthy modifiers, as in:

He never tried to force on me his views. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 178.

Note. Sometimes we find the ordinary arrangement reversed for no obvious reason; thus in:

I hand the first book to my mother. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 27*a*. (instead of: I hand my mother the first book.) He gave a Scripture lesson to the boys. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*. (instead of: He gave the boys a Scripture lesson.)

For discussion of this department of word-order see also. Ch. III, 38—39, where fuller illustration is given of the points raised in this place.

## PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS.

44. Apart from considerations of their relative weight or length, the (42) placing of adverbial adjuncts depends chiefly on: *a*) whether they modify a particular element of the sentence, or the sentence as a whole; *b*) the nature of the predicate.

## PLACE OF ADVERBIAL WORD-MODIFIERS.

45. Adverbial adjuncts that modify a particular element of the sentence (43) are generally placed either immediately before, or immediately after the element they belong to.

## PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF DEGREE.

46. Before the element they belong to we generally find adverbial (44) adjuncts of degree. We must distinguish between such as modify adjectives or adverbs, or equivalent word-groups, and such as modify verbs.
47. *a*) Adjectives and adverbs, or equivalent words or word-groups, (45) normally have their modifiers of degree standing before them; thus in:

i. \* That is nearly as bad. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 193.

There is no doubt that the Emperor was at times almost popular in the Netherlands. MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. I, 61 *b*.

\*\* He is quite the gentleman. He is fully master of the subject. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1836.

ii. \* Standing well back from the window, ... Owen Fitzgerald saw the fate of the hunted animal. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XXIV, 430.

John almost entirely confined his talk to her father. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XII, 124.

\*\* It's the historian's duty ... to hang the picture of his administration fully in the light. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 198 *b*.

Note. In the following examples the adverb of degree modifies the notion of number or quantity implied in the following word:

Scarce a leaf had fallen. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 162.

Nearly every one has fallen foul of the conclusion of the tale. SARAH GRAND, Our Man. Nat., Pref. 9.

*b*) A remarkable exception to the rule is *enough*, which regularly stands after the word it modifies when a predicative adjective, or an adverb, as in *The letter is long enough. You have slept long enough.*

Note *a*) Unlike the Dutch *genoeg*, *enough* is also used to modify an attributive adjective. In this function it is placed either after the noun, or after the adjective; thus in:

i. She used to have good eyes enough. Mrs. GASK., Mary Bart., Ch. XII, 136.

The bishop seems to be quiet man enough. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. VI, 39.  
 ii. He is a bad enough tenant. FRANCES H. BURNETT, Little Lord, Ch. VI, 113.

Naturally the place after the adjective is preferred when the noun is attended by other adjuncts, as in:

It was a bright enough little place of entertainment. STEVENSON (GÜNTH., Man., § 700).

The attack on the canal was a brave and determined enough effort on the part of the Germans. Times Weekly 26.4, 1918 (KRUIS., Handb., § 2130).

When modifying a predicative noun that has the value of an adjective and, consequently, stands without the indefinite article, *enough* always has post-position (Ch. XXIII, 16, c).

I am not clever enough; or not rogue enough. THACK., Es m., III, Ch. III, 344.

Also *indeed* (primarily a modal adverb) when used as an intensive, is always placed after the word(-group) it modifies. For illustration see also 74.

Essendean is a good place indeed, and I have been very happy there, but then I have never been anywhere else. STEV., Kidn., Ch. I, (191).

c) Certain intensives are not unfrequently placed after their head-word; thus:

*almost*, as in: "No one but God and I knows what is in my heart —" I hear it now so often, always almost. FICHENS, Gard. of Al., II, vi, Ch. XXVIII, 292. (Compare: I was contented nearly always, ib., II, v, Ch. XXVI, 219.)

Oh Gabriel, I don't think you ought to go away. You've been with me so long ... that it seems unkind almost. HARDY, Mad. Crowd, Ch. LVI, 463.  
*exceedingly*, as in: There came a lady to him through the wood, taller than he, or any mortal man, but beautiful exceedingly. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, I, I, 33.

In those days bread was precious, exceedingly. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 9.

His face, his figure, his mode of speech, his habit of thought, all were masculine exceedingly. Rev. of Rev., No. 195, 306 a.

*quite*, as in: I never knew anybody who was happy quite. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXII, 350.

His tone was very frank, and friendly quite. id., Es m., II, Ch. XIII, 259.

*rather*, as in: She was disposed rather to accuse the intolerable narrowness and the purblind consciousness of the society around her. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. IV, 24.

I feel confused rather. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 136.

*still*, as in: He came closer still. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, I, iv, 73.

*very*, as in: He was a handsome lad — very! MRS. CRAIK, Dom. Stories, IX, Ch. V, 251.

To the above we may add certain intensive words or word-groups, which are not unfrequently placed after a comparative or superlative; especially:

*far* or *by far*, as in: i. The power of the Church over the hearts and minds of men, is now greater far than it was when the Encyclopædia and the Philosophical Dictionary appeared. MAC., Popes, 562 b).

You will find it better far to choose the best man among you, and let him fulfil the labours which I demand. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, II, iv, 156.

ii. Our service term is the longest by far of any civilized nation in the world. Times.

*by a long way*, as in: It's not the first time I've heard of it, by a long way. ANSTEY *Voces Populi*.

*a great* (or *good*) *deal*, as in: I had rather a good deal put on my shooting jacket and go after wild ducks. Mrs. CRAIK, *Ogilvies*, I, Ch. I, 2. *by a long chalk* or *by long chalks*, as in: Her second haul was a better one by long chalks than her first. (?) Miss Providence, Ch. XXI.

For examples illustrating the alternative practice, and for further discussion see Ch. XXX, 43.

Note a) In some of the above examples the intensive strikes us as being added by way of an afterthought. This is certainly the case with that in:

My heart is elate because I find you perfect, almost. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley* I, Ch. VIII, 158.

The rhetorical effect produced by the repetition of *forgotten* in the following sentence would be spoiled by removing *almost* a place backward:

The death of the Roman boy was soon forgotten, — forgotten almost by the parents of the slain. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 17.

d) In conclusion mention may here be made of *so much*, which when divided from its head-word appears as part of an adversative conjunctive (Ch. XI, 5); e. g.:

His talk was not witty so much as charming. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 242.

48. Also many intensives modifying verbs are normally placed before (47) the word they belong to. This applies especially to pure adverbs of degree, such as *almost*, *entirely*, *half*, *quite*, etc.; thus in:

I quite agree with you. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1852.

I wholly forgot it until it was too late to recall her. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 28.

As he spoke, he trembled in every limb and almost fell. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 183.

He half smiled. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. X, 106.

He entirely came up to our ideal of the naval commander. Miss BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas*.

I really rather want to talk to you about this. E. W. HORNING, *No Hero*, Ch. IX.

Not unfrequently they are placed in back-position; thus in:

It made me cry almost. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 38.

Pen blushed rather. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 351.

The dreadful thought alone paralysed me quite. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. XI, 114.

He laughed outright. II. Lond. News. (Thus apparently regularly)

Far less common is front-position, as in:

Almost thou persuadest me to be a Christian. Bible, Acts, XXVI, 28.

This is, however, the regular place of the ironical *much* (39), as in: Much he'll mind that! Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 168.

49. When other relations are mixed with that of degree, there is (48) more latitude. Thus we find without any appreciable variation



in meaning *I understand you perfectly* and *I perfectly understand you*, the latter arrangement being often preferred on the strength of the principle mentioned in 33. Compare the two following groups of examples:

i. The news perfectly electrified me this morning. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 193.

Orange absolutely refused to comply with the order to re-enter the State-Council. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 197 b.

The Duke most decidedly advised against the step. *ib.*

We thoroughly understand some at least of the causes of this unfriendliness. Times.

ii. John held strongly to the opinion that so solemn a festival as marriage is only desecrated by outward show. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XX, 196. He remembered vaguely that Bernardine's father had suddenly become ill. BEATR. HAR., Ships, II, Ch. I, 113.

50. a) After the verb we mostly find the various equivalents of the (49) Dutch *zeer*, such as (*very*) *much, greatly, highly, badly, terribly, awfully*, etc.; e. g.:

The standard of virtue did not fit him much. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. X, 111.

I liked his last speech much. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXII, 223.

I liked him greatly. *ib.*, Ch. XIX, 193.

I should like very much to know him. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 234.

He rejoiced greatly in the prospect of hearing the story of his own dinner party. MISS YONGE, Heir of Redc., I, Ch. V, 65.

I wanted dreadfully to talk to him. MISS BRADDON, My First Happy Christmas.

b) This is also the ordinary place of adverbial word-groups of degree, and of adverbs accompanied by other adverbs of degree, as in:

i. Forgiving is what some women love best of all. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 218.

ii. I liked the solitude of the great house very well. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. X, 111.

I know him very well. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 163.

Poor Mrs. Tyson wanted me so badly that I could not leave her. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 17.

\*\* There was a merry dimple beside her mouth as if she quite well knew who we were. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 109.

Note. Dividing *much* from its head-word by an entire clause, as is done in the following example, is, no doubt, unusual:

Emmy did not care where she went much. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 364.

51. When the predicate is complex, the ordinary place of adverbs (50) of degree modifying the verb is immediately after the finite verb, unless the predicate has no modifiers, in which case they frequently have end-position; e. g.:

i. \* I should greatly like to stay. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXIII, 232.

From this position they could clearly see every card as it was dealt. CON. DOYLE, Siege of Sunda Gunge.

- \*\* I could almost have believed at times that I must be the first discoverer of some of these terræ incognitæ. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 44.  
He had well-nigh let go his hold, and tumbled down the precipice. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (128).  
ii. He has altered a good deal. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1844.

52. The following adverbial adjuncts of degree deserve some special (51) attention:

*hardly* and *scarcely*: When modifying adjectives or adverbs their ordinary place is before their head-word (47); e.g.:

It is hardly necessary for us to say that this is an excellent book, excellently translated. MAC., *Popes*, (541 b).

She hardly ever cries. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXI, 210.

Her attitude is scarcely correct. *Times*.

Also when modifying a word denoting or implying number or quantity, their usual place is immediately before this word (47). Less frequently and perhaps less logically are they separated from it by one or more verbs of a complex predicate, or by a preposition. Occasionally they have front-position or back-position, the latter only in the comparatively rare case of the predicate being negated; e.g.:

i. John uttered hardly a word. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 150.

There was scarcely any conversation between them. BEATR. HAR., *Ships I*, Ch. XIX, 107.

ii. \* I had scarce taken orders a year, before I began to think seriously of matrimony. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I. (instead of: ... taken orders scarce a year.) I could scarcely eat anything. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 32.

I can hardly find any trace of my father in myself, except an inborn faculty for drawing. HUXL., *Autobiography*.

\*\* I had scarcely for a moment adverted to it as necessary. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 28.

iii. Hardly shall you find any one so bad, but he desires the credit of being thought good. SOUTHEY (*WEBST. Dict.*)

iv. I can't do anything hardly, except write. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 28. There is not a yard of it, scarcely, that hasn't been made by human hands. MRS. WARD, *Eleanor* (JESP., *Negation*, 74).

When modifying a verb. they are also placed before their head-word in the majority of cases; thus in:

I hardly think we want a fire. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1847.

I hardly like taking thee out this wet day. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 186.

However, in complex predicates containing a finite verb with a distinct meaning (*can*, *need*, etc.), they mostly stand after the latter, the word to which they logically belong; thus in:

He was the child of her old age; but he could scarcely be called the comfort of it. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (103).

John was not there; indeed, if he had been, I could scarcely have seen him. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 146.

I need hardly say that I shall be grateful for any criticisms and suggestions. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, Pref, 14.

When they are placed in front-position, which is often done when an adverbial clause follows (Ch. XVII, 18, d), they are separated from their logical head-word; thus in:

Scarcely did he see me when he made off. STOF., *Handl.*, III, 11.

Hardly had he done so, when the Boers came on in great numbers at a furious gallop. *Il. Lond. News.*

*So* is mostly placed after a simple intransitive verb, as in:

I had no idea these small fire-arms kicked *so*. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 165.*  
 Never did I see boys cry *so*. *JOHN DENNIS, Good Words.*

It may in such a combination be divided from its head-word by an adverbial adjunct, as in:

I feel as if I wanted something to hold on to. One drops through the dark *so*.  
*RUDY KIPL., Light, Ch. IX, 121.*

In the case of transitives the ordinary place of *so* appears to be after the object when the latter is a pronoun, before the verb when it is a noun; e. g.:

i. He could not be a bad man, whose wife loved him *so*. *THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 74.*

I held back because I loved you *so*. *C. GIBBON, Fancy Free, Ch. XIV (O. E. D., 15).*

ii. The waves, which ... did in this place *so* confound and toss about the triremes of Alexander. [*EASTWICK*] *Dry Leaves, 22 (O. E. D., 15).*

Note. In the following example *so* is not, of course, an adverb of degree: He was ... always good-humoured when it *so* suited him. *TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. III, 21.*

When an adverbial clause follows (*Ch. XVII, 132*), it is frequently placed before the verb, whether transitive or intransitive, presumably owing to the fact that the placing before *that* might give rise to misunderstanding (*Ch. XVII, 53, 60*); e. g.:

i. For God *so* loved the world, that he gave his only begotten son [etc.].  
*Bible, John, III, 16.*

His voice *so* choked that the words were hardly intelligible. *M. E. FRANCIS. The Manor Farm, Ch. XXII.*

ii. Meanwhile the fog and darkness thickened *so* that people ran about with flaring links. *DICK., Christm. Car., I.*

She wept *so* that, for all my seventeen years and pride of manhood, it set me weeping also. *CON. DOYLE, Rodn. Stone, I, Ch. VI, 137.*

Pre-position appears to be the rule when the word modifies more than one verb, as in:

He tried to express his sorrow at quitting those who had *so* sheltered and tended a nameless orphan. *THACK., Es m., I, Ch. IX, 94.*

This seems to be the case also when the verb modified is an infinitive as in:

i. I *so* want to say something. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will., Ch. III, 29.*

I say, papa, Ethel is *so* tired, and she would *so* like to have a ride *Punch.*

ii. Why does she like *so* to kiss my lady's hand? *THACK., Es m., I, Ch. III, 26.*

#### PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF QUALITY.

53. a) After the element they belong to we mostly find adverbial (52) adjuncts of quality. This is their regular place when they are of some length.

i. A little town sat demurely at the bottom of the valley. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 107.*

He slept placidly through that half-hour. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 112.

He descended from the Flat, and came quickly round the corner of the cottage. *ib.*, Ch. XV 148.

ii. They rule after their own pattern. FROUDE, *O.c.*, Ch. III, 47.

They were attired after the very latest Paris fashion. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XV.

b) Non-prepositional objects are felt to be more intimately connected with verbs than adverbial adjuncts and therefore, as a rule, take precedence of these verb-modifiers.

He treated them handsomely. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 322.

They answered me civilly. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 31.

We had counselled him ill. MAC., *Addison*, (767 *a*).

c) Prepositional objects, on the other hand, being less closely connected with the verb mostly stand after adverbial adjuncts (3, 34).

He gazed in stupefied amazement on the small rebel. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 8 *a*.

Miss March turned abruptly to John. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIII, 133.

The masters would look askance at me. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 55.

Lord Oxford listened carefully to the three statements. *Manch. Guard.*, 8 10, 1926, 288 *c*.

d) When less attention is claimed for the adverbial adjunct than for the verb, the former is placed before the latter.

Mr. Winkle, thus admonished, abruptly altered its position. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

John determinedly followed the man into the grand empty dining-room. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 187.

He gently blamed me. *ib.*, Ch. X, 108.

Little Theo slowly recovered. JOHN MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, I, Ch. V, 49.

Note *a*) The communication of the notion that is most prominent in the speaker's mind is sometimes suspended by the enumeration of numerous qualifiers, as in:

The Phantom slowly, gravely, silently, approached. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 75.

β) In the following example *kindly* could not very well be placed before the verb, because in this place it would be apt to be understood as an adverb of attendant circumstances (66 *a*).

Fanny received Huxter's good-natured efforts at consolation and kind attentions kindly. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 195 (i. e. with a responsive kindness.)

e) They have front-position, when they express what is first thought of by the speaker, as in:

Most humbly do I take my leave. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 3, 83

Calmly and gently she lifted her lips to mine. QUILLER COUCH (*Günth.*, *Man.*, § 683).

Note. This, naturally, may also be the case when the predicate is complex, as in:

Suddenly a new and unexpected danger had arisen. CON. DOYLE, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

H. POUTSMA, II.

54. When the predicate is complex, these adverbial modifiers are (53) normally placed either after the whole predicate, or immediately before the last verbal, the position depending on the relative weight ascribed to them by the speaker. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1850.

i. I called, was received kindly, and asked to breakfast. *DE QUINCEY, Conf.*, Ch. II, 31.

We had treated them unfairly as well as unwisely. *FROUDE, Oc.*, Ch. III.

The Boers have always treated the black population badly. *Graph.*

ii. Mr. Tupman, Mr. Snodgrass, and Mr. Winkle had been anxiously waiting the arrival of their illustrious leader. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. II, 5.

As Mr. Foracre advanced in years, these guests grew more numerous, which might be easily accounted for by his increased means of entertainment. *JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales*, I, G, 119.

It was all very quietly told. *BEATR. HAR., Ships*, II, Ch. IV, 123.

The map of Asia has been carefully revised according to the latest information. *Times*.

#### PLACE OF ADVERBIAL SENTENCE-MODIFIERS.

55. From the fact that these adjuncts do not belong to any particular element of the sentence, it follows that they are not tied to anything like a fixed position. They admit, indeed, of being shifted about according to the promptings of convenience, metre or rhythm, or other circumstances difficult to define or to ascertain, so that the place in which they are actually found not seldom appears to be dependent on mere chance. This being so, any account of the varied practice is bound to be based on the individual linguistic instinct of the writer, and can hardly fail to be of a tentative nature.

#### PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF TIME.

56. Among the adverbial adjuncts of time especial attention must be paid to such as denote that an action or state is repeated an indefinite number of times. Adjuncts of this description are most frequently placed between the subject and the predicate, when the latter is made up of only one verb. From what is the occasion of their use it follows that they have stronger stress than the verb; e. g.:

He always dines at the same place. *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 1851.

He generally failed to explain his meaning. *ib.*, § 1847.

He rarely mentioned the loan which she had made. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 219.

He repeatedly deplored that ... things were not going on as he desired. *MOTLEY, Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 199 b.

So Bernardine dusted books, and sometimes sold them. *BEATR. HAR., Ships*, Ch. I, 115.

Similarly *never* as the opposite of *always*, as in:



Misfortunes never come single. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1846.

I never spoke to her in my life. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XI, 115.

57. a) The same adjuncts mostly stand after the copula *to be*, apparently because they are felt to belong mainly to the following nominal or nominal equivalent. Also in this combination the adverb has stronger stress than the significant part of the predicate; e. g.:

He is never ready in time. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1846.

The man who is never a fool is always a fool. Prov.

An Etonian is always a gentleman. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 31.

During her illness she was never out of temper. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIV, 141.

He again uttered complaints against the Marquis and Montigny, who were evermore his scapegoats and bugbears. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 200 b.

I was never there. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XII, 121.

Note. Thus also when standing with a quasi-copula (Ch. I, 5) the ordinary place of the adverb may be the same; e. g.:

The medallion with your mother's picture and yours lies always on my heart. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. III, 26.

b) When, however, the verb *to be* is emphatic, their place is as in 56. This is clearly brought out in the following examples, in which *is* is alternately weak and strong:

Jane, this bread isn't hot. It never is hot. TROL., He knew he was right, I, Ch. VIII, 64.

"She isn't ill," said Bernard. "She never is ill; but then she is never well." id., Small House, I, Ch. XII, 144.

Note a) The copula is always emphatic when detached from the nominal, hence the adverb is, in this case, regularly placed before it.

I should be very glad to be near miss Emma, of course, and always am. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XX, 79 b.

β) Also extra-strong stress on the adverb may, apparently, be the occasion of its being placed before *to be* (58, b, Note β).

I assure you there never was pedantry so delightful. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXI, 195.

There never was such a face or such a hero. THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. XIV, 149.

Stolen pleasures always are sweet. TROL., Orley Farm, II, Ch. V, 68.

γ) The strong connexion of the adverb with the nominal may be responsible for its place before the latter in:

He was the voice which talked in the night, and made her never lonely. EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. II, 27 (= caused her to be never lonely. It will be observed that changing the latter part of the sentence into *never made her lonely* would materially alter its meaning.)

58. a) When the predicate is complex, the ordinary place of these (57) adverbs is immediately after the finite verb. As in 56, the adverb has relatively strong stress.

I should never have thought of that. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1846.

I have often been asked how I first came to be a regular opium-eater. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 11.

That ass, Pumblechook, used often to come over of a night. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XII, 116.

Watson and I used often to tease her about it. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 201 *a*.

Note: In the following example the adverb is in an unusual place: It is in this situation that those epics are found, which have been generally regarded as the standards of poetry. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm*, Pref.

*b*) When the finite verb is emphatic, their ordinary place is before the entire complex predicate, as in:

I never can make you understand that one is not always in a humour for joking. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XII, 207.

He never was, never will be, half as happy as we. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XX, 199.

We never did understand each other very well. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 222.

I never *could* comprehend why with a good wife, a comfortable income, and a clear conscience, he need always look thin and woin. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 37. (The italics are the author's.)

She did not understand her husband ... She never had understood him HUTCHINSON, *If Winter comes*, II, Ch. III, XII, 102.

Compare: He shall *never* know of it, I tell you; he can *never* know of it. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 179. (The italics are the author's.)

Note *a*) This is also their regular place when the finite verb is used absolutely, this verb always having strong stress in this case.

I never *did* see him again, nor ever shall. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 13. (The italics are the author's.)

I never spoke to her in my life, and most probably never shall. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XI, 115

*β*) Also when extra-strong, the adverb may, apparently, take this place.

This often appears to be the case with (*n*)*ever* (57, *b*, Note *β*); e. g.: Exile never should be splendid. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1, (271).

A fault which never can be repeated. *ib*.

She never is introduced to a man, but she finds out a cousinship. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 85

She never would be able to pullthrough. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XX, 136.

I think it is one of the most delightful things that ever was written. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambros.*, II, Ch. XIII, 253.

59. *a*) Front-position is often given to *never* and *seldom* (7); less (58)

frequently to the other adverbs of this group, and this chiefly when they are emphatic through being contrasted with others; e. g.:

i. Never saw they Hereward again upon the Scottish shore. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. II, 24 *b*.

Seldom has a friendly nation been so grossly insulted. *Times*.

ii. Sometimes I wrote letters of business for cottagers who happened to have relatives in Liverpool or London; more often I wrote love-letters to their sweethearts for young women. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 18.

Often she had watched the stars, and known the vague longings, the almost terrible aspirations they wake in their watchers. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XVIII, 82.

Always he had felt her strength of mind and body, but never so much as now. *ib.*, II, vi, Ch. XXVIII, 272.

**Note.** The emphatic *ever* appears to be rather frequently placed in front-position in subordinate clauses; thus in:

I doubt whether he was not happier in his garret in the Haymarket than ever he was in his splendid palace at Kensington. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 251.  
It'll likely be the last time ever it (sc. the band) does play. BIRMINGHAM, *The Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. VI, 126.

*b)* Front-position is distinctly the rule with *never* and *always* in imperative sentences; thus in:

i. Never say more than is necessary. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

"Never," said my aunt, "be mean in anything; never be false; never be cruel." DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XV, 111 b.

Never be discouraged. HOOP. & GRAHAM, *Home Trade*, 2.

ii. Always look well to the edition you buy. SKEAT, *Questions*, 20.

60. Rather frequent is the placing of any of these adverbs in end-position or after the entire predicate. In the majority of cases this appears to be done for the sake of emphasizing them (2, a). Sometimes also it is, apparently, due to the word being suggested by an afterthought. It is especially *always* and *often* that are frequently placed in this position.

i. For she, too, wept sometimes. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 35.

He was a man who having once desired a thing, would desire it always TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XIX, 228.

The two officers . . . left him to himself mostly. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. I, 161.

Meanwhile, as is the way often, his idol had idols of her own. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 62

He who has loved often, has loved never. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. II, 12 a.

I used to call upon her often. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, V, Ch. II, 227.

Our young couple were well-behaved always. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 191.

Loving is misery for women always. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXX, 231.

It would be the same always. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XI, 204.

Bessie arrived punctually always. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VIII, 109.

ii. On this account I feel always, on a Saturday night, as though I also were released from some yoke of labour. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 44.

It has surely happened seldom to a novelist that one of his characters should rise up and gibe at the author of its being. *Daily Chron.*

They all laughed often at some sally of Cora's. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XV, 129. (Thus very frequently in this novel.)

**Note.** Separating the adverb from that part of the sentence where it belongs by an entire clause, as has been done in the following example, is carrying the practice to an undue extreme:

Pen was left alone in chambers for a while, for this man of fashion could not quit the metropolis when he chose always. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 98.

61. Obs. I. When *never* is used in another meaning than that of the opposite of *always*, it is subject to the same variation of position as it is in its ordinary meaning. This appears from the following examples:

i. Those enormous ears never belonged to any one else. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 25.

ii. He never was the man to turn good money from his door. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XIII, 80.

iii. You were never born to be drowned or shot. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. V, (242).

Ancient historians of the highest character saw no harm in composing long speeches which were never spoken. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 99 a.

I should never have thought of that. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1846.

When, however, *never* has the value of *not a single*, it naturally stands, as a rule, before the noun modified. Putting it in the same place as the temporal *never* is improper and rare; e. g.:

i. Addison ... was lamenting that he could find never a suitable rhyme for Webb. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 249.

The Major said never a word. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. III, 28.

ii. They moved on hand in hand, and never spoke a word. HARDY, *Tess*, VII, Ch. LIX, 518.

II. When all is said and done, it is no use blinking the fact that the position given to the adverbs referred to in the preceding sections is not unfrequently purely arbitrary, or even at variance with the principles laid down above. Possibly it is often determined by a conscious or unconscious application of the laws of metre and rhythm. For an exhaustive and richly illustrated exposition of the laws governing the position of the above adverbs and of adverbs in general, from the point of view of rhythm, see especially FIJN VAN DRAAT (*Neophilologus*, VI, 1, 56 ff). Another study of the problem we owe to the able pen of AUG. WESTERN, who wrote a pamphlet on *Sentence-Rhythm and Word-order in Modern English* (Christiana, Jacob Dybwad, 1908). Lack of space and of leisure make it imperative on the present writer to abstain from comment on the views of these grammarians, and to confine himself to presenting without comment some examples in which the place of the adverbis, in his opinion, difficult to account for.

Rasselas went often to an assembly of learned men. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XXII, 129.

I have been deceived, basely deceived; else nothing could have ever made me unjust to my promise. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, 468.

I had never occasion to repose confidence in a person of this description. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXI, 94 a.

Our hero ... had been always a tolerable pedestrian. *ib.*, Ch. XV, 59 a.

Married women have never much time for writing. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 323.

But that was the remarkable thing about his personality; it conveyed always an atmosphere of trust and confidence. EL. GLYN, *The Point of View*, Ch. VII, 166.

62. What has been said about the position of adverbs denoting (59) indefinite repetition, applies, in the main, also to that of a large number of adverbs indicating an indefinite point or length of time, such as *afterwards*, *again (and again)*, *(all) at once*, *already*, *at one time*, *directly*, *gradually*, *immediately*, *instantly*, *just*, *long*, *long since*, *no longer*, *meanwhile*, *once*, *originally*, *soon*, *suddenly*, *still*, *then*. There seems, accordingly, to be no occasion

for much comment, and we may confine ourselves to some illustration.

In the case of the predicate consisting of only one verb, these adverbs may have:

a) *front-order*, as in: Meanwhile the fog and darkness thickened so, that people ran about with flaring links. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 11.

Soon I followed John into the parlour. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XI, 119. Still came faintly down at intervals the tiny voice. *ib.*, Ch. XXI, 210.

b) *mid-order* as in: I soon began to suffer greatly on this regimen. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 18.

Reconciliation then became impossible. *ib.*, Ch. II, 17.

He at one time advised her to send him to sea. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (105).

She again referred gratefully to our kindness. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 149.

She once heard him say to one of her brothers [etc.]. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, Ch. I, 5.

*end- or post-order*, as in: The groom hoisted his burden again. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 15.

He sat with the outer door wide open, at all times. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XL, 314a.

My uncle took an interest in him still. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. VI, 84.

The tears came into her eyes at once. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. I, 118.

They asked him once, and he said [etc.] *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 114.

He breathes still. BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. XI, 93.

Note a) An adverb of indefinite repetition may precede some of these adverbs, but in the majority of cases the two modifiers would be separated by other elements of the sentence.

i. She never again showed any emotion whatever, when the baronet's admiration for her was canvassed. MISS BRADDON, *Audley*, I, Ch. I, 13.

ii. I shall not conceal, as I go on, the weaknesses I could not quite conquer; but they always passed from me soon. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXVI, 310.

β) Back-order is decidedly the rule when the predicate is a verb in the imperative mood. Compare 59, b.

Bring the letter instantly! BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 322.

γ) The position of the adverb seems to be an unusual one in:

Sheila, whose hands were clenched, and whose face had been fiery red, grew suddenly almost white. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XII, 96.

She had never yet drunk wine, and after a glass felt suddenly extremely strong. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 118.

63. Also in the case of nominal predicates with *to be* the position (60) of these adverbs may, in the main, be the same as that of the adverbs of indefinite repetition; thus that of the adverbs in:

Now then I was again happy. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. IV, 50.

He was long since dead. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nots.*, Ch. X, 89.

The problem of how to employ chloroform was still not completely solved. *Times*.

64. a) With complex predicates these adverbs mostly stand immediately (60) after the finite verb, sometimes immediately before the main verb of a predicate consisting of more than two, sometimes at the end; e. g.:



i. Then he took the letter which he had just been writing. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. XX, 112.

This guest had again and again to remind himself that he must not outstay his welcome. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV.

ii. I would have sooner given my forefinger than that he should have gone to the dogs thus. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. V, 41 a.

iii. You have endured too many vexations already. PRESCOTT, Have the others been home long? MRS. WARD, Tres., I, Ch. I, 4 b.

I have been informed since, by various eminent medical gentlemen, that [etc.]. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VI, 72.

Note. In a negative sentence with *not* the adverb *still* always stands before the finite verb; thus in:

He still did not speak. BEATR. HAR., Ships, II, Ch. IV, 125.

b) Of particular interest is the varied position of *long* and *long since* in the case of a complex predicate consisting of more verbs than two, or of *have been* - nominal: they are found divided from the main verb or the nominal by a verbal, or immediately before it; e. g.:

i. \* Cuff's fight with Dobbin will long be remembered. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 40.

His name, well known, near a century ago, in the most splendid circles of London, has long been forgotten. MAC., Mad. d'Arblay, (705 a).

\*\* I am afraid you have been long desiring my absence. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XLVI, 271.

They had not been long together before Darcy told her that Bingley was also coming to wait on her. ib. Ch. XLIV, 255.

The Duke of Wellington was really alive, and Bony had not been long dead. G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. IV, 154.

He diligently explored the ancient religious and political systems of Greece, from which he had been long a stranger. LEWIS, Hist. of Phil., 40

ii. \* The Lamarckian hypothesis has long since been justly condemned. HUXLEY, Darwiniana, Ch. I, 12.

The famous captain hath long since been dead. WALT. BESANT, The World went very well then, Ch. I, 9.

\*\* It hath been long since observed that you may know a man by his companions. FIELD., Tom Jones, II, Ch. VI, 24 a.

With some allowance for his habits and opinions, he (sc. the South African Boer) would have long since forgotten his independence. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. III, 45.

#### PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES.

65. Adverbial adjuncts of attendant circumstances are sentence- (61) modifiers 'par excellence.' In fact they may be said to form a secondary predicate incorporated in the body of the sentence and qualifying the latter as a whole (Ch. V, 2). Thus *He wisely withdrew from the concern* - *He withdrew from the concern, which was wise of him*, or *and this was wise of him*. Again *In vain did I remonstrate with him* - *I remonstrated with him, but this was in vain*. Similarly *I went at once*, otherwise *I should*

*have missed him : - I went at once, if I had not done so, I should have missed him. Analogously My brother, too, felt very nervous = My brother felt very nervous, as did the other person(s) present.*

Note. Some adverbial adjuncts of this description show their semi-independent character by admitting of being detached from the rest of the sentence and placed at the end or in front; thus those in:

i. We adjust ourselves easily to altered circumstances, mercifully. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. XIX, 106.

You have no gods to swear by, unfortunately. HUXLEY, Life and Let, II, 351.

ii. Clearly, it is not to be obtained in a day. Manch. Guard., 23/12, 1927, 482 d.

In the printed and written language they are often placed within commas when they stand in the body of the sentence; thus in:

Numa found that the Roman year of ten months was, churlishly, not kept by the sun. Manch. Guard., 5/11, 1926, 366 a.

In the following example there are two sentence-modifiers in the body of the sentence, both placed between commas.

And, strangely, perhaps, he had come almost at once to the desert. HICHENS, Gard. of AL., II, iv, Ch. XX, 114.

66. a) Adverbs in *ly* when used in this function are mostly found (62) in the body of the sentence, sometimes even dividing the object from the predicate: 1) often before a verbal predicate made up of only one verb, less frequently after it; e.g.:

i. I gladly acceded to his request. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1847.

Many shrewdly suspected the real state of the case. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. VI, 269.

He involuntarily felt much as I did. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 108.

Yesterday Queen Wilhelmina of the Netherlands completed her eighteenth year and legally came of age. Times.

ii. They hint wisely that the gifts of genius are far more valuable endowments for a female. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 113.

He remained wisely silent. id., Pend., II, Ch. XIII, 255.

She again referred gratefully to our kindness. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XV, 149.

2) mostly after the entire predicate when standing in one of the perfect tenses, as in:

I have suffered, very unjustly, in the opinion of my acquaintance. DE QUINCEY, Conf., II, 11.

He had dipped, ungenerously, into a generous mother's purse; basely and recklessly spilt her little cruse. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XX, 205.

3) mostly after *to be*, whether as a copula or a notional verb; e.g.:

i. Vilna is culturally Polish, historically Lithuanian, and ethnically Jewish more than anything else. Manch. Guard., 8/10, 1916, 283 b.

Compulsory Greek is, rightly, dead, but free access to Greek has yet to be won. ib., 15/10, 1926, 303 a.

ii. There is, happily, no fear that English Roman Catholics will listen to this monstrous claim. Times.

4) mostly before the participle in a passive predicate, occasionally before the auxiliary of the passive voice.

i. \* Fortune is, proverbially, called changeful. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, II, Ch. X, 188.

\*\* As I have been, unluckily, prevented by this accident, I shall only give him the letters which relate to the two last hints. ADDISON, Spect., XLVI.

If the hand represents the tongue, then the upper blade would be roughly represented by the finger-nails. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 124.

ii. The whole object of the Conference may easily be defeated Manch. Guard., 21/10, 1927, 301 a.

b) When they have to be thrown into prominence, they not unfrequently have front-position, or end-position; in the latter position they sometimes strongly make the impression of being added by way of afterthought. See the examples in 65.

i. Wednesday came, and luckily it was a fine day. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1847. Most gladly, we can well believe, did the Nana come. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 184

ii. I did not save you intentionally, so I am not posing as a philanthropist. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. XX, 110.

67. Another important group of adverbial adjuncts of attendant circumstances is formed by conjunctive adverbs (4; Ch. IX, 10; Ch. LXI, 9), called by SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 411) half-conjunctions.

a) Only a few of these have front-order regularly; thus:

1) copulative: *nay*, as in: Nay, the Dominé himself did not disdain now and then to step in. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (103).

2) adversative: *conversely*, as in: Very free order is possible only in inflected languages. Conversely, absolutely fixed order occurs only in languages devoid of inflection. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1760.

*howbeit*, as in: Howbeit, he knew how to make himself respected. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXX, 322.

*only*, as in: I ought to have refused him, only I had not the heart. id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 260.

3) causal, *so*, as in: He was not averse to the match; so both families lived together in all that harmony which generally precedes an expected alliance. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. II, (242).

*thus*, as in: I know most of the armies of Europe from personal observation; thus I can compare. Daily Chron. (The placing of *thus* in the body of the sentence, as in the following example, has a distinctly incongruous effect: The position in Ireland thus is this. Eng. Rev., No. 106, 278.)

b) Some, though mostly standing in front, are also found in the body, or at the end of the sentence; thus:

1. copulative: *eke*, as in: The cold and damp steal into Chesney Wold, though well defended, and eke into Sir Leicester's bones. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXVIII, 240.

These forests eke, made wretched by our music. SIDNEY, Arcadia, (O.E.D.) II, 219.

With a clear voice | Answered the young men Yes! and Yes! with lips softly breathing | Answered the maidens eke. LONGFELLOW, Childr. Lord's Supper.

2) adversative: *still*, as in: Everything went against him, still he persisted. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 106.

You still may do very well. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 305.

I will trust you still, as I have ever done. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 41.  
yet, as in: Yet it may seem strange that, even in that extremity, the king should have ventured to appeal to the people. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. II, 232.

If he has sown his wild oats, and will stick to his business, he may do well yet. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 302.

else, as in: Else there would be no meaning in political unions. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVI, 340.

Well, I'll do it, if the beadle follows in his cocked hat, not else. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXV, 206 a.

No one would tolerate the proposal to devote some years of a boy's time to getting such information, at the cost of much more valuable information which he might else have got. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 12 a.

c) The contrasting adverbial expressions *on the contrary* and *on the other hand* are mostly put in immediate succession to the element of the sentence that is placed in front; occasionally they have front-position (Ch. XI, 3); thus in:

Dobbin bore everything quite patiently, and was entirely dumb and miserable. Cuff, on the contrary, was the great chief and dandy of the Swishtail seminary. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

Lady Winterbourne, on the other hand, was dressed in severe black. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 163.

Had she not a father very close to her, who loved her better than any real father in the village seemed to love their daughters? On the contrary, who her mother was, and how she came to die in that forlornness, made her feel that a mother must be very precious. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XVI, 127.  
On the other hand, the young dandy, Captain Crawley, makes his appearance. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 103.

Note. *On the contrary* when substitutive (Ch. XI, 6) has front-position; thus in:

Mr. Casson's head was not at all a melancholy-looking satellite, nor was it a 'spotty globe', as Milton has irreverently called the moon; on the contrary, no head and face could look more sleek and healthy. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 9.

d) The colloquial *though* is regularly placed at the end; thus in:  
I didn't invent it myself, though. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

I beg my friend Winkle's pardon, though. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

e) The bulk of the conjunctive adverbs and adverbial expressions, however, have free order; thus:

1) copulative: *besides*, as in: Besides, whenever I fall, I'm warranted to fall on my legs. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. III, 24.

Most people, besides, thought that the earnestness of my inquiries arose from motives which moved their laughter. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 33.

"An't the gentleman a shot, sir?" inquired the long gamekeeper. "No," replied Wardle; "and he's lame besides." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

further (more), as in: "We'll find means to give them the slip," said dauntless little Becky, and further pointed out to her husband the great comfort and advantage of meeting Jos and Osborne. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 266.

Furthermore, Miss Briggs explained how she had met Mr. Crawley walking with his cousin. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 366.

I must further acquaint the reader, that though our club meets on Tuesdays

and Thursdays, we have appointed a committee to sit every night. ADDISON, Spect., I.

*likewise*, as in: For he seeth that wise men die; likewise the fool and the brutish person perish. Bible, Psalms, XLIX, 10.

He likewise painted the quarrel between the same noble and Aremberg. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 198*b*.

These dutiful questions and answers were continued until it was ascertained in detail that the Lammeters were all as well as usual, and the Osgoods likewise. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. XI, 79.

*moreover*, as in: Moreover, Dunstan enjoyed the self-important consciousness that he had a horse to sell. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 28.

He intimated, moreover, that these pretences of clemency were mere hypocrisy. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 199*b*.

He was liberal far beyond what Morton's means could afford, and he was a lord, moreover. SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. XIII, 145.

2) *adversative: all the same*, as in: All the same there's nothing so positively disgusting as a man who has had too much. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. III, 183.

Thank you all the same. MRS. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 45.

*however*, as in: However, I shall not enter his name, till my purse has received notice in form. SHER, Riv., II, 2.

This, however, is a misrepresentation of my case. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 11.

He did not come, however. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XX, 194.

There was not so great a necessity as Mr. Sowerberry had anticipated, however. DICK, Ol. Twist, Ch. V, 62.

*nevertheless*, as in: Indeed, it was not likely that Lord — should ever be in my situation; but nevertheless the spirit of my remark remains true. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 30.

Although it may seem incredible it is, nevertheless, true. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2307.

The air and the sleep had both refreshed me; but I was weary nevertheless. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 30.

*notwithstanding*, as in: The sight of him, notwithstanding, cheered them. HUGHES, Tom Brown

His nephew left the room without an angry word notwithstanding. DICK., Christm. Car., I, 8.

3) *causal: accordingly*, as in: Accordingly he persisted in bringing down the trunk alone. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 15.

Our preparations were all finished, and we, accordingly, set sail. WEBST., Dict.

"Then come up," said the carrier to the lazy horse, who came up accordingly. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 31*b*.

*consequently*, as in: Consequently the Anglo-Indian was then much more estranged from his country. MAC., Clive, (409*a*).

The estate, consequently, devolved upon the present Sir Rawdon Crawley, Bart. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 372.

*then*, as in: The boys in the street whistle the tune. Then it is hardly fit to be played upon my piano. Punch.

They did go there then? *ib.*

*therefore*, as in: The men would, therefore, have had something like sufficient security that their religious scruples were regarded and respected McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 174.

I prepared myself, therefore, for other measures. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 13



Such persons, therefore, find everywhere a due sense of their claims already established. *ib.*, Ch. II, 16.

68. A third group of adverbial adjuncts of attendant circumstances (65) that call for particular attention are such as, though modifying the sentence as a whole, refer to one particular element more than to any other. It stands to reason that they are mostly placed as close as possible to this particular element. Some of them are conjunctive adverbs. The following call for some comment in this connexion:

*alone*. Only found with (pro)nouns, almost regularly in immediate succession to its head-word; thus in:

i. The names alone remained. WASH. IRV. Sketch-Bk., XVIII, 170.

It must be understood that I speak for myself alone. HUXLEY, Lect. & Es., 83 *b*.  
 ii. Throughout the whole work Miss Norgate has rendered services which the most faithful and affectionate loyalty could alone have prompted. ALICE S. GREEN, *Introd. to Green, Short Hist.*

*also*. 1) This adverb precedes the verb it singles out for modification, thus in:

Cæsar not only fought battles, he also wrote an account of them.

2) In complex predicates verb-modifying *also* is mostly found in immediate succession to the finite verb; thus in:

He had also had some very plain language addressed to him. BARRY PAIN, *Culm. Point*

3) *Also* mostly follows the (pro)noun it belongs to; thus in:

i. With respect to the torpor supposed to follow or rather to accompany the practice of opium-eating, I deny that also. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 41.

When your wife allows you to go out in such a state, I shall fear that you also have been unfortunate enough to lose your wife's affection. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.*

ii. "Is yours a strong constitution?" inquired Tozer. Paul said he thought not. Tozer replied that he thought not also. DICK, *Domb.* Ch. XII, 105.

The roughs had also fled at the appearance of Peterson. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.*

4) When the (pro)noun is preceded by a preposition, it is mostly placed before the latter; thus in: The declaration of James dispensed also with all religious tests. MAC., *Hist.*, II, 213 (O. E. D., 3,  $\beta$ ).

5) *Also* may precede the subordinate clause it belongs to, but appears to be more frequently placed in the head-clause; e.g.: i. These are the more patent facts which are to be deduced from this hat. Also, by the way, that it is extremely improbable that he has gas laid on in his house. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm. Blue Carb.*

ii. It is also true that the initials 'H. B.' are legible upon the lining of this hat. *ib.*

6) In the case of an infinitive(-clause) being the member modified, *also* is mostly placed in the head-clause; e.g.:

This would also compel the bishop to reply in the same language. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 17.

Smithers had also endeavoured to pay his court to me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 182.

7) Sometimes it is doubtful whether *also* is to be apprehended as a modifier of the verb in the head-clause or to some word in the infinitive-clause; thus in: I desire also to tender my best thanks to several friendly critics. TOZER, *Introd. to Byron, Child Har.*

8) Front-position of *also* in a co-ordinate sentence appears to be rare; e.g.: I can no more go out and come in: also the Lord hath said unto me [etc.]. Bible, Deut., XXXI, 2.

*even* 1) This adverb is mostly placed before the word(-group) or clause it belongs to; thus in:

i. Lady Clavering was in such a good humour that Sir Francis even benefited by it. THACK., PEND., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 399.

His broad figure, but slightly bent even now. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXI, 209.

ii. Even if the king had been desirous to fulfil the promises which he had made to the Presbyterians [etc.]. MAC., Hist., I, 175 (O. E. D., 9, c).

2) (Pro)nouns are not seldom found followed by *even* thus in:

Strange to say, however, on this occasion no sound, no rustling even, was to be heard in the bedroom. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 15.

Its pleasures even are of a grave and solemn complexion. *ib.*, Ch. III, 37.

3) When the (pro)noun is preceded by a preposition, *even* mostly precedes the latter, sometimes follows it; thus in: i. Indeed the fascinating powers of opium are admitted even by medical writers who are its greatest enemies. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. I, 9.

The sun is tremendously hot, even to me. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 167.

ii. From even this stronghold the unlucky Rip was at length routed by his termagant wife. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V, 37.

Latin names lend a dignity to even the humblest species. Punch.

4) *Even* always stands in immediate succession to *not*; thus in:

Nobody knew this, not even Ada. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXVI, 310.

5) It is, however, separated from *never*, as in: I know you never tell even white lies. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 193.

*only, merely, solely*, 1) These adverbs stand before the verb they single out for modification; thus in:

They were only seeking time for making due inquiries. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 33.

She merely moves her head in reply. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XL, 351.

I only stirred the fire. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XV, 144.

So solemn a festival as marriage is only desecrated by outward show. *ib.*, Ch. XX, 196.

2) When belonging to another word(-group), they should, and mostly do stand before this word(-group), but have not unfrequently a place assigned to them as if they belonged to the verb; e.g.:

i. Those narrow passages are appropriated solely to foot-passengers. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 136.

The profits of the tanning trade had long been merely nominal. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXII, 214.

He seemed to have grown up solely under that lady's charge. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 124.

ii. Others killed partridges, he only killed time. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 323.

Mrs. T. did not get up from her chair, but only made a sort of bow. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 172.

I have only seen her five times. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XI, 115.

I merely mention that you came here hard, and you went back tender. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. XX, 110.

Small and tinkering measures merely touch the fringe of the evil. Daily Chron.

3) Sometimes they are found after the word(-group) they refer to; thus in:

This evidence respected London only. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. I, 9.

It is not in the quantity of its effects merely, but in the quality that it (sc. opium) differs altogether (sc. from alcohol) *ib.*, Ch. III, 39.

The wound is cicatrized only. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. I, 161

Ransom had flattered himself that their courtesy and respectful salutes had been addressed to him solely. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

Note *α*) PALMER (*Gram. of Spok. Eng.* § 336) observes that in speech *only* is mostly placed before the verb, the intonation deciding to which element of the sentence it belongs. Thus in *I only saw my friend yesterday* it may be made to refer to *saw*, *my friend*, and *yesterday*.

*β*) *Only* when placed after its head-word is sometimes disparaging, i. e. equivalent to *merely* (BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, § 323); e. g.:

You must excuse my not being convinced by assurances only JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 99. (= mere assurances)

History has a conventional value only. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 15 *b*.

*γ*) The use of *alone* is a fitting expedient to preclude any idea of disparagement; e. g.:

But did this change pass on him alone? MAC., *Rev.*, (315 *b*).

It must be understood that I speak for myself alone. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 838.

*too*: i) This adverb mostly refers to a (pro)noun, and its ordinary place is after its head-word, or at the end of the sentence, the latter place being in special favour when the verb has not any, or no important modifier; thus in:

i. For she, too, though she was a Grecian woman, and the daughter of the king of men, yet wept sometimes. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 35.

The care-takers, too, were in a state of agitation. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, Ch. XIX, 184.

ii. The dogs suddenly came to a dead stop, and the party advancing stealthily a single pace, stopped too. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

Her ladyship knew the gentleman, too, and had brought him a haunch of venison. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 173.

2) Occasionally and less properly do we find it in the body of the sentence, separated from the word it belongs to; thus in:

Roundhand shook me, too, warmly by the hand. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 41.

The Transparent reigning family took, too, to the waters *id.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 364.

3) When *too* does not refer to a (pro)noun, it seems to be regularly placed at the end of the sentence; thus in:

They are frank, too, as well as voluble, in speaking of their affairs. *Good Words*.

It's fine to-day, and it will be fine to-morrow, too. SWEET, *Old Chap.*

4) This is also its regular place in a variety of shades of meaning as in:

HOR. — There's no offence, my lord! HAML. — Yes, by St. Patrick, but there is, Horatio, and much offence, too. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, v, 136.

And so demurely as Olivia carried it, too! GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, II.

And after I had had such hopes of you, too! DOR. GERARD., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. IV

She had "fight" in her, and no end of it, too. *ib.*, Ch. III

"Ridiculous!" said Clara indignantly, "And all about a French woman, too!" *ib.*, Ch. XVIII.

#### PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF MOOD.

69. *α*) Adverbial adjuncts of mood are mostly found between the (66) subject and the predicate; thus in:

It is a pleasure to John to do a kind office for any one — I well believe that. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XI<sup>l</sup>, 122.

She evidently looked upon us both as mere pleasant companions, *ib.*, Ch. XV, 148.

Myfanwy undoubtedly rather disregarded the conventions. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

b) The copula *to be*, however, mostly precedes these adverbial adjuncts, except when emphatic, when it regularly stands last.

i. We are truly glad that Mr. Courtenay is so well satisfied with his new employment. MAC., *Temple*, (415 a).

He was certainly very moody and melancholy. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 219. She is evidently accustomed to what is called society. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 110.

She could not believe that you were really going. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XX, 108.

ii. "You're very poor, Tom." — "I certainly am." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 122.

70. a) With complex predicates their normal place is immediately (67) after the finite verb. This is also the ordinary place when the predicate consists of more verbs than one, in which case they are only occasionally found after the second verb. This appears from the following examples:

i. He was, in fact, regarded as the personification of all the vices and weaknesses which the public ascribed to the English adventurers in Asia MAC., *Clive*, (535 b).

She had evidently quite forgotten us. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 109.

ii. \* The Giant was soon up with them, and had they not fled, would certainly have killed them every one. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XIII, (308).

We might drive these cowards to the well but they will certainly be blown to pieces. CON. DOYLE, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

\*\* She must have certainly perished, had not my companion, perceiving her danger, plunged in to her relief. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (252)

Also in the following example with an adjectival participle the adverb stands in an unusual place

He had been apparently occupied in a tactile examination of his woollen stockings. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch II, 5.

b) Placing the adverb before the whole of a complex predicate seems to throw it into prominence; thus in:

I really don't think this young gentleman is a swindler. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 17.

c) Naturally they are always placed before a verb that is detached from its complement, as in:

If they hit him, as they most likely will, three or four others can be ready to rush out. CON. DOYLE, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

71. Both front- and end-position appear to be common enough and (68) seem to impart to the adverb somewhat of the detachment of a separate clause; thus in:

i. Surely that must be an excellent market. GOLDS., *Vic.*, 68 (WESTERN Sentence Rhythm, § 20).

Certainly the contrast between the cousins was conspicuous. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, 78 (*ib.*).

Perhaps ... you would like to see some of my work. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. VII, 66.

Sure enough they (sc. the young birds) soon showed every sign of life and began to make their escape. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

ii. They might have known better than to leave their clocks so very lank and unprotected surely. DICK., *Crick*, I, 4.

It was dull — very, certainly. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 227.

It isn't worth anything, perhaps. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*. Ch. VII, 68.

She had no wordly goods of her own, seemingly. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

Note. It is worth observing that *certainly* has another meaning when placed after the verb than it has when placed before it. In the former place it is equivalent to *for certain* and is a word-modifier. It may be added that this use of *certainly* is uncommon.

Almost the only thing we know certainly about Shakespeare's wife is that she was eight years older than he was. FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shak.*, Ch. II, 24.

Another instance of this unusual application of *certainly* is found in: What employment he followed when he left school we cannot certainly know. *ib.*, Ch. II, 41.

## 72. The modal *not* calls for some special comment. (69)

a) As a sentence-modifier it is placed normally immediately after the finite verb. In this case it has, as a rule, weak stress and forms with the verb to which it is attached a sound-unit consisting of one syllable, its vowel being elided: *isn't*, *hasn't*, *didn't*, *won't*, *daren't*, etc.; thus in *He isn't rich*, *He hasn't any money*, *He didn't know my name*. Note a) Sometimes, especially in verse, we find the main verb between the finite verb and *not*, as in:

My slumbers — if I slumber — are not sleep, | But a continuance of enduring thought, | Which then I can resist not. BYRON, *Manfred*, I, 1, 5.

One object which you might pass by, | Might see and notice not. WORDSW. (*JESP.*, Neg., 51).

β) Of the placing of *not* between the verb (imperative) and the object, which may have been not uncommon in Early Modern English, no late instances have been found.

Tell not me; when the butt is out, we will drink water; not a drop before. SHAK., *Temp.*, III, 2, 1.

O Lord, sir! spare not me. *id.*, *All's Well*, II, 2, 53.

γ) In Early Modern English *not* is sometimes found before the verb, and in Late Modern English verse instances of this practice are occasionally met with. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 305; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 405.

For who not needs shall never lack a friend. SHAK., *Hamlet*, III, 2, 219.

I not doubt | He came alive to land. *id.*, *Temp.*, II, 1, 121.

She not denies it. *id.*, *Much ado*, IV, 1, 175.

I swear it would not ruffle me so much | As you that not obey me. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 151.

She heard, | Heard and not heard him; as the village girl, | Who sets the pitcher underneath the spring, | Musing on him that used to fill it for her, | Hears and not hears, and lets it overflow. *id.*, *En. Ar.*, 205—209.

b) Also in interrogative sentences the ordinary place of sentence-modifying *not* is immediately after the finite verb; thus in *Isn't he rich?* *Hasn't he any money?* *Didn't he know your name?*



Note. According to SWEET (N. E. Gr. § 1841) the written language prefers to place *not* after the subject, except in reproductions of colloquial speech. This has been done in:

Is it not then reasonable to infer that [etc.]? MAC., Addison, (774 a).

Did he not advertise? CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holmes, Blue Carb.

You will come, will you not? MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. XXVII. 77.

c) The imperative *let* is always separated from *not* by its object; thus in:

Let us not be for ever calculating, devising, and plotting for the future! DICK., Chuz., Ch. II, 9 a.

d) When *not* occurs together with another adverbial adjunct of mood, it mostly precedes the latter; thus in;

My dear child, you are not, surely, promised, fiancée to this youth. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal, Ch. XIX 193.

Attendance, too, did not, apparently, include drawing down the blind. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XIII, 103.

When *not* follows, it often assumes more or less the nature of a word-modifier.

This advice was, certainly, not without reasonable grounds. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 17.

The Russians confined by their snows would, probably, not stir till the spring was far advanced. MAC., Fred., (188 b).

It is, probably, not an accident that the number of stanzas in the sections is uniform. A. C. BRADLEY, Com. on Ten. In Mem., 90.

It is therefore, perhaps, not an unfounded hope that the future history of the language will be a history of progress. HENRY BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. VI, 240.

e) Other sentence-modifiers are less frequently found between the finite verb and *not*, most writers placing *not* in immediate succession to the verb. Compare Ch. I, 66, d, 3.

i She was not at this time remarkably handsome. FIELD., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. VI, 11.

An accomplishment which I have not since met with in any scholar of the times. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 12.

Dolf was not naturally a coward. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (118). (Compare: She was naturally not a stupid woman [TROL., Orf. Farm, III, Ch. XIII, 163], which is almost equivalent to: She was naturally rather a clever woman.)

It appears to us that Mr. Martin has not of late been fortunate in his choice of subjects. MAC., Pilg. Prog., (133 a).

They are not usually so considerate. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. V, 48. She was not generally unsuccessful. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. X, 120.

ii. Mr. Juxon had at first not been regularly invited to these entertainments. MAR. CRAWF., Lonely Parish, Ch. XII, 96.

Short accepted the offer with boundless gratitude and had hitherto not failed to pay the small sum agreed upon. *ib.*, I, 6.

Into the details of that we are fortunately not obliged to enter. Westm. Gaz., No. 5525, 8 a.

There is at present not the slightest security that three, four or five years hence, they will not put the other side in power. Truth, No. 1802, 81 b.

There is therefore not even a plausible ground for alleging that [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 5149, 1 b.

f) *Not* as a word-modifier has strong or medium stress and may refer to a verb, or to a word(-group) expressing a quality or state, i. e. an adjective, a noun with its modifiers, or an adverb. When it refers to a verb, its place is that of *not* as a sentence-modifier. When it refers to a word(-group) expressing a quality or state, its place is immediately before the word-group it modifies. In this case it mostly implies a moderate degree of the opposite of what is expressed by the following word-group. Thus *Provisions were not scarce.* = *Provisions were rather plentiful.* *He lived not far off* = *He lived rather close by.* For a comparison of weak-stressed *not* with strong-stressed *not*, and with *no* before a predicative noun and before a comparative, see Ch. XL, 114—134. The following quotations contain instances of word-modifying *not*:

He was found not guilty by his peers. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. I, 158.

I have been not unknown as a scholar *ib.*, II, Ch. XI, 250.

The indefinite article is generally not expressed. SWEET, *A. S. Prim.*, 22.

g) In Ch. I, 66, *d* numerous instances have been given of *not* being attached to an element of the sentence to which it does not, logically, belong. Here are a few more:

All that glisters is not gold. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 7, 66 (instead of: Not all that glisters is gold.)

It must be a matter of thankfulness that more lives were not lost. *Sat. Rev.*, 6/6, 1903 706 (EINENKEL in *Anglia*, XXVII, 175).

I did not save you intentionally. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XX, 110.

Note. It is of some interest to compare *I won't detain you a moment* with *I will detain you not a moment*, the former being in a manner affirmative, the latter strongly negative; the former being approximately equivalent to *I will detain you only a moment*, the latter to *I will detain you not at all*.

## ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS VARIOUSLY PLACED ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING.

73. Some adverbial adjuncts may have different positions according (70) to the various shades of meaning they convey; thus:

*again*. 1) In the sense of *once more* it has free order (62), as is shown by:

i. Meantime I am again in London; and again I pace the terraces of Oxford-street by night. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 35.

ii. She again referred gratefully to our kindness. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XV, 149.

iii. I never recurred to it again throughout my visit. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, A, 32.

Note. *Once more* is used in two meanings: i. e. it may, or may not, indicate repetition, which is shown by comparing two such sentences as *Will you say that once more?* and *He was very happy when he was once more at home after his protracted foreign tour*. The same difference may be observed between *back ... again*, with the two words divided by another element of the sentence, and *back again* with the two words placed in succession Compare *to get back to civilization again* with *to get back again to civilization*. However THACKERAY (*Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 220) writes: *No power on earth*

could induce him to go back to Oxbridge again, although no repetition is meant.

2) As a conjunctive adverb it mostly has front-position; e.g.:

i. Again, when an action is beset with numerous adjuncts, these adjuncts need to be divided and distributed partly before and partly after the verb. BAIN, Comp., 315.

ii. What again is the legal effect of the words? MAC., Hist., III, 499 (O.E.D., 7).

3) It has end-position: a) in the sense of *in return, in response*, as in:

Very saucy, and inclined to answer again. O.E.D., 2.

Bring me word again. WEBST., Dict.

I marvel why I answered not again. SHAK., As you like it, III, 5, 131.

For Marmion answer'd nought again. SCOTT, Marm., IV, iv.

I loved and was beloved again. BYRON, Mazeppa, VII, 1.

Orphan though she was, she would have found some one to protect her, whom she might have loved again. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXX, 244 a.

Mr. Quill, the cashier, ... winked at Mr. Driver, the clerk at the desk on his right. Mr. Driver winked again. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

β) to denote the fact that a person or thing has been recognized or has turned up after being for some time unknown or lost; thus in:

I shall never see my gold again. SHAK., Merch., III, 1, 95.

The people hardly knew him again. MAC., Fred., (690 a).

γ) to denote a high degree of intensity of an action, as in:

His eyes sparkled, and his breath smoked again. DICK., Christm. Car., I, 6.

He would sometimes stagger the wisest people and make them gasp again. id., Chuz., Ch. II, 8 b.

My next (aim will be) to rub it (sc. the horse) up with bees-wax, oil, and an indefinite number of cloths, till it glitters again. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 479.

Sarah's exertions had made the silver shine again. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 52.

δ) as an expletive, in questions to denote the fact that the thing inquired about, has slipped the memory, as in:

"You know Mr. Skimpole!" said I — "What do you call him again?" returned Mr. Bucket. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LVII, 476.

What is it they're called again? PUNCH (Dutch: Hoe heeten ze ook weer?)

*altogether* 1) As a sentence-modifier, i.e. in the sense of *in every respect*, German überhaupt, it has free order. In questions it naturally has end-order as a rule. The following examples may show this:

i. Altogether, she had made the holiday for Ransome. PAUL, Cheswick, In the Land of Dreams, Ch. II.

ii. Mr. Barkis's wooing, as I remember it, was altogether of a peculiar kind. DICK., Cop., Ch. X, 72 a.

iii. How do you like the place altogether? JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. III, 13.

I feel in a better frame of mind altogether. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. X, 43.

2) When an adverb of degree, in the sense of *entirely*, it mostly stands before the word(-group) modified, but not seldom has end-position, as appears from:

i. We altogether differ from this opinion. MAC., Com. Dram., (565 b).

This part of the punishment is altogether remitted at the grace of the Sovereign. THACK., Esm., II, Ch. I, 159.

I did not altogether like her tone. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. X.

ii. It is not in the quantity of its effects merely, but in the quality that it differs altogether. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. III, 39.

My lord was speechless altogether. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. IX, 93.

He was dominated by Lord Byron till he was seventeen, when he put him

away altogether. ANDREW LANG, *Alfr. Ten.*, Ch. I, 6. (Dutch: *voor goed*) *first*. 1) In subordinate, chiefly temporal clauses, this adverb stands between the subject and the predicate, when it indicates a time that follows soon after the happening referred to in the sentence, as in:

I have often been asked how I first came to be a regular opium eater. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 11.

When I first settled in this village. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VI, 49.

When Bernardine's father first fell ill, people said 'He will be sorry.' BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. I, 113.

There was no longer any positive necessity for continuing to teach, as there had been thirty years ago, when he first married. MAR. CRAWF., *Lonely Parish*, Ch. I, 4.

2) This is also its normal place when it has the sense of *for the first time*; but front- and end-position also appear to be common enough; e.g.:

i. A most painful affection of the stomach, which I had first experienced about ten years before, attacked me with great strength. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.* Ch. II, 11.

ii. Who should drive past but Miss Hinton, the play-actress, the pony and the phaeton the same as when first I saw her. CON. DOYLE, *Rodn. Stone*, I, Ch. VII, 151.

iii. She was a widow when I met her first. *id.*, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, I, 76.

3) When *first* is used to denote that an action comes in for performance before any other, it has free order. Thus *I should like to go out, but first I will finish this letter*; or: *but I will first finish this letter*, or: *but I will finish this letter first*.

4) But end-position is mostly given to *first*, when it indicates that a person or thing, or group of persons or things, takes precedence of any other with regard to an action or state; thus in:

The muster-roll of names was called over, and mine (as usual) was called first. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 13

Don't believe that I'll leave you or yours in the lurch, Mat. I'd sell myself first. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 293.

5) In the sense of *firstly* it stands before the succession of words, word-groups, or sentences which are to be enumerated (Ch. X, 29).

Silas was thinking with double complacency about his supper: first, because it would be hot and savoury; and secondly because it would cost him nothing. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. V, 34.

Once more the procession was formed and marched round the hall, visiting first the gymnasium, then the library, then the concert-room, and lastly the theatre. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XLIX, 328.

*generally* 1) In the sense of *commonly* it is mostly placed between the subject and the predicate, if the latter is made up of one verb; with complex predicates its ordinary place is immediately after the finite verb (57- 58).

2) When it denotes that no attention is paid to special points, it is mostly placed in immediate succession to the word it singles out for modification, less frequently before it; thus in:

i. They are very ignorant generally. *Good Words*.

Severe weather continues to prevail in the country generally. *Times*.

ii. He made himself generally pleasant. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 191

Tremaine made himself generally agreeable. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 163.

*hardly*. 1) As an adverbial adjunct of quality it is, of course, normally placed after the verb it modifies (53); thus in:

You should not deal so hardly with me. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 124.



The most amiable of mankind may well be moved to indignation, when what he has earned hardly ... is squandered with insane profusion. MAC., Addison, (752 *b*)

Don't think so hardly of me. EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 63.

2) For the placing of *hardly* when an adverb of degree see 52.

*indeed*. 1) As a pure sentence-modifier it has free order, but is mostly placed after the opening word(-group). It occurs in various shades of meaning:

*α) it must be admitted, it is true.* Dutch: wel(is)waar. In this sense it stands in a sentence in adversative relation to another, as in:

The spirit, indeed, is willing, but the flesh is weak. Bible, Matth., XXVI, 41. Some of them, indeed, were suffered to depart, but those from whom it was thought that anything could be extorted, were treated with execrable cruelty. MAC., Clive, (514 *a*).

*β) in fact,* Dutch: trouwens. In this sense it stands in sentences serving to render a previous statement plausible; thus in:

I disclaim any allusion to existing professors, of whom, indeed, I know only one. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 11.

The original work of Professor Ranke is known and esteemed wherever German literature is studied. It is, indeed, the work of a mind fitted both for minute researches and for large speculations. MAC., Popes, (541 *b*).

*γ) surely, to be sure,* Dutch: gewis, voorwaar; thus in:

Nothing, indeed, is more revolting to English feelings than the spectacle of a human being obtruding on our notice his moral ulcers or scars. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. I, 7.

*δ) really,* Dutch: werkelijk, heusch; thus in:

I was, indeed, greatly irritated at the bishop's having suggested any grounds of suspicion. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. II, 17.

"It seems to me that this must be a wonderfully complex and difficult function, requiring very unusual endowments." — "Does it, indeed, seem so to you?" responded Dr. Leete. BELLAMY, Look. Back w., Ch. XVII, 85.

"Yes, indeed," remarked one of the guests at the English table, "yes, indeed, we start life thinking that we shall build a great cathedral, and we end by contriving a mud hut." BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. I, 5.

2) Sentence-modifying *indeed* sometimes has front-order. This is more or less regularly the case when it has the meaning of: *α) certainly*, Dutch: waa-  
-achtig, as in:

"John Westlock is gone, I hope?" — "Indeed, no," said Charity. DICK., Chuz., Ch. II, 9 *a*.

"Let me stay and work for you — let me stay and be your servant." — "Indeed, you are best away." THACK., Esm., I, Ch. IX, 94.

*β) even*, Dutch: ja, zelfs, zoowaar, as in:

i. The lady spared no pains in that matter, to please him; indeed, she would dress her head, or cut it off if he had bidden her. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. VII, 66.

ii. It would have been easy for Clive to accumulate riches such as no subject in Europe possessed. He might, indeed, have received presents to the amount of three hundred thousand pounds a year. MAC., Clive, (533 *a*).

3) When *indeed* is a word-sentence modifier, i. e. when it is used to emphasize the fact that a high degree of any quality or state is meant, it is placed after the word(-group) it belongs to, and in the case of an attributive adjective, after the noun (47, *c*); thus in:

i. She was very happy indeed. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. III, 4).

We are far indeed from considering Temple as a perfect statesman. MAC., Temple, (418 *a*).



Tiny Tim ... had a plaintive little voice, and sang it (sc. the song) very well indeed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 63.

ii. That would be tyranny indeed. BELLAMY, *Look Back w.*, Ch. XVII, 86. He has a very high opinion of you indeed. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. IV, 25.

When the word expressing the quality or state is represented by a demonstrative pronoun or by *so*, or is not represented at all, *indeed* has end-position; thus in:

"His father was an excellent man," said Mrs. Gardiner. — "Yes, ma'am, that he was indeed." JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLIII, 243.

"Well," said Wardle, "smoking day isn't it? — "It is, indeed," replied Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 167.

"I'll get into trouble for this," the girl interrupted — "I will, indeed." PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. I.

Note. *Indeed* as a word-sentence modifier sometimes approximates to *quite*, and in this sense appears, as a rule, to have end-position; thus in:

It was gone indeed. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 370.

now. 1) This word almost regularly has front-position when it introduces the minor of a syllogism, or any explanatory sentence in general (Ch. X, 23); thus in:

i. Men are mortal, now we are men; therefore we are mortal. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 105.

Now, William Dobbin was compelled to remain among the very last of Doctor Swishtail's scholars. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

After a minute he crossed the street, and picked up the slice of bread. Now, in those days, bread was precious, exceedingly. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 9.

ii. East, and another boy of an equally tormenting and ingenious turn of mind now lived exactly opposite. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 238.

Note. In questions of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3) this *now* stands after the opening interrogative word; thus in:

What now is the common characteristic of these several changes? SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. II, 46 a.

2) Front-position is also its normal place when it marks a mere proceeding in a discourse or succession of events, although in this case it is not unfrequently found between subject and predicate.

i. Now began to unroll the most awful series of calamities that have ever visited the sons and daughters of men. BAIN, *Comp.*, 285.

And now I come to the end of my story. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 33.

ii. I now proceed to explain. SWFET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1849.

3) Also when *now* makes us expect another *now* (Dutch: *nu eens, dan weer*), it mostly has front-position (Ch. X, 34); thus in:

Now he toiled through miles of almost virgin forests, now he travelled through open sandy plains.

4) In the sense of *at the present moment*, it is put in different places according to its relative weight, front-order being, however, unusual. This appears from the following examples:

i. If my coming nigh to him pollutes him now, it was not so always. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. VIII, 74.

ii. The population of England was then hardly a third of what it now is. MAC., *Addison*, (760 b). (The placing of the strong-stressed *now* before the weak stressed *is* goes against the genius of the language.)

The work about which we now care nothing. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. I, 115

iii. Now, at the close of his life, ... he can think, not ungratefully, that he has been faithful to that early vow. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. VII, 64.

once. 1) As a numeral of repetition (Ch. XLII, 18) this word is variously

placed, according to its relative weight. This is shown by the following examples:

i. He has not been here once. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XL, 350.

We only went once to the Lyceum. MRS. ALEXANDER, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 159.

ii. She had never once uttered a syllable of unkindness to Harry Esmond. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. VIII, 74.

Had you once seen him, you would have understood why we called him Pot. ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

iii. Once he had attempted to kiss her. PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

2) In the sense of *formerly*, *at one time*, it mostly has weak stress and is, consequently, usually found in the body of the sentence. Sometimes it has back-position.

i. She would wear a gown to rags, because he had once liked it. THACK., *Es m.*, Ch. VII, 63.

Hippias Feverel was once thought to be the genius of the family. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 5.

Shillings have not been so plentiful with me as they once were. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holmes*, *Blue Carb.*

ii. I had a son once, who went for a soldier. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 297.

She was fond enough of her pestilence once. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. II, 118.

3) In the sense of *on one occasion* it has front-position when followed by some specializing adjunct or clause; in the absence of such an adjunct or clause, it mostly has mid-, occasionally end-position. Examples are found in:

i. Once in particular, I was entertained for upwards of three days by a family of young people. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 18.

Once, when he was seven years old, the little girl woke up at night to see a lady bending over him, MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 4.

ii. He believed that he had got this notion from a member of Parliament, who once passed a few weeks with him. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, XXI, 197.

"'Twas after Jason left her, no doubt," Lady Castlewood once said with one of her smiles to young Esmond. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. IX, 87.

iii. I saw them play once. Madame was evidently winning. BARRY PAIN, *Miss Slater*.

I asked the landlord of an inn up the river once, if [etc.]. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XVII, 218.

4) When, like the Dutch *eenmaal*, it signifies that the matter spoken of is an accomplished fact, in which meaning it is chiefly found in adverbial clauses of time or condition, it is placed immediately after the conjunction, or after the finite verb. The conjunctive *once* has the same force (Ch. XVII, 26); thus in:

i. Living London, when once we feel its impressiveness, draws us with a more powerful attraction. JOHN DENNIS, *Good Words*.

I think myself that I could keep out of bed all right, if once I got out. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 77.

ii. I cannot begin my work again when I have once been interrupted. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1847.

I wish they were once harnessed together in matrimony. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1, (214).

Indeed, after he had once cleared his goods and chattels out of Pompadour Hall ..., he had not given the matter much thought. RID. HAG., *Mees.*, *Will*, Ch. IV, 35.

Note. In a conditional clause with inverted word-order the con-

junction being dispensed with, the word may stand in immediate succession to the subject, as in:

Where is this perfidious villain! could I once plunge this dagger into his false heart, I should then die satisfied, SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 152.

β) SHAKESPEARE has this *once* preceded by *but* in like manner as the Dutch *een maal* is often preceded by *maar*; thus in:

For if but once thou show me thy great light, I'll find Demetrius and revenge this spite. MIDS., III, 2, 419.

only. 1) In its ordinary meaning of *merely*, the word is put in various places (68).

2) As a conjunctive adverb it has front-position (Ch. XI, 9).

"We shall make a new thing of opinion here," said Mr. Brooke. "Only I want to keep myself independent about Reform." G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVI, 339. The tale seems incredible. Only you gave me such an honest 'yes', and I know you never tell even white lies. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 193.

3) When denoting a relation of time, it occurs in two shades of meaning, viz.: α) *no longer ago than* (Dutch *nog*), β) *not before* (Dutch *eerst*). In the first its ordinary place is before the adverbial adjunct, in the second before the verb. Compare *I saw him only yesterday* with *I only saw him yesterday*. This nicety of word-order is not, however, always observed.

i. You know as well as I do that on this account only last quarter I wouldn't buy myself a new parasol. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 a.

Gibson is doing the very best thing, both for himself and for her, that he can do. I told him so only yesterday. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 121.

ii. \* I thought you were in London. So I was yesterday. I only came down last night. SWEET.

We only arrived this evening. HICHENS, *Gard. of A.* II, iv, Ch. XXIII, 168.

"We wish so, very greatly," bleated a young fawn, who had only been born that spring. RUDY. KIPL., *Sec. Jungle Book*.

\*\* He had left him only on learning that the ladies of the family intended a visit to Georgina's that morning. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLV, 262. The white-haired Miss Hunt had left only last week. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XIV.

Note. For *only* in either meaning we also find *but*; thus in:

i. Among constellations she outshone but yesterday. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LVIII, 483.

But yesterday he came and poured himself out to me. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XL, 298.

Mr. Esmond was but now depicting aliquo praelia mixta mero, when you came in. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 249.

We were but now over it. *ib.*, 248.

ii. If I am not mistaken, you are but this day arrived. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, I, 1.

In *if*-clauses denoting an idle wish (Ch. XLIX, 10), its usual place is, apparently, before the word that is the subject of the wish.

Ah, if I had only known this! BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VI, 24.

If I were only a man! BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. III, 26.

so. 1) As a conjunctive adverb it has front-position (67, a), as in: *It was very cold, so most people had stayed in-doors*.

2) Also when it refers to a preceding *as*, front-position is regularly observed (Ch. XVII, 35); thus in:

My children, the offspring of temperance, as they were educated without softness, so they were at once well-formed and healthy. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I.

3) This is also its regular place in sentences corroborative of a previous

statement, or in such as are expressive of the fact that a person or thing is in the same predicament as that mentioned in a previous sentence (8, f); thus in:

I thought you were in London. So I was yesterday. SWEET.

Jos thought of all these things and trembled. So did all the rest in Brussels. THACK., V. a. n. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 350.

4) When *so* is used to replace a subordinate statement, a nominal, or together with the verb *to do* a preceding verb with its modifiers, it mostly has back-position. Only when replacing a subordinate statement, or a nominal that is a predicative adjunct, do we occasionally find it at the head, or in the body of the sentence. For detailed discussion see Ch. XXXII, 26 ff.

i. He had been away, I know, for two months before it happened; Pen wrote me so. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XVII, 181.

Doctor Brown says it is a hopeless case, has been so for long. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIII, 131.

Durban lives simply on the up-country trade — the trade of the two Republics whose annexation is now demanded. It does so now, it has always done so. MORN. LEAD.

ii. "I am leaving Rose Cottage to-day, Mr. Halifax." — "So I have heard." Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XV, 149.

This is a pretty view. So I had always thought it; more so than ever now. ib., Ch. II, 17.

iii. The examples sometimes cited of such irregularities in Milton do not prove that they are beauties, or that Milton himself so regarded them. Not. and Quer.

5) The position of *so* as an ordinary adverb of quality, i.e. when it has the sense of *in this manner*, is that of other qualitative modifiers (53); thus in:

i. Nothing, at any rate, could be more certain than that Becky Sharp would at this juncture have so acted. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XX.

ii. Oh, sir, had you made the campaign, believe me, you never would have sung it so. THACK., Esm., II, Ch. XI, 247.

6) For the placing of *so* when an adverb of degree see 52.

*well*. 1) As a pure adverb of quality it has the same place assigned to it as adverbs of quality generally, barring front-position; e.g.:

You have acted well. It had been well done.

His writings have been well compared to those light wines which [etc.] MAC., Addison, (754 b).

2) When it denotes a relation of degree with an admixture of a relation of quality, it is placed now before, now after the verb, in the same way as this is done with the adverbs mentioned in 49; thus in:

i. She possessed talents which well fitted her to partake his cares. MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 11.

Esmond well remembered the day. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. IX, 81.

I well believe that. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XII, 122.

ii. She knew the archway well. CON. DOYLE, Siege of Sunda Gunge. "Do you remember the last time we stood there John?" — "I do, well." Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 186.

3) In the sense of a weak *much* it mostly stands after the verb (50), and, of course, before the adjective; thus in:

i. I would like well to see you married. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., XIX, 194.

ii. Abraham and Sarah were old, and well stricken in years. Bible, Gen. XVIII, 11.

4) In the sense of *to the end, completely*, Dutch: *goed en wel*, it stands immediately before the word it modifies, which is always a past participle; thus in:

Ere he had well told his story, the troop rode into the court-yard. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. V, 46.

5) When it is a kind of modal adverb in the sense of *surely*, it stands after *may* the only verb with which it occurs; thus in:

The most amiable of mankind may well be moved to indignation, when what he has earned hardly ... is squandered with insane profusion. MAC., *Addison*, (752 *b*).

It may well be that it shall soon be your lordship's duty to take due and legal steps for depriving me of my benefice. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 205.

You may well look astonished. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. X, 53 *b*.

## FINAL OBSERVATIONS.

### 74. In conclusion we make some observations about adverbial (71) adjuncts of place and time.

a) Adverbial adjuncts of time, as a rule, stand after those of place, when neither can be said to be subservient to the other; thus in:

He remained standing in the same place for a few moments. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*.

He had resided in China for some years previously. *Academy*.

But is easy to cite instances in which this order is not observed; e. g.:

She comes every day into the kitchen. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XIX, 192.

b) When two adverbial adjuncts both expressing adverbial relations either of place or time occur together, that denoting the most special sense mostly takes precedence of the other; e. g.:

They lie on the table in the library. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. IV, 24.

They did not reach Kensington until five o'clock in the morning. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 2.

c) Also adverbs indicating indefinite repetition (56) seem, as a rule, to stand before other adverbs of time, as in:

The two places nearest to me — Fairy Glen and the Swallows Falls — which I had always hitherto avoided on account of their being the favourite haunts of tourists [etc]. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, Ch. I, 386.

d) When there are more modifiers than one, they are often, for stylistic reasons, placed in different positions in the sentence, naturally with due consideration of their relative weight.

At the window sat on one side an old gentleman. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts*.

e) Accumulation of several modifiers in one position, as in the following example, would be accounted ill-arranged by good stylists:

All eyes have naturally been turned in expectancy during the week to Portsmouth. *Daily Mail*. (Re-arranged: During the week all eyes etc.).

## PLACE OF OBJECTS WITH VERBALS.

### 75. a) Objects, whether prepositional or non-prepositional, are normally placed after the verbals they belong to. This has been done in:



i. I have reason to feel great respect for his knowledge. *DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. III, 41.*

The primary effects of opium are always to excite and stimulate the system. *ib., Ch. III, 41.*

ii. Arrived at my lodging, I lost not a moment in taking the quantity prescribed. *ib., Ch. III, 37.*

The enemies had charged him with talking nonsense on politics. *ib., Ch. III, 40.*

iii. A row of spacious houses, belonging to the chief factors of the East-India Company, lined the banks of the river. *Mac., Clive, (512 b).*

b) When objects occur together with adverbial adjuncts, they mostly take precedence of the latter, subject to the same principles and restrictions as govern the relative position of objects and adverbial adjuncts in sentences and full clauses; thus in:

i. Sybil ventured to open her eyes again. *ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. XVII, 227.*

ii. I had a great wish to see again that fresh young face. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hall, Ch. X, 109.*

This seemed to be dealing more tenderly with Granville's self-respect. *MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 207 b.*

He made himself generally pleasant, falling in kindly to the Jessops' household ways. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hall, Ch. XIX, 191.*

c) In adnominal clauses the relative that forms the object of an incorporated infinitive- or gerund-clause may stand either in front, the verbal being mostly placed towards the end of the clause, or in immediate succession to these verbals which then open the clause. The first position appears to be the more frequent, but would not seldom be rendered inconvenient by the structure of the clause. For comment and illustration see also *Ch. XXXIX, 37—38.*

i. \* There are certain sections of the community whom we do well to remember. *Graph., No. 2339, 439 c.*

There is hardly a page in this book that is not a delight to read. *Westm. Gaz. (more usual: ... that it is not a delight to read (Ch. II, 13))*

She walked briskly to the house with a strange feeling of relief and joy which she was unable to account for in any explicable way. *EL. GLYN, Halcyone, Ch. XIV, 122.*

\*\* He knew every one whom to know was an honour. *TROL., Ward., Ch. XVII, 221 (more usual: ... whom it was an honour to know. (Ch. II, 13.))*

\*\*\* She resumed a sway over his house to shake off which had been the object of his life. *THACK., A little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. V, (323).* There are a thousand things, mean and trifling in themselves, which a man despises when he thinks of them in his philosophy, but to dispense with which puts his philosophy to a stern proof. *TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIV, 150.*

ii. \* What she was not clear upon was, how she should set about leading any other (sc. life), and what were the particular acts which she would assert her freedom by doing. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, i, Ch. VI, 75.*

It is certain that some unmoral forces in American politics have received a blow from which they may be long in rising. *Westm. Gaz., 31/10, 1908.*

\*\* Dissenting chapels ... had got themselves established on each side of the parish, in pulling down which Lady Lufton thought that her pet parson was hardly so energetic as he might be. *TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 10.*

iii. \* Miss Murdstone disposed of me in two words: "Wants manner!" Having uttered which with great distinctness, she begged the favour of being shown to her room. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 a.

The narrow streets and courts ... terminated in a large open space; scattered about which were pens for beasts and other indications of a cattle-market. *id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XVI, 148.

\*\* Another fellow now came up and asked which way the gentlemen were going? — of which being informed by Jones, he first scratched his head, and then [etc]. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, VII, Ch. X, 120 a.

76. Obs. I. An instance of the object being placed before the infinitive (73) is afforded by the saying *truth to tell*.

Truth to tell, good looks are the exception, not the rule, in Naples. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. I, 8.

The ordinary practice, however, is to say: *to tell (speak) (the) truth* (Ch. XVIII, 24).

To tell the truth, he did not care to venture there in the dark. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (151).

To speak truth, if I thought I had a chance to better myself where I was going, I would go with a good will. STEV., *Kidnapped*, Ch. I, (191).

II. Occasionally objects are found before gerunds, but then they form a kind of sense-unit with them (Ch. LVI, 39).

He gave up cigar-smoking. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 219.

For shoe-making or house-building, for the management of a ship or locomotive engine, a long apprenticeship is needful. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 26 b. One advantage claimed for that devotion to language-learning which forms so prominent a feature in the ordinary curriculum, is, that the memory is thereby strengthened. *ib.*, Ch. I, 36 a.

III. In such a word-group as *all things considered*, the word-group *all things* does not represent the object, but the subject of the verbal: the whole being equivalent to *all things being (having been) considered* (Ch. XX, 9, Obs. V).

## PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS WITH VERBALS.

77. The position of adverbial adjuncts with infinitives tallies, in the (74) main, with the place which is given to them when they stand with finite predicates. This appears from the following examples containing for the most part the same adverbial adjuncts as those mentioned in the preceding sections:

a) before a simple infinitive: i. Even *their* experience may hardly enable them thoroughly to imagine what was the effect on a simple weaver, like Silas Marner, when he left his own country and people. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. I, 11.

The squire seemed hardly to credit his senses. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. XIX, 180.

It did not seem much to matter which sat on what throne. BERN. CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, I, 7.

I do not know how to find words adequately to thank you for the honour you have done me this day. CHAMBERLAIN, *Speech*.

ii. I hope never to see his face again. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1846.

In an hour the forces of Surajah Dowlah were dispersed, never to reassemble. *Mac., Clive*, (519 *a*).

Lady Tiptoff did not wish her little boy often to breathe the air of such a close place as Salisbury Square. *Thack., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 176.

She appeared always to be thinking. *Beatr. Har., Ships*, I, Ch. VII, 27.

The Cabinet are compelled soon to revise their legislative programme. *Times*.  
iii. He then proceeded circumstantially to describe the quarrel between Aerschot and Egmont. *Motley, Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 198 *b*.

It seemed however, to be dealing more tenderly with Granville's self-respect, thus to leave a vague opening for return. *ib.*, II, Ch. IV, 207 *b*.

It may perhaps be as well succinctly to summarize the chief heads of the factory legislation now in force. *Escott, England*, Ch. X, 139.

*b*) after a simple infinitive: i. We are not able to concur fully in his views on the subject of naval education and training. *Times*.

ii. They naturally liked to be in each other's sight continually. *Mrs. Craik, John Hal.*, Ch. XX, 198.

There is nothing to keep us here any longer. *Anstey, Fallen Idol*, Ch. XV, 206.

To hear once was to remember with *Donovan*. *Edna Lyall, Donovan*, I, 24.

iii. He threatened to flog Figs violently, of course. *Thack., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46.

*c*) Before the whole of a complex infinitive: I felt so triumphant ever to have known the man who had done such generous and gallant deeds. *Dick., Bleak House*, Ch. XXXV, 308.

We scarcely remember ever to have seen a patient so far gone in this distemper as Mr. Thackeray. *Mac., William Pitt*. (226 *a*).

He had no hat and, by his altitude, seemed never to have had one. *Chest., Manalive*, I, Ch I, 17.

*d*) After the first verb of a complex infinitive: I must have been born with a silver spoon in my mouth, I am sure, to have ever come across Pecksniff. *Dick., Chuz.*, Ch. VI, 47 *a*.

The open square outside was bathed in light — a light uncertain, shadowy, spectral, yet permitting any object moving in it to be distinctly seen. *Con. Doyle, Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

He was not a man to be lightly played upon. *Anstey, Fallen Idol*, Ch. XIV, 180.

*e*) After the second verb of a complex infinitive: He said that he did not remember to have been strictly forbidden to go out after sunset.

*f*) After the whole of a complex infinitive: What crime, madam, have I committed to be treated thus. *Sher., Riv.*, I, 2.

The concluding lines of the poem which seem originally to have been written cursorily and indistinctly, are now almost illegible. *Sweet, A. S. Read.*, I, XXIII, 139.

78. Sometimes we find the adverb placed between *to* and the (75) infinitive. This practice has been traced to the beginning of the fourteenth century (See *Onions, Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 177; *Jespersen, Growth & Structure*, § 211; and especially *Curme, Origin and Force of the Split-Infinitive in Mod. Lang. Notes*, Feb., 1914, Vol. XXIX, No. 2, page 41—45), and appears to become more and more common in the latest English (*Sweet, N. E. Gr.*, § 1864). The construction is generally known under the name of *Split Infinitive*.

This denomination has been described as inappropriate by *Jespersen* (*Growth & Structure*, § 211), his chief objection being his

contention "that the linguistic instinct now takes *to* to belong to the preceding verb rather than to the infinitive" in such a sentence as *I intend to leave town to-morrow*. This, he alleges, is proved by the fact that *to* may drop the infinitive when it can be supplied from what precedes, as in *Shall you leave town to-morrow? — Yes, at least I intend to*. (This *to* he proposes to call Pro-infinitive; see Ch. XXXII, 31). But, as CURME (l.c.) rightly observes, this theory is destroyed by the fact that in many examples of the Split-Infinitive, e.g. in *To almost succeed is not enough*, *to* cannot be said to belong to a preceding verb.

The Split Infinitive has been vehemently inveighed against by many would-be linguists as an ugly solecism, but there can be no doubt that 'it has come to stay', offering as it does, at least in the written language, a useful expedient to find a suitable place for various adverbial modifiers of the infinitive. Thus it would be difficult to assign to the adverb another place that for one reason or another would not be objectionable, in *An incident had happened early in the opening of the year, which had served to greatly strengthen their friendship* (ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. compared, I, § 158). If *greatly* is put between *served* and *to*, it might be taken for a modifier of *served*; if it is put between *strengthen* and *their friendship*, it unduly separates the verb from its object (33); if it is removed to the end of the sentence, it would receive more emphasis than is intended for it. It is easy to see that the following sentences, as they appear in print are ambiguous, owing to the uncertainty which element of the sentence the adverb standing before *to* + infinitive is meant to modify:

Reigning by a disputed title, she could not venture directly to oppose herself to a majority of both Houses of Parliament. MAC. ADDISON, (757 a).

The absence of the pope and the papal court served greatly to impoverish the citizens. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 19.

Blanche is a mere child, far too young even to think of such things yet. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch I. 14.

The mine-owners stand together, and the other leaders of industry refuse publicly to criticise them. MANCH. GUARD., 15/10, 1926, 302 d.

The general purport of the sentence may, indeed, place the reference of the adverb beyond a doubt, but it cannot be denied that the placing of the adverb between *to* and the infinitive would in many cases safeguard against all misunderstanding.

The Split Infinitive cannot be said to be only practised by hasty journalists, or careless penny-a-liners. On the contrary, we find it also in many literary productions, some of high standing, both prose and poetry, the present writer having come across instances in the works of *Fanny Burney, Byron, Keats, Thom. Holcroft, Macaulay, Trollope, Dickens, Thackeray, Browning, G. Eliot, Mrs. Gaskell, Escott, Thomas Hardy, Jerome, Matthew Arnold, Miss Burnett, Conan Doyle, Barress von Hutten, Compton Mackenzie*. Compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Syn.*, § 177. The following utterance is of some interest:

Of his (sc. Wilde's) many defects I will say nothing, except that his split-infinitives are a standing disgrace to him. LORD ALFRED DOUGLAS, *Oscar Wilde and myself*, Ch. XVII, 231.



In looking through the following material it will be observed: 1) that the construction is not, indeed, confined to any particular variety of adverbs, but that instances appear to be most common with those of degree, attendant circumstances, quality, time, and mood, the relative frequency corresponding to the order in which these relations are here mentioned; further that the construction appears to be rare with *not* and *either*, only one instance having come to hand of each; also that the construction is, apparently, impossible with adverbs of place and causality; 2) that the adverb has weak or moderate stress, the main interest of the communication invariably centring in some other element of the sentence; 3) that in not a few cases there appears to be no special occasion for it. Compare SWEET'S observation (N. E. Gr., § 1864) that *It is necessary to understand this point clearly* is more usual than *It is necessary to clearly understand this point*.

I know not how I should be able to absolutely forbid him my sight. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, LI, 235.

It was evident that he purposed to both charm and astonish me by his appearance. *ib.*, 235.

To wilfully offend any lady was, to him, utterly impossible. *ib.*, XIX, 74.

To sit on rocks, to muse o'er flood and fell, | To slowly trace the forest's shady scene ... | This is not solitude. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, II, xxv.

There they discoursed upon the fragile bar | That keeps us from our homes ethereal; | And what our duties there: to nightly call | Vesper, the beauty-crest of summer weather. KEATS, *Endym.*, I, 362.

I should be half mad if I thought she was (*sc.* fond of me); yet I am obliged to half hope she is not. THOM. HOLCROFT, *Road to Ruin*, I, 3, (13).

In order to fully appreciate the character of Lord Holland, it is necessary to go far back into the history of his family. MAC., *Lord Holland*, 590 *a*.

Those heavy curtains (were) draped so as to half exclude the light of the sun. TROL., *Warden*, Ch VIII, 99.

I wish you to distinctly understand that. *id.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 398.

I am at a loss to find words to sufficiently express my gratitude to you for your kindness to my son Richard. DICK., *Uncom. Trav.*, Ch. II, 22.

Such were the motives which induced the Duke of Marlborough to venture that prodigious stake, and desperately sacrifice thirty thousand brave lives. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. I, 307.

How — can this arm establish her above me, | if fortune fixed her as my lady there, | There already, to eternally reprove me? BROWN., *Pippa passes*, Noon, 253.

It was in the nature of a stroke to partly take away the use of a man's limbs and throw him on the parish. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 4.

Miss Matty's idea was to take a single room ... and then to quietly exist upon what remained after paying the rent. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XXIV, 257. They have offered inducements to their members to closely watch the events of the day. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. X, 153.

Her instinct on two or three occasions was to merely walk as a queen among these gods of the fallow. HARDY, *Mad. Crowd*, Ch. XII, 103.

The maltster's lack of teeth appeared not to sensibly diminish his powers as a mill. *ib.* Ch. V, 117.

Bathsheba genuinely repented that a freak ... should ever have been undertaken, to disturb the placidity of a man she respected too highly to deliberately tease. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, 135.

One never has time to really think. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, I, 11.



That unaccountable luck that appears to always wait upon a boy when he plays the wag from school. *id.*, *Three Men*, Ch. XVII, 224.

He was surprised that a man who could be so sensible, as myself, could have patience to even think of such old-womanish nonsense. *id.*, *Diary of a Pilgrim.*, 13.

He only knew enough Spanish to just ask for what he wanted. *ib.*, 18.

Without permitting himself to actually mention. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *On Translating Homer*, III (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 4*b*).

To unwittingly disparage and discredit. *id.*, *Culture & Anarchy*, V (*ib.*)

To directly serve the instinct in question. *Discourses in America, Literature & Dogma* (*ib.*).

The statement caused Dick to so open his eyes and mouth and start, that his cap fell off. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. III, 64.

The observer who has thoroughly understood one link in a series of incidents, should be able to accurately state all the other ones, both before and after.

CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 211.

I don't see how you had the heart to not ask us. BAESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, II, Ch. III, 92.

Noise seems to regular delight him. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sinister Street*, II, Ch. I, 506.

The spread of juvenile prostitution was so appalling a moral danger as to imperatively call for repressive legislation. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 195, 307*a*.

Russia's star has only begun to faintly dawn. *ib.*, No. 224, 128*b*.

I refused to either admit or deny any of the rumours. *Times*.

It is to our interest to absolutely ignore these insulting attacks. *ib.*

Nonconformity, however, is not likely to readily forgive the manner in which the Khaki majority of 1900 was used to enormously strengthen a denominational interest. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5024, 2*a b*.

Parliament is feeling its way with no other wish than to conscientiously perform its duty. *ib.*, 2*c*.

Rather frequently we find the word-group *more than* between *to* and the infinitive, but the placing of a lengthy word-group in this position, as in the three last of the following examples, looks like stretching the admissibility of the construction a point too far:

i. All was not well, they deem'd — but where the wrong? | Some knew perchance — but 'twas a tale too long; | And such besides were too discreetly wise | To more than hint their knowledge in surmise. BYRON, *Lara*, I, ix.

I want him to more than care for me. HARDY, *Jude*, I, Ch. VII, 56.

The net result of Tory rule was to more than double the amount spent every year on powder and shot. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 196, 333*a*.

I have not space to more than call attention to Mrs. Stopes's most able presentation of the case. *ib.*, No. 213, 322*a*.

ii. Vanelly, who combined most of the virtues with enough caution to nearly but not quite swamp them, hedged. *Truth*, No. 1800, 1676*a*.

Readers are offered an exceptional opportunity to quickly, permanently and safely reduce weight in the privacy of their own homes, 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3884, 493*a*.

He had unearthed a stock of night-suits, and spread out about half-a-dozen to — as at first I supposed — choose a colour which would blend with his bedroom wall-paper. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7229, 15*b*.

79. In conclusion attention is drawn to the following special points: (76)

a) Adverbs of degree stand before the whole of an adjectival passive infinitive; as in:

Pipes and beer are infinitely to be preferred to saying one's prayers. *STOF., Handl., I, 59.*

It is much to be regretted that Sir James Mackintosh did not wholly devote his later years to philosophy and literature. *MAC., Revol., (313 a).*

*b)* In infinitive-clauses of purpose, comparatives, mostly preceded by *the*, are generally placed before the infinitive; thus in:

I had put on the appearance of poverty in order more effectually to mislead the public. *THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 140.*

The better to set this fear at rest, I changed the form of my inquiries. *STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (195).*

*c)* *Not* almost regularly precedes the infinitive. See, however, the preceding section.

One must keep still in order not to stir up a hornets' nest. *MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 202 b.*

The feelings of the Liberals were — not to put too fine a point on it — very mixed indeed. *TIMES.*

*d)* In absolute infinitive-clauses (*Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. V*) the adverb *so* always stands before the infinitive; thus in:

Having, so to speak, sealed up the subject by saying the best thing that could be said. *MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. III, 18.*

*e)* On the analogy of such a sentence as *I had much to tell*, such adverbs as *long, further*, etc. precede the infinitive in:

Mr. Jukes had not long to wait. *Pall Mall Mag.*

Some of us had further to go. *SWEET, Railway Excursion.*

80. With gerunds, whether or no preceded by a pronoun (*Ch. XIX, (77) 1—8; Ch. LVI, 34—37*), the placing of adverbial adjuncts depends, in the main, upon their position with finite predicates. The following examples are intended to show this:

*a)* before a simple gerund: The thought of never seeing him again. *SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1846.*

I don't remember ever having a keener sense of remorse. *id., Old Chapel.* He began to think that the source and secret of this ghostly light might be in the adjoining room, from whence, on further tracing it, it seemed to come. *DICK., Christm. Car., III, 18.*

There would be nothing more remarkable in his taking a stroll at night than there would be in any other middle-aged gentleman rashly turning out after dark. *ib., I.*

From the moment of his first speaking to us, his voice had connected itself with an association in my mind that I could not define. *id., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 39.*

*b)* after a simple gerund: Nature's chief masterpiece is writing well. *POPE, Es. on Crit., III, 724.*

I felt as if I were acting a barbarous part in standing by, and gazing idly on this scene of maternal anguish. *WASH. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XI, 106.*

Dame van Winkle ... looked upon Wolf as the cause of his master's going so often astray. *ib., V, 36.*

I had plenty to think of, besides my mind running continually on the kind of place I was going to. *DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 35 b.*

There was a moment of struggle and hesitation in Mr. Bulstrode, but intended in his putting out his hand coldly to Raffles. *G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. LIII, 387.*

I pronounced against his seeing her again. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, III, 276.  
What administrative talent can be equal to determining wisely what trade or business every individual in a great nation shall pursue? BELLAMY, *Look Backw.*, Ch. VII, 33.

c) before the whole of a complex gerund: Their greatness consists in their never having done anything to distinguish themselves. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. IV, 54.

d) after the first verb of a complex gerund: Halifax was not content with having already driven his rival from the Board of Treasury. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 4.

Clara was confused and perplexed at being thus appealed to. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XX.

This would prevent the country from being ever placed again in such a dangerous and humiliating position. TIMES.

e) after the second verb of a complex gerund: Mr. Sidney Colvin confesses to having been for a time blinded to the imaginative force of "The Ebb Tide" by his dislike to the three wretched heroes. LESLIE STEPHEN, *Stud.*

In spite of its having been repeatedly explained to her. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVII.

f) after the whole of a complex gerund: He owned to having treated her very ill. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 264.

He was aware of being looked at eagerly in return. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XXV.

When he died, he left every penny of his money to my brother Sam, as a slight compensation to him for having been born on a Friday. JEROME, *Sketches*.

## 81. Special attention is drawn to the following adverbs: (78)

a) *So*, as an adverb of quality, stands either before or after the gerund; e. g.:

i. Mr. Winkle abruptly altered its position, and in so doing, contrived to bring the barrel into pretty sharp contact with Mr. Weller's head. DICK. PICKW., Ch. XIX, 163.

Nature had made them (sc. the eyes) so to shine and to look, and they could no more help so looking and shining than one star can help being brighter than another. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XX, 213.

The highest office which the historian can discharge, is that of so narrating the lives of nations, as to furnish materials for a Comparative Sociology. SPENC., *Educ.*, 29b.

In so speaking, Rashleigh indeed played a winning card. MRS. AL... *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XIII, 224.

ii. Laura said to him ... that she thought ... he ought to go back and get his degree, if he could fetch it by doing so. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 220.

After all, was there any necessity for doing so at all? DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXII.

b) *not* always precedes the gerund, whether simple or complex, as in:

i. You must excuse my not being convinced by assurances only. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.* Ch. XVIII, 99.

Tom did not see his way to not profiting by those suggestions. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 310.

ii. The first sentence concluded with her brother's regret at not having had time to pay his respects to his friends. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.* Ch. XXIV, 134.

His ill-humour was engendered by the disappointment he felt at not having

received orders to turn the intruder out. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XV.

82. The rules relative to the position of adverbial adjuncts with (79) finite predicates also determine their normal place with present participles. The following examples are intended to show this:

a) before a simple present participle: The old man remained seated behind the table, without stirring or turning an eye, always keeping a steady glare on Dolf. WASH. IRV., *Dolf. Heyl.*, (119).

Pen rarely appeared out of his College; regularly going to morning chapel. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 220.

The epoch now described was the one in which the causes of the great convulsion were rapidly germinating. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 198 a.

b) after a simple present participle: Seeing clearly that it would be useless to pursue their point, the gentlemen withdrew. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 11.

He made himself generally pleasant, falling in kindly to the Jessops' household ways. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 191.

We all sat round the table, talking gaily together. *ib.*, Ch. XIX, 192.

c) between the members of a complex present participle: The very farm-dogs bark less frequently, being less disturbed by passing travellers. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XI, 103.

Having thus briefly sketched the different agents required in the making of a newspaper, let us now turn for a moment to view those agencies at work. *Good Words*.

She had a life interest in the sum of £ 1000, which, being well invested, brought her in £ 350 a year. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 25.

c) after the whole of a complex present participle: Sir Walter Besant was in his 65th year, having been born at Portsmouth on August 14, 1836. *Times*.

83. The following points deserve special attention: (80)

a) The adverbs *so* and *thus* regularly stand before *saying* (Ch. XXXII, 27); thus in:

So saying, he bent his head over the corpse. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 17.  
Thus saying, he gathered his robe around him, and slowly swept away. *id.*, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. II, 13 b.

b) Absolute present participles that are not accompanied by a (pro)-noun indicating their subject, mostly have the adverbial adjunct placed before them (Ch. XXV, 5); e. g.:

i. Properly speaking, they had but one character. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I.

Generally speaking, I don't like boys. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 a.

Roughly speaking, this date separates the earlier stages of the language from all contact with such languages as Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, etc. SKEAT, *Princ.*, I, § 10

ii. This, speaking broadly, is the secret of the contentedness of the poor Irish with their miserable homes. *Good Words*.

Society, speaking generally, is not only ignorant as respects education of the judgment, but is also ignorant of its ignorance. FARADAY (in SPENCER, *Educ.*, Cn. I, 37 a.

84. The position of adverbial adjuncts with past participles in (81) undeveloped clauses depends on what place would be given to them in the corresponding full clauses.

a) before the past participle: It is hardly necessary for us to say that this is an excellent book excellently translated. MAC., *Popes*, (541 b).



Mr. Winkle, thus admonished, abruptly altered its position. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

The epoch now described was the one in which the causes of the convulsion were rapidly germinating. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 198 a.

In the outer room a stout young fellow — a poacher probably — sat, heavily ironed. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 187.

This was her right, silently claimed, which nobody either smiled at or interfered with. *ib.*, Ch. XIX, 192.

b) after the past participle: Prompted, perhaps, by some secret reasons, I delivered this observation with too much acrimony. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VI, ( 67).

And, taken generally, I must say, that, in this point at least, the poor are far more philosophic than the rich. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 44.

85. Adverbs are often joined to participles, both present and past, (82) to form compounds with them, which for the most part regularly precede the noun; thus in:

An ill-advised and unfortunate insurrection. WORDSWORTH.

The afore-said Martin whom Arthur had taken such a fancy to [*etc.*]. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

There were some well-disposed natives, who saw them and were sorry for them. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 187.

A man of an easy-going disposition. GORD. HOLMES, *Silv. Craven*, 18.

He is a convinced and thorough-going Imperialist. *Times*.

## PLACE OF PREPOSITIONS.

86. The normal place of prepositions is immediately before the (83) words or word-groups with which they form an adjunct, as in:  
*I attended to his words, I met him in London, He spoke about what was nearest to his heart.* They are, however, frequently detached from the word(-group) they belong to and placed in end-position, or at some convenient place in the latter part of the sentence or clause. The reason why prepositions are apt to be shifted from their normal place may be the fact that in many cases they are felt to be closely connected with the verbs or adjectives with which they stand, an attribute which appears to be more marked in English than in any of the other West-European languages. This appears from a feature peculiar to the English passive conversion of verbs governing a prepositional object, i. e. the preposition leaves the (pro)noun with which it forms an adjunct, and follows the past participle of the verb concerned, as in:

I wish the maxim were more generally acted on in all cases. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. VI, 29 b.

For further discussion see Ch. XLV, 24; Ch. XLVII, 24. See also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 10.21; 15.6.

As has been observed above, and will be shown in the following



discussions, the English preposition admits of another, no less remarkable way of being removed from the word(-group) with which it forms an adjunct.

The etymology of the word *has*, it appears, led some people to the assumption that good style requires the preposition to be placed before the (pro)noun with which it forms an adjunct, as is generally done in Latin and all the West-European languages. But such would-be sticklers for the purity of the language overlook the fact that examples of shifting may be found in abundance in the works of the greatest writers, from CHAUCER to GALSWORTHY, that it may be observed in the natural speech of the best speakers, and, last but not least, that it affords an invaluable means to promote conciseness, smoothness of diction, and diversity in metre and rhythm. A convincing plea for the legitimacy of the practice may be found in FOWLER, *Dict. of Mod. Eng. Usage* 457 ff.

87. The preposition is often shifted in adnominal clauses. Naturally this is always done in the case of the adnominal clause being introduced by *that*, which, as everybody knows, does not allow of being preceded by a preposition.

The fact that *that* does not admit of being preceded by a preposition is the main argument adduced in proving that the word when used as a connective is always a conjunction. Compare KRUISINGA, *Handbk.*, § 1159, 2194; also *id.*, *English Studies*, IX, 29, foot-note; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 8.71—8.76. The present writer has not, as yet, seen his way to accede to this view, there being, in his opinion, weighty objections to adopting it (Ch. LVI, 12, c). It should also be observed that the advocates of the conjunction-theory have so far, to his knowledge, failed to make good their contention by giving a neat description of what, in their opinion, constitutes the difference between conjunctions and relative pronouns. The objections do not, of course, apply to the case that a word-group consisting of a preposition + relative *which* may take the place of *that* (Ch. XVI, 14), as in *This is the way that we live* (THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 74), in which *that* may be replaced by *in which*, and the clause it introduces is a subordinate statement standing by way of apposition to *way*.

Shifting of the preposition is, of course, unavoidable also when the adnominal clause does not open with any connecting word(-group). The cases in which the relative is apt to be dispensed with have been discussed in ample detail in Ch. XXXIX, 27 ff, so that there appears to be no occasion to advert to this subject in this place. A good deal also has been said in that chapter about the circumstances which appear to favour shifting. It will, therefore, be deemed sufficient that in this place the subject should be discussed only in special regard to the grammatical function of the preposition-groups.

a) From what has been observed in 86 it follows that shifting

of the preposition is especially common when it is felt as a constituent of a prepositional object. It is practically unavoidable when the verb to which the object belongs conveys hardly any sense by itself. Thus we could hardly say *The people upon whom he imposed* instead of *The people (whom) he imposed upon*, or *The course upon which he resolved* instead of *The course (which) he resolved upon*. Conversely shifting is often felt to be unnatural when the verb gives good sense by itself, especially when the connexion with the object is rather loose. It would, for example, hardly do to say *The crimes we shudder at* instead of *The crimes at which we shudder*, or *The comforts the ship abounds in* instead of *The comforts in which the ship abounds*. Another factor, perhaps bearing upon the subject, is the fact that verbs or nominals which have not much meaning by themselves are unfit to bear the full weight of end-stress, so that the added preposition comes as a welcome expedient to meet the deficiency, a combination of two words being more capable of sustaining end-position than a single word.

Here follow some few examples with the preposition in end-position in adnominal clauses:

i. Maria, my ward, whom I ought to have the power of a father over, is determined to turn rebel too, and absolutely refuses the man whom I have long resolved on for her husband. SHER., School, I, 2, (374). (The first shifting makes the impression of being more or less unnatural.)

He stared about him as if he expected to discover some particular beauty in the landscape, which the sagacious animals were calling special attention to. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

We saw the Scotch play which everybody is talking about. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXI, 631.

There were one or two girl friends who ought to be written to. EL. GLYN, The Point of View, Ch. IV, 73.

ii. This (geranium) is finer than that which your mamma was so fond of. LYTON, Caxt., I, Ch. IV, 20.

In the rapid dispatch of actual business, our composition cannot always embody even the merits that we are masters of. BAIN, Comp., Pref. 7.

Note a) Shifting of the preposition naturally entails frequent suppression of the relative, especially in colloquial English; thus in:

She knew no man she would sooner fix upon. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. III, (253).

You know the stuff I'm made of. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. VI, 100.

All the gold of California could not bring him one inch nearer to the goal he aimed at. *ib.*, Ch. XXIII, 409.

b) The structure of the sentence makes shifting practically obligatory in: Faith, ma'am, one is a young gentleman whom I should be very sorry anything was to happen to. SHER., Riv., V, 1.

This is really a fact that I doubt if you are aware of. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. IV, 65.

He was a man that it was easy to tell a thing like that to. CON. DOYLE, Sherlock Holmes.

c) Conversely it should be observed that shifting is often consciously

or unconsciously avoided. This applies especially to literary prose in which deviation from the normal word-order is by some writers held at variance with good taste. Stylistic considerations appear to render shifting particularly unacceptable: 1) when the prepositional object is one that is, in a manner, a variant of a non-prepositional person-object (Ch. XXXIX, 28, b, 3), as in:

i. The man to whom this post was offered, proved utterly unworthy of the trust.

ii. There are only a few in the world to whom snuff is important. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3789, 907 b.

2) when the component parts of a group-verb are not felt to have sufficiently coalesced into a unit, as in:

i. He repeatedly gave private directions to his officers to pillage and demolish the houses of persons against whom he had a grudge. *Mac., Fred.*, (682 a). He pointed out the hard terms on which the transport and railway men had to go back in May after their sympathetic action. *Manch. Guard.*, 15/10, 1926, 301 a.

ii. There is no man for whom I have a sincerer respect. *PINERO, Iris*, I, (45).

3) when the verb or nominal is felt to be one of particular weight, as in:  
i. He is a man to whom any mother in all the land would be proud to see her daughter married. *TROL., Castle Richm.*, Ch. XI, 189.

On some of the most important issues of modern life there is no free discussion within the groups on whose decisions everything depends. *Manch. Guard.*, 15/10, 1926, 302 c.

ii. In real life Marcella would probably before long have been found trying to kick his shins — a mode of warfare of which in her demon moods she was past mistress. *Mrs. WARD, Marc.*, I, Ch. I, 11.

He attacked them with all the startling bitterness and invective of which he was so capable. *Eng. Rev.*, March 1912, 684.

δ) But in many cases it is hard to assign any particular reason for the preservation of the normal word-order beyond a certain notion that shifting is not consonant with literary composition. This may apply to the following examples:

i. There was a sour smell, as of old rancid butter, about the place, to which the guests sometimes objected. *TROL., Castle Richm.*, Ch. VI, 84.

The greater part of the custom on which the publican depends came to him from the inhabitants of one particular country district. *ib.*, 85.

He opened his huge bag and pushed into it the papers and plan at which he had been looking. *Mrs. BELLOCK LOWNDES, Mary Pechell*, Ch. I.

ii. She had ... to check herself in singing merry ditties, that she felt little accorded with the sewing on which she was engaged. *Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 67.

That Tom and Lucy should do or see anything of which she was ignorant would have been an intolerable idea to Maggie. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, I, Ch. X, 88. We should hope that ... we yet may see him restored to the health and wonderful vigour to which he has been accustomed. *Manch. Guard.*, 15/10, 1926, 302 a.

b) Also when a constituent of an adverbial adjunct, the preposition is not seldom removed from its normal place. This is only natural when it denotes a relation of place or direction, in which case the connexion with the verb is not unfrequently close

enough (86), so that the adjunct partakes more or less of a prepositional adjunct (Ch. XLV, 24; Ch. XLVII, 30); thus in:

She fell into a fit of unusual duration which she only came out of to go into another. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XI, 93.

Is the prison that Mr. Scoundrel lives in, at the end of his career, a more uncomfortable place than the workhouse that Mr. Honesty lives in, at the end of his career. WILK. COL., *Woman*, II, Ch. III, 204.

It was the rampart of God's house | That she was standing on. D. G. ROSSETTI, *Bles. Dam.*, V.

Whereabouts is our tree that we sat in when I was young and you were old? EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. X, 91.

Shifting is less common when the adverbial relation is another than that of either place or direction, and appears natural only when the verb would hardly bear end-stress by itself. In some of the following examples it may strike some readers as more or less unnatural:

i. At length ... he insisted upon producing his box of housebreaking tools: which he had no sooner stumbled in with ... than he fell over the box on the floor. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XIX, 187.

I am the man that you privately left your whip with, before you rode away from the Maypole. id., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXIII, 96a.

How glad I am you brought it (sc. your book-case) with you from Limmeridge! And the horrid, heavy, man's umbrella, that you always would walk out with when it rained! WILK. COL., *Woman*, II, Ch. II, 184.

She had that same dignity of movement of the hips which the Niké of Samothrace seems to be advancing with, as you come up the steps of the Louvre. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. X, 91.

ii. I must have had another visitation like that you have seen me under. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 8.

The dull sullen oppression she awoke with was the result of the storm in the night. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XX, 173.

I learned a great deal of Racine — a little of Victor Hugo — and Rostand, because the people I boarded with took me to Cyrano. MRS. WARD, *Cous. Phil.*, Ch. II, 43.

Note a) Shifting of the preposition is often due to suppression of the relative. See also the second group of the preceding examples.

They went into the parlour my mother had come from. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I. That's the stile I came over; there are the hedges I crept behind. id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. LI, 474.

This not the place I went to sleep in. id., Ch. XII, 111.

Here are some fine houses we care coming to. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 386.

The ship I sail in passes here. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 214.

Paradises, I'll be bound, compared with some of the places I have been living among, in Italy. MRS. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. I, 17.

We had been given intimate details of his "100 complete suits" and the eight big trunks he brought them in. MANCH. GUARD, VI, 17, 339d.

β) Shifting of prepositions denoting a relation of time as in the following examples appears to be very rare:

But did that matter, when it was the sort of night you stopped out all night on, according to Sally? W. DE MORGAN, *Somehow Good*, Ch. XXIX, 314 (KRUIS, *English Studies*, IX, I, 7).

Also that the applause that came therefrom, when they did stop, had a certain



perfunctory air, as of plaudits something else makes room for, and comes back again after. *ib.*, Ch, XII, 106 (*ib.*).

c) It is only natural that there should be a strong tendency to shift the preposition when the adverbial adjunct stands with the copula *to be*, which, owing to its utter want of semantic significance, is unfitted to bear end-position; thus in:

Nobody thinking of him in the bustle which the house was in. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. I, 8.

There is the saucepan that the gruel was in. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 113.

Note. Shifting of the preposition is mostly attended by omission of the relative; thus in:

You have named the very thing I would be at. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3.

Her character depends upon those she is with. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch, VIII, 55.

By good fortune he met a friend who told him the peril an old merchant of Syracuse was in. LAMB., *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 215.

Will you add another to the many deep obligations I am under to you by writing to me. DICK., *Uncom. Trav.*, Ch. II, 23.

You see the state my father is in. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XV, 271.

"Where was that?" — "A place I was at last summer." *id.*, *Small House*, I, Ch. II, 22.

When the rector came to call, Mr. Peter talked in a different way about the countries he had been in. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XVI, 301.

If you are come to talk to me about that house you are in, you may keep your breath to cool your porridge. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 8.

He told you of the difficulty he was in. ARN. BENNET, *Buried alive*, Ch. XI, 248.

She had so many merits they were without. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, I, Ch. III, 65.

d) Shifting appears to be least natural and least common in the case of the preposition being part of an adnominal adjunct. In all the instances that have come to hand the preposition is *of*, inclusive of those cited by KRUISINGA in *English Studies*, IX, 1, 7.

Run, Mary dear, ... and see if he has any nice ham cut, that he would let us have a pound of. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Bart.*, Ch. II, 13.

And so we find Mr. Churchill ... strutting back from France ... to wallop into Mr. Balfour for neglecting the service that he, a few months before, had been forced to quit the helm of. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 89, 377. (The structure of the sentence would hardly admit of the preposition being put in front.)

Note. α) Also in this case the shifting of the preposition *of* may go together with omission of the relative; thus in:

There was a song Joe used to hum fragments of at the forge. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XII, 115.

They (sc. the letters) were very long, and full of all sorts of nonsense, and Latin, and things I couldn't understand the half of. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 128.

β) In the following examples the structure of the sentence renders shifting of the preposition impracticable:

I talked with the Colonel about Clive's prospects, of which he strove to present as cheering a view as possible. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XXXIV, 370.



They were doing a painful duty to the public, for which they were to receive no pay, and from which they were to obtain no benefit. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXI, 276.

Mr. Ramsay Macdonald's sixtieth birthday falls at an unjoyful moment, both for the country and for the party of which he is not only the leader but, one would say, the only possible leader. *Manch. Guard.*, 15/10, 1926, 303a.

Conversely shifting is unavoidable when also the subject is furnished with an *of*-adjunct, as in:

To this Mr. Weller only replied by a wink, the intense meaning of which no description could convey the faintest idea of. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LII, 478. (Compare: a wink of which no description could convey the faintest idea, or a wink which no description could convey the faintest idea of.)

e) Shifting can hardly be avoided when the clause contains a verb with different constructions, or two or more verbs governing different constructions; thus in:

And a person you can laugh at and with is inexhaustible. MER., *Ev. Har.*, Ch. XXIV, 248. (KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 2197).

Christmas is the Festival of Birth which we can all understand and rejoice in. *Times*, *Lit. Sup.*, 23/12, 1915 (ib.).

Note. In the case of shifting being impracticable or unsuitable, the clause containing two or more verbs with different governments would have to be split up into different members, each containing the verb with its proper government; thus in:

My hands are free now ... free to shield; free to smite. Not for myself, but for the cause which I believe in, which I have devoted my life to, and which I am going on with. LLOYD GEORGE, *Speech* (ib.).

f) As prepositions can only be followed by a (pro)noun or a noun-clause, it is only natural that they are regularly placed in back- or end-position in clauses introduced by *but*, *than*, or *as* that contain a concealed adnominal clause.

i. There's not a pond within five miles of the place but they can tell the taste of. GOLDS., *Mod. Eng. Gr.*, III, 9.7). (i.e. \*but a pond they can tell the taste of).

ii. He's as nice a young gentleman as ever I sat beside the bed of. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. XI, 135. (i.e. \*as any gentleman that I ever sat beside the bed of.) Such propaganda as there is any evidence of ... could be carried on just as effectively, or ineffectively, by British Communists, who would not even be committing a legal offence. *Manch. Guard.*, 18/11, 1927, 383b.

iii. It shook her more than she gave sign of. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XII, 99. (i.e. than appeared from a shaking that she gave sign of.)

88. Shifting of the preposition is also very common in interrogative sentences of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3) and the subordinate questions corresponding to them. The reasons why in these sentences or clauses the preposition is often removed from its normal place can, however, hardly be the same as those which occasion shifting in adnominal clauses. The fact is that, unlike the latter, 1) they have the main stress on the opening word of the sentence or clause, i.e. the interrogative, and 2) the placing of the preposition in post-position, as frequently as not, divides it

from the word with which, semantically and grammatically, it stands in close connexion. This being so, it may with some confidence be assumed that the strong feeling that the first word of the question should have strong stress acts as a motive to remove the normally weak-stressed preposition from front position.

Shifting seems to be common irrespective of the nature of the predicate and also, apparently, of the grammatical function of the preposition-group, but to be mainly dependent on the kind of diction: in the literary language it is distinctly less in favour than it is in colloquial style. It should, further, be observed that it may not seldom be taken advantage of to obviate the incongruity of end-position stress falling on a semantically weak verb. Thus the verb would hardly bear end-position in:

Who does it (sc. the letter) come from? (OLDS., *She stoops*, IV, (215).

This view is corroborated by the fact that when the question ends in a (word-)group of considerable semantic importance there appears to be a lessened tendency to shift the preposition. This is shown by a comparison of the difference of construction observed in the following instructive example from STEVENSON, quoted by JESPERSEN (*Phil. of Gram.*, 340): *What do they care for but money? For what would they risk their rascal carcasses but money?*

In some of the following examples, especially those with *what* and *where*, shifting is practically obligatory. Compare DEAN ALFORD, *The Queen's Eng.*<sup>s</sup>, § 307.

i. Why, what on earth did you do that for? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 165.  
What do you stand laughing there for? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 180.  
And when is it for? id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XII, 122.

And who are you going to fall in love with, pray? TROL., *Castle Richm.*, IX, 150.

Who do you dare to speak to in that way? ib., Ch. XIII, 229.

Where do you board? and, What form are you in? HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 86.

Now, where did you get them (sc. the geese) from? CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

Who did you sell the goose to? ib.

Who did he say that to? SHAW, *You never can tell*, IV, (310).

ii. Things have come to that now that the parsons know where they are, and what they have to look to. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XVII, 305.

I do not know any more than the man in the moon what you're come about ib., Ch. XXIII, 412.

I should like to know how many girls I have given dresses to? id., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. IX, 100.

He could remember how much all the more important pictures had "stood him in". E. F. BENSON, *The Osbornes*, Ch. I, 10.

By the way, would it bore you to tell me where you got the other one (sc. goose) from? CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

I insist on knowing who Miss Clandon said that to? SHAW, *You never can tell*, IV, (310).

Farmers may now learn what a hundred or more trained scientific workers at the agricultural research institutes are up to. *Manch. Guard*, 5/11, 1926, 363 *a*.

Note *a*) The practice may give rise to a curious accumulation of prepositions at the end of a sentence; thus in:

What did you choose that book to be read to out of for? *Manch. Guard*, 5/11, 1926, 366 *d*.

*β*) Shifting appears to be quite usual also in shortened sentences, such as:

"Well, it's (sc. the business is) about some money that's due to him (sc. my father) down there." — "Who from?" *TROL.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XIII, 221.  
 "I was recommended to you." — "Who by?" *CON. DOYLE*, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

*γ*) In some connexions, especially when the preposition is a constituent of a distinctly adverbial adjunct, shifting appears to be impracticable, thus in:

In what words was he to break the news to Clara Desmond and her mother? *TROL.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXV, 444.

In what state did her heart stand towards him? *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 246.

Of whom else in that court could so much be said? *id.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXI, 276.

Ah! mother mine! to what use is all my scholarship and my philosophy? *KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. IV, 36 *b*.

In the following examples it may be the literary style which has kept the preposition in its normal place:

i. In what was this confusion to end? *MAC.*, *Clive*, (503 *a*).

His hopes had run high at that moment when his last interview with the judge had taken place; but after all to what did that amount? *TROL.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. VIII, 191.

And to whom should he appeal? *id.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. IX, 153.

What is your name, ... and from where do you come? *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 292.

A purely scientific education ... does, or may equip you for some line of work, but for what does a classical education specially equip you? *Manch. Guard*, 15/10, 1926, 303 *a*.

ii. He could not yet tell from what he drew this impression. *HICHENS*, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XX, 115.

*γ*) In conclusion it should be observed that the preposition *for* is sometimes placed in immediate succession to the interrogative *what*. The practice seems to be common only in the language of the uneducated; e. g.:

And what for is he going there? *TROL.*, *Macd.*, Ch. XX, 361.

What for would you go to the police? *ib.*, Ch. XXIV, 430.

An' what for would you do that? *ib.*

What for should I write answers, when there's niver a one writes to me? *Mrs. GASK*, *Sylvia's Lovers*, Ch. X, 127.

89. In substantive clauses (Ch. XI, 15) back- or end-position of the preposition is practically unavoidable. Thus in such sentences as *I gave him what he had bargained for I, will pay you no more than what we agreed upon, I withheld from him what he constantly begged for*, etc., the preposition could not possibly leave its end-position, unless the independent relative is replaced by its

analytic equivalent *that which*, as in *I gave him that for which he had bargained*. Similarly shifting is obligatory in:

This was what I was looking for. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 112, a.

I now found what she would be at. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXI, (384).

Why, it's wha' I'm obliged to keep a little of in the house. DICK., *O. Twist*, Ch. II, 25.

You may thank whatever you have faith in that nobody has got smashed up.

MISS THURSTON, John Chilcote M. P., Ch. XXVI, 295.

Note a) In concessive clauses the preposition may stand in its normal place; thus in:

But nothing doubting that to whomsoever they (the conversations) applied, they had some latent moral for his own improvement, he resolved to treasure up every word he heard. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 79.

β) In the following examples the first preposition belongs to the head-clause, the second to the subordinate question, or substantive clause respectively (Ch. III, 57, 68):

i. Of course I don't know much of where they've been to. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XVII, 301.

ii. I tremble to think of what poor Emily is destined to. SHELLEY, *Lett.* 887 (JESP., *E.S.*, XLVI, 331).

That would depend on what they didn't like him for. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, 88 (ib.).

She was thinking of what Will had no knowledge of. *id.*, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288.

"I suppose you call yourself a gentleman?" — "I really don't know. Depends on who I'm with." GALSW., *Escape*, II, viii, (86).

90. Also in ordinary declarative sentences shifting of the preposition is quite usual when the word(-group) that expresses the notion which is uppermost in the speaker's mind is mentioned first. This variety of shifting is not, apparently, conditioned by any particular grammatical function of the preposition-group, or by the nature of the predicate. The construction sometimes makes the impression that the speaker in starting his communication has not given sufficient thought to the way in which to end it.

The binding of the book it is impossible to speak too highly of. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 112 a.

Washes of all kinds I had a natural antipathy to. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VI, (268).

Many a family party ... have I listened to. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 44.

The pains of poverty I had lately seen too much of. *ib.*

The length of those five days I can convey no idea of to any one. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 30 a.

But this I was above. THACK., *Cox's Diary*, January.

For the soldier's trade is not slaying, but being slain. This the world honours it for. RUSKIN, *Unto this Last*.

Flourens I could have believed anything of. HUXLEY, *Life & Let.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 365.

The theatre they cared nothing about. WALT. BESANT, *London in the 18th Cent.*

Money I had plenty of. CONWAY, *Called back*, Ch. X, 112.

She seemed as cheerful as ever in her talk with others; him she kept apart from. GISSING, *A Life's Morning*, Ch. XXI, 300.

First folios and rare paintings he is always offered the first refusal of. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 4 b.



The preposition appears to be invariably placed in end- or post-position in such exclamatory sentences as:

What a state you are in! TROL., *Castle Rich.*, Ch. XXVII, 469. (Thus also in: You see what a state he's in. *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 226.)

What a lather of heat the mare's in! *ib.*, Ch. XXXVI, 617.

For comparison we add a few examples which resemble the above, but which exhibit no shifting.

That Clara should not marry him, — on so much she had resolved long ago. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XVI, 274.

Had Owen had sorrows to tell her, he would have told them to herself; of that she was quite sure. *ib.*, Ch. XXVI, 450.

Your horse was safe and sound after he got over the fence, of that you may take my word. *id.*, *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. II, 14.

Such sentences as the following would hardly tolerate shifting:

To her he made ample apology for his former crossness. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XIV, 240.

It is the east wind and not the rain that kills; and of the east wind in the south of Ireland they know nothing. *ib.*, Ch. XXV, 435.

91. a) Apart from the placing of *for* after the interrogative *what* (88), it is, apparently, only in verse that indubitable prepositions are put in immediate succession to the (pro)noun they belong to. This form of shifting is not particularly common, and seems to be seized on only as an expedient to satisfy the exigencies of metre, rhythm, or rime; thus in:

And as the boat-head wound along | The willowy hills and fields among, |  
They heard her singing her last song, | The Lady of Shalott. TEN., *The Lady of Shalott*, 142.

For further instances see Ch. LX, 123, *a*; and compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 104.

b) Certain prepositions, especially *about*, *over*, (*a*)*round* and *through* are met with in post-position not only in verse but also in ordinary prose, as in *He travelled all the world over* (or *round*). In this place their grammatical function is, however, uncertain, i. e. approaches to that of adverbs. This applies, also to *nigh* in:

Never harm, nor spell, nor charm | Come our lovely Lady nigh. SHAK., *Mids.*, II, 2, 18.

For further comment and illustration see Ch. LX, 123, *b*; and compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 104, 4, *Obs.*

c) *Like* appears to undergo shifting regularly in connexion with a copula (or a verb doing duty as a copula): 1) in adnominal clauses, as in:

She mentioned a reigning beauty in London ... whom ... Laura was rather like. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

He was one of the greatest scoundrels upon earth since accursed Judas — which he certainly did look rather like. DICK., *Two Cities*, I, 118 (*Jesp.*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 10.41).



2) in questions, whether direct or indirect, as in:

What is she like?

Tell me whom (what, which of your relatives) he is like. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 100.

Note. Occasionally *like* is found in immediate succession to the interrogative *what*; thus in:

What like is Miss Havisham? DICK., Great Expect. Ch. IX, 81.

For further discussion and illustration see Ch. LX, 24.

d) Instances of *near* being shifted are very rare, and have an incongruous effect (Ch. III, 17, i). Shifting of *nearer* and *nearest* seems to be impossible. Not unusual, however, is that of *near to*, *nearer to*, and *nearest to*; that of *next* is, apparently, common enough.

i. He was passed as Richard Doubledick; age, twenty-two; height, five foot ten; native place, Exmouth, which he had never been near in his life. DICK., The Seven Poor Travellers, Ch. II. (Short Stories, I, 251).

ii. This was the first Sahara city they had drawn near to. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., II, iv, Ch. XXI, 132.

iii. My father and mother, since they are both dead, I shall be no nearer to in Essendean than in the kingdom of Hungary. STEV., Kidn., Ch. I, (191).

iv. Mr. Hareddale, glancing only at such of these groups as he passed nearest to, had nearly traversed the Hall, when [etc.]. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XLIII, 165 b.

v. A casual remark to any stranger you sit next at dinner, may utterly defeat your ends. CONWAY, Called back, Ch. X, 117.

92. a) The preposition with which an interrogative sentence or adnominal clause opens is sometimes repeated towards the end of the sentence, the writer or speaker, apparently, wanting an extra word for the sake of the metre (or rhythm), or having lost distinct remembrance of the way in which he has started his utterance; thus in:

Of what kind should this cock come of? SHAK., As you like it, II, 7, 90.

In what enormity is Marcius poor in? id., Cor., II, 1, 18.

The weak estate in which Queen Mary left the realm in. MILTON (ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 112, b).

If an opponent menaces me, of whom and without cost of blood and violence I can get rid of, I would rather wait him out, and starve him out, than fight out. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIV, 270.

To save her from the perilous position in which she was in. RICH. BAGOT, The Just & the Unjust, II, Ch. II, 43.

b) Conversely a preposition is sometimes dropped when it is identical with that in an earlier part of the sentence; thus in:

To bear their part in whatever instrument they most excelled. SWIFT, 3.204 (JESP. Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 10.52).

93. a) In adnominal infinitive-clauses which correspond to full adnominal clauses introduced by a conjunctive adverb, e.g. *whereupon*, or its analytical equivalent, e.g. *upon which* (Ch. LIX, 46; Ch. LXI, 9), the preposition is mostly shifted, in which

case the relative to which it would belong, is regularly suppressed (Ch. XVIII, 16, 17). When the preposition is kept in its normal place, the relative pronoun cannot, of course, be dispensed with; e. g.:

In literary style a preposition is not a suitable word to end a sentence with. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 112*a*. (= with which to end a sentence.)

There is an ancient joke against a grammarian who said, "You should never use a preposition to end a sentence with." *Manch. Guard.*, 5/11, 1926, 366*d*. Let me show you the nearest tavern to dine well at. *DICK.*, *Two Cities*, II, Ch. IV, 101.

That's a fair young lady to be pitied by and wept for by! *ib.*, II, Ch. IV, 102.

Compare the following examples illustrating a less usual practice:

There was nothing with which to quench one's thirst. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 176, 2.

He ... had a good deal of which to think. *TROL.*, *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XLI, 698.

The house there was not a pleasant one in which to live. *ib.*, Ch. XXXII, 555.

It was a difficult crisis in which to act. *ib.*, Ch. XLI, 702.

b) Also in infinitive-clauses that correspond to subordinate questions shifting of the preposition is common enough; e. g.:

i. I do not know what to look for. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 112*a*.

Had it not been for (this), one like myself, ... could never have .. known what to look for, nor where to find his wants fulfilled. *STOPP.*, *BROOKE*, *Hist. of Early Eng. Lit.*, Pref., 14.

With the above compare the following examples in which no shifting is practised:

When we are taught in whom to trust, | ... 'Tis then we rightly learn to live. *CRABBE*, *Reflections* (Works, 87*a*.)

He did not know with what words to comfort her. *TROL.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XXV, 329.

## PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

94. The normal place of attributive adnominal adjuncts of whatever (84, description, both in English and in Dutch, is immediately before the substantive or substantive equivalent they modify. This is on the principle that the word(-groups) of the more special meaning of the two is placed first (74, b).

In the following discussions attributive stands for attributive adnominal.

## PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE NOUNS.

95. Attributive nouns, whether in the common case or in the genitive, (85) are almost regularly placed before their head-word; thus in: *an iron bedstead, a giant tree, a gift horse, a Gladstone bag, Ceylon tea, The Transvaal Government, a chance acquaintance, the China trade, pioneer work, the marriage state, emergency*

*measures, etc.; Thomas's slate, the earth's axis, life's drama, my father's defenders, a mile's distance, Britain's isle, a girl's voice, a fool's paradise, a giant's task, the evening's repast, the day's business, etc.*

This is also the normal place of substantival word-groups and gerunds, as in: *an every-day occurrence, a life-and-death struggle, Church of England principles, the United Kingdom Tea-Company, a livery-stable keeper, etc.; the United Kingdom Tea Company's teas, a few hours' steady application, a London house's library, etc.; boarding-school, dancing-master, etc.* For further illustration see Ch. XXIII, and Ch. XXIV.

In all the above combinations the word-order is absolutely fixed. There are, however, a few combinations with an attributive noun in which the order is more or less variable. This is the case when both the adnominal noun and its head-word indicate a function or use, equally special, and mostly equally important, of one and the same person or thing. Thus the King of England may with equal propriety be styled *the King Emperor* and *the Emperor King*. Compare *the King Emperor and the Queen Empress* (II. Lond. News, No. 3794) with *the Empress Queen* (MAC., Fred., (695 a). Similarly *restaurant hotel* is as proper and, probably, as common a combination as *hotel restaurant*.

Sometimes the order appears to be determined by the requirements of metre or rhythm. Compare, for example, *the minstrel boy* (MOORE), *the minstrel wench* (SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXI, 332) with *the warrior bard*.

96. Nouns or substantive equivalents standing with other nouns or substantive equivalents by way of apposition are mostly placed after the latter. For a discussion of the grammatical nature of appositions, as understood by the present writer, the student is referred to Ch. IV, where an attempt has been made to describe the peculiar features which, in his opinion, distinguish these adjuncts from other attributive adjuncts. See especially Ch. IV, 8; 11; 16, Obs. II, III, and IV.

In the case of appositions of the first kind, as in *Johnson the bookseller*, and of the second kind, as in *the planet Mars*, the word(-group) mentioned last is, indeed felt as the modifying element, but its inferiority in grammatical status to the first is so slight as to be almost inappreciable. In combinations containing an apposition of the third kind, as in *a dozen collars*, on the other hand, it is always the first element which distinctly figures as the modifying element, its grammatical rank being distinctly inferior to that of the last. Its grammatical relation to the latter is, accordingly, in no way distinguished from that of attributive adjuncts generally (94).

A natural corollary of the grammatical nature of appositions of the first and second kinds is the fact that in combinations containing either of them the word-order is not fixed. Sometimes, indeed, the two elements may change places without a consequent semantic modification. Thus *the great printer, William Caxton* is as natural and, probably, as common as *William Caxton, the great printer*. It will be observed that in either combination the element which stands last has the status of an apposition. In the case of combinations containing an apposition of the second kind the element with the more special meaning may, indeed, be placed first, as in *the Brontë sisters* instead of *the sisters Brontë* (Ch. IV, 32), but here the transposition changes the first element into an ordinary noun-adjunct, as in 95. Further instances of combinations which admit of this transposition, which are common enough, have been given in Ch. IV, 33. In the majority of cases, however, combinations with an apposition of either the first or the second kind, admit of no change of arrangement; thus the word-order is fixed in *His Majesty, the King*, *We, doctors*, etc.; *the man Moses*, *the beast Caliban*, *the planet Mars*, *the Misses Brown*, etc.

Sometimes the apposition is divided from its head-word by other elements of the sentence; thus frequently when it is represented by a subordinate clause, either developed or undeveloped, as in *One touch of nature makes the whole world kin*, | *That all with one consent praise new-born gawds* (SHAK., Troil. & Cres., III, 3, 176), *It was absolutely necessary to strike some daring blow* (MAC., Clive, (505 b), *It is no good hiding the truth* (RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 31). For further discussion and illustration see Ch. IV, 10, c, d, and e.

It is of some interest to observe that a change of word-order may turn a combination with an apposition into one with a predicative adjunct. Compare *the loveliest maiden of Plymouth, Priscilla* with *Priscilla, the loveliest maiden of Plymouth*, in which latter combination *the loveliest maiden of Plymouth* is best understood as short for *who is the loveliest maiden of Plymouth*, which interpretation assigns to this word-group the grammatical nature of a predicative adjunct. See also Ch. IV, 11.

### PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

97. In Modern English the ordinary place of attributive adjectives is (87) before their head-word. For various reasons, which are not always easy to determine and, no doubt, sometimes operate together, this arrangement is, however, frequently departed from. The following exposition is intended to pass in review the principal influences to which this deviation from the regular word-order may be due.



98. a) The tendency to continue the practice prevailing in French, (87) which, save for certain cases, has the adjective after the noun, makes itself felt in the post-position of a good many, mostly Romanic adjectives, in certain combinations belonging chiefly to the language of civil or ecclesiastical law or of politics. The following deserve special mention. In the case of some of them, instances are added of the adjective being placed before the noun, in order to show that the conservative practice has to a certain extent yielded to the modern rule.

*apparent*, in: *heir-apparent* and its imitations, formerly also *apparent heir* (O. E. D., s. v. *apparent*, and *heir*); e. g.: The Prince of Wales, or heir-apparent to the Crown. BLACKSTONE (O. E. D.).

*conscript*, in *Fathers Conscript*, now mostly *Conscript Fathers* (O. E. D.); e. g.: The Fathers Conscript of our city have decreed that the venerable edifice itself shall not remain in existence. SCOTT, Heart, Ch I, 24.

*corporate*, in *body corporate* (O. E. D., s. v. *body*, 14); e. g.: Both (sc. shoemakers and glovers) equally necessary members of the body corporate. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. VI, 62.

*current*, in *account current*, and *price current*, also in such expressions as *the 10th current* (abbreviated *curt.*), i. e. the 10th day of the current month (O. E. D., 3).

*dedicatory*, in *epistle dedicatory*; e. g.: The epistle dedicatory is full of respect to the Pope. BERKELEY, Tour in Italy, IV, 514 (O. E. D.).

*designate* (i. e. appointed or nominated, but not yet installed) in certain titles, such as *Bishop-Designate*, *Viceroy-Designate*; e. g.: The Right Honourable George N. Curzon, Viceroy-Designate of India. Times.

Mr. Herbert Gladstone, the Governor-General-Designate of the United Colonies. Westm. Gaz.

*dimissory*, in *letters dimissory* (O. E. D., s. v. *letter*, 4, b).

*divine*, especially frequent in *right divine*; e. g.: The hereditary champions of right divine cannot forgive us for having discovered a solution of the most dangerous of modern problems. Times.

It would have been almost certain (taking the average of the human face divine) to have been an improvement. PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, C, 43. Compare: The apologies of Jesuit writers for the assassination of tyrants deserve an important place in the history of the doctrine of divine right. MORLEY, Voltaire, 63 (O. E. D., 2).

*elect* in the sense of *elected*, but not installed in office; also in modern use said of persons engaged to be married, Dutch *aanstaande* (O. E. D., s. v. *elect*, 3); e. g.: i. The Abbot-elect carried himself with more dignity than formerly. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 367.

She began to assume the majestic air of a Duchess, nay, Queen-elect. THACK., Es m., III, Ch. VI, 369.

The Tribune-elect ... perceived many hitherto attracted by curiosity, ... whom ... it was desirable to secure in the first heat of the public enthusiasm. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. VIII, 119.

For centuries it was the custom of the Speaker-elect to make pretence of desiring to refuse the high honour offered him. Athen., No. 4507, 369 a.

ii. During the currency of the three Sundays on which the banns were proclaimed ... the young couple elect were said jocosely to be "hanging in the bell-ropes," alluding, perhaps, to the joyous peal contingent on the final completion of the marriage. DE QUINCEY, Works, XV, 43, note (O. E. D., s. v. *hang*, 8, b).



He resolved from that moment that lady Mason should ... be regarded ... as the wife-elect of a country baronet. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. VII, 92. His grace, the bridegroom-elect was announced. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. IV, 352. For the first time it was needful for Miss Silver to be received as a daughter-elect. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIV, 367.

Duke Henry is four years older than his bride-elect. Graph.

*errant*, in *knight-errant*, and, by extension, sometimes in similar combinations, such as *damsel-errant*; e.g.: The world's male chivalry has perished out, | But women are knights-errant to the last. MRS. BROWNING (in EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. XXIII, 215).

But now the wholesome music of the wood | Was dumb'd by one from out the hall of Mark, | A damsel-errant, warbling, as she rode | The woodland alleys, Vivien,\* with her Squire. TEN., *Bal. & Bal.*, 417 (See also TEN., *Pel. & Et.*, 61).

Note. Rather frequent are instances with the adjective placed first, as in: Though the lady Marjory Douglas be departed like an errant dame in romance. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXX, 319.

For in this time ... it was a popular amusement in winter evenings "to sit round the fire, and tell merry tales of errant knights, queens, lovers [etc.]." WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 268.

And errant knights | And ladies came, and by and by the town | Flow'd in, and settling circled all the lists. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 545. (See also id., *Ger. & En.*, 245).

For illustration of *knight errant* see also Ch. XXV, 16, a.

*expectant*, when denoting the future incumbent of an ecclesiastical office, and, by extension, also in a wider sense; e.g.: May the new Abbot-expectant sleep as sound as he who is about to resign his mitre. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXIV, 366.

What a happy valley must it have been if a bride-expectant were free from all such cares as these! TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. V, 66.

*extraordinary*, in the sense of *supernumerary*, especially in certain official titles, such as *Ambassador-Extraordinary*, *Physician-Extraordinary* (as distinct from *Physician in Ordinary*). In other combinations post-position of the adjective appears to be rare; thus in: You may therefore allow such a courtier some encouragement extraordinary. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, V, 1, (113).

*female* in the law-terms *heir-female*, *line-female*, *issue-female* (O. E. D., s.v. *female*, 1, a); occasionally also in other combinations, as in: There are three classes of the species female. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. VII, 64.

*general*, with many names of profession, such as *Attorney-General*, *Governor-General*, *Postmaster-General*, *Solicitor-General*, *Treasurer-General*; also in *States-General* (Ch. XXV, 16, a); e.g.: The Treasurer-General gave his memorable banquet to a distinguished party of noblemen. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 204 a.

*german*, with certain names of relationship, such as *brother-german*, *cousin-german* (Ch. XXV, 16, a)

*immemorial*, apparently regularly in *from* (or *since*) *time immemorial*; e.g.: It has somehow or other happened, from time immemorial, that many of the best and ablest philosophers, who have been perfect lights of science in matters of theory, have been wholly unable to reduce them to practice. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 166.

Some (sc. ladies) talked of mountain sprites, ... with which the good people of Germany have been so grievously harassed since time immemorial. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, 164.

The presentation of the rights and privileges enjoyed by them since time immemorial. *Times*.

Thus also occasionally *for time immemorial*, as in: It (sc. the borough of Bitem) has been held in leading-strings by him and his ancestors for time immemorial. SCOTT, *Heart*, Ch. I, 29.

With *from time immemorial* compare *from time beyond all memory*, as in: Above all, the sovereign must resign that supreme military authority which, from time beyond all memory, had appertained to the regal office. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 108.

For the rest *immemorial* appears to be regularly placed before its head-word; thus in: the immemorial habit of the village (HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 21), a matter of immemorial usage (ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot*), bound in an immemorial intimacy (TEN., *Aylm. Field*, 39).

*incarnate*, in *devil incarnate*; e.g.: They can dissolve the marriage, burn her, ... the devils incarnate. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XV, 124*b*.

He was a devil incarnate. W. J. LOCKE, *Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. V, 68. Occasionally in other combinations, as in: The Police from time to time seize the man who for the moment is the Spirit of Assassination incarnate. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 191, 453*a*.

*laureate*, in the title *Poet-laureate*.

*male*, in the law-terms *line-male*, *heir-male issue-male*; e.g.: The Dalham Hall Estate is by Codicil strictly settled on Colonel Frances Rhodes and his heirs male. *Will of Cecil Rhodes*.

*manual*, in *sign manual*, as in: Proved by the unfortunate King James's own warrant and sign manual. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. IV, 182.

He put forth several proclamations headed with his sign manual. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 157.

*martial*, in *court-martial* (Ch. XXV, 16*a*).

*matrimonial*, in *life matrimonial*; e.g.: Some ill-conditioned persons who sneer at the life matrimonial may perhaps suggest ... that the good couple would be better likened to two principals in a sparring match. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. I, 1*b*.

*militant*, in *Church militant* (O. E. D., s. v. *church*, 4, *b*).

*ordinary*, in *Judge ordinary* (O. E. D., 2); e.g.: Had the case been brought before the judge ordinary by means of her husband's exertions, she would have taken pleasure in reading every word of the evidence. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LIX, 74.

*overt*, in *letters overt* (= *letters patent*), *market overt*, *pound overt* (O. E. D., s. v. *overt*, 3); e.g.: Titles, places, commissions, pardons were daily sold in market overt by the great dignitaries of the realm. MAC., *Hist.*, Ch. III, 304.

*Palatine*, in the *County Palatine*; also in *Count* (*Earl, Prince, Elector*) *Palatine* (O. E. D., 2*a*).

*paramount*, in the title *Lord-Paramount*, i. e. the King as being supreme in authority.

*patent*, in *letters-patent* (O. E. D., s. v. *letter*, 4, *b*).

*politic*, in *body-politic* (O. E. D., s. v. *body*, 14; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1785); e.g.: They ought to have sought to strengthen the Republic by absorbing into the body-politic the best classes of the 'Uitlanders.' *Times*.

*positive* in *proof positive*; e.g.: The marks of moisture on the inside are proof positive that the wearer (sc. of the hat) perspired freely. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

*prepenze*, in *malice prepenze*; e.g.: There has been no malice prepenze, as lawyers, I think, term it. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LI, 132*a*.

I have put in this chapter on fighting of malice prepenze. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. V, 286.

Thus, by analogy, also *purpose prepense*, as in: This same looping up was not without good reason and purpose prepense. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. II, 17 *a*.

*Prepense* is placed before its head-word in: Its spirit is that of prepense disparagement. W. M. ROSSETTI, *Shelley's Adonais*.

Compare also: Treason has done his worst: nor steel, nor poison, | Malice domestic, foreign levy, nothing, | Can touch him further. SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 2, 25.

*Malice prepense* varies with *malice aforethought*. See O. E. D., s. v. *aforethought*. *presumptive*, in *heir-presumptive*; also occasionally *presumptive heir*, as in: It was a melancholy day at Waverley-Honour when the young officer parted with Sir Everard, the affectionate old uncle to whose title and estate he was presumptive heir. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. II, 27 *a*.

He was presumptive heir to the baronetcy. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, Ch. IX, 131.

*proper*, in the sense of *exclusive of accessories*, or of *in the strict sense of the word*; e.g.: i. Extensive and varied appendices have been added by way of supplementing the information contained in the dictionary proper. ANNANDALE, *Stud. Dict.*, Pref.

This is of course much more true of the newly-recovered territories than of Egypt proper. *Times*.

ii. Food proper renews the worn-out structure through the process of digestion. *Suggestive Lessons*, I, 198.

So (I) have been able to give all the more prominence to syntax proper. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, II, Pref.

Compare: He had no fear that the multiplication of secondary subjects might sap the strength, the purity, and the popularity of proper University studies. *Athen.*, No. 4539, 429 *a*.

*public*, in the title *notary-public*.

*regnant*, in the title *Queen-Regnant*.

*royal*, in certain titles, such as *Prince-Royal*, *Princess-Royal*; in certain names of buildings or institutions, such as *Theatre-Royal*; also in the word-groups *blood-royal*, and *battle royal* [i. e. a fight in which several combatants engage (spec. applied to a cock-fight of this character); a general engagement; a 'free' fight; hence *fig* a general squabble. O. E. D.]; occasionally when connected with *patent*; e.g.: The titles of Earl and Marquis of Esmond, bestowed by patent-royal upon Thomas Viscount Castlewood. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. VII, 379.

*simple* in *fee-simple*; e.g.: Tenant in fee-simple ... is he that hath lands, tenements, or hereditaments, to hold to him and his heirs for ever. BLACKSTONE, *Comm.* II, 104 (O. E. D.).

*spiritual* in the title *Lords-Spiritual*; occasionally *Spiritual Lords* (or *Peers*); e.g.: Under the daïs on Pole's side, ranged along the wall, sit all the Spiritual Peers. TEN., *Queen Mary*, III, 3, (611 *b*).

*suffragan*, in the title *Bishop-Suffragan*, i. e. assisting bishop.

*temporal*, in the title *Lords-Temporal*; occasionally *Temporal Lords* (or *Peers*).

*total*, in *sum-total*, as in: What a number of items of human crime, misery, slavery, go to form that sum-total of glory! THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 70.

*triumphant*, in *Church triumphant* (O. E. D., s. v. *church*, 4, *b*) and, by extension, occasionally in other combinations, as in: No manner could have been less that of Punch triumphant than Caleb's. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XL, 297.

She was love trimphant. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.* II, iv, Ch. XVI, 42.

b) Separate mention may be made: 1) of the still frequent post-position of the attributive adjective in the language of heraldry, as in:

I know you are thinking of my bar-sinister. THACK., *Es m.*, Ch. III, 344.

I do not wish to quarter the bend-sinister with my coat. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. IV, 299.

(The pudding was) made in the most wonderful representation of a lion-couchant that ever was moulded. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 260.

Compare: A broken sword and a couchant lion indicated that the piece of sculpture had been erected in honour of a deceased warrior. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 386.

2) of the regular placing of the comparatives *junior* and *senior*, and *minor* and *major* after proper names; as in:

That admirable woman was everywhere: in the kitchen ...; on the stairs; in Fitzroy's dressing-room; and in Fitzroy minor's nursery. THACK., *A little Din.* at Tim., Ch. VI, (326).

William Gall was there this morning, the senior of the school; a slight, short young man, the age of Loftus major. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. II, 25.

Thus also *Asia Minor*.

c) The influence of Latin Grammars makes itself felt in the post-position of the adjective in certain grammatical terms; thus regularly *nominative absolute*, *ablative absolute*. For the rest the practice is now unusual. Readers of DICKENS will, perhaps, remember:

Nobody had the least idea of the etymology of this terrible verb passive to be gormed. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 16a.

d) The post-position of the adjective or ordinal numeral with (89) the definite article in such combinations as *Charles the Bald*, *William the Silent*, *Henry the Eighth*, etc., may be due to the influence of constructions in which the cognomen stands by way of apposition to a proper name as in *William the Conqueror*. The practice is not, however, limited to appellations of sovereigns, they are, indeed, freely used in other descriptions of persons or things, as in:

Time, the inexorable, had dealt with her and not softly. H. WARD (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 137).

99. a) The fact that the placing of a word(-group) in an unusual position makes for emphasis, often causes an adjective to be put after its head-word, post-position not seldom adding to the intended solemnity of the utterance. This, perhaps aided by French tradition, may account for the place of:

*additional*, when preceded by numeral + name of measure, as in: For 65 pounds additional you can get that music at any time. *Il. Lond. News.* *eternal*, in: We also know as you do how to rejoice in a beautiful, unselfish life being crowned with joy eternal. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 231, 277 b. *erect*, in: He stood for a moment with head erect facing it (sc. the glass). *MER.. Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXII, 157.



*everlasting*, in: He belonged now to the world everlasting. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIII, 134.

*immortal*, in: Strike Shadow, strike! And see his good deeds springing from the wound to sow the world with life immortal. DICK., Christm. Car., IV, 85.

*military*, in: What man could be found better to teach young Newcome the French language and the art military. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. II, 26.

*necessary*, in: If the nation will rise to the occasion and make the united effort necessary, it can overcome this German machination. Westm. Gaz., No. 7395, 1a.

She sold up her house and furniture, and borrowing the balance of money necessary, ... she shipped him off to England. SADLEIR, Trol., IV, IV, 70. Note. Post-position may be furthered by the fact that the word suggests a passive notion similar to that of *required* or *needed*, and is, consequently, felt to have the value of an undeveloped clause.

*numberless*, in: The Prince had friends numberless in the army. THACK., Esm., III, Ch. IX, 398.

*pure*, in: It is the man who makes music because he loves it who is the true musician. He is the musician pure. Per. (WENDT, Synt., I, 140).

*senatorial*, in: He eschewed honours senatorial. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. II, 17.

*sufficient*, in: Gratitude may have strengthened my attachment to Mr. Faulkland, but I loved him before he had preserved me; yet surely that alone were an obligation sufficient. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (218).

Note. *Sufficient* may owe its capability of being placed after the noun to the fact that it is often interchangeable with the indefinite numeral *enough*, which is indifferently placed either before or after its head-word, as in *enough patience* or *patience enough* (Ch. XL, 191). Thus *enough* could take the place of *sufficient* in: With regard to Captain Wentworth, though Anne hazarded no enquiries, there was voluntary communication sufficient. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. XIV, 134.

*superlative*, in: We must have beauty superlative. SHER., School, III, 2, (397).

*unconscious*, in: In Solomon (there is) a certain grimness of understanding and expression which is closely allied to humour, even though it be humour unconscious. Per. (WENDT, Synt., I, 140).

*whole*, in: At one end of the room was a sideboard that would not have groaned under an ox whole. ARN. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. IX, 201.

b) Naturally adjectives are often placed in emphatic post-position when contrasted with another in a parallel combination, thus in: Sometimes in the same couplet we find one line iambic, and the other trochaic. ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 504.

Rest is force resistant, and Motion is force triumphant. LEWES, Hist. of Phil., 75.

It (sc. the dictograph) has figured sensationally in the undoing of dynamiters, legislative bribe-takers, grafters high and crooks low. T. P. 's Weekly, No. 504, 4a.

It would be an attempt to make the university the centre, not of the English youth, but of one special type of youth, the youth studious. Per. (WENDT, Synt., I, 140).

Compare the following example where the adjectives are kept in their ordinary place: You've been with me so long — through bright times and dark times. HARDY, Mad. Crowd, Ch. LVI, 463.

Note a) In the following example the adnominal clause (*that could*



*be conceived*) adds an intensive element to the superlative, so that post-position is quite natural:

Germany entered the war under circumstances the most unfavourable that could be conceived. *Times*, *Lit. Sup.*, 2/11, 1916 (*Kreis*, *Handb.*, § 2.97).

β) Post-position does not accord very well with the noun being modified by a possessive or demonstrative pronoun (134); it would, accordingly, be hardly possible in:

With every step taken ... his erect thin figure ... had seemed more rare. *Galsw.*, *White Monkey*, I, Ch. I, 11.

c) Modification of the noun by a superlative, or by such words as *principal*, *chief*, *only* (or *one*) appears to favour post-position, especially with adjectives in *able* or *ible* (101).

The boy was really ill, and she did the only thing possible. *Sadleir*, *Trol.*, IV, iv, 70.

Everything, in brief, is done, but the one thing necessary. *Escott*, *England*, Ch. IV, 47.

The one thing certain is that Togo, who has already sent some of his cruisers south as far as Singapore, will be ready to meet them. *Per.* (*Wendt*, *Synt.*, I, 137).

d) Emphatic superlatives are not seldom placed after their head-word, especially in elevated prose.

Kind and anxious faces surrounded the invalid (*sc. Fr. Burney*). Conversation the most polished and brilliant revived her spirits. *Macaulay* (*Wendt*, *Synt.*, II, 63).

Among the three the secret was gone beyond recall. Not falsehood the most thorough nor pretence the most artistic could save it. *A. Hope*. (*ib.*).

100. a) The utter semantic insignificance of the noun modified as compared with that of the modifying adjective may, at least in part, be responsible for the post-position of the latter in combinations with *thing* and especially *things*. A further and, perhaps, more potent factor operating towards the same effect, may lie in the semantic analogy of these combinations with such as consist of *anything* (*something*, *nothing*, or *everything*) with an adjective as in *anything useful*, etc., in which the adjective is felt as an undeveloped clause (Ch. IV, 56, c). Compare also *Jespersen*, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.471; and especially *Birger Palm*, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute*, § 190—196.

i. Why should it be thought a thing incredible with you, that God should raise the dead? *Bible*, *Acts*, XXVI, 8 (*Birger Palm*, § 200).

It is a thing remarkable, a thing substantial. *Carlyle*, *Es. on Scott* (*ib.*). I cannot tell him ... It is a thing impossible. *Trol.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. VI, 76.

ii. It was not that I feared to look upon things horrible. *Poe*, *Pit & Pend.*, (345)

That there is a strong feeling against things Irish it is impossible to deny. *Trol.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. I, 1.

it was an indecent and disreputable shower of abuse of England and all things English. *Daily Chron.*

One and the same adjective is placed alternately after and before *things* in:

In the words of Dugald Stewart, the great secret of happiness is to accommodate ourselves to things external, rather than to accommodate external things to ourselves. *LORD AVEBURY (WENDT, Synt., I, 139).*

*b)* For the same reason also *matters* and *affairs* not unfrequently have the adjective placed in post-position; e. g.:

i. His Majesty is still a good way behind the times in matters artistic. *Westm. Gaz.* 5/8, 1902.

Whilst she had been ill, they had been busily at work on matters social and educational and political. *BEATR. HAR., Ships, II, Ch. I, 115.*

You will allow that in matters musical my opinion is worth something. *HICHENS, Ambition, Ch. I (KRUIS., Handb<sup>4</sup>, § 2098).*

ii. Dance with a girl three times, and if you like the light of her eye and the tone with which she, breathless, answers your little questions about horseflesh and music — about affairs masculine and feminine. — then take the leap in the dark. *TROL., Orley Farm, II, Ch. V, 55.*

*c)* In the case of an adjective being placed after the determinative *one* or *a man* (*Ch. XL, 152*) it is best apprehended as an undeveloped clause.

i. He lay back in an easy chair like one more dead than living. *DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIX, 237 a.*

They rode on without him, mourning him as one dead. *JEROME, Three Men, Ch. X, 127.*

And he went, walking almost like one blindfold, straight out of the house. *MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIII, 135.*

She sighed like one oppressed. *HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, II, Ch. IX, 219.*

ii. For some time Tom wandered up and down like a man demented. *DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXI, 251 b.*

He was for a while like a man distracted. *KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 123 b.*

When he saw the women on their balconies, he stopped for a moment and called out to them like a man crazed. *HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, II, Ch. VIII, 177.*

101. Adjectives in *able* or *ible* are often emphatic, and are, consequently, frequently placed after their head-word. In this position they are felt to have the value of an undeveloped clause and to convey a modified passive meaning. See *KRUIS., Handbk.<sup>4</sup>, § 2116.* The passive meaning of most adjectives in *able* or *ible* appears from the fact that, when used predicatively, they may stand with *by* + (pro)-noun, i. e. *by* + inverted subject (*Ch. XLVII, 47; Ch. LVII, 34*); thus in: "He is a horrible man," said Jane almost in a whisper, but the words were distinctly audible by the dean. *TROL., Last Chron., II, Ch. LXXIX, 430.* Instances with the negating prefix *un* or *in* (*im*) are more frequent than those without, probably owing to the fact that negating by itself mostly involves some emphasis. It will be found that in the case of the examples without *un* the noun is frequently preceded by a superlative, which speaks for the fact

that it is especially the strongly verbal notion implied by these adjectives which is responsible for the frequent post-position.

i. Why, is it not provoking? When I thought we were coming to the prettiest distress imaginable, to find myself made a mere Smithfield bargain at last. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1, (273).

It was the faintest blush imaginable. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 125. Others need most of all to be told the unpleasant truth about themselves in the most pleasant form practicable. MAR. CRAWF, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 9.

ii. Can you see me suffer torments inexpressible? FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XIII, 36.

Neither are we friends from abodes unmentionable. THACK., *Lovel.*, Ch. I, 4. He stood on the other side of the gulf impassable. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 384.

Is it not a pity to see them bowed down or devoured by Grief or Death inexorable? *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIV, 141.

Motes innumerable danced merrily in the light. WALT. BESANT, *The World went very well then*, Ch. I, 2.

For many years they have hired out their instruments for purposes innumerable. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3804, 415 *b*.

Note. It should, however, be observed that the placing of such adjectives after their head-word is anything but obligatory. In fact they are more frequently found in the normal place before the noun; thus in:

i. On the available evidence, this prohibition of miners' meetings is entirely unjustifiable. *Manch. Guard.*, 29/10, 1926, 341 *a*. (The O. E. D. has two examples with the attributive *available*, both of them with the word before the noun.)

Every post brings from lands far and near, letters containing orders for goods of every conceivable kind. *Manch. Guard.*, 12/1, 1926, III. (The O. E. D. and BIRGER PALM mention each three examples with *conceivable* before its head-word, none after it.)

That's a punishable situation. HARDY, *Mad. Crowd*, Ch. LIII, iv, 427.

ii. In view of the impassable gulf between her and you, I do for her sake sincerely hope that it is nothing more than a flirtation. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. XI, 120.

It seemed to her ... as though Owen had been her lover in another world, ... which was now dissevered from her by an impassable gulf. TROL., *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XXXVIII, 655.

(His) assistance in such cases was always accepted as an inalienable right. HARDY, *Mad. Crowd*, Ch. L, 402.

*p*.) It stands to reason that the tendency to post-position may be counteracted by the fact that the noun is attended by an adjunct placed after it, as in:

This would give them (sc. the trade-unions) an otherwise unattainable influence on the course of government. *Manch. Guard.*, 19/11, 1926, 402 *b*.

*;*.) Naturally there is no special occasion for post-position in the case of the adjective in *able* or *ible* suggesting no passive notion as in *a suitable plan*, *a seasonable step*, *an unreasonable person* (Ch. LVII, 48. Obs. III).

For further discussion and illustration of adjectives in *able* or *ible* see also Ch. XLVII, 47—43; and compare BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute*, § 105—110.

# 102. Certain adjectives are more or less usually placed after the noun in special cases.

a) *Almighty* is sometimes placed in post-position as a modifier of *God*, *God almighty* being an imitation of the Latin *Deus Omnipotens* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1785); e.g.: O God Almighty, | Blessed Saviour, Thou | That didst uphold me on my lonely isle [etc.]. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 768.

Compare: Her Majesty counts much on Fortune, ... I wish she would trust more in Almighty God. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § III, 373.

Almighty God helping me, I shall succeed in it yet (sc. to avert the war). MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. I, 164.

For illustration see also Ch. XXXI, 25. a, Note II.

b) *Certain* in the meaning of *fixed* is sometimes placed after the noun to distinguish it from *certain* in the function of an indefinite pronoun. (Ch. XL, 185). Compare *a day certain* with *a certain day* (O. E. D., I, 1), *a sum certain* with *a certain sum* (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 138).

Payment of money on a day certain. STEPHEN, *Laws Eng.*, II, 111 (O. E. D.). They (sc. the apparitors) left citations for father and daughter to appear before the Court of Commission on a day certain. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIII, 345.

c) The place of the adjective is fixed in the detached colloquial expression *honour bright*, "used as a protestation of (or interrogatively as an appeal to) one's honour or sincerity." O. E. D., s. v. *honour*, 9, g; thus in: "And so ... you — you love your master's daughter?" — "I do ... Honour bright No chaff you know." DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. VIII, 35 b.

Is it not so, honour bright? G. ELIOT in *Cross, Life*, I, 293 (O. E. D.).

Sometimes we find it as an integrant element of the sentence, as in: Will you ... give me your honour bright that what passes between us is in the strictest confidence? DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXIV, 93 b.

d) *Dear* is often placed after proper names of persons in address. Thus also after such words as *father*, *mother*, which in this case, in a manner, assume the character of proper names (Ch. XXXVI, 16); thus in: Hetty dear, you used not to be so nervous when papa was away in Minorca. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIV, 674.

Dorothea dear, if you don't mind — if you are not very busy — suppose we looked at mamma's jewels to-day and divided them. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

Note. Also *fair* is sometimes found in post-position in a similar vocative; thus in: "You know how little these verses can possibly interest an English stranger." — "Not less than they interest me, lady fair." SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXII, 71 a.

Compare also: My lady sweet, arise. SHAK., *Cymb.*, II, 3, 29.

A few examples with the alternative practice are added for comparison: Dear Patrick, I am so sorry to make you unhappy. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 657.

Dear Clara, do listen to me, will you? *ib.*, 653.

e) *Round* is sometimes placed in post-position in the combination *Table Round*; thus in: The brave Geraint ... one | Of that great order of the Table Round. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 3 (Thus also in *id.*, *Ger. & En.*, 792)

Compare: The Round Table ... was an Invention of that Prince, to avoid Disputes about the upper and lower End. CHAMBERS, *Cycl. s. v. Table* (O. E. D.).

f) *Square* is sometimes placed after its head-word in such expressions as: 1) *The room was 20 feet square*, in which, however, *square* may be understood as an adverb, equivalent to the Dutch *in het vierkant* and the whole combination is used predicatively: 2) *A room of 20 feet square*, in



which the combination is placed after the preposition *of*; e. g.: i. The enclosed fields, which were generally forty feet square, resembled as many beds of flowers. SWIFT, GUL., I, Ch. II, 118 *a*.

ii. The little parlour of some 12 feet square. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk. (BIRGER PALM, § 140).

*g*) The adjectives *last*, *next*, *past* (or *gone*), and *previous* are frequently placed after their head-word in combinations that open with a preposition; thus in: i. We have worked together in time past. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. I, 7.

Lord Dundonald's brigade reached the south bank of the Tugela on Saturday last. Daily Chron.

In June last the Prime Minister was asked whether it had been decided to transfer the Dominions Department of the Colonial Office to that of the Lord President of the Council. Times, No. 2298, 25 *b*.

ii. I have received information from your London agent that you will require a Head Warehouseman on the 1st. December next. Everybody's Letter-Writer.

iii. I have said that there had been no hypocrisy in her misery during those weeks last past. TROL., Orf. Farm, III, Ch. VI, 68.

For years past complaints have been loud of the habitual neglect of our trade-interests by the Foreign Office. Times.

Note. Thus also in the following example *passed*, which is only another spelling of the same word: The taste was only the reflection of the social slackwater between a tide passed and a tide to come SADLEIR, TROL., I, III, 11.

iv. In years now gone he used to lord it at the Old Bailey. TROL., Orf. Farm, II, Ch. VI, 72.

v. The striking of the annual balance in the company's books occupied his days and nights for a month previous. LAMB, ES. EL, South-Sea House. My little white dimity bed was as smooth and trim as on the day previous. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 168.

Mrs. Barnard had told him of the accident at supper on the night previous. id., Den. Duv., Ch. V, (248).

Thus also when the preposition is understood, as in: Clarence was not yet forgiven for his escapade two days previous. THACK., Lovel, Ch. V, 99.

Note. The above words are more or less felt as adverbs of a similar function as *ago*, *before*. This is shown: 1) by *before* and *previous* being sometimes used in identical connexions; thus in: A poor little wretch ... had been awake half the night before, and, no doubt, many nights previous. THACK., Den. Duv., Ch. V, (248).

2) by *previously* varying with *previous*, as in: I had gone through the ticklish operation of an excision of the heart a few hours previously. id., Lovel, Ch. VI, 109.

103. In certain combinations post-position is sometimes practised, apparently by way of exception, either for stylistic effect, or, perhaps, because they are somehow associated with certain phrases lingering in the speaker's or writer's mind, in which the adjective stands traditionally after the noun. This may apply to:

*beautiful*, in: The ever-changing face of London and vision of the City Beautiful. Graph., No. 2257, 318.

Complete Classified list, and list of books beautiful, will be sent post free upon application. Athen., No. 4466, 600 *b*.



Mr. J. M. Dent, the Architect of the Temple Classics and many other books beautiful. *The Book Monthly*.

"Women Beautiful". Advertisement in *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 209, 1.

*direct*, in: Ernest was civil to Mrs. Goodhew for her husband's sake, but he gave Mrs. Wright the cut direct. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXXIII, 394.

The rising trade gives the lie direct to the stories of universal anarchy. *Daily Mail*, 26/8, 1912 (KRUIS. *Handb.* 4, § 2096).

Mr. Cobrat replied with as near the lie direct as we have had here. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 21, 433*a*. (Compare SHAKESPEARE, *As you like it*, V, 4, 71-180.)

*polite*, in: What occult, horrid meaning did the word (sc. green) convey to ears polite? LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, v, Ch. VIII, 320.

It was a word not to be mentioned in ears polite. Mrs. GASK. (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 139).

*wonderful*, in: It (sc. the Abbey gate) opened at its knock, as the door of a palace wonderful. MAC. PEMB., *I crown thee King*, Ch. II, 22. (perhaps a reminiscence of *the City Wonderful* of BUNYAN).

For further examples see especially WENDT, *Syntax*, II, 63*f*. In some of them post-position is evidently due to the contrast of the adjectives in parallel combinations (99, b).

104. a) Some adjectives which in their only, or in some special meaning, are normally used only predicatively, are naturally placed after their noun. This applies to:

*due*, as in: To dun = to make repeated and persistent demands upon, to importune, esp. for money due. O. E. D., s.v. *dun*, 3.

Note. In the meaning of *proper* the word has the ordinary place before the noun; thus in *in due time*, *with due deference*, etc.

*extant*, as in: The following is the only stanza extant of this lampoon. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, XXVI, 264.

I suppose ... we shall have an abstract of the memoirs of all the governesses extant. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 216.

Note. The placing of *extant* before its head-word, as in the following example, has an incongruous effect: If there were then extant songs which gave a vivid and touching description of an event [etc.]. WEBB, *Introd.* to *Mac. Lays*, 15.

*involute*, as in: The madness of self-torturing jealousy; the rapture of youthful passion; the fidelity of love involute ... all these great themes ... make "The Winter's Tale" a dream of delight and of inspiration. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 202, 358*b*.

Note. It is worth observing that in all the examples of *involute* in the O. E. D., the adjective is used predicatively.

*present*, as in: It is quite common to see all the women present piping, sobbing, sniffing. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 166. (Compare: She called upon all present to avenge his murder. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 29*b*.) Observe, however, the place of *present* in the phrase *present company excepted*.

b) A separate group is formed by adjectives with the prefix *a*, such as *alive*, *aslant*, *astray*, *awake*, etc., which in pre-position are replaced by respectively *live* (or *living*), *slanting*, *stray*, *waking* (or *wakeful*), etc., or other words denoting approximately the same meaning. These formations with the prefix are occasion-

ally found before their head-word, chiefly when compounded with other words, as in *sound-asleep*, *dead-(and-)alive*, or when preceded by an intensive, as in *intensively alive*. Compare Ch. XXVIII, 8, *b*; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.15—14.19; FRANZ, *E. S. XLVII*, 234; KRUIS., *Handbk.*<sup>1</sup>, § 1892.

i. I should be the most contended happy man alive. STEELE, *Spect.*, No. 167 (O. E. D.).

'Twas now the earliest morning; soon the Sun, | Rising above Albardos, pour'd his light | Amid the forest, and with ray aslant | Entering its depth, illumed the branchless pines. SOUTHEY, *Rod.*, III, 3.

He spoke like a man afraid. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. V, 57.

ii. He (sc. Francis Thomson) was an isolated and aloof figure by choice as well as destiny. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 9c

Later Winnie found herself sharing a good room with the two fast-asleep servants. PETT RIDGE, *Garland*, Ch. XVII (KRUIS., *Handb.*<sup>1</sup>, § 2090).

The pictures of the college-founders all round the walls, in between the electric bulbs, made a strange contrast with this twentieth century, very alive mass of undergraduates. HAM. GIBBS, *The Compl. Oxf. Man*, Ch. II, 12.

Note. When placed after their head-word, these adjectives are strongly felt as undeveloped clauses. Thus also when they modify the indefinite *one* (100, *c*), as in: She drew back from the threshold like one afraid. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XVI, 39.

105. In such short announcements as *whisky hot* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1787), *position critical*, *terms moderate*, *patient hopeless*, etc., the adjective is best understood to have a predicative function, readily admitting as it does of being expanded into a clause or sentence with the copula *to be*; thus *whisky that I want to be hot*, *the position is critical*, *our terms are moderate*, etc. It should, however, be observed that in announcements intended for a similar effect, the adjective is quite as frequently placed before the noun; thus in *extensive playground*, *bracing air*, etc.

106. Sometimes post-position of the adjective appears to be due to a mere vagary of the writer. This seems to apply to the position of: *good* in: For reasons good I am about to break the rule. *Times*, No. 1823, 973a.  
*new* in: At seventy-three it is not wise to go far afield in search of subjects new. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, IV, Ch. II, 234. (Compare: Wide fields of delight and pastures new, in MILTON (*Wendt, Synt.*, I, 140).)

107. The striving for variation in diction may be responsible for the (88) not uncommon post-position of the adjective in the second of two combinations which for some reason or other are associated in the speaker's mind; thus in:

There are also celestial bodies and bodies terrestrial. *Bible*, *Cor.*, A, XV, 40. And these shall go away into everlasting punishment; but the righteous into life eternal. *id.*, *Matth.*, XXV, 46.

This good angel, whom he had loved and worshipped, stood before him with keen words and aspect malign. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. I, 156.

Note. In verse the necessity of securing a metrical balance sometimes acts as an additional agent; thus in:

His wither'd cheek and tresses grey, | Seem'd to have known a better day.  
SCOTT, Lay, Introd. I, 3.

108. It is also in verse that post-position of the adjective is often (88) necessitated by the requirements of metre; thus in:

I am a linen-drafter bold. COWPER, John Gilpin, vi.  
The Hunter mark'd that mountain high. SCOTT., Lady, I, viii.  
Maud has a garden of roses | And lilies fair on a lawn. TEN., Maud, I, xiv, 1.  
He therewith thought | His bed must be the brake leaves brown. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Man born to be King, 42a.

109. The language is in no way intolerant of quite a number of adjectives being placed before a noun. In many cases the order of succession of these adjectives is more or less arbitrary, although the laws of metre or rhythm may make a particular arrangement necessary or desirable; e. g.:

You are the most teasing, captious, incorrigible lover! SHER., Riv., II, 1, (226).  
But it is not difficult to find a good many instances in which the order of succession could hardly be changed. This is especially the case when the last adjective is felt to form a kind of semantic unit with the noun, or, at least, to be more intimately connected with it than the other(s). (3, a). Illustration is easily accessible, being afforded by practically every page of verse or prose. The student will have no difficulty in drawing his own conclusions from the following passages:

Mr. Carter was a tall, thin, austere-looking man; one seemingly, who had macerated himself inwardly and outwardly by hard living. He had a high, narrow forehead, a sparse amount of animal development, thin lips, and a piercing, sharp, gray eye. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XXXVII, 640.  
He (sc. Mr. Carter) always wore new black gloves, and a very long black coat which never degenerated to rust, black cloth trousers, a high black silk waistcoat, and a new black hat. *ib.*, 641.

Sometimes the reversing of the order would yield nonsense; thus in:

It was a good silly season this year. Manch. Guard., 12 11, 1926, 383 d.

110. As in the case of a single adjective or adjectival word-group certain considerations may cause all or part of the adjectives modifying one and the same noun to be placed in post-position.
111. a) To secure distinctness or emphasis, and also for stylistic (94) effect, two or more adjectival modifiers of a noun are not seldom placed after the latter.

A fine instance of the force which may lie in post-position of a number of adjectives towards enhancing the beauty and impressiveness of composition, is afforded by the following passage taken from the literary products of Macaulay, that master of noble English prose:

A person small and emaciated, yet deriving dignity from a carriage which, while it indicated deference to the court, indicated also habitual self-possession and self-respect; a high and intellectual forehead, a brow pensive, but not gloomy; a mouth of inflexible decision; a face, pale and worn, but serene.

H. POUTSMA, II.

on which was written, as legibly as under the picture in the council-chamber at Calcutta, *Mens æqua in arduis*; such was the aspect with which the great Proconsul presented himself to his judges. MAC., War. Hist., (649 b).

Also in the following examples the post-position of the adjectives strikes one as natural enough:

I cannot think that what I have said of Emerson will be accounted scant praise, although praise universal and unmixed it is not. MATTH. ARNOLD (GÜNTHER, Man., § 428).

Burton, a man evil-tempered and malicious, had been picking a quarrel with a tenderfoot at the bar, when Thorton stepped good-naturedly between. JACK LONDON, The Call of the Wild, Ch. VI, 132.

b) Post-position of a couple of adjectives is felt to be especially appropriate when they occur as a pair of contrasts, as in *Hymns, Ancient and Modern; Plays, Pleasant and Unpleasant*. Further instances are found in:

In the midst of an anxious, animated and, to me, most unintelligible discussion, concerning burgesses, resident and non-resident, all of a sudden the lawyer recollected himself. SCOTT, Heart, Ch. I, 30.

Foes spiritual and temporal ... beset him. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXV, 230.

Something that was like a shrill of fear, mental, not physical, went through her. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, III, Ch. XII, 284.

The body of the court was reserved to journalists, French and foreign. MARCH GUARD., 21/10, 1927, 3 5a.

Compare: I shall relate how the new settlement was, during many troubled years, successfully defended against foreign and domestic enemies. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 1.

With that thought ... an abrupt, but always cold, content came to her. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, III, Ch. XI, 268.

c) In verse post-position of a succession of adjectives is sometimes necessitated by the laws of metre or rhythm; thus in:

But anon her awful jubilant voice | With a music strange and manifold, | Flow'd forth on a carol free and bold. TEN., (GÜNTHER, Man., § 427).

d) Naturally post position is practically unavoidable when one of the adjectives is one of such as are used only predicatively, as in:

The night was dark, populated by terrors alive and ghastly. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of an Eagle, I, Ch. III, 41.

e) Post-position appears to be regularly observed in the case of *pure and simple*, as in:

There was yet a third kind of activity, distinct from that of literary work pure and simple, in which Dickens in these years for the first time systematically engaged. WARD, Dick., Ch. IV, 97.

112. a) In literary English one of two adjectives modifying one and the same noun is sometimes placed in post-position. Also this arrangement has the effect of bringing the adjectives into distinct prominence. The noun is mostly preceded by the indefinite article, which is repeated before the transposed adjective; except, of course, in the case of plurals, or the names of uncountables. (95)



The adjective in post-position is, as a rule, connected with the preceding word-group by *and*, less frequently by *or*; in some rare cases there is no conjunction. Occasionally the second adjective is not placed in immediate succession to the noun, but in end-position; this, no doubt, on metrical considerations. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. XLIII, 15.

i. \* He is a bold man, and a pious. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 45.

You doubtless recognize in him Rodolf of Saxony, a brave man and a true, where he is properly paid for his services. *ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 36.

Last year, I caught a glimpse of his face, | A gray old wolf and a lean. TEN., *Maud*, I, XIII, III, 6.

Stafford, I am a sad man and a serious. *ib.*, *Queen Mary*, III, 1, (604 b).

\*\* "Have you travelled far?" — "A weary way and long." DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLV, 175 a.

Years ago, when I used to wander of an evening from the fireside to the pleasant land of fairy tales, I met a doughty knight and true. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XIV, 240.

\*\*\* The Protestants of Suffolk are godly men and true. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXV, 136 b.

Cheap clothes and nasty. KINGSLEY, *Title of a Pamphlet*.

And now poured into Bourne from every side brave men and true. *id.*, *Herew.*, Ch. XXIII, 97 b.

\*\*\*\* Free speech and fearless I to thee allow. SHAK., *Rich. II*, I, 1, 123.

You can hear him swing his heavy sledge, | With measured beat and slow. LONGF., *Vil. Blacksm.*, III.

ii. He rooted out the slothful officer | Or guilty. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 938.

iii. In my last I tried to divert thee with some half-forgotten humours of some old clerks defunct. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, Oxford in the Vacation.

iv. True Mussulman was I and sworn. TEN., *Recol. Arab. Nights*, I.

Note. The practice is now archaic, but is still regularly observed in *good men and true*, the epithets with which jurymen are styled. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1769 and § 1863.

Call me an inquest of these (sc. gentlemen) together, they are all good men and true. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXII, 342.

b) Of a lengthy group of adjectives modifying one and the same (93) noun those furnished with the intensive *so* are naturally placed after the head-word (114, a); thus in:

They stood a moment looking at one another; the tall, stalwart young man, so graceful and free in bearing, and the old man, languid, sickly, prematurely broken down. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 123.

I had a great wish to see again that fresh young face, so earnest, cheerful and good. *ib.*, Ch. X, 109.

113. a) There is a strong disinclination to place an adjective before (90) its head-word when it is modified by an adjunct with a preposition. Thus constructions like \**a disobedient to his sovereign subject*, \**a to me unfavourable report*, \**a dissatisfied with his lot man*, \**a wooded to the top mountain*, etc. are impossible. Such adjuncts are, consequently, almost regularly placed after the noun, where, however, they are felt to have the value of an undeveloped clause. This has been done in:



Names well-known in literature. A man wise in his own conceit. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1788.

I shall now cite a case illustrative of this fact. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. V, 62 Clive was justly regarded as a man equal to any command. MAC., Clive, (507 b).

Peckham to her had not been a place bright with happiness. TROL., Orley Farm, II, Ch. V, 66.

b) In the comparatively rare case that such a prepositional adjunct *is* placed before the noun, the preposition-group is felt to be more or less detached from the adjective, and independent of it, or, as JESPERSEN (Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 14.25) has it, "has the character of a parenthetical restriction." Thus in:

In the midst of an anxious, animated, and, to me, most unintelligible discussion . . . all of a sudden the lawyer recollected himself. SCOTT, Heart, Ch. I, 30.

I never forgot the, to me, frightful episode of the red-room. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. VIII, 82.

Such was the characteristic of Helen's courses on that, to me, memorable evening. *ib.*, 84.

Note a) In passing it may here be observed that adjectives requiring or suggesting a prepositional object often drop the latter, as of no semantic significance, when used attributively (Ch. XXVIII, 8, a); thus in:

The conscious footman turned pale. CROKER, Three Advices. (i.e. the footman conscious of guilt.)

b) There is nothing unusual in pre-position of the adjective with its prepositional adjunct when the word-group is a semantic unit; as in *a good-for-nothing man, a true-to life tragedy, hard-of-hearing persons* (quoted by JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 14.23).

c) Quite frequently we find the adjective divided from its prepositional complement by the noun; thus in:

This was by no means a new idea to Maggie. G. ELIOT, Mill. (BIRGER PALM, § 302).

Mrs. Tulliver had a facility of saying things which drove her husband in the opposite direction to the one she desired. *ib.* (KRUIS., Handbk., § 2094).

This arrangement is practically the only one with the adjectives *last* and *next*, as in *the last (next) house but one*. It is a common one with adjectives denoting similarity or dissimilarity, as in:

i. Most of them had enormous breeches, of similar style with that of the guides. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V, 40.

He went round and round . . .: rather to the inconvenience of the passengers generally, who were not in an equal state of spirits with himself. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXVI, 214 a.

Here is a creature that feeds on the like food with himself. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5249, 12 b.

ii. It's a different sort of life to what she's been used to. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar., Ch. IX, 62.

Pitt's contemporaries did not altogether understand him; his mind moved in a different plane from theirs. PER. (WENDT, Synt., I, 136)

For further comment on the varied constructions of words denoting similarity or dissimilarity see Ch. XVI, 12, Obs. IV, and Ch. XVII, i13.

114. a) Modifiers other than preposition-groups do not necessarily (92) occasion post-position of the adjective. Thus there is nothing unusual in the adjective having its normal place before its head-word when it is modified by an adverbial adjunct of degree, or one of either affirmation or negation, as in *a very (most, singularly, perfectly, etc.) enthusiastic reception; a decidedly (indubitably, distinctly, absolutely, etc.) moderate demand; no common talents, a not uncommon trick, in a clear but not loud voice*. For further examples of *no* or *not* adjective standing before a noun see Ch. XL, 123.

But adjectives modified by *so*, or by *so*+adverb, are mostly placed after their head-word (112, b); only additional modification of some length may occasion the normal arrangement to be preserved. Naturally they normally precede when divided from their head-word by the indefinite article (151, a).

i. I trust your son will commit no action so rash. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. XIII, 301.

The two races, so long hostile, soon found that they had common interests. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 15.

ii. Because she was in mind a daughter of the 'thirties and 'forties, and not of the so different age that followed 1851, the name of Frances Trollope had almost faded from the fickle memory of a once eager public. SADLEIR, *Trol.*, VII, II, 100.

iii. They were hardly able to comprehend how their naughty little Bobby had become so great a man. MAC., *Clive*, (510 a).

I may fearlessly ask you whether so fair a life is compatible with the idea of guilt so foul. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XVIII, 236. (Note the varied word-order.)

b) Also adjectives in *ly* when not intensive are frequently found before attributive adjectives without occasioning post-position; thus in *a meanly impertinent man, notoriously unstable support, rigidly ceremonious intercourse, a frankly protective tariff*. For further illustration see Ch. LIX, 106 f.

The draft treaty attempts for the first time to give substance to that attractive, but curiously elusive American phrase "the outlawry of war." MANCH. *Guard.*, 36, 1927, 423 a.

There is not even anything uncommon in two or more of such adverbs being placed co-ordinately before an attributive adjective, as in:

A socially and morally perfect and faultless man is as impossible as the irredeemably vicious baronet in novels, or the spotlessly angelic child in nursery-story books. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. X, 135.

c) The placing of such word-groups as *not very* + adjective, and *none too* + adjective before their head-word appears to be common enough.

He plays a not very conspicuous part in the story. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1788. He was doing her the none too easy service of finding a publisher for this very book. SADLEIR, *Trol.*, VI, II, 96.

d) Also adverbs of time are frequently found before attributive adjectives that stand before their head-word; thus in:

Dobbin was not a little affected by the sight of this once kind old friend. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 210.

Changed into a man of this sort was the once florid, jovial and prosperous John Sedley. *ib.*, I, Ch. XX, 208.

For the present the trial for that old, long-distant crime was the subject for them to consider. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. II, 18.

She saw a likeness in Marcella to a long-dead sister of her own, Mrs. WARD. *Marc.*, I, 17.

The Nationalist force ... (are) assisted by the so far friendly neutrality of the "model" tuchun of Shansi. *Manch. Guard.*, 10/6, 1927, 441 *a*.

It would be a blessing to get a volume containing them all to serve as a supplement to the now out-of-date dictionary of Brynildsen. *Journ. of Eng. and Germ. Phil.*, Jan. 1927, 137.

e) Word-groups in which an adjective is preceded by such adverbial modifiers as *anything but*, *far from*, *more than* + adverb, are freely put before their head-word; thus in:

Perhaps that curious and far from attractive custom of serving a sorbet and a cigarette shortly after the middle of an elaborate dinner has done the damage. *Manch. Guard.*, 1911, 1926, 403 *d*.

There is a more than usually large crop of rumours about pending or actual negotiations between Chiang Kai-shek, the Nanking commander, and Chang Tso-lin., *ib.*, 10/6, 1926, 441 *a*.

f) Dividing an adverb from its adjective by other modifiers in the way as has been done in the following example, leads to an excessive burdening of the attributive adjunct, which is hardly compatible with good style:

I have now travelled through nearly every Department in France, and I do not remember ever meeting with a dirty bed: this, I fear, cannot be said of our happily in all other respects cleaner island. CHARLES R. WELD, *Vacation in Brittany*, 1866 (EARLE, *Phil.*<sup>5</sup>, § 556).

The placing of such excessively lengthy attributive word-groups before the noun appears to be in particular favour with writers for the daily press. See especially WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 138, where many examples of this objectionable practice are given.

g) For comparison a few examples are added in which an attributive adjective is rendered emphatic enough by an intensive, or an adverb of time, to occasion its being placed after the noun. See also 112, *b*; and 114, *a*.

i. If you wish me to dine, Rosa, you must get a dinner less expensive. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmin's's*, Ch. IV.

ii. The remembrance of a home long desolate. DICK., *Two Cities* (BIRGER PALM, § 132).

115. a) Combinations of an adjective with a numeral and the name (90) of a measure appear, as a rule, to be placed in post-position; thus in:

It is a great room, thirty feet long and eighteen high. HUGHES (GÜNTH., *Man.*, § 429).

This cliff, about 30 feet long, rose over an immense marsh. WALT. BESANT (*ib.*).

b) In the case of the name of the measure being one indicating

a length of time, such combinations are, however, freely placed before the noun. This appears even to be almost regularly done with those containing the adjective *old*. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *old*, and see the examples in Ch. XXV, 32, Obs. II.

i. A three-year-old urchin playing with an open razor, cannot be allowed to learn by this discipline of consequences. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. III, 90 *b*.

As we heard said by the father of a five-years-old boy, who stands a head taller than most of his age, and is proportionately robust, rosy, and active: I can see no artificial standard by which to mete out his food. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 97 *b*. (Note the varied practice as to number of *year* in these two examples.)

ii. Scrooge had not bestowed one thought on Marley since his mention on his seven-years' dead partner that afternoon. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I. Cautious persons ... may not feel disposed to work themselves up into a frenzied passion about the tortures suffered by a thousand-years long procession of squeezed-footed girls. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. No. 6288, 14 *c*.

The procession passing through the crowds lining the three-mile-long passage. *Graph.*, No. 2276, 59. (Note the varied practice as to number and case in these examples).

Note. In passing attention may here be drawn to the rare construction in which a combination of a measure of time with a past participle is placed before a noun, as in:

Is this fifty-years pondered lay (sc. the Prelude) the better for the pondering, or, what matters even more, the truer? *Times*, *Lit. Sup.*, 29/4, 1926, 309 *c*.

116. *a*) Dividing an attributive adjective from its head-word by an entire clause, complete or incomplete, as is done in the following examples is unusual and at variance with the genius of the language:

Before the dawn of the proposal for the ever-memorable though not to be Scientific Review, there had been some talk of one or two of us working the public up for science for the Saturday Review. HUXLEY, *Life and Let.*, I, Ch. X, 201.

Only ten days after his first interview with the usually reserved and procrastinatory but on this occasion singularly frank, prompt and effective Harley, Swift had been fairly won to the Tory cause. D. LAING PURVES, *Life of Swift*, 16.

Such a construction as is shown by the following example is only met with in the would-be literary style of the illiterate:

Yours always, most unhappy, and very sorry for what I have done, Mary Snow. TROL., *Orl. Farm.*, II, Ch. XX, 259.

*b*) Quite common, on the other hand, is pre-position of short combinations with *than*, as in:

Government must no longer ... allow them (sc. the lower classes) to grow up in worse than heathen ignorance. SOUTHEY (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 134).

Whether he were sitting at his desk in his parlour, or standing before the dressing-glass in his dormitory, he had an equal opportunity of contemplating human nature in all the numerous phases it exhibits, in that not more populous than popular thoroughfare. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. XII, 99.

Special mention may be made of such neologisms as *a heavier-than-air machine*, *lighter-than-air craft*.

Its dangers do not lie in engine troubles ... as in the case of heavier-than-air-craft. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6329, 2 *c*.



## PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE PARTICIPLES.

117. Participles are verbal forms which are intermediate between verbs and adjectives. For a discussion of what constitutes the difference between verbs and adjectives see Ch. XLV, 28. In participles it is sometimes the verbal, sometimes the adjectival characteristics which come to the fore. For detailed discussion see Ch. LVII, 7—18. Some of the arguments there set forth purporting to determine whether a participle, in a given function, is purely or mainly verbal or adjectival, will have to be set down in broad outline in this place.
118. *a*) The participle is almost a pure adjective when the action it (103) primarily implies is completely overshadowed by the quality of which this action is understood to be the manifestation, so that any association of the attribute with a point of time, or a definite or indefinite length of time, is absent from the speaker's or writer's mind. In this case its normal place is before its head-word, subject, of course, to the same considerations as those which may make post-position of the adjective obligatory or desirable. Thus in *a charming young lady* the participle stands before the noun for the same reason as in the case of such an adjective as *attractive* or *sweet*, with which it is closely synonymous. Similarly *stolen* in such a combination as *a stolen interview* is placed before the noun on the same ground as the adjective *secret*, which conveys approximately the same meaning. Numerous examples with such almost purely adjectival participles having been given in Ch. LVII, 19 and 28, the following will be deemed sufficient in this place. See also 126.
- i.* She was in dancing, singing, exclaiming spirits. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. LIV, 447.  
My father was of a wandering disposition. THACK., *Den Duv.*, Ch. I, (180).  
From this point of view the settlement, if it is endorsed by the districts, will have its redeeming features. *Manch. Guard.*, 19/11, 1926, 402 *b*.  
Perhaps the greatest danger was that ... the miners should have been left not only with a rankling sense of defeat, but without hope of redress save through another trial of strength. *ib.*
- ii.* It was clear at any rate that the women were not practised liars. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXIX, 680.  
Scoundrel and villain as you are — a double-dyed scoundrel, still there are reasons why I shall not wish to have you gibbeted, as you deserve. *ib.*, Ch. XL, 696.  
He had become a confirmed valetudinarian. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 142.  
The avenue seemed a chosen place for secret meetings, or for stolen interviews. Miss BRADDON, *Audl.*, I, Ch. I, 5.  
The Duce seemed to have shown not only courage (which no informed person can deny him), but also generosity and balance after his fifth escape. *Manch. Guard.*, 12/11, 1926, 392 *b*.  
Cut and dried schemes of foreign origin presented to the Chinese would be apt to excite distrust and criticism. *ib.*, 10/6, 1927, 442 *c*.



119. a) Present participles in which the adjectival principle is distinctly the prevailing one are sometimes difficult to distinguish from gerunds placed before the noun. Thus such a combination as *a grasping attorney* may be interpreted either as *an attorney who is always grasping*, or *an attorney who is given to grasping*. The first interpretation would seem to be the more natural; i.e. the verbal in *ing* is better regarded as a present participle than a gerund. Similar instances of the *ing*-form denoting an inclination, or a cast of mind, are found in: A raging, ranting, cursing scold she is. FRANK HARRIS, *The Women of Shakespeare*, Ch. II, 42.

For further comparison of present participles with gerunds as attributive adjuncts see Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. VII; and Ch. LVI, 15.

b) Also when placed after the noun the *ing*-form may admit of two interpretations. Thus in such a sentence as *For a little while (she) heard nothing but the sound of her heart beating* (PEMBERTON, *Doctor Xavier*, quoted by BIRGER PALM, § 50) *her heart beating* may be understood to mean either *her heart's beating* or *her heart that was beating*; i.e. *beating* may be apprehended as a gerund or a present participle (Ch. LVI, 35). A similar twofold interpretation is applicable to the pertinent *ing*-forms in:

Often I wandered in it (sc. the garden) alone . . . listening to the bees humming, and watching the cats basking in the sunshine. HICHENS, *Gard. of All*, II, v, Ch. XXVI, 229.

I heard the great door of the monastery being opened, and the rolling of carriage wheels in the courtyard. *ib.*

120. In many cases participles have both verbal and adjectival characteristics in various degrees of relative prominence. As a general rule it may be said that the former mostly predominate in such as indicate a physical, mental, or moral activity, the latter in such as denote a psychological disposition, or the manifestation of such a disposition. This distinction may be observed in the two following groups of combinations:

i. \* *playing children, laughing girls, fighting boys, swimming ducks, flying insects; cogitating philosophers, dreaming children, a musing pilgrim, a thinking being; a lying witness, deceiving promises, misleading arguments.*

\*\* *a loving mother, an admiring spectator, the trembling offender.*

ii. \* *a drawn sword, a led horse, a muttered reply, the lost trade, a wounded man, a killed deer.*

\*\* *his beloved country, their venerated leader, her loathed enemy, the hated rival.*

It is hardly necessary to observe that the endless variety of activities and other notions that may be expressed by verbs often makes it impossible to decide in which of the above groups a given participle should be placed.

As the above combinations show, also participles in which the verbal function is distinctly perceptible, are often placed before their head-word.

121. a) When the participle is placed after its head-word this may be (104) due to a variety of causes, not seldom operating without the speaker or writer being distinctly conscious of them. Besides the considerations of emphasis, metre or rhythm, which may influence the position of participles as potently as that of adjectives, there is the distinct association of the activity with a point of time, or with a definite or indefinite length of time, which may be the occasion for the speaker or writer to place the participle after its head-word. In the majority of cases the participle with its potential modifiers is in this case more or less distinctly felt as an undeveloped clause (Ch. XX, 3). This association is distinctly noticeable in the participle(-group) in the following examples:

i. "Has Mr. Halifax any brothers or sisters?" — "None, no relative living." Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 127. (Compare: I loved all living things. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, v, Ch. XXVI, 223.)

There is but one being existing, who is necessarily indivisible and infinite. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, 77.

"How's your leg, Gaunt?" — "'Tis much the same, Sir Gerald." — "Rain coming makes it shoot, I expect." GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XIII, 109.

For years I had not looked on a woman, or heard a woman's voice — but I knew that this was a woman mourning. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, v, Ch. XXVI, 226.

ii. Not a single child was found in the condition described. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 47.

I beg to say that I am satisfied with the list of prices sent. BUS. L<sup>et</sup> W<sup>rit</sup>. III. In every one of Scott's novels there is always ... the lively energy which becomes the energy of the most vigorous persons delineated. BAGEHOT, *Lit. Stud.*, I, 142.

All this is to be done in the words of the person described. M<sup>an</sup>ch. G<sup>u</sup>ard., 10/6, 1927, 453 b.

Note. Some of the above examples might be transferred to 132, where quotations have been given illustrating the use of participles as indubitable (constituents of) undeveloped clauses.

b) With the above compare the following examples in which the participle is placed before the noun, because no time-association is matter of the speaker's thoughts:

i. At last one of the advancing bulls stood still. MARRYAT, *Childr. of the New Forest* (Birger Palm, § 54).

The resulting sound differs from the corresponding breathed plosive in being pronounced with less force of the breath. DAN. JONES, *Pron. of Eng.*, § 235. To pronounce a complete plosive consonant, two things are essential: (1) Contact must be made by the articulating organs, (2) The articulating organs must be subsequently separated. *ib.*, § 224.

She was now quite alone ... with ... the dying Henry. SADLEIR, *Trol.*, V, IV, 84. The fate of the conquering hero becomes 'too terrible to contemplate. M<sup>an</sup>ch. G<sup>u</sup>ard., 17/6, 1927, 462 c.

ii. He could not but admire the principles of his proposed son-in-law. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. I, 2.

Justice, outraged justice, was his theme. *id.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. X, 121.

She looked down with averted head on the fulness of her Irish tabinet. *ib.*, III, Ch. VII, 83.

Felix began to perceive that the line he had taken would not answer the required purpose, and that he must be somewhat more abrupt with her, — perhaps a little less delicate, in coming to the desired point. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXV, 344. He turned sharply away like a driven man. HICHENS, *Gard. of All*, I, I, Ch. VI, 110.

The Belgrade Government has sent a long letter to Geneva stating its case in the matter of the expelled interpreter. *Manch. Guard.*, 17/6, 1927, 461 *b*.

Note. Even a combination of a past and a present participle may stand attributively before a noun; thus in:

Still maintaining the attitude of an injured but forgiving Christian, he spoke of the nobles in a tone of gentle sorrow. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. IV, 198 *a*.

c) From what has been observed in 120 it follows that the participles of such verbs as *to abominate*, *to curse*, *to cherish*, *to desire*, *to hate*, *to loathe*, *to love*, in which, owing to their mainly adjectival nature, the time-association is hardly felt, are mostly placed before their head-word; thus in:

He may thereby risk the continuance of cherished friendships. J. BAXTER, *Libr. Pract. Agric.*, I, 12 (O. E. D.).

That was the name by which she baptized the cursed beverage. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 4.

The hated threshold of the deserter. MAC., *Hist.*, IV, 59 (O. E. D.).

122. a) The relative importance, and consequent emphasis of the participle, acting together with a more or less distinct time-association, may account for its post-position in:

i. Then we scrutinized each individual square inch throughout the premises, including the two houses immediately adjoining ..." — "The two houses adjoining!" I exclaimed. POE, *Purl. Let.*, (189).

I know one that prays that the Eye All-seeing shall find you in the humble place. THACK., *Esm.*, III, Ch. VII, 376. (Compare: Hades carries off Persephone, and Demeter wanders nine days over the earth seeking her, till on the tenth day she learns the truth from the all-seeing sun. NETTLESHIP & SANDYS, *Dict. of Clas. Antiq.*, s.v. Demeter.)

And, O victory! O wonder! after toil and pain, and difficulties exceeding, the celestial hosts have succeeded. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIX, 126.

ii. In all fair dealings, the thing bought must bear some proportion to the purchase-money paid. BURKE (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 140).

It was all labour lost. POE, *Purl. Let.* (190).

The personage robbed is more thoroughly convinced, every day, of the necessity of reclaiming her letter. *ib.* (186).

I'm very fond of money earned. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. L, 241.

b) A noun that is attended by a lengthy modifier is naturally felt as a more important element of the sentence than the participle and will, accordingly, mostly be placed after the latter; thus in:

Mindful of old friendship the distinguished Professor ... sends hither a Presentation-copy of his Book, ... without indicated wish or hope of any kind CARLYLE, *Sart. Res.*, I, Ch. I, 5.

The young man seated himself in the indicated seat at the bottom of the bed. MISS BRADDON, *Audley* (quoted by BIRGER PALM, § 29). Compare: He did

not allow the cabman to drive him up to the very door indicated. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXIX, 675.)

This little divergence from the subject in hand had, of course, the intended effect of turning all eyes to Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 309. This lady, Mr. Jinks, has come here, to give information of an intended duel in this town. *ib.*, Ch. XXIV, 215.

c) The relatively superior importance and consequent emphasis of the participles may be particularly strong when two are contrasted, or when two or more modify one and the same noun. Hence they are often found after their head-word; thus in:

i. There is no such separation heard between words spoken as is between words printed. LLOYD, *North. Eng.* (BIRGER PALM § 81).

ii. Those ... who have seen death untimely strike down persons revered and beloved. THACK., *Esm.* (*ib.*, § 82).

d) It is only natural that the participle is apt to be placed in post-position when it is mainly verbal in function and modifies such an insignificant word as:

*thing* or *things* (10<sup>1</sup>, a), as in: The thing described cannot be evil. SIDNEY, *Apologie* (BIRGER PALM, § 32).

Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. BIBLE, *Hebrews*, XI, 1.

Once or twice ... she let him understand her deep sense of the things unseen. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al*, II, iv, Ch. XVIII, 78.

They sat there with their feet over the fender, talking about things gone and things coming. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XLII, 727.

*point*, as in: Men ought to take heed of rending God's church by two kinds of controversies; the one is, when the matter of the point controverted is too small and light, not worth the heat and strife about it, kindled only by contradiction. BACON, *Es.* III, *Of Unity in Religion*, 9.

*one* (100, c), as in: How long he remained in this situation he could not tell, for he was like one fascinated. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (119).

She sighed as one oppressed. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al*, I, ii, Ch. IX, 219.

Note. Compare with the above the following examples in which the participle is almost devoid of all verbal features: My opinion is, that it was a done thing between him and Scrooge's nephew. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 70. Was it not an understood thing that the governor had been recommended by the king to give up the keys as soon as they were asked for? TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. IV, 53.

### 123. Metrical considerations appear to be responsible for the post-position of the participles in:

He that is stricken blind cannot forget | The precious treasure of his eyesight lost. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, I, i, 237.

For what is wedlock forced but a hell, | An age of discord and continual strife? *id.*, *Henry VI*, A, V, 5, 62.

Religion! what treasure untold | Resides in that heavenly word! COWPER, *Alex.* Selk., IV.

### 124. It is naturally often difficult, if not impossible, to tell whether a distinct time-association or an intentional emphasis, or both should be regarded as the occasion for the participle being placed after the noun. Nor is it always easy to tell why in a given case these factors should have been inactive. In Ch. LVII, 17



some pairs of examples have been given with one and the same participle placed after the noun in one, and before it in the other, without there being obvious facts to account for the different arrangements. Here follow a few more:

i. I attended it (sc. the inquest) at the appointed time. WILK. COL., Woman, III, Ch. XI 463

At the appointed time Mr. Pickwick and his friends, escorted by Dowler, repaired to the Assembly Rooms. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXV, 326.

ii. The coach was punctual to the time appointed. ib., Ch. XXXIX, 362.

At the day appointed he turned me at three-score years and ten adrift upon the earth. READE, Never too late, I, Ch. IX, 197.

i. These were evidently the expected visitors. THACK., Den. Duv., Ch. III, (208).

ii. *Shall* may be used also, when the question put is about a simple matter of fact, and where no suggestion is made as to the answer expected. MOLLOY, Irish Difficulty, 59.

i. From the strong principle of inheritance, any selected variety will tend to propagate its new form. DARWIN, Orig. of Spec., Introd. (BIRGER PALM, § 35.)

i. The standard selected is that which forms the nearest approximation ... to the general usage of educated people in London and neighbourhood. DAN. JONES, Pron. of Eng., § 1.

125. Past participles formed from subjective verbs are, to all appearance, regularly placed before their head-word (130, c). See the numerous examples in Ch. LVII, 31; and the following:

What would he say to the returned convict? DICK., Pickw., Ch. VI, 52.

He was a retired servant, with a large family come to him in his old age. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 82.

Here is the testamentary letter itself, superscribed by the own hand of our departed brother. STEV., Kidn., Ch. I, (192). (The post-position of *departed* in the following example has an incongruous effect: Doctor Portman ... read the service over his dear sister departed. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 218.)

He (sc. Canning) recognized the revolted colonies of Spain in South America and Mexico as independent states. GREEN, Short Hist., Epil., 838.

Note. This appears to be the usual place also of the compounds in: As she thought of this, her mind went ... back to those long-gone days. TROL., Ori. Farm, II, Ch. VII, 94.

I've covered many a league of my friend (sc. the desert) in bygone years. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, III, Ch. XIII, 304. (= in years gone by)

126. a) Participles when modified by intensives are mostly predominantly adjectival and, naturally, stand before their head-word in the majority of cases; thus in:

i. She was still looking at him with the most speaking amazement. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. LIV, 443.

Little Agnes was the most winning child I ever set eyes on. THACK., Den. Duv., Ch. IV, (230).

A too, too smiling large man, ... appearing with his wife, instantly deserts his wife and darts at Twemlow. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. II, 11.

This is a very entertaining world. JEAN WEBSTER, Daddy-Long-Legs, 42.

They were all ready to pay attention to that deucedly taking niece of Rashleigh's.

Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. II, 29.



ii. He had a large sallow, ugly face very sunken eyes, and a gigantic head. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVI, 140.*

The tenth anniversary of the Tariff-Reform movement ... was kept in a rather chastened mood by the stalwarts of the movement. *Westm. Gaz., No. 6228, 1 c.*

Home Rule and the Insurance Act ... remain the most talked-of subjects in the contest. *ib., No. 6377, 2 b.*

When a participle thus modified is placed after its head-word, it assumes a mainly verbal character; thus that in:

i. This sentiment ... was fanned in a manner almost appalling. *Per. (WENDT, Synt., I, 141).*

ii. The judge (expressed) his opinion that she was a woman much injured. *TROL., Orl. Farm, III, Ch. XI, 142.*

Such a mainly verbal participle may, however, precede the noun it modifies; thus that in:

I had begun to think slave-owners were a much-abused race. *Manch. Guard., 12/11, 1926, 394 c.*

b) Participles modified by *so*, or *thus* appear to stand regularly in post-position. Compare 112, b); and 114, a).

i. Wordsworth's opinions underwent changes of a character so far-reaching that to not a few of his disciples he came to seem the renegade of his own gospel, a "lost leader." *Times, Lit. Sup., 29/4, 1926, 309 b.*

Of a compilation that bears a title so challenging one is entitled to demand something more than a handful of readable tales. *ib., 314 c.*

ii. Every honest man must sympathize with a woman so injured. *TROL., Orl. Farm, II, Ch. XXV, 325.*

There are not wanting signs that the wealth thus inherited and squandered is coming to an end. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 5 b.*

127. a) Past participles of objective verbs (Ch. XLV, 20) are often furnished with the negating prefix *un*. In this case they are, naturally, mainly adjectival, but the fact that they are not unfrequently followed by *by* + (pro)noun by way of inverted subject (Ch. XLVII, 3) shows that they are more or less distinctly felt to have verbal characteristics as well (Ch. LVII, 34). It is, however, only natural that these participles are mostly placed before their head-word. This applies also to such as are followed by the preposition with which the verb from which they have been formed is construed. See also JESPERSEN *Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 14.341.*

i. For nearly fifty years the movement has continued with unabated speed. *BUCKLE, Civiliz. I, Ch. VII, 456 (O. E. D.).*

The house was several centuries old, with a long unbroken family history. *SARAH GRAND, Our Manifold Nature, 31.*

ii. Great consternation was occasioned in the Castle by the unlooked-for announcement of Mr. Dombey as a visitor. *DICK., Domb., Ch. XI, 94.*

If, after all, the unlooked-for son should be born, the money would have been thrown away. *G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., I, II, Ch. XV, 236.*

The unheard-of arrival of letters there would arouse suspicion. *JOHN OXENHAM, A Simple Beguiler.*

b) Similarly present participles of either objective or subjective

verbs (Ch. XLV, 20) are frequently negated by *un*. They, too, are mostly placed before their head-word. This follows from their being mainly adjectival in character, although some, such as *unbecoming*, *unbefitting*, *undeserving* betray their verbal affinities in admitting of being construed with a (non-)prepositional object (Ch. LIV, 6).

Her illness was of a very slight and unalarming character. Miss BRADDON, *Dead Sea Fr.*, III, Ch. IV, 61 (O. E. D.).

The age of miracles has ceased, and the world is an unbelieving world. JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, III, 41 (O. E. D.).

c) When the notion they express is in the speaker's mind more prominent than that of their head-word, these negated participles are naturally subject to post-position; e. g.:

i. The only person unmoved was the girl herself. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray* (BIRGER PALM, § 102).

ii. On those lines there will be trouble and cost unceasing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8603, 6 a.

128. Compounds consisting of a participle and a noun (either in the objective or the adverbial relation to it), an adverb, or an adjective, whether mainly adjectival or verbal, are normally placed before the noun, subject of course to the ordinary restrictions; e. g.:

i. \* a pains-taking student, a God-fearing man, a shop-keeping nation, the wage-earning classes, an epoch-making event, the reigning dynasty;

\*\* a night-walking man, ocean-smelling osier, water-living creatures, autumn-flowering bulbs, town-dwelling people.

ii. an outstanding event, an outlying portion of the Empire, the incoming train, far-reaching possibilities; ever-varying shades, never-failing support, a long-standing injustice; an easy-going disposition, a hard-working student, a thorough-going imperialist.

iii. a good-looking girl, sweet-smelling flowers, a good-sounding address, steady-going Conservatives.

iv. a love-worn man, a breaker-beaten coast, a moss-covered stone, a God-forsaken hole, a country-bred woman, a Scripture-read man, tongue tied timidity; a grass-grown footway, world-travelled warriors, a book-learned man; a self-taught man, a self-appointed task.

v. an ill-advised insurrection, a well-reaped field, well-disposed natives, so-called hardening; half-closed eyes, badly-fed women; inbred urbanity, an outstretched hand; long-established institutions, an oft-travelled tour; a pretty-behaved woman, a plain-spoken man.

vi. a Dutch built vessel, American made boots, foreign manufactured goods; ready-dressed ham, a clean-shaven man, a far-fetched explanation

For examples illustrating these compounds see Ch. LVII, 26 and 39. For instances and illustration of compounds with a participle in which the adverb does not take the suffix *ly* see Ch. LIX, 33.

129. a) When the adverb cannot be said to form an established compound with the participle, the tendency is to place the combination after its head-word, the adverb naturally tending to suggest the time-association and impart to the combination the value of an undeveloped clause. Post-position appears to be especially usual (104)

when the adverb is one of time, but is also frequent enough when it is one of another description; e. g.:

i. I purpose to write the history of England from the accession of King James the Second down to a time which is within the memory of men still living. *Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 1.*

"Can anything be finer or more delightful?" he inquired of Mr. Winkle. "Nothing," replied that gentleman, who had had a short man standing on each of his feet for the quarter of an hour immediately preceding. *Dick., Pickw., Ch. IV, 31.*

The scene of that afternoon was repeated that evening, and on the three afternoons and evenings next ensuing. *ib., Ch. VIII, 72.*

ii. It is a truth universally acknowledged that a single man in possession of a good fortune must be in want of a wife. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. I, 7.*

Nor will it be less my duty faithfully to record disasters mingled with triumphs. *Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 2.*

The name seemed to run like wildfire through all the Buttevantions there assembled. *TROL., Castle Richmond, Ch. XLII, 718.*

This at the same time enables the observer to see the interior thus illuminated. *DAN. JONES, Pron. of Eng., § 3.*

Suzanne handed her a large parasol lined with green. *HICHENS, Gard. of A L., I, 1, Ch. V, 66.*

b) For comparison we subjoin a few examples in which such a (105) combination is placed before the noun.

The now declining day. *SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1788.*

Thou hold'st the sun | A pris'ner in the yet undawning east. *COWPER, Task, IV, 130.*

He drove his question through her like a knife quite close, as if resolved that the always dark and now darkening room should not filch from him the effect of his words. *RHODA BROUGHTON, Mamma, II, 32.*

ii. They returned along the now deserted streets to their own dwelling. *SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. II, 24.*

He brought with him the absolute deed executed on that 14th of July with reference to the then dissolved partnership of Mason and Martock. *TROL., Ork. Farm., II, Ch. XXV, 322.*

He planted a carefully cut cigar between the parted lips aforesaid. *W. J. LOCKE, Stella Maris, Ch. III, 32.*

The Registrar General ... points out in his comments on the just issued national statistics for 1925 that 84 per cent of the fatal accidents to bathers and omnibus drivers happen under the age of 25. *Manch. Guard., 10/6, 1927, 446 b.*

Such a combination as is found in the following example is, no doubt, only exceptionally placed before a noun:

It was through this little throng that the mother-child and Kirsteen passed into the fast-being-gutted cotage. *GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XVIII, 159.*

c) Sometimes the combination makes the impression of a periphrastic indication of a notion for which at the moment of writing or speaking no fitting adjective was available; thus, perhaps, in:

i. A long-abiding race the deed shall pay. | Nor one unblest'd abortion pine away. *CRABBE, Par. Reg., I, Baptisms (Wks, 58 b).*

The Volga ... flows through a gradually declining valley. *Pallas' Travels*, I, 61 (O. E. D.).

ii. Mary was an easily satisfied little person. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 61, 89.

d) Separate mention may be made of the frequent combinations with *ever*, *never*, and *still*, which may be freely united with all suitable (especially present) participles to form semi-compounds with them, such as *ever-changing*, *-moving*, *-varying*, *-widening*, etc.; *never-changing*, *-ceasing*, *-dying*, *-ending*, *-erring*, *-fading*, *-failing*, etc.; *still-continuing*, *-diminishing*, *-existing*, *-improving*, *-increasing*, *-recurring*, etc. The O. E. D. registers numerous examples, so that there is no call for much illustration in these pages.

i. The cause of the transition lies in the ever-living problem of the meaning of life — whence? whither? *JOHN OATES, The Teaching of Tennyson*, 8. The poet accepted the offer, a very fortunate one, considering the ever-changing nature of his faith. *S. L. BENSUSAN, Coleridge*, 31.

ii. This was to them a never-ending mystery. *GALSW., Freeland's*, Ch. XI, 89. This opens wide the door of opportunity for Liberalism to resume its never-ending task. *Manch. Guard.*, 10/6, 1927, 447 a.

iii. The still-existing Company of Merchants of Carlisle. *GROSS, Gild Merch.*, I, 132 (O. E. D. 7, c).

This new room ... forms now the central portion of that great reading-room (sc. the Bodleyan), so affectionately remembered by thousands of still-living students. *BIRRELL (WENDT, Synt.*, I, 141).

For a moment the man stood watching the still quivering brute lying at his feet. "SAPPER" (*CYRIL McNEILE, Bull-Dog Drummond*, Ch. VI, iv, 163).

130. a) Compounds or combinations consisting of a past participle and one of certain short adverbs, such as *down*, *in*, *out*, *up*, etc. are mostly mainly adjectival in function and are, consequently, placed before their head-word in the majority of cases. The adverb may precede the participle, as in *down-cast looks*, *down-trodden serfs*, *an inborn instinct*, *an outstretched hand*, *upturned faces*, etc., or follow it, as in *a broken-down man*, *a walled-in garden*, *tired-out workmen*, *a made-up case*. Such a compound or combination may in this position be preceded by one or more adverbial modifiers, as in *a most successfully made-up party*, *a tightly fastened-down lid*. Compare *JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.32 and 14.33.

i. My outstretched hands at length encountered some solid obstruction. *POE, Pit & Pend.*, (347).

ii. There was an active, clean-shorn chap with drawn-in cheeks. *GALSW., Freeland's*, Ch. XIX, 172.

His last dropped-out question was very deceptive. *HICHENS, Gard. of All.*, I, iii, Ch. XI, 272.

If all opportunities are let slip, there seems no alternative but for the disaster to the Miners' Federation to complete itself by a dragged-out "fight to a finish." *Manch. Guard.*, 5/11, 1926, 361 a.

b) When these compounds or combinations are rather verbal than adjectival, there is a tendency to place them after the noun.



His stock consisted of a wooden stool, made out of a broken-backed chair cut down. DICK., *Two Cities* II, Ch. I, 72. (subaudition: which had at some time been cut down, *or* which at some time he had cut down)

c) Also combinations of present participles with such adverbs, whether preceding or following the latter, appear to be mostly placed before their head-word. So far as the available illustrative material goes, this is also their ordinary position when the participle is rather verbal than adjectival; thus in *incoming* (or *outgoing*) *tenant*, *down-streaming seas*; *dining-out snobs*, *a going-about body* (quoted by JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.37). It is worth observing that in all the above combinations the verb is an intransitive (125).

i. And he thrice had pluck'd a life | From the dread sweep of the down-streaming seas. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 55.

The outgoing tenant receives a certain sum from the incoming tenant. FAWCETT, *Pol. Econ.*, II, VII, 240 (O. E. D., s.v. *outgoing*).

ii. (The coin) is really worth only its melting-down price. *Manch. Guard.*

- 131 Combinations consisting of a participle and a preposition are, as to their position, subject to the same laws as determine the place of participles or adjectives generally. When mainly adjectival, they are mostly preceded by an intensive modifier. Compare JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 14.342. The normal place is before the noun, as in:

i. In a brown suit, with his pale but freckled face, and his gnawed-at, sandy moustache, .. he was certainly no beauty. GALSW., *Free Lands*, Ch. XIV, 118. They were content to pay the European trader the agreed-upon price, *Westm. Gaz.*, No 6483, 7a.

The longed-for blizzard did not come. *Times*, *Lit. Sup.*, 2<sup>nd</sup>/4, 1926, 320 d.

ii. Marjorie Ferrar (was) one of the most talked-of young women in London. GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. XIII, 90.

He was the best-loved and the best-looked-after elephant in the service of the Government of India. RUDY. KIPL., *Jungle Book* (KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 2115).

132. When a participle is distinctly felt as a constituent of an undeveloped clause, and is, consequently, of a decidedly verbal nature, it is, naturally, placed after its head-word. It is of some interest to observe that the meaning of the combinations in the following examples is materially changed when the participle is placed before its head-word. Some of the examples given in 121 might be included here. Compare also Ch. XX, 3.

He is a man travelling, as other men travel. HENRIKS., *Gard. of All*, I, III, Ch. XI, 327.

Sanitary towels invaluable to ladies travelling. *Advertisement*. (Compare: The services of travelling scholars will be utilized as far as they may be offered. *Mod. Lang. Assoc.*, March, 1927, XL1.)

ii. Hope deferred maketh the heart sick. *Bible*, *Prov.*, XIII, 12 (practically equivalent to: hope if or when deferred ...)

A play read affects the mind like a play acted. JOHNSON (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 146). (practically equivalent to: a play when read ..., a play when acted.)



Pow'r usurp'd | Is weakness when oppos'd. COWPER, *Task*, V, 371—2 (Only metrical considerations appear to be responsible for the use of *when* before *oppos'd* and its absence before *usurp'd*)

An affront handsomely acknowledged becomes an obligation SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3 (284). (practical'y equivalent to: ., if *or when* handsomely acknowledged.)

While the direction was being executed, the lady consulted moved slowly up the room. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 51.

With every step taken ... his erect thin figure ... had seemed more rare. GALSW., *White Monkey*, I, Ch. I, 11

A reward of 500 marks, or £ 25, is offered for every wolf shot. *Manch. Guard.*, 29/10, 1926, 343 c.

Note a) The participle is often of this nature when the noun is modified by a superlative, or by such a word as *chief*, *principal*, *only* (*one*) *all*, or *any*.

The most rotatable paintings shown were those belonging to the Sung Dynasty. *Studio*, No. 190 (FINGER PALM, § 33).

The chief difficulty experienced is that when [etc.] DAN. JONES, *Pron. of Eng.* (ib.).

This was the one room unoccupied. *Advent of Eliz in Rügen*, *The first day*, 31

It should not, however, be thought that pre-position of word-groups consisting of a superlative and a past participle is at all unusual; but in this case the superlative belongs to the participle, not to the noun; thus in:

She is simply the best educated girl whom it has ever been my lot to meet. TROL., *Last Chron.* I, Ch. III, 28.

Home Rule and the Insurance Act remain the most talked-of subjects in the contest. *Westm. Gaz.*, No 6377, 2 b.

Sometimes the construction admits of two interpretations; thus in:

To my idea it's the prettiest built house I ever saw TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XVI, 187. (In this example *prettiest* is, most probably, meant to modify *house*, but it may also be understood as a modifier of *built*)

β) It should, also, be remembered that distinctly adjectival participles, like ordinary adjectives and nouns, may be constituents of an undeveloped clause and, accordingly, have post-position.

She can meet at the Priory with society more fitting her noble birth. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. VI, (255).

b) In the "telegraphese" of brief announcements the participle is mostly placed after the noun, and in this position has the value of an undeveloped clause; thus in *Mr. Jones deceased* (*retired*), *Situations wanted*, *The Critic*, or *A Tragedy Rehearsed* (SHER.), *The King dying*, *The enemy flying*.

This may also be observed in the language of stage-directions, as in:

Elvira, awakened, rises and looks at him with indignation. SHER., *Pizarro*, Act. I, 1

c) Participles whose head-word is a determinative demonstrative appear to be always mainly verbal and are, consequently, regularly found in post-position.

104 deputies returned blank forms. Those abstaining are understood to be the National Democrats [etc.]. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/6, 1927, 428 *a*.

It seems to be the sense of those interested that the new book should be, as far as possible, a complete record of every form and every known meaning of Middle English words. *Mod. Lang. Assoc.*, March. 1927, xli.

This also applies to the indefinite pronouns in *body* (or *one*), or *thing*, as in:

i. Everybody invited was certainly to come. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XXIX, 240. (This use of *certainly* instead of *certain* is exceptional.)

For an instant one blood-red hand was visible alone, waving a signal above the hand to some one unseen. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XXI, 147.

ii. Something attempted, something done, | Has earned a night's repose. LONGF., *Vil. Blacksm.*, VII.

133. Some points regarding the position of participles are of particular interest. As they could not very well be dealt with in the preceding sections with the attention they deserve, they will now be made the subject of special discussion.

134. It may have been observed that in almost all the preceding examples with the participle in post-position, those with the semantically insignificant *thing*, *point*, etc. excepted, the noun is preceded by the definite article. This is only what was to be expected. It is, indeed, the modification by the definite article, which mostly leads to the expectation of a specializing or restrictive adnominal clause following, or to a participle that is more or less distinctly felt to have the value of an undeveloped clause of this description, i. e. one of a predominantly verbal nature. Attentive reading of some pages of prose or verse will, no doubt, bring out the fact that instances of the participle being placed in post-position are comparatively unfrequent when the noun is modified by a genitive (or possessive pronoun), a demonstrative pronoun, the indefinite article, or a numeral.

Here follow some examples in which post-position of the participle would be barely possible owing to the preceding possessive pronoun:

Three years later he lost his last surviving brother Christopher. W. H. HUDSON. *Wordsworth and his Poetry*, Ch. XIV, 185.

His already wearied horse. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1788.

All the debts are put upon my shoulders on account of my known wealth. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch X, 130.

He heard his dear and doted-on Mary Anne say, ... "Do you think I should care anything for that lame boy?" LYTTON, *Life of Lord BYRON*, 14*a*.

His (eyes) were riveted on her down-turned face. TROL., *Castle Rich.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 661.

He was surely crying out upon God, denouncing God for the evils that had beset his nearly ended life. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, II, Ch. IX, 220.

The chief honours are carried off by Mr. Liam O'Flaherty in his subtle and finely written story "The Tent". *Manch. Guard.*, 5/11, 1926, 372 *c*.

The book ends with his last completed letter. *ib.*, 24/6, 1927, 493 *b*.

In the following example the post-position appears to be due to the preceding numeral:

Some men kneeled down, made scoops of their two hands joined, and sipped, or tried to help women, who bent over their shoulders, to sip. DICK., *Two Cities*, I, Ch. V, 43.

135. a) Present participles formed from primarily objective verbs that have become subjective through absorption of the object (Ch. LVII, 19, Note  $\alpha$ ) are always mainly adjectival and are, accordingly, placed before their head-word; e. g.: *an affecting appeal*, *a designing man*, *a taking song*, *an understanding sort of man*, etc. This is also their regular place when the object is implied in the head-word, as in *intending passengers*, *a professing Catholic*, etc. (Ch. LVII, 19, Note  $\beta$ ).

Evidently the Count was not a professing Catholic. HICHENS, *Gard. of Ail.*, I, III, XI, 278.

b) Past participles are always placed before the noun:

1) when they are related to the latter in a way which is not shared by the finite verb (Ch. LVII, 29, Obs. II); thus in:

He never was so delighted in his born days. RICHARDSON, *Pam.* III, 383 (O. E. D.).

The destined combatants returned no answer to this greeting. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIV, 358.

2) when they are the attributive application of a verb of declaring and the combination goes back to an accusative + infinitive or a nominative + infinitive (Ch. LVII, 29, Obs. III); thus in:

i. The former (sc. young man) is an avowed admirer of your ladyship. SHER. School, I, 4, (364). (= a man who avows himself to be an admirer of your ladyship.)

Nor can I pretend to guess under what wicked delusion it is that you kiss a declared lover. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXV, 261. (= a man who has declared himself to be a lover.)

ii. The whole world is wondering at your stupidity in being thus misled by a man who is an admitted rebel. Eng. Rev., No. 111, 166. (= a man who is admitted to be a rebel.)

The hearing of the charge against the alleged conspirators at Pretoria has been postponed. Times. (= the men who are alleged to be conspirators)

Thus also when the combination goes back to an accusative + infinitive with the accusative understood, as in

Dryden generally exhibits himself in the light, if not of a professed misogynist, yet of one who delighted to gird at marriage. SHAW., *Eng. Lit.*, Ch. XII, 229 (= a man who professes to be a misogynist.)

The pretended lunatic was a man in my own pay. POE *Pur. Let.* (200). (= a man who pretended to be a lunatic)

3) when they have the value of present participles, as in:

With hung head and tottering steps she instinctively chose the shortest cut to that home. Mrs. GASK, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XX, 215. (= hanging head.)  
The threatened railway strike. Times. (= the threatening railway strike, or perhaps, the railway strike with which the public are threatened.)

For further discussion and illustration see Ch. LVII, 29.

136. Past participles that form with their head-word a combination

that has the value of a gerund-construction (Ch. LVI, 52, *b*) are regularly placed in post position; thus in:

Less prosperously the second suit obtain'd | At first with Psyche ... | Not tho' he built upon the babe restored. TEN., Princ., VII, 60. (= upon the restoring of the babe.)

His spirits depressed by eighteen months passed in dull state, amidst factions and intrigues which he but half understood, rose high as soon as he was surrounded by tents and standards. MAC., Hist., VI, Ch. XVI, 4. (= by the passing of eighteen months in dull state.)

ii. It has often been observed that one truth concealed gives rise to a dozen current lies. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (120). (= the concealing of one truth). Here her hand | Grasp'd made her veil her eyes. TEN. Guin., 656.

137. Some participles in certain meanings or applications are traditionally always placed after the noun. This applies to:

the present participles: *being*, as in: His faith had fallen fast asleep for the time being. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XIV, 73*a*.

*coming*, as in: It shall and may be lawful in all time coming for the English people to communicate with each other. DE QUINCEY, Conf. (BIRG. PALM., § 86).

*going*, as in: He's the finest fellow going. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XLII, 144.

Both had the best or the worst manners going. DU MAURIER, Trilby, I, Ch. III, 188.

*running*, as in: He was asked out to dinner ... every day for a week running. TROL., Orl. Farm, III, Ch. VII, 81.

the past participles: *addressed*, as in: His lynx eye ... observes the confusion of the personage addressed, and fathoms her secret. POE, Purl. Let., (185).

*cast*, as in: In the 1923 election for the first time a Government was established not resting on an actual majority of votes cast. Manch. Guard., 18/11, 1927, 382*b*.

*concerned*, as in: In this matter, I act as a partisan of the lady concerned. POE, Purl. Set. (200). (Compare: Taking him aside with a grave concerned countenance. STEELE, Spect., No. 504 (O. E. D.).

*drawn*, as in: Bungay and Bacon are at daggers drawn. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 39. (Compare the French *à couteaux tirés*.)

Note. *At daggers drawn* has supplanted the earlier *at daggers' drawing* and did not become usual until the 19th century. O. E. D.

*fixed*, as in: And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed. Bible Luke, XVI, 26.

*given*, as in: The extracts given are too short to represent adequately the style of the author. SKEAT, Introd. to Spec. of Eng. Lit., § 1.

One party was returned with an enormous majority, though on a mere count of the votes given it had no majority at all. Manch. Guard., 18/4, 1927. 382*b* Compare: Two motives, each of a given value, have not, necessarily, a value when united equal to the sum of their values apart. POE, Purl. Let. (195).

*left*, as in: (This) is the last chance left of publicly establishing the fact of Laura's existence. WILK. COL., Woman, II, Ch. XI, 47*a*.

She had twenty pounds left. RID. HAG., Mées. Will, Ch. IV, 42.

The one course left was to imitate the fatal policy by which the Empire had invited its own doom while striving to avert it. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. I, § 1, 7.

Note. The same notion is expressed by the present participle *remaining*



and by the adverb *over*, as in: i. Out of fourteen thousand pounds we had but four hundred remaining. *GOODES, Vic., Ch. III, (246).*  
 ii. I have more than that over from uncle's fifty-pound check. *EENA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXI, 20.*  
*unborn*, as in: He is as innocent as the babe unborn. *ESCOTT, England, Ch. XXIV, 146.*

138. a) As a constituent of an adjunct of time in which the noun is preceded (106) by a preposition, the participle *following* is placed indifferently either in pre-position or post-position. The varied placing does not, apparently, depend on any appreciable difference of meaning. Compare O. E. D., 2, Note.

i. On the following day appeared in the Gazette a proclamation dissolving that Parliament [etc.] *MAC., Hist., II, Ch. VIII, 99.*

On the following day he did go back to Ireland *TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XLII, 706.* (This appears to be the regular practice of this writer.)

This treaty ... was ratified in the following October. *MORRIS, Chaucer, Introd. 7.*

ii. He arrived at his destination in the October following. *MAC., War. Hist., (598 a).*

He neither looked at nor spoke to the other for an hour following. *CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. II, 13.*

On the day following he entered my room. *WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, Ch. I, 270.*

On the day following I entered upon my functions. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5376, 2 c.*

Note a) It is worth observing that *ensuing*, a close synonym of *following* appears to be mostly placed before the noun; e.g.:

i. Early on the ensuing morning. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVI, 139.*

ii. Milton commenced residence in the Easter term ensuing. *PATTISON (WENDT, Synt., I, 142).*

Observe, however, the post-position of *next-ensuing* in: The scene of that afternoon was repeated that evening, and on the three afternoons and evenings next ensuing. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. VIII, 72.*

Also *preceding*, a strict antonym of *following*, appears to stand rarely, after its head-word.

The statute ... provides that no application for admission of a new women's society be entertained unless the average number of women undergraduates in residence during the three preceding years shall have been less than one fourth of the average number of men undergraduates. *Manch. Guard., 17/6, 1927, 461 d.*

β) In the following example *contiguous* may have been placed after the noun through the force of analogy with *following*:

In an ordinary village or country town one can safely calculate that, either on Christmas-day or the Sunday contiguous, any native home for the holidays... will turn up in some pew or other, shining with hope, self-consciousness, and new clothes. *HARDY, Return, II, Ch. IV, 145.*

γ) In other combinations than adjuncts of time post-position is, presumably, less common than pre-position.

i. My Friend answered what I said in the following manner. *STEELE, Spect., No. 152 (O. E. D.).*

ii. The art of roasting or rather broiling (which I take to be the elder brother)



was accidentally discovered in the manner following. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, Dis. on Roast Pig, (254).

It was with special interest that Mr. Morley read the letters to which he refers in the extract following. *Lit. World*.

*b)* The participial compounds *above-mentioned* and *afore-said*, and their variations *above-named*, *above-cited*, *above-said*, *above-specified*; *afore-mentioned*, *afore-given*, *afore-told*; *before-mentioned*, *under-mentioned*, etc., were originally chiefly used in legal style and placed after the noun. In the language of the law this is their ordinary place to this day; thus in:

In default of which issue the ranks and dignities were to pass to Francis *afore-said*. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. VI, 380.

For the rest they appear now to be more frequently placed before than after their head-word, post-position being sometimes affected for the sake of giving a humorously archaic tinge to the language. See especially BIRGER PALM, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute* §§ 55—62, where numerous instances are given.

*i.* The ladies *aforesaid* continued still inflexible. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, II. He was followed by the game-keeper *aforesaid*. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XV, 58 *b*. (He) seemed in a fair way to fulfil the prediction of the old gentleman *before-mentioned*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (110).

Full of reflections upon this important decision, he crept from his place of concealment, and, under cover of the shrubs *before-mentioned*, approached the house. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VIII, 69.

The old lady began rattling on a hundred stories about the thirteen ladies *above-mentioned*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 24.

His first book was published in the year *above-mentioned*. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch II, 86.

*ii.* No speculative observer could have regarded (him) for an instant without setting (him) down as the official dispenser of the contents of the *before-mentioned* hamper. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IV, 33.

Old Wardle and Benjamin Allen, assisted by the *aforesaid* Bob Sawyer, performed some mysterious evolutions, which they called a reel *ib.*, Ch XXX, 269. The chambers of this great guardian of the innocence — or rather not guiltiness of the public — were not in any so-named inn, but consisted of two gloomy, dark, panelled rooms in Ely Place. TROL., *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. VI, 72.

I must not forget to say that there was also a reporter for the press, provided by the special care of the latter-named gentleman. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXV, 322.

I received the *above named* haunch from Lord Cuttebury's park. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 55.

The *aforesaid* Martin ... was one of those unfortunates who were at that time quite out of their places at a public-school. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

Annual subscriptions which must be prepaid are received to the *under-mentioned* periodicals. *Times*, *Advert.*

*Note.* Similar word-groups, of a less technical application, being felt as undeveloped clauses, are mostly placed after the noun.

He found that learned gentleman sitting at breakfast, with the three little boys *before noticed*. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. V, 23 *b*.

Within a short period of the events *above narrated* Mr. Manager Bingley was performing his famous character of Rolla. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 137.

The reason for this is, no doubt, the fact already mentioned, that the Bel-

gians ... are essentially international traders. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/11, 1926, 370 d.

c) *Born* is placed either after or before the noun, apparently indifferently, whether used in the literal, or in the transferred meaning of *genuine*. Compare O. E. D., B, 1, b.

i. He was a gentleman born. *Scott, Mon.*, Ch. XXVIII, 301.

He's a liar born, and he'll die a liar. *Dick, Great Expect.*, Ch. V, 46.

She was a lady born. *Kingsley, Water Babies*, VI.

(He is) such a little beauty and a nobleman born. *Frances H. Burnett Little Lord*, Ch. VI, 96.

ii. This good lady is a born lady, a high lady. *Dick.*, *Hard Times*, I, Ch. XI, 31 b.

He was no born heaven's cherub, neither was he a born fallen devil's spirit. *Trol.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 4.

The Boer is a born conservative. *Froude, O.C.*, Ch. III, 48.

He is a born British subject, yet he has never succeeded in persuading a single official of his nationality. *Stev.*, *Inland Voyage*, at Maubeuge, 25.

I'm your born uncle, Davie, my man, and you my born nephew. *id.*, *Kidn.*, Ch. III, (201).

He was no poet, having rather the fervid temper of the born swordsman, that expresses itself in physical ecstasies. *Galsw.*, *Freelands*, Ch. IX, 79.

Naturally the word has post-position when it has the value of an undeveloped clause, as in:

She puts the toll of motherhood at one life for every 250 babies born. *Manch. Guard.*, 23/12, 1927, 481 d.

Note a) Compounds of *born* with an adjective or an adverb appear to be ordinarily placed before the noun.

i. The foreign-born resident of a country. *Webst.*, *Dict.*, s.v. *alien*.

Will you say that I am not your honest-born child? *Trol.*, *Castle Richmond*, Ch. XL, 694.

ii. I am a humbly born man. *Thack.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 132.

iii. \* Those still-born quotations of our messmate Price are most tryingly annoying. *Marryat, King's Own*, Ch. XXXV (O. E. D., 2.)

\*\* A momentary flicker that might have been a smile still-born passed across Mrs. Bindle's face. *Jenkins, Bindle*, Ch. I, 25.

β) The combination *born and bred* (or *born and brought up*) is placed either before or after the noun, the latter position being, presumably, the ordinary one, especially when the word-group is used in its primary sense.

i. There are apartments at the Bank where a born-and-bred lady, as keeper of the place would be rather a catch than otherwise. *Dick.*, *Hard Times*, I, Ch. XVI, 47 b.

He would certainly have struck a stranger as a born-and-bred gentleman. *Em. Brontë, Wuth. Heights*, Ch XIV, 75 b.

ii. Chaucer was, like Spenser, Ben Jonson, Milton, etc., a Londoner born and bred. *Morris, Chaucer, Introd.*

He (sc. Dickens) looked upon himself as, to all intents and purposes, a Kentish man born and bred. *Ward, Dick.*, Ch I, 1.

A gentleman born and brought up who ought to have set a better example. *Wilk. Col.*, *Woman*, III, 399.

d) *Dead and gone* is naturally mostly used predicatively (O. E. D., s.v. *dead*, 32), as in:

The dear pretty cottage with ... the oil painting of Bowster and Mrs. Bowster — dead and gone, poor thing, for many a year. *MISS BRADLON, My First Happy Christm.* (Stof., Handl., I, 72.)

The phrase is also used attributively and is then placed before its head-word; thus in:

The rather stout lady was no other than the quondam relict and sole executrix of the dead-and-gone Mr. Clarke. *DICKENS, Pickwick, Ch. XXVII, 240.*

*Unknown* is mostly placed before the noun, but is not unfrequently found in post-position, especially in technical, notably legal style.

i. Of unknown ingredients, *x* and *y* denote unknown quantities in equation. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*

ii. Mrs. Catherine had, on the clearest evidence, compromised her reputation, while a single woman, with some person unknown; and had married to save her character. *WILKINS, COL., Woman, 404.*

(This) led up to a verdict of wilful murder against some person or persons unknown. *CON. DOYLE, Return, Advent. of the Empty House, 12.* For some reasons unknown very little was said of the occurrence in the newspapers. *MRS. ALEXANDER, At Bay, Ch. VI (O. E. D., I, c).*

139. Mr. BIRGER PALM, in his able dissertation, *The Place of the Adjective Attribute in English Prose* (§ 26—28), quarrels with my exposition of the main principles which determine the position of participles, as given in the first edition of my *Grammar* (Ch. VIII, § 103—104). This exposition runs as follows: "Participles are placed before the nouns they modify when the actions or states they express are not associated with any limitation of time, as in *ploughing oxen, fallen leaves*.

This is their regular place also, when their meaning is that of ordinary adjectives, i. e. when they have stripped off their verbal character and have come to denote permanent attributes, as in *a learned man, a running hand*. (Here follow some quotations.)

But when the actions or states they express are as distinctly connected in our thoughts with the limitation of time as in the case of finite verbs, they are placed after the nouns they modify and felt as undeveloped clauses. Compare *He sent me a written circular, not a printed one* with *He took all the letters written to the post*. (Here follow some quotations.)"

Mr. B. P. rejects my explanation and brings into court my example *It is a truth universally acknowledged that a single man in possession of a good fortune must be in want of a wife*. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. I, 7.* "A truth universally acknowledged cannot well be a fact limited to a certain moment!" he argues. This is, of course, indisputable, but with a respectful appeal to his extensive knowledge of English I venture to ask him if he has duly weighed the meaning of the word *limitation*. Does he understand it as a more or less literary equivalent of *limit*? If he does, I must set him right and tell him that the term *limitation of time* is, or at least may be used in another and wider sense than that of *limit of time*. As he is aware, it has been replaced, in a subsequent part of my grammatical work, by *time-association* or *association with time-limitations*, which at the time of writing seemed to me to give a clearer description of what, in my

opinion, distinguishes verbs from adjectives. See section 7 of my treatise on the Participles. or of Ch. LVII of my Grammar. Compare also Ch. XLV, § 28 of my Grammar, where I have been at considerable pains to explain what, in my view, constitutes the difference between verbs and adjectives. In § 118, *a* of the present chapter I have been more explicit, and have spoken of association of the attribute with a point of time, or a definite or indefinite length of time, so that I am rather sanguine that I have obviated all misunderstanding as to my notions about the fundamental difference between the above kinds of parts of speech.

It is matter of regret that Mr. B. P., before entering upon his discourse, should not have satisfied himself about this difference. If he had done so, he would have taken pause and been less positive before pronouncing a given attributive participle purely verbal or adjectival, as he repeatedly does in the course of his elaborate expositions. Then he would have become aware that no participles are devoid of all verbal meaning, not even such a word as *charming* in *a charming young lady*. This word-group, as I take it, denotes a young lady that by her manner, looks, etc. charms us whenever we meet her. A similar interpretation cannot possibly be put on *a blond young lady*, which, of course, is not meant to indicate a young lady that is always blond whenever we meet her. The time-limitation or association is not, accordingly, entirely absent in the first-mentioned combination. This does not mean that the other notions, those of attractiveness, sweetness, etc., implied by the participle, should not be the predominant ones, as is shown by the fact that the word admits of the degrees of of comparison: *more charming, most charming*.

Mr. B. P. is, to my thinking, distinctly beside the mark when he denies all verbal notion to *doted-on* in *He heard his dear and doted-on Mary Anne say . . . "Do you think I should care anything for that lame boy?"* (LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 14*a*), which he adduces to refute my view in his pamphlet *Om S. K. Stilistiska Finesser särskilt i Engelskan*, of which he has had the kindness to send me a copy. About this sentence Mr. B. P. observes, "Det är nämligen ganska tydligt, att 'doted-on' är så adjektiviskt tänkt, att det här överhuvud icke kan vara fråga om någon slags handling." Now *doted-on* denotes anything but a permanent attribute, but one ascribed to the young lady in question for a limited length of time by a particular individual. I am, however, ready to admit that *doted-on* is largely tinged with an adjectival nature. It has this in common with all participles of verbs that indicate a psychical disposition, as in *their cherished leader, this cursed enemy, these loathed deserters*. Such participles are, in this respect, distinguished from those of verbs which indicate a physical, mental, or moral activity, as in *a muttered reply, your dreamt-of philosophy, this disguised party*, in which the adjectival nature is less pronounced. If then it should be asked why *doted-on* in the above example could not possibly leave its place before the noun, the answer is that this is due to the noun being at the same time modified by a possessive pronoun. The fact is that Late Modern English hardly tolerates an attributive participle after a noun that is



modified by a possessive pronoun or genitive. See the examples in 134 of the present chapter.

In place of my principle Mr. B. P., in his Dissertation (§ 29), proposes another which should be considered in accounting for the post-position that is often assigned to participles, viz. "the presence in one's thoughts of a certain agent", i. e. the fact that "one has a definite **acting person** (*operative force*) in view". Mr. B. P. compares *The young man seated himself in the indicated seat at the bottom of the bed* with *This reflects an intimacy with the material handled which is unmistakable*. "In the latter case," he contends, "one has a definite acting person (*operative force*) in view, whereas in the former case one does not think of any such." In the last sentence, he goes on to say, "the past participle can be replaced by an **active** attributive clause; thus . . . *the material which the author handles*." Mr. B. P. does not say that the participle in the first sentence admits of no such substitution, but his reasoning certainly leads to this conclusion. Now, to me, the only difference between these two sentences, so far as the "acting person" is concerned, is that in the second this person is in the subject-relation, and in the first, in the object-relation to the action indicated by the participle. But this surely is not the reason why post-position is used in the second, and not in the first. If this were so, the order would have been reversed in *Shagran . . . refused to move one yard in the direction indicated* (SCOTT, Mon., Ch. III, 66), and in *Holmes turned to the page indicated*. (CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb., 86 a), and in *They were content to pay the European trader the agreed-upon price* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6483, 7 a), and a host of other examples that a diligent search could collect, also from Mr. B. P.'s dissertation. To me it seems more probable that the placing of the participle before the noun in the first of Mr. B. P.'s examples cited above is due to the fact that the noun is attended by a lengthy adjunct, viz. *at the bottom of the bed*. In comparing *the seat indicated* (without any adjunct) with *the indicated seat*, we find that the main difference is one of the relative importance attached to the notions conveyed by the two words respectively: in the former it is the participle which is the more important and, consequently, receives the stronger stress; in the latter it is the noun.

Again Mr. B. P.'s assumption that "If the substantive is qualified by a possessive or demonstrative pronoun an acting person is never thought of", which is intended to account for the word-order in *The unfolding of our felt wrongs* (FLORIO) and five more examples cited in § 37, seems to be a rather arbitrary one. The probability is that post-position is rendered impracticable by the mere presence of these pronouns.

Mr. B. P. also finds fault with my observation that the participle when placed after the noun is felt as an undeveloped clause. In § 191 of his dissertation he even goes so far as to say that "the talk about an undeveloped clause is totally valueless, for any adjective attribute can be resolved into a relative clause." In the above-mentioned pamphlet he delivers himself in even stronger terms. There we read: "När i engelskan ett kortare attribut sättes efter sitt substantiv, vill man,



gärna förklara saken helt enkelt så, att attributet står i st. för en relativsats. Detta är nära nog nonsens, eftersom man i regel kan utvidga ett adj.-attr. till en rel. bisatz." I am not prepared to contradict this sweeping statement, but venture to submit that a participle in post-position more readily suggests such a relative clause than one placed before the noun, or, as I put it, is felt as an undeveloped clause. Now it seems rational to think that, if the writer assigns the same semantic significance to a participle as to a relative clause, he will be inclined to place it in the same position as a relative clause, i. e. after the noun modified. The fact, therefore, that the participle is felt as an undeveloped clause should be represented as an important factor that may occasion post-position.

That "an adjective attribute as a rule can be developed into a relative clause," even when it precedes the noun, finds some support in a comparison of the two following examples, which I have great pleasure in printing for Mr. B. P.'s gratification. I have some notion, however, that the pre-position of *hurt* in the first example will jar on his linguistic sense, as it does on mine.

I don't know any feeling more disagreeable than that produced by being left alone in a field, when out hunting, with a man who has been very much hurt and who is incapable of riding or walking. The hurt man himself has the privilege of his infirmities and may remain quiescent; but you, as his only attendant, must do something. TROL., Orley Farm, II, Ch. I, 5. (hurt man = the man who has been hurt.)

She began to bethink herself whether it were possible that she should give up something of her dress to protect the man who was hurt from the damp muddy ground on which he lay. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 8.

## PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE INFINITIVES.

140. Infinitives used as adnominal modifiers are mostly of a distinctly (102) verbal nature and are felt to have the value of undeveloped clauses. Their ordinary place is, accordingly, after the noun.

The dangers to be braved were such as could neither be knocked down nor throttled. G. FLIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. III, 22.

There's not a moment to lose. DICK., *Nick*, Ch. II, 6a.

The Old Chapel was not a place to visit by night. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

The other things included books to read and books to give away. WELLS, *Kipps*, I, § 1, 13.

This is also their ordinary place when the noun is preceded by an adjective, which strictly speaking, indicates a feature of the action expressed by the infinitive, as in:

It was a dastardly and most ungentlemanlike thing to do. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XXI, 167.

William Smith is not an easy name to render famous. SIMS, *My Two Wives*, Ch. I, 1.

The verbal function is dimmed in *to come* standing attributively after the noun, in the meaning of *coming* or *future* (O. E. D., 32, b), as in *not for many years to come*, and in:

The taste was only the reflection of the social slackwater between a tide passed and a tide to come. SADLER, *Trol.*, I, III, 11.

We may reckon on an important volume still to come. *Times Lit. Sup.*, 29/4, 1926. 319 a.

b) Only word groups containing a passive infinitive are sometimes mainly adjectival and are, accordingly, placed before the noun. The word with which the infinitive enters into an attributive combination is mostly a negative or an intensive; e. g.:

It was, perhaps the not-to-be satisfied satisfaction of a morbid mind... which first induced him to turn his thoughts upon marriage. LYTTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 20 a.

Oh dear, happy never-to-be-forgotten Christmas! MISS FRAEDON, *My First Happy Christmas*. (= unforgettable.)

It was a much-to-be-longed-for place EL GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. X, 86 (= covetable.)

Her writing reminds me of those least-to-be-forgotten evenings of my life when [etc]. *Punch*, No. 3836, 40 a

When the infinitive is modified by both a negative and an intensive, the latter is placed between *to be* and the past participle. This construction is, however, an unfrequent one.

Among the numerous laudations of the never-to be-sufficiently-commended weed, which have received notice in our days, the following has, I think, hitherto escaped reprinting. *Notes & Queries*.

Adjectival infinitive word-groups containing another modifier than a negative or an intensive appear to be unusual.

The about-to-be-released prisoner tried to explain that Irish Unionists were loyal to England. *The New Statesman*, No. 95 403 b.

Constructions in which an adjectival infinitive is modified by a lengthy word-group, as in the following example, can hardly be taken seriously:

The very devil has feelings, and if you prick him, will roar, whereby you, at all events, gain the not-every-day-of-the-week-to-be-attained benefit of finding out where he is. KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Pref., 24

## PLACE OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

141. a) Possessive pronouns are now regularly placed before the noun (97) they modify.

b) In Old English *mīn* was frequently placed after the noun in vocatives. See SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1784; thus in:

Fæder mīn, ic āscige hwær seo offrung sīe. SWEET, *A. S. Prim.*, 69

This practice survives archaically in Late Modern English; e. g.:

But in truth, lady mine, I rejoice for graver objects. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, III, Ch. II, 132.

Ah! Mother mine! to what use is all my scholarship and my philosophy? KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. IV, 36 b.

Reader mine, if ever you go to Harrow, ask permission to enter the old garden of the vicarage. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 33.

## PLACE OF EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

142. The emphatic pronouns are mostly placed in immediate succession to the (pro)noun they modify. When, however, this (pro)noun is the subject, they may also be found at the end, or in the body of the sentence. When placed at the end of the sentence, they are the most emphatic (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1804), and sometimes convey the secondary idea of *for my part*, etc. This is more rarely the case when they are placed in immediate succession to the (pro)noun modified. On the other hand, they sometimes have, in this position, the secondary meaning of *even* or *essentially*. For further comment and illustration see Ch. XXXIV, 25 f.

i. I shall describe the way in which I myself often passed an opium evening in London. DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. III, 42.

They acted as we ourselves also acted invariably in similar circumstances. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. III, 42.

Homer himself sometimes nods. PROV.

I had a note from Mrs. Lascelles herself. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. XI. God is charity and mercy itself.

ii. There was a sharp whirring noise, that made Mr. Winkle start back, as if he had been shot himself. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

I don't make merry myself at Christmas, and I can't afford to make idle people merry. id., Christm. Car., I, 10.

I prefer the dark style, myself, like my cousin. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud. I, Ch. I, 5. (In this, and the two preceding examples end position is practically obligatory.)

iii. He was a surgeon and had himself taken opium largely. DE QUINCEY Conf., Ch. III, 40.

Whether this child was an illegitimate daughter of Mr. —, or only a servant, I could not ascertain; she did not herself know. *ib.*, Ch. II, 21.

It must not be supposed that I have myself any pretensions to rank or high blood. *ib.*, Ch. II, 31.

He had never himself had the measles. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIV, 149.

## PLACE OF NUMERALS.

143. a) The ordinary place of cardinal numerals is before the noun. (99) In verse they are sometimes placed in post-position on metrical considerations; thus in:

My sister and my sister's child, | Myself and children three, | Will fill the chaise, so you must ride | On horseback after we. COWPER, John Gilpin IV. In mist or cloud, on mast or shroud | It perched for vespers nine. COL., An c. Mar., I, XIX.

In the following example the numeral is not the adjunct, but the head-word:

And down upon him bare the bandit three. TEN., Ger. & En., 84.

a) Post-position of the cardinal numeral is regularly observed when it is used by way of ordinal numeral, as in *Chapter fourteen, page three, latitude 63°*.

Sometimes the numeral is separated from its head-word by other elements of the sentence, thus in:

Souls and bodies hath he divorced three. SHAK., *Twelfth Night* III, 4, 260.  
Spanish ships of war at sea we have sighted fifty-three. TEN., *Revenge*, I, 1.

Prose-instances of the numeral being placed after the noun are rare, except, perhaps, in certain combinations where this arrangement, which appears to have been common in Old English (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1781), is kept up by tradition. Thus, not improbably, in *Soldiers three* (RUDY. KIPL.), and *sisters three* (= the Weird Sisters, Fates or Parcae), as in:

Therefore, if we coolly examine the state of our dependence, we may the better apprehend whether the sisters three have doomed one of us to expiate the same with his blood. SCOTT, *Mon. Ch.* XXI, 241.

b) Ordinal numerals normally precede the noun they modify; (101) thus in *This was the second time of asking*.

In indicating the number of a sovereign in a succession bearing the same name, the ordinal is normally placed after the proper name, the definite article being retained; thus in *William the Third, Henry the Eighth*.

This is also often done in indicating the number of a chapter, page, etc. of a literary composition, as in *Chapter the fourth, Page the ninth*.

#### 144. Of the indefinite numerals or indefinite pronouns: (100)

a) *much*, *many*, *little*, and *few* are regularly placed before the noun they modify;

b) *enough* either precedes or follows the noun it modifies; e. g.: *enough (of) water* = *water enough*. The latter is considered less emphatic.

c) *galore*, (now commonly viewed as Irish (O. E. D.)), is regularly placed in post-position (Ch. XXXI, 58), as in:

30,000 peasants have been induced with free railway tickets and entertainment galore to go to Stockholm. *Graph.*, No. 2307, 272 c.

A romance in which there should, indeed, be love galore. BELLAMY, *Look back w.*, 8.

We have Jews by the million and negroes galore. *Manch. Guard.* 11/11, 1927, 375 a.

d) *store*, "now arch. or dial." (N. E. D., 4, d), is always placed in post-position (Ch. XXXI, 58); thus in:

For cloy'd with woes and trouble store | Surcharg'd my Soul doth lie. MILT., P. s. LXXXVIII, 9 (O. E. D.).

The race of yore, | Who danced our infancy upon their knee, | And told our marvelling boyhood legends store [etc]. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, 1.

e) 1) The numeral *all* modifying a noun mostly precedes its head-word with all its adjuncts. When this noun is the subject, *all* is often found in another place, i. e. after the subject with all its other adjuncts, after the copula *to be*, or after the finite verb of a complex predicate; e. g.:

i. All our adventures were by the fireside. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (236).



They had watched all his motions, and lectured him on all his youthful follies. MAC., Hist., I, 171 (O. E. D., s.v. *all*, 2, b).

All the next day John was from home. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXV, 267. What happier man in all great London! GALSW., Country House, III, Ch. II, 226.

ii. Our cousins, too, even of the fortieth remove, all remembered their affinity. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. I.

The Miss Webbs all play, and their father has not so good an income as yours. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXIX, 165.

The men all asked Sybil if she did not sing. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. V, 86.

iii. Leckington Hill was all in a glow of light. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXV, 258.

iv. The boys would all have liked to be of the party.

Note a) Post-position of *all* is also common enough in vocatives, as in:

Now listen, my masters all! KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXV, 184 b.

β) In the following examples it appears to be intended to mark special emphasis:

But soon the steeples called good people all to church and chapel. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 53.

His stories have "grip," and dénouement. They are good stories all. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/12, 1922, 12 a.

γ) *All* modifies the pronoun, not the noun placed after it, by way of apposition, in:

To begin with, we students all assemble in the office. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6630, 6 b.

2) The numeral *all* modifying a personal or relative pronoun is mostly placed in immediate succession to this pronoun. When the latter is the subject we often find it shifted to another place, i.e. mostly after the copula *to be*, or after the finite verb of a complex predicate, more rarely after the whole predicate. Instead of objective of relative pronoun + *all*, we regularly find *all* + *of* + objective of relative pronoun; e.g.:

i. We all know him. I saw you all. O. E. D., s.v. *all*, 2, c.

ii. We are all like that. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. III, 177.

I wish you were all at the devil together. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

iii. Why did not you all learn? — You ought all to have learned (sc. playing and singing). JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXIX, 165.

We were all dismissed from the scene of action. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXV, 259.

He proposed that we should all go home. *ib.*, 260.

iv. I spoke about the matter to my sisters, who all applauded what I had done.

v. I discussed the matter with my sisters, who would all have liked to be present.

vi. He made several of those confidences, which are here set down all together. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XIII, 262.

vii. I shall speak about the matter to my sisters, all of whom you have seen, and to all of whom you have been duly introduced.

Note. In older English *all* is also found before a pronoun; thus in:



But be not ye called Rabbi: for one is your master, even Christ, and all ye are brethren. Bible, Matth., XXII, 8.

3) Also the pronoun *all* has post-position when modifying the neutral *it*, and like the numeral *all*, may be divided from *it* by other elements of the sentence; e. g.:

i. It all was as she said. TROL., Ori. Farm, III, Ch, XXV, 329.

I see it all now. O. E. D., s. v. *all*, I, c.

ii. It was all nonsense. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch XXV, 267.

It is all of no good. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 29.

Think how wretched it has all been. *ib.*, Ch. III, 30.

The best of it is that I know it to be all true. *ib.*, III, 30.

4) The reason why *all* is placed after the pronoun it belongs to is, most probably its superior significance and consequent stress.

The principle of relative significance and stress only partly accounts for its place when it modifies a demonstrative pronoun. This place is mostly before the latter, but the order may also be reversed; e. g.:

i. All this is distasteful to me. O. E. D., s. v. *all*, A, I, 1, c.

I must take all this into account. DICK., Bleak House, Ch XLI, 356.

All this he described so vividly that [etc.]. SWEET, Old Chapel.

ii. George what does this all mean? THACK., Virg., Ch VIII, 82.

I would have liked to have asked the driver what this all meant. BRAM STOKER, Dracula, Ch. I, 11.

f) 1) What has been said about *all* under 1) and 2) also applies to *both*, as the following examples may show:

i. Both these Lords professed the Protestant religion. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. IV, 10.

And then she took hold of both Lady Mason's hands. TROL., Ori. Farm, II, Ch. XVII, 225.

She took both his hands. THACK., Esm., Ch. XIII, 129.

ii. \* My friends both saw it. O. E. D., s. v. *both*, 3, a.

\*\* The governor's wife and servant, kind people both, were with the patient. THACK., Esm., II, Ch. I, 157.

iii. The girls were both satisfied.

iv. The girls would both have been pleased to help you.

My friends had both seen it. O. E. D., s. v. *both*, 3, a.

v. \* We both intuitively supplied the noun to that indefinite pronoun. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 110.

They both sobbed bitterly upon the sofa. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch III, 31.

\*\* The papers found in the strong box had converted them both to the true faith. MAC., Hist., II, 114 (O. E. D.).

She lived on nothing but scraps which she had trained her cat to steal for them both. ASC. R. HOPE, Old Pot.

vi. \* We are both men of the world. DICK., Pickw., Ch. X (O. E. D., 2).

\*\* They have both gone. O. E. D., s. v. *both*, 2.

\*\*\* They seem both very obstinate. *ib.*

vii. We were very merry both. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. II, 17.

viii. There had ridden, along with this old Princess's cavalcade, two gentlemen, who both were greeted with a deal of cordiality. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. XII, 116.

ix. \* I discussed the matter with my sisters, who were both loud in praising what I had done.

\*\* I discussed the matter with my sisters, who would both have liked to be present.

\* I shall speak about the matter to my sisters, to both of whom you have been introduced.

2) When *both* refers to a group of two (or more) words connected by *and*, it mostly precedes, but not seldom follows this word-group. When the word-group is the subject, *both* may stand after the copula *to be*, or after the finite verb of a complex predicate. When the nouns to which *both* refers, are preceded by a preposition, it mostly stands before the preposition, sometimes after the last noun, only occasionally after the preposition.

i. He both walks and runs. O. E. D., B, 1.

It was then that both Scotland and Ireland became parts of the same empire with England. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 63.

I looked for Bob both at and after dinner. E. W. HORNING, No Hero, Ch. XII.

ii. The king and the queen both honour him. I have seen your brother and your sister both. He can sing and dance both. O. E. D., B, 1.

Mr. Steele and Mr. Addison both did him the honour to visit him. THACK., Esm., III, Ch. III, 331.

"Does Muriel feel quite well — quite strong and well?" the father and the mother both kept saying every now and then. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXV, 273.

iii. Cæsar and Pompey were both great men. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 405.

Mercury and Venus are both inferior planets. O. E. D., B, 1.

iv. Her mind and her person had both developed themselves considerably. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 214.

He himself, and his father before him, had both been working-men. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 10.

v. I looked upon this as a master-piece both for argument and style. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. II, (243).

The famous cities he had visited both in peace and war. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. XII, 121.

vi. The young heir of Castlewood was spoiled by father and mother both. ib., I, Ch. XI, 108.

vii. To Dr. Bradley I am especially indebted for valuable suggestions and emendations, in both the manuscript and the proof stages of the book. ONIONS. Adv. Eng. Synt., Pref.

g) There is an analogous latitude in the placing of *each*, and of the word-groups *all of us*, *both of us*, *every one (of us)*, *each of us*, *many of us*, *some of us*, *(n)either of us*, and their variations, when modifying a plural, or a compound subject; e. g.:

i. There's some particular prize we all of us value. THACK., Esm., Ch. III, Ch. II, 326.

They both of them passed much time in Europe. id. Virg., Ch. I, 2.

We neither of us spoke. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LI, 428.

ii. We should all of us have considerable difficulty in proving the negative. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. II, 11.

We had neither of us once thought of the money. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 11.

It is safe to say that, if they had known Mr. Chamberlain was out, they would, every man of them, have remained at their posts. Rev. of Rev.

iii. They were, none of them, in a mood for settling down. EDNA LYALL. Hardy Nors., Ch. XL, 349.

We are daily, each of us, shedding abroad an influence for good and for evil. Miss MONTGOMERY, Thrown together.

iv. At the end of the time they shall love me every one. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. IV, 350.

The lords of the bedchamber had a thousand a year each. MAC., *Hist.*, I, 309 (O. E. D., 4).

We meant to be sailors, every one of us. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas*.

145. The reason why the words and word-groups mentioned under e—g in the preceding section may, in certain connexions, leave the place ordinarily assigned to attributive adnominal modifiers, i. e. immediately before or after the words they belong to, lies in the fact that they are more or less adverbial in function. For comment and illustration see also Ch. V, 15–16; Ch. XXXIX, 35, 36; Ch. XL, 11, Obs. I and II; 33.

### PLACE OF ATTRIBUTIVE WORD-GROUPS AND CLAUSES.

146. Attributive preposition-groups mostly stand in immediate succession to the (pro)noun they modify; thus in:

We have here a ploughman out of employ. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. V, 33.

Attendance at these meetings is in itself a kind of professional education. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 27.

The real question at issue is not one of money. TIMES.

147. Preposition-groups with *of*, when constituting the most significant element of the sentence are, however, often enough separated from their head-word, and placed:

a) in front-position, as in *Of fuel they had plenty* (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1863).

Of the stonework nothing now remains. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 7 b.

For further illustration see 17.

b) in end- or mid-position, often separated from their head-word by another preposition-group, and modified by a weighty attributive adjunct or clause; thus in:

The death is announced of Mr. Henry Archer, inventor [etc.]. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 318.

We cannot ... wonder that the demands of the opposition, importing as they did a complete and formal transfer to the Parliament of powers which had always belonged to the Crown, should have shocked that great party [etc.]. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 110.

We may expect to see a good deal less, rather than more, ardour in the restraint by the engines of the law of the ecclesiastical law-breakers. MANCH. GUARD., 23 12, 1927, 482 b.

In France the topic of chief interest is the arrival on Friday Oct. 13, of the Russian Naval squadron, commanded by Admiral Avellan, at Toulon. LOND. NEWS.

c) at the end of an adnominal clause modifying their head-word. He heard with a recurrence of the slight jealousy he had always felt of Stella

that [etc.]. COMPTON MACKENZIE, *Sinister Street*, 159 (KRUIS, *Handb.*, 2125).

For illustration and discussion see also SCHULZE in *E. S.*, XXII, 259—361; and ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, § 9.

148. a) A word-group consisting of *of* — relative pronoun is placed (109) either after or before the (pro)noun or numeral modified. The former arrangement is more frequent than the latter, and is regularly observed when the noun modified is preceded by a preposition; e. g.:

i. \* Then Martin inhabited a study looking into a small court, the window of which was completely commanded by those of the studies opposite in the Sick-room row. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 238.

He had five sons, every one of whom made himself more or less conspicuous as a practical reformer in one path or another. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 14.

\*\* The officer ... came next to survey Jones; at the first sight of whom, the Lieutenant could not help showing some surprise. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, VII, Ch. XI, 123 a.

His way led up a hill on the top of which sat a powerful giant. ANDREW LANG, *The Brave Little Tailor*.

The Commonwealth Government has launched a £ 6,000,000 local loan, a portion of the proceeds of which will be devoted to the Federal Capital (Canberra) Commission. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/11, 1926, 376 c.

ii. Three sons, of whom all died young. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1871.

The only record of the proceedings was in the letter which he (sc. the Prime Minister) wrote to the King, and of which a copy was preserved by his private secretary. *Manch. Guard.*, 15/10, 1926, 313 b.

b) Also in the case of the preposition being another than *of*, the preposition-group appears to be normally placed after the noun modified.

This house ... had ... been taken, — up in that cheerful locality ... called St. John's Wood Road, the cab-fares to which from any central part of London are so very ruinous. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXV, 600.

c) A preposition-group containing the genitive *whose*, or the conjoint *which*, naturally, can have no other place than after the noun modified.

i. Little good could be got from a solicitor, the very rails round whose door were so sadly in want of repairing. LYTTON, *Paul Clifford*, Ch. XXXIII, 379.

ii. His brother Alfred, in the meantime, had drifted from work at a London bookseller's into the modern Grub Street, his adventures in which region will concern us hereafter. GISSING, *New Grub Street*, Ch. II (KRUIS, *Handb.*, § 2179).

For further comment and illustration see Ch. XXXIX, 36.

149. Adnominal clauses are mostly placed in immediate succession to the nouns they modify; thus in *The man who told you this is a fool*. Deviations from this arrangement are avoided by careful writers. BAIN (*H. E. Gr.*, 321) cites the following examples, which might be improved by re-arrangement:



The time drew near at which the Houses must re-assemble. (Re-arranged: Now drew near the time at which [etc].)

This way will direct you to a gentleman's house that hath skill to take off these burdens. BUNYAN. (Re-arranged: This way will direct you to the house of a gentleman that [etc].)

## ARRANGEMENT OF TWO OR MORE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJUNCTS.

150. When attributive adjuncts of a different description modify one and the same noun, the arrangement almost regularly observed is that the article, the pronoun, and the numeral are placed before the adjective(s) or adnominal nouns (3). To this rule there are, however some interesting exceptions. See also 144.

151. The indefinite article often stands after the adjective (or adjectival (112) participle), when the latter is modified by an intensive.

a) This arrangement appears to be regular when the intensive is *as*, *how*, *however*, or *so*; thus in:

i. If distance from the equator had been the only determining cause of climate, then Britain should have had as rigorous a climate as Labrador. ARCH. GEIKIE.

ii. He could not understand how small an amount of money sufficed for happiness. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 64.

iii. However large a fortune his father may have left him, he will soon see the end of it, if he goes on at this rate. STOF., *Handl.*, III, § 9.

iv. I don't think him so ill-looking a little fellow, by any means. SHER., *School*, IV, 1, (405).

She spoke with ever so slight a foreign accent. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 142.

Every merchant will naturally be eager to have his puffs inserted among the writings of so universally read and admired an author as Dr. Goldsmith. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8579, 7a.

Note a) There is not, of course, anything unusual in post-position of word-groups consisting of any of the above intensives + adjective (114, a), as in:

Young Warrington never had such a glorious day, or witnessed a scene so delightful. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 8.

δ) The arrangement illustrated by the following example is, no doubt, very rare:

O horrid transformation! | So a majestic temple, sunk to ruin. G. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, I, 1.

b) This may be the usual place of the indefinite article also when the intensive is *too*, but the alternative arrangement with the article standing before *too* is certainly common enough; e. g.:

i. No, thank you, my dear Mrs. Bonnington: too old a stager. THACK., *Lovel.*, Ch. IV, 76.

Some fathers set too great a value on books. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I, 1.

ii. Perhaps what you have mistaken for love is but the warm effusion of a too thankful heart. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 2.



"And what's that, sir?" asked Jack, who was at a too heroic and sentimental pitch to descend from it. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 117.

"We used to play a good deal at one time," admitted Miss La Sartha, without a too great show of gratification. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. III, 40.

Occasionally her husband had sent for his coat at lunch-time, to supplement the heat given out on a too parsimonious hearth. E. F. BENSON, *Mrs. Ames*, Ch. II, 70.

He was a far too sensitive man for a club. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. IX, 202.

Note *a*) When *too* is negated by *not*, the article appears to stand first regularly; thus in:

Perhaps some apprehension might be felt even by a not too impatient reader, on opening another volume from the prolific and too facile pen of Sir Herbert Maxwell. *Times*.

At a not too distant date the Central Powers will be able to call to the Entente, "Lay Down Your Arms." *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 336, 446 *b*.

*β*) Also *sufficiently* and, perhaps, other intensives may cause the indefinite article to be placed between the adjective and the noun.

Two cruisers that arrived post-haste from Gibraltar were sufficiently strong an argument for Moulai to abandon his claim. *Daily Mail*.

I doubt whether Lord Kitchener is of sufficiently pliant a nature to find favour with the War Office as at present constituted. *Per.* (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 134).

*c*) The adverbs *quite* and *rather* frequently change places with (112) the indefinite article.

i. \* It seemed she must have stood there quite a long time. STEVENSON (*GÜNT.*, *Man.*, § 358).

That morning Mr. Havisham had quite a long conversation with the winner of the race. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord* (*ib.*).

\*\* Town-wits have always been rather a heartless class. *Mac.*, *Restor.*, (578 *a*).

He had a short interview with his son and rather a longer one with Summers-Howson. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

ii. \* In one corner you would see a quite elderly gentleman. *T.P.'s Weekly*. Seated on some straw ... was one of our poor soldiers, a quite young man. *ib.* I should have to save up for two whole months and a half to get a quite plain coat and skirt. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6101, 6 *c*.

\*\* He eyed me with a rather sour expression on his face. *Il Magaz.* The New Review has a rather good programme. *Rev. of Rev.*

Note *a*) A similar transposition may sometimes be observed in the case of *somewhat*.

You were then in somewhat a humbler style. *SHER.*, *School*, II, 1, (376).

*β*) It will be observed that these adverbs when preceding the indefinite article partake more or less of the nature of adverbs of mood, implying as they do some hesitation on the part of the speaker as to the correctness of his statement. Compare KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 2133.

*γ*) The indefinite article may divide a numeral of repetition from a comparative, as in

Have you not twice a better bed? *TROL.*, *Ward.*, Ch. V, 65.

152. Of special interest is the construction in which the indefinite article is placed between the members of certain compounds that are modified by *as* or *so*: viz. such as consist of an adjective

or adverb + a present participle, a past participle, or an adjective in *ed*. For illustration see also Ch. LVII, 26, *c*, Note  $\beta$ ; 40, Obs. I; 43, Obs. V. The construction appears to be an unusual one, except, perhaps that with *looking*, the only present participle with which instances have turned up; e. g.:

i. Monstrous handsome young man that — as fine a looking soldier as ever I saw. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 115.

Your uncle is as good a looking man as I know. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XVI, 183.

She became in one twelvemonth as fine a looking lady as there was in the whole country-side. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. III, 80.

Compare: She could not help thinking it a pity that so good-looking a man should have lost his wits. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, VII, 128.

ii. There's no man is so vain | That would refuse so fair an offer'd chain. SHAK., *Com. of Er.*, III, 2, 186.

I hold myself as well a born man as thyself. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XV, 140.

iii. It makes ... sound opinion sick and truth suspected. | For putting on so new a fashion'd robe. SHAK., *King John*, IV, 2, 27.

I have known as honest a faced fellow have art enough to do that. SCOTT, *Ken*, Ch. XII, 141.

153. a) Also a comparative negated by *no* is divided from its head- (112) word by the indefinite article, as in:

The knight did bear no less a pack. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1793.

Mr. Buck, the tutor, was no better a scholar than many a fifth-form boy at Grey Friars. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 183.

They (sc. the Boers) found not a few sympathisers in England. Among them was no less a person than Mr. Gladstone himself. MCCARTHY, *The Transvaal*.

b) Less common is the construction with the interposed indefinite article when the comparative is not negated by *no*, as in:

Sir Everard felt very thankful that he held his seat on less frail a tenure. FLOR. MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood*, 110. T.

Note a) It may be observed that *no* + comparative as in the above examples hints at a quality that is the opposite of the positive of the comparative; thus *no less a pack*, *no worse a name*, *no better a musician*, etc. may be understood to be almost equivalent to respectively *as big a pack*, *as good a name*, *as indifferent a musician*, etc. When no such notion is intended, a construction with *not*, as in the following example, is used, or would, at least, be used by precise writers.

Our George II, at least, was not a worse king than his neighbours. THACK., *Four Georges*, II, 33.

$\beta$ ) There is hardly an appreciable difference between *a* + *no more* + positive of adjective and *no more* + *a* + positive of adjective, although in the former *no more* modifies the adjective alone, in the latter *no more* modifies the word-group adjective + noun.

Miss Pratt was an old maid; but that is a no more definite description than if I had said she was in the autumn of life. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. III, 202. (practically the same as ... that is no more a definite description than ...)

;) In such a sentence as *No worse dauber than he ever spoiled good canvas* (STOF., *Stud.*, 94) *no* is not an adverb modifying a comparative,

but an indefinite pronoun, the negative representative of the indefinite article, modifying the following noun or the word-group comparative + noun. There is, accordingly, no occasion for the use of the indefinite article: the above sentence admitting of being changed into *No dauber worse than he* etc. A similar interpretation can be put on:

O, ho! do you come near me now? no worse man than Sir Toby to look to me! SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, III, 4, 72 (= no man worse than Sir Toby). If they had been able to contrive no better remedy against arbitrary power BURKE, *French Rev.*, *Sel. Wks.*, II, 35 (O. E. D.). (= no remedy that is better.)

I once knew a sufferer — who did not then seem in immediate danger — suddenly order the sick-room to be lit up as if for a gala. When this was told to the physician, he said, gravely, "No worse sign." LYTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. XII, 296, foot-note. (= No sign could be worse)

If it be said that no worse leader than a fiery young fool can be desired for any movement, it may also be said that without youth and fire and folly there is usually no movement at all. GALSW., *Free Lands*, Ch. XXVIII, 257. (= no leader that is worse than a fiery young fool.)

Sometimes the indefinite article seems to be wrongly suppressed; thus in the following example, in which *no* modifies the following comparative and is, accordingly, distinctly adverbial.

"Kill you! Do you expect it?" — "I do". — "Why?" — "No less degree of rage against me will match your grief for her." HARDY, *Return*, V, Ch. III, 406. For further comment and illustration see Ch. XL, 126.

154. Such a form of address as *Good my Lord*, etc. which appears to (113) have been quite common in Early Modern English, seems to be due to *my Lord*, etc. being understood as a kind of compound, in like manner as the Dutch *Mijnheer* and *Mevrouw* in *goede Mijnheer*, and *goede Mevrouw*. The construction was extended to other combinations in which the union of adjective and noun was less complete, as in:

Therefore in my presence still smile, dear my sweet, I prithee. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, II, 5, 193.

Gracious my lord, | I should report that which I say I saw. id., *Mac b.*, V, 5, 30.  
Dear my Lord, | Make me acquainted with your cause of grief. id., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 255.

The practice is now extinct, occasional instances occurring only archaically in Late Modern English; e. g.:

And how doth your kinsman, good mine host? SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. III, 29.  
Good my brother, hear. TEN., *Bal. & Bal.*, 136.

155. The determinative *such*, the exclamatory *what*<sup>4</sup>, and the indefinite numeral *many* stand before the indefinite article; thus in *such a man*, *what a giant!* *many a girl*. Usage is divided as to the placing of *such* and *another*, either of which may precede the other. According to the O. E. D. (s. v. *another*, 1, c) *such another* is more usual than *another such*.

. Such another opportunity may not occur. SHAK., *Rev.*, III, 3.  
He thought that such another creature, quite as graceful and full of promise, might have called him father. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 45.

ii. I'd walk twice as far to spend another such evening. W. BLACK., *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VI.

156. Numerals, whether definite or indefinite, precede adjectives, as in *two (few, many, several) great men; much (little) good wine*. This applies also to the distributives, as in *each (every), (n)either, many a wet season*. All and both are placed before a demonstrative or possessive pronoun + adjective — noun, as in *all (both) his (these) large estates*.
157. The superlatives *first, last* and *next* stand either after or before (115) the cardinal numeral; thus *the three first (last, next) months*, or *the first (last, next) three months*.

BRADLEY (in O. E. D. s.v. *first*, 2, *e*) observes: "In this combination three varieties of word-order have been used. (a) The earliest recorded form is *the two (three, etc.) first* (= Fr. *les deux premiers*, Ger. *die zwei ersten*). This still survives, though it is now rarely used where numbers above 3 or 4 are concerned. † (b) In 15—16th c. *two (three, etc.) the first* occasionally occurs. (c). In 16th c. the growing tendency to regard *first* as an ordinal led to the introduction of the form *the first two (three, etc.)* corresponding to the *second two (or three, etc.)*. This is now the universal form in the case of high numbers; but for numbers up to 3 or 4 many writers use it only when the number specified is viewed as a collective unity contrasted with the second or some succeeding 2, 3, or 4 in the series." Compare also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1791; ALFORD, *The Queen's English*, § 274 ff; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, II, 15.122—3.

## PLACE OF PREDICATIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

158. The placing of predicative adnominal adjuncts is in English very (116) much the same as it is in Dutch. Only such as modify the object call for some comment. In the following discussions they are briefly called predicative adjuncts.
159. Predicative adjuncts modifying the object are mostly placed in (117) immediate succession to the latter; thus in: *This made him happy. They called him many bad names. They beat him to death*. This arrangement is also observed when the adjunct is represented (118) by a verbal, as in: *I saw him come. I want him to come. I saw him coming. I saw it done. Excuse me interrupting you*, etc.
160. Not unfrequently, however, the predicative adjunct is placed before the object. Thus especially when the latter is attended by a lengthy modifier, or is made up of more than one member; thus in:

Mr. Wapshot laid bare to me all the baseness of Mr. Smithers's conduct in the Brough transaction. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 182.



Esmond wished to cut short the good Father's theology. *id.*, *E s m.*, II, Ch. XI, 263.

I had no business to make public either my doubts or fears. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal.*, Ch. XIX, 192.

This homely figure of her religion ... laid to rest fears which only now ... she knew she had been entertaining. *HICHENS, Gard. of A l.*, II, iv, Ch. XXIII, 167. Ali was humming a mysterious song about a love-sick camel-man, with which he intended to make glad the hearts of the assembly when the meal was over. *ib.*, II, iv, Ch. XX, 109.

Any violence done to her body ... seemed to let loose a devil in her. *ib.*, I, II, Ch. VIII, 176.

The report ... makes clear the relations of the Dominions to one another. *Manch. Guard.*, 26/11, 1926, 421 a.

To what better political purpose could the benevolence and the endeavour of any of us ... be applied than to helping forward a movement vital to the safety of the State? *ib.*, 18/11, 1927, 382 c.

Even in the case of the predicative adjunct being a simple word( group) this close union may make this arrangement obligatory; thus in connexions with *to lay waste*, *to make good* (in three shades of meaning), as in:

i. With a word he tamed the Daunian bear, which was laying waste the country. *LEWES, Hist. of Phil.*, 40.

iii. \* We shall make good our title. *DICK., Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIII, 286.

\*\* The fugitives made good their flight. *COBHAM BREWER, Read. Handbk.*, 1156 b.

\*\*\* This year's award has made good the omission. *Manch. Guard.*, 16/12, 1927, 465 b.

With the above examples compare the following in which the predicative adjunct is placed after the object, notwithstanding the inordinate length of the latter:

The famine of the summer made any large corn export, such as had been expected, impossible. *ib.*, 11/11, 1927, 370 b.

Note. It will have been observed that in most of the above examples the verb forms a kind of unit with the adjunct. Thus the following combinations are approximately equivalent to the simple verbs placed after them within brackets: *to cut short* (to curtail), *to lay bare* (to expose) *to lay to rest* (to pacify), *to lay waste* (to devastate), *to let loose* (to release), *to make clear* (to explain), *to make glad* (to gladden), *to help forward* (to promote), *to make public* (to reveal). In these combinations the adjunct conveys most of the meaning, the verb playing an inferior part. Compare Ch. VI, 1.

In the following examples there appears, however, no occasion for this arrangement:

Now she saw Medea in the moment before she tore to pieces her brother. *HICHENS, Gard. of A l.*, I, II, Ch. VIII, 168.

She pushed open the door and went in. *ib.*, I, I, Ch. V, 68.

161. It is only in certain combinations with *let* that the adjunct in (118) the shape of an infinitive may precede the object; e. g.

i In taking leave of Camilla, he let fall hints which fill me with fear. *LYTTON, Night & Morn.*, 462.



If he let slip this opportunity of confession, he might never have another. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. VIII, 57.

ii. Yet she let the opportunity slip, and nothing was done. BESANT, *All Sorts*.

Note a) In older English this construction may have been more common; e. g.:

Just at that moment I saw pass between the trees a lady with a book in her hand. MACKENZIE, *Man of Feeling*.

Quite archaic is also such a construction as *He heard tell a story*, in which the object is not in the subjective relation to the infinitive, as in all the preceding examples, but in the objective. Instead of it Present-day English has *He heard a story told* (Ch. XVIII, 32, Obs. IV). Compare Ch. III, 30, b, Note. This also applies to the constructions in: He beheld a vision of an angel who bade build the bridge. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 98 b.

He bade light the peat-stack under me. *id.*, *Here w.*, Ch. I, 17 a.

β) In colloquial language *to let go* is often replaced by *to let go of*. Compare the two last with the two first of the following examples.

i. Ellis suddenly let go her hand. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. II, 117.

Let go my hand. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XXVII.

ii. His right hand never let go of the precious book. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. I, 14.

He did not suggest treachery, but they just let go of the animals. *Daily Chronicle*.

**162.** When the object is a pronoun, the ordinary word-order is never (118) departed from; e. g.:

Not finding the lead-pencil, he took one from his pocket, and in so doing, he let it fall. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VII, 103.

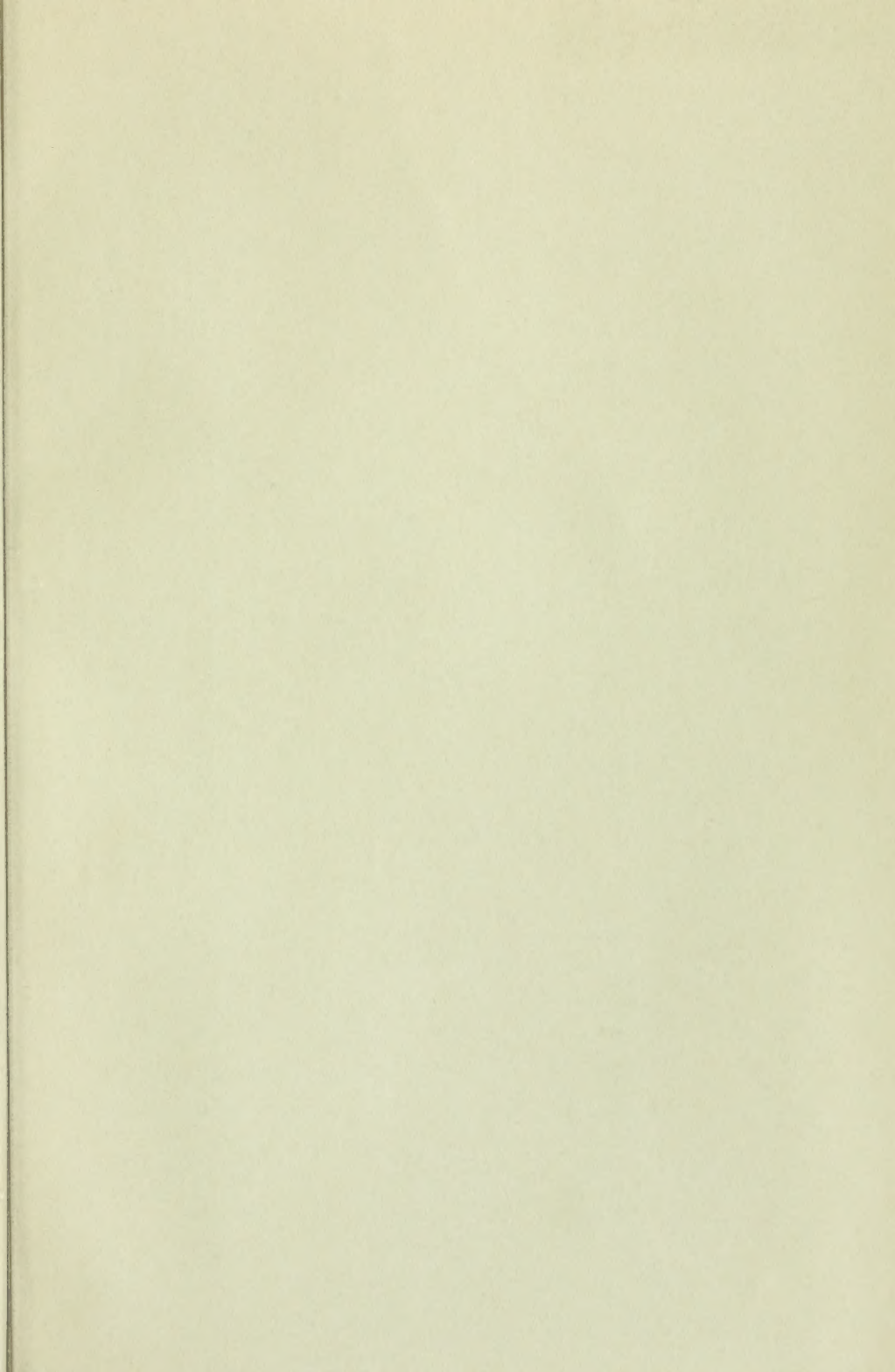














PE Poutsma, Hendrik  
1105 A grammar of late modern  
P6 English 2d ed.  
1928  
v.1

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---



